

This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, see:

<https://bitbucket.org/ben-crowell/ransom/src/master/README.md>

rev. December 26, 2025

The Greek text is based on the edition by Marchant, 1910. The English translation is by Dakyns, 1909, via Project Gutenberg.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copy-righting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copy-righting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.



*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἀπάρχω** cut hairs ~oligarch**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat**ἐνεσθίω** eat hastily**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper, henchman, servant ~therapy**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**κάτοπτρον** mirror**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram**λευκός** white ~light**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**μεταδίδωμι** give part of ~donate**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**παραμηρίδιος** along the thighs**πατρῷος** of the father(s), ancestral**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**προμετωπίδιος** on the forehead**προστερνίδιον** horse's chest covering**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add**σπένδω** libate; (mid) make a treaty ~spontaneous**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**φοινίκεος** (i) purple, red**χάλκεος** made of copper or bronze**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor**χρίω** (i) anoint ~Christ**χρῶμα** -τος (n, 3) color

## 7

## 7.1

Οἱ μὲν δὴ εὐξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς ἀπῆσαν πρὸς τὰς τάξεις· τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν προσήνεγκαν οἱ θεράποντες ἐμφαγεῖν καὶ πιεῖν ἔτι οὖσιν ἀμφὶ τὰ ἱερά. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὥσπερ εἶχεν ἐστηκὼς ἀπαρξάμενος ἡρίστα καὶ μετεδίδου ἀεὶ τῷ μάλιστα δεομένῳ· καὶ σπείσας καὶ εὐξάμενος ἔπιε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν οὕτως ἐποιοῦν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα αἰτησάμενος Δία πατρῶον ἡγεμόνα εἶναι καὶ σύμμαχον ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ἐκέλευεν. ὦπλισμένοι δὲ πάντες ἦσαν οἱ περὶ τὸν Κῦρον τοῖς αὐτοῖς Κύρῳ ὅπλοις, χιτῶσι φοινικοῖς, θώραξι χαλκοῖς, κράνεσι χαλκοῖς, λόφοις λευκοῖς, μαχαίραις, παλτῷ κρανεῖνῳ ἐνὶ ἑκάστος· οἱ δὲ ἵπποι προμετωπιδίοις καὶ προστερνιδίοις καὶ παραμηριδίοις χαλκοῖς· τὰ δ' αὐτὰ ταῦτα παραμηρίδια ἦν καὶ τῷ ἀνδρί· τοσοῦτον μόνον διέφερον τὰ Κύρου ὅπλα ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἐκέχριτο τῷ χρυσοειδεῖ χρώματι, τὰ δὲ Κύρου ὅπλα ὥσπερ κάτοπτρον

## 7

## 7.1

Οἱ μὲν δὴ εὐξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς ἀπῆσαν πρὸς τὰς τάξεις· τῷ  
 δὲ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν |present; resem- οἱ |companion  
 |ble; add  
 ἐμφαγεῖν καὶ πιεῖν ἔτι οὖσιν ἀμφὶ τὰ ἱέρα. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
 ὥσπερ εἶχεν ἐστηκὼς |cut hairs |eat lunch αὐτῷ |give part of  
 αὐτῷ τῷ μάλιστα δεομένῳ· καὶ |libate; (mid) ` εὐξάμενος  
 |make a treaty  
 ἔπιδε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν οὕτως ἐποιοῦν.  
 μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα |ask for Δία |of the fa-|leader εἶναι  
 |ther(s), an-  
 καὶ σύμμαχον ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ' |cestral  
 αὐτὸν ἐκέλευεν. |prepare, arm δὲ πάντες ἦσαν οἱ περὶ τὸν  
 Κῦρον τοῖς αὐτοῖς Κύρῳ |tool , |tunic |purple, red |breastplate  
 χαλκοῖς, |helmet; ship's ram , |neck, |white , |knife ,  
 |crest on  
 |shake, |brandish |ρανείνω ἐνὶ ἑκάστος |a helmet, |hilltop  
 καὶ |horse's chest cov- καὶ |along the thighs χαλκοῖς· τὰ δ' αὐτὰ  
 |ering  
 ταῦτα |along the thighs ἔχον καὶ τῷ ἀνδρὶ· τοσοῦτον μόνον  
 |carry on; ἂν Κύρου |tool ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα |anoint τῷ  
 |differ; excel  
 χρυσοειδεῖ |color , τὰ δὲ Κύρου |tool ὥσπερ |mirror

## 7

## 7.1

So they prayed to the gods and went to their place, and the squires brought food and drink to Cyrus and his staff as they stood round the sacrifice. And he took his breakfast where he stood, after making the due offering, sharing what he had with all who needed it, and he poured out the libation and prayed, and then drank, and his men with him.

Then he supplicated Zeus, the god of his fathers, to be his leader and helper in the fight, and so he mounted his horse and bade those about him follow. All his squires were equipped as he was, with scarlet tunics, breastplates of bronze, and brazen helmets plumed with white, short swords, and a lance of cornel-wood apiece. Their horses had frontlets, chest-plates, and armour for their shoulders, all of bronze, and the shoulder-pieces served as leg-guards for the riders. In one thing only the arms of Cyrus differed from the rest: theirs was covered with a golden varnish and his flashed like a mirror. As he sat on his steed,

*vocabulary*

**ἀετός** eagle ~avis  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten  
**ἀποβλέπω** stare at, adore  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**βροντή** thunder ~brontosaurus  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διαμένω** continue, persevere  
**ἐκατέρωθεν** on both sides  
**ἐκλάμπω** shine forth  
**ἐπικάμπω** bend, make an angle  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἵππαρχος** horse-ruling (epithet of Poseidon) ~hippo  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**καταφανής** clearly seen  
**κυκλόω** circle, encircle

**κύκλωσις** act of surrounding  
**πάντοθεν** from all directions  
**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order  
**παροράω** notice; overlook, neglect  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out  
**σημείον** sign  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
**τρίς** 3 times  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle ~phalanx  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter ~diphthong

ἐξέλαμπεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνέβη καὶ ἔστη ἀποβλέπων ἥπερ ἔμελλε πορεύεσθαι, βροντὴ δεξιὰ ἐφθέγγετο· ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἐψόμεθά σοι, ὦ Ζεῦ μέγιστε. καὶ ὠρμάτο ἐν μὲν δεξιᾷ ἔχων Χρυσάνταν τὸν ἵππαρχον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας, ἐν ἀριστερᾷ δὲ Ἀρσάμαν καὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς. παρηγγύησε δὲ παρορᾶν πρὸς τὸ σημεῖον καὶ ἐν ἴσῳ ἔπεσθαι· ἦν δὲ αὐτῷ τὸ σημεῖον ἀετὸς χρυσοῦς ἐπὶ δόρατος μακροῦ ἀνατεταμένος. καὶ νῦν δ' ἔτι τοῦτο τὸ σημεῖον τῷ Περσῶν βασιλεῖ διαμένει. πρὶν δὲ ὁρᾶν τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς τρεῖς ἀνέπανσε τὸ στράτευμα.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ προεληλύθεσαν ὡς εἴκοσι σταδίους, ἤρχοντο ἤδη τὸ τῶν πολεμίων στράτευμα ἀντιπροσιὸν καθορᾶν. ὡς δ' ἐν τῷ καταφανεῖ πάντες ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο καὶ ἔγνωσαν οἱ πολέμοι πολὺ ἐκατέρωθεν ὑπερφαλαγγοῦντες, στήσαντες τὴν αὐτῶν φάλαγγα οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως κυκλοῦσθαι, ἐπέκαμπτον εἰς κύκλωσιν, ὥσπερ γάμμα ἐκατέρωθεν τὴν ἑαυτῶν τάξιν ποιήσαντες, ὡς πάντοθεν ἅμα μάχοντο. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὁρῶν ταῦτα οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον



|shine forth . . . ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνέβη καὶ ἔσθη |stare at, adore ἤπερ

ἔμελλε πορεύεσθαι, |thunder |right- |make a sound, 'utter' . . . πεν  
|hand

Ἐψόμέθά σοι, ὦ Ζεῦ μέγιστε. καὶ ὠρμάτο ἐν μὲν

δεξιᾷ ἔχων Χρυσάνταν τὸν |horse-ruling καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας,

ἐν |left-hand δὲ Ἀρσάμαν καὶ τοὺς πεζούς. |entrust; pass  
|an order

δὲ |notice; over- ρὸς τὸ |sign καὶ ἐν ἴσῳ ἔπεσθαι ἦν  
|look, neglect

δὲ αὐτῷ τὸ |sign |eagle χρυσοῦς ἐπὶ δόρατος μακροῦ

|lift, reach out, καὶ νῦν δ' ἔτι τοῦτο τὸ |sign τῷ Περσῶν  
|threaten

βασιλεῖ |continue, πρὶν δὲ ὀρᾶν τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς |3  
|persevere |times

|cause to cease |army

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |proceed, come out ὥς εἴκοσι σταδίους, ἤρχοντο ἤδη

τὸ τῶν πολεμίων |army ἀντιπροσιὸν |look down ὥς δ'

ἐν τῷ |clearly seen πάντες ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο καὶ ἔγνωσαν

οἱ πολέμοι πολὺ |on both sides ὑπερφαλαγγοῦντες,

στήσαντες τὴν αὐτῶν |rank of battle ᾧ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως

|circle, |bend, make an angle|act of surrounding , γάμμα  
|encircle

|on both sides τὴν ἐαυτῶν τάξιν ποιήσαντες, ὥς |from all directions

ἅμα μάχονται. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὁρῶν ταῦτα οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον

gazing into the distance, where he meant to go, a peal of thunder rang out on the right, and he cried, "We will follow thee, O Zeus most high!"

So he set forth with Chrysantas on his right at the head of cavalry and Arsamas on his left with infantry. And the word went down the lines, "Eyes on the standard and steady marching."

The standard was a golden eagle, with outspread wings, borne aloft on a long spear-shaft, and to this day such is the standard of the Persian king.

Before they came in full sight of the Assyrians Cyrus halted the army thrice. And when they had gone about two miles or more, they began to see the enemy advancing. As soon as both armies were in full view of each other, and the Assyrians could see how much they outflanked the Persians on either side, Croesus halted, in order to prepare an encircling movement, and pushed out a column on the right wing and the left, so that the Persian forces might be attacked on every side at once.

Cyrus saw it, but gave

*vocabulary***ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten**ἀντιπέρα** (αἶ) on the other side of

~pierce

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἀποσπάω** tear/drag away**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐγγύς** near**ἐκατέρωθεν** on both sides**ἐπικαμπή** bend; corner; a military tactic**ἡνίκα** when**κάμπτω** bend, bend in exhaustion**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit

~ceratopsia

**ναί** yea**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so**πάντοθεν** from all directions**πλάγιος** sideways; treacherous**ποιόω** make of a certain quality**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle

~phalanx

**ὡσαύτως** in the same way**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

ἀφίστατο, ἀλλ' ὡσαύτως ἡγείτο. κατανοῶν δὲ ὡς  
 πρόσω τὸν καμπτήρα ἐκατέρωθεν ἐποιήσαντο περὶ ὃν  
 κάμπτοντες ἀνέτεινον τὰ κέρατα, Ἐννοεῖς, ἔφη, ὦ  
 Χρυσάντα, ἔνθα τὴν ἐπικαμπὴν ποιοῦνται; πάνυ γε, ἔφη  
 ὁ Χρυσάντας, καὶ θαυμάζω γε· πολὺ γάρ μοι δοκοῦσιν  
 ἀποσπᾶν τὰ κέρατα ἀπὸ τῆς ἐαυτῶν φάλαγγος. Ναὶ  
 μὰ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ ἀπό γε τῆς ἡμετέρας. Τί δὴ  
 τοῦτο; Δῆλον ὅτι φοβούμενοι μὴ ἦν ἐγγὺς ἡμῶν γένωνται  
 τὰ κέρατα τῆς φάλαγγος ἔτι πρόσω οὔσης, ἐπιθώμεθα  
 αὐτοῖς. Ἐπειτ', ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας, πῶς δυνήσονται  
 ὠφελεῖν οἱ ἕτεροι τοὺς ἑτέρους οὕτω πολὺ ἀπέχοντες  
 ἀλλήλων; Ἀλλὰ δῆλον, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὅτι ἡνίκα ἂν  
 γένωνται τὰ κέρατα ἀναβαίνοντα κατ' ἀντιπέρας τῶν  
 πλαγίων τοῦ ἡμετέρου στρατεύματος, στραφέντες ὡς  
 εἰς φάλαγγα ἅμα πάντοθεν ἡμῖν προσίασι μαχοῦμενοι.  
 Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας, εὖ σοι δοκοῦσι βουλευέσθαι;  
 Πρὸς γε ἃ ὀρώσιν· πρὸς δὲ ἃ οὐχ ὀρώσιν ἔτι κάκιον ἢ εἰ  
 κατὰ κέρας προσῆσαν. ἀλλὰ σὺ μέν, ἔφη, ὦ

ἀφίστατο, ἀλλ' |in the same way ἴσο. |notice, real- δὲ ὥς  
|ize, learn

|forward, in the αμπτῆρα |on both sides ἐποιήσαντο περὶ ὧν  
|future; far

|bend, bend in|lift, reach out|horn; , Ἐννοεῖς, ἔφη, ὦ  
|exhaustion |threaten |military

Χρυσάντα, ἔνθα τὴν |bend; corner;|make of a cer- ἴνυ γε, ἔφη  
|a military tac-|tain quality

ὁ Χρυσάντας, καὶ θαυμάζω γε· πολὺ γάρ μοι δοκοῦσιν

|tear/drag away. |horn; ἀπὸ τῆς ἐαυτῶν |rank of battle |yea  
|military

μὰ Δι', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ ἀπὸ γε τῆς ἡμετέρας. Τί δὴ  
|unit

τοῦτο; |visible, " ὁβούμενοι μὴ ἦν |near ἡμῶν γένωνται  
|conspicuous

τὰ |horn; τῆς |rank of battle ἔτι |forward, in the , ἐπιθώμεθα  
|military |future; far

αὐτοῖς. Ἐπειτ', ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας, πῶς δυνήσονται

|help, be useful ἔτεροι τοὺς ἑτέρους οὕτω πολὺ |ward off, drive off, re-  
|refrain, be at some dis-

ἀλλήλων; Ἀλλὰ |visible, " , ὁ Κῦρος, ὅτι |when ἂν  
|conspicuous

γένωνται τὰ |horn; ἀναβαίνοντα κατ' ἀντιπέρας τῶν  
|military

πλαγίων τοῦ ἡμετέρου |army , |turn ὥς

εἰς |rank of battle, α |from all directions ἡροσῖασι μαχόμενοι.

|not so?; and so ὁ Χρυσάντας, εἰ σοι δοκοῦσι βουλευέσθαι;

Πρὸς γε ἃ ὁρώσι· πρὸς δὲ ἃ οὐχ ὁρώσιν ἔτι κάκιον ἢ εἰ

κατὰ |horn; |approach ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ  
|military  
|unit

no sign of stopping; he led straight on as before. Meanwhile he noticed that the turning-point where the Assyrians had pushed out on either flank was an immense distance from their centre, and he said to Chrysantas:

"Do you see where they have fixed their angle?" "Yes, I do," answered Chrysantas, "and I am surprised at it: it seems to me they are drawing their wings too far away from their centre." "Just so," said Cyrus, "and from ours too." "Why are they doing that?" asked the other. "Clearly," said Cyrus, "they are afraid we shall attack, if their wings are in touch with us while their centre is still some way off." "But," went on Chrysantas, "how can they support each other at such a distance?" "Doubtless," said Cyrus, "as soon as their wings are opposite our flanks, they will wheel round, and then advance at once on every side and so set us fighting everywhere at once." "Well," said Chrysantas, "do you think the movement wise?" "Yes," said Cyrus, "it is good enough in view of what they can see, but, in view of what they cannot, it is worse for them than if they had advanced in a

*vocabulary***ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**διαπορεύω** carry over, through**ἐγχειρέω** lay hands on, try, attack**ἐκεῖσε** thither**ἐξάρχω** take the lead in ~oligarch**ἐπείγω** weigh upon, drive; (mid) hurry**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπιπίπτω** fall upon, attack**ἐπισκέπτομαι** look upon, inspect**ἐπισκοπέω** look upon, inspect**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**ἡνίκα** when**ἡρέμα** quietly, gently, slowly**θόρυβος** noise, clamor**θωρακοφόρος** (ἄ) wearing a

breastplate

**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**μεταξύ** between**ὅθεν** whence**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**ὀρμέω** be anchored**παιάν** -ήνοος (m, 3) paeon**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order**πρόσευμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion**προσίημι** be allowed near**σωτήρ** -ος (m) savior**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea**τηνικαῦτα** at that time, in that case

Ἀρσάμα, ἡγοῦ τῷ πεζῷ ἡρέμα ὥσπερ ἐμέ ὀράς· καὶ σύ, ὦ  
Χρυσάντα, ἐν ἴσῳ τούτῳ τὸ ἵππικὸν ἔχων συμπαρέπου.  
ἐγὼ δὲ ἄπειμι ἐκείσε ὅθεν μοι δοκεῖ καιρὸς εἶναι ἄρχεσθαι  
τῆς μάχης· ἅμα δὲ παριῶν ἐπισκέψομαι ἕκαστα πῶς ἡμῖν  
ἔχει. ἐπειδὴν δ' ἐκεῖ γένωμαι, ὅταν ἤδη ὁμοῦ προσιόντες  
ἀλλήλοις γιγνώμεθα, παιᾶνα ἐξάρξω, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐπείγεσθε.  
ἡνίκα δ' ἂν ἡμεῖς ἐγχειρώμεν τοῖς πολεμίοις, αἰσθήσεσθε  
μέν, οὐ γὰρ οἶμαι ὀλίγος θόρυβος ἔσται, ὀρμήσεται δὲ  
τηνικαῦτα Ἀβραδάτας ἤδη σὺν τοῖς ἄρμασιν εἰς τοὺς  
ἐναντίους· οὕτω γὰρ αὐτῷ εἰρήσεται· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρὴ ἔπεσθαι  
ἐχομένους ὅτι μάλιστα τῶν ἀρμάτων. οὕτω γὰρ μάλιστα  
τοῖς πολεμίοις τεταραγμένοις ἐπιπεσούμεθα. παρέσομαι  
δὲ καὶ γὰρ ἢ ἂν δύνωμαι τάχιστα διώκων τοὺς ἄνδρας, ἢν  
οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσι.

Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν καὶ ξύνθημα παρεγγυήσας Ζεὺς σωτήρ καὶ  
ἡγεμὼν ἐπορεύετο. μεταξὺ δὲ τῶν ἀρμάτων καὶ τῶν  
θωρακοφόρων διαπορευόμενος ὁπότε προσβλέψειε τινὰς  
τῶν ἐν ταῖς τάξεσι, τότε μὲν εἶπεν ἄν· ὦ ἄνδρες, ὡς



Ἀρσάμα, ἡγοῦ τῷ <sup>on</sup> quietly, gen- *ερ ἐμὲ ὀρᾶς· καὶ σύ, ᾧ*  
<sup>foot;</sup> tly, slowly  
*Χρυσάντα, ἐν ἴσῳ* <sup>foot-</sup> *πᾶσι τῷ* <sup>of</sup> horses *ἔχων συμπαρέπου.*  
<sup>soldier</sup>

ἐγὼ δὲ <sup>be</sup> <sup>thither</sup> <sup>whence</sup> *ι δοκεῖ καιρὸς εἶναι ἄρχεσθαι*  
<sup>absent,</sup>  
*τῆς μάχης· ἅμα δὲ παριὼν ἐπισκέβομαι ἕκαστα* <sup>how? why?</sup>  
<sup>go</sup>  
<sup>away,</sup>  
<sup>return</sup>

*ἔχει.* <sup>when,</sup> *δ'* <sup>there</sup> *λένωμαι,* <sup>whenever</sup> *ὁμοῦ προσιόντες*  
<sup>after</sup>

*ἀλλήλοις γινώμεθα, παιᾶνα* <sup>take the lead in</sup> *δὲ* <sup>weigh upon, drive;</sup>  
<sup>(mid) hurry</sup>

<sup>when</sup> *δ' ἂν ἡμεῖς ἐγχειρῶμεν τοῖς πολεμίοις,* <sup>perceive</sup>

*μέν, οὐ γὰρ οἶμαι ὀλίγος* <sup>noise, clamor</sup> *ἔσται, ὀρμήσεται δὲ*

<sup>at that time,</sup> *Ἀβραδάτας ἤδη σὺν τοῖς* <sup>chariot</sup> *εἰς τοὺς*  
<sup>in that case</sup>

<sup>opposite</sup> *οὕτω γὰρ αὐτῷ εἰρήσεται· ὑμᾶς δὲ* <sup>must... should</sup> *ἔσθαι*

*ἐχομένους ὅτι μάλιστα τῶν* <sup>chariot</sup> *οὕτω γὰρ μάλιστα*

*τοῖς πολεμίοις* <sup>mess things up</sup> <sup>fall upon, attack</sup> *παρέσομαι*

*δὲ καγὼν ἢ ἂν δύνωμαι τάχιστα* <sup>chase</sup> *τοὺς ἄνδρας, ἣν*

*οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσι.*

*Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν καὶ ξύνθημα* <sup>entrust; pass an order</sup> *Ζεὺς* <sup>savior</sup> *καὶ*

<sup>leader</sup> *ἐπορεύετο.* <sup>between</sup> *δὲ τῶν* <sup>chariot</sup> *καὶ τῶν*

<sup>wearing a breast-plate</sup> *διαπορευόμενος* <sup>when</sup> *προσβλέψειε τινας*

*τῶν ἐν ταῖς τάξεσι, τότε μὲν εἶπεν ἄν· ὦ ἄνδρες, ὥς*

single column. Do you," he said, turning to Arsamas, "advance with your infantry, slowly, taking your pace from me, and do you, Chrysantas, march beside him with your cavalry, step for step. I will make for their angle myself, where I propose to join battle, first riding round the army to see how things are with all our men. When I reach the point, and we are on the verge of action, I will raise the paean and then you must quicken your pace. You will know when we have closed with the enemy, the din will be loud enough. At the same moment Abradatas will dash out upon them: such will be his orders; your duty is to follow, keeping as close to the chariots as possible. Thus we shall fall on the enemy at the height of his confusion. And, God helping me, I shall be with you also, cutting my way through the rout by the quickest road I can.

So he spoke, and sent the watchword down the lines, "Zeus our saviour, and Zeus our leader," and went forward. As he passed between the chariots and the cuirassiers, he would say to some, "My men, the

*vocabulary***ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἄθλον** ἄέθλου prize ~athlete**αἰσχρός** shameful**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**εἰσφέρω** carry into, carry along ~bear**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in  
too easily**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἐννοέω** consider**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἔρανος** potluck**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

**κατακαίνω** kill**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**παίω** hit**πότε** when?**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προσίημι** be allowed near**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**συμμάχομαι** fight with**τήμερον** today**τοιόσδε** such**τοτέ** then ... now ...

ἡδὺ ὕμῶν τὰ πρόσωπα θεάσασθαι. τοτὲ δ' αὖ ἐν ἄλλοις  
 ἂν ἔλεξεν· Ἄρα ἐννοεῖτε, ἄνδρες, ὅτι ὁ νῦν ἀγὼν ἐστίν  
 οὐ μόνον περὶ τῆς τήμερον νίκης, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τῆς  
 πρόσθεν ἣν νενικήκατε καὶ περὶ πάσης εὐδαιμονίας; ἐν  
 ἄλλοις δ' ἂν παριῶν εἶπεν· ὦ ἄνδρες, τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε οὐδέν  
 ποτε ἔτι θεοὺς αἰτιατέον ἔσται· παραδεδώκασι γὰρ ἡμῖν  
 πολλά τε καὶ ἀγαθὰ κτήσασθαι. ἀλλ' ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ  
 γενώμεθα. κατ' ἄλλους δ' αὖ τοιάδε· ὦ ἄνδρες, εἰς τίνα  
 ποτ' ἂν καλλίονα ἔρανον ἀλλήλους παρακαλέσαιμεν ἢ  
 εἰς τόνδε; νῦν γὰρ ἔξεστιν ἀγαθοῖς ἀνδράσι γενομένοις  
 πολλά καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἀλλήλοις εἰσενεγκεῖν. κατ' ἄλλους δ' αὖ·  
 Ἐπίστασθε μὲν, οἶμαι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὅτι νῦν ἄθλα πρόκειται  
 τοῖς νικῶσι μὲν διώκειν, παίειν, κατακαίνειν, ἀγαθὰ ἔχειν,  
 καλὰ ἀκούειν, ἐλευθέροις εἶναι, ἄρχειν· τοῖς δὲ κακοῖς  
 δῆλον ὅτι τάναντία τούτων. ὅστις οὖν αὐτὸν φιλεῖ, μετ'  
 ἐμοῦ μαχέσθω· ἐγὼ γὰρ κακὸν οὐδὲν οὐδ' αἰσχρὸν ἐκὼν  
 εἶναι προσήσομαι. ὁπότε δ' αὖ γένοιτο κατὰ τινος τῶν  
 πρόσθεν συμμαχεσαμένων, εἶπεν ἄν· Πρὸς δὲ ὑμᾶς, ὦ

|sweet μῶν τὰ |face θεάσασθαι. |then ... now ... ἄλλοις  
 ἂν ἔλεξεν· |inter- |consider , ἄνδρες, ὅτι ὁ νῦν |gathering |in  
 οὐ μόνον |rog- |ative |today |victory ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τῆς  
 πρόσθεν ἦν |win, defeat καὶ περὶ πάσης εὐδαιμονίας; ἐν  
 ἄλλοις δ' ἂν παριῶν εἶπεν· ὦ ἄνδρες, τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε οὐδέν  
 ποτε ἔτι θεοὺς |blame ἔσται· |hand over γὰρ ἡμῖν  
 πολλά τε καὶ ἀγαθὰ κτήσασθαι. ἀλλ' ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ  
 γενώμεθα. κατ' ἄλλους δ' αὖ |such ὦ ἄνδρες, εἰς τίνα  
 ποτ' ἂν καλλίονα |potluck ἀλλήλους |summon, exhort, ἢ  
 εἰς τόνδε; νῦν γὰρ ἔξεστιν ἀγαθοῖς ἀνδράσι γενομένοις  
 πολλά καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἀλλήλοις |carry into, κατ' ἄλλους δ' αὖ·  
 |carry along  
 Ἐπίστασθε μὲν, οἶμαι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὅτι νῦν |prize |be placed by;  
 |be devoted to  
 τοῖς |win, defeat |chase , |hit , |kill , ἀγαθὰ ἔχειν,  
 καλὰ ἀκούειν, |not enslaved εἶναι, ἄρχειν· τοῖς δὲ κακοῖς  
 |visible, " |opposite τούτων. ὅστις οὖν αὐτὸν |love , μετ'  
 |conspicuous  
 ἐμοῦ μαχέσθω· ἐγὼ γὰρ κακὸν οὐδὲν οὐδ' |shameful |willingly  
 εἶναι |be allowed near |when δ' αὖ γένοιτο κατὰ τινος τῶν  
 πρόσθεν |fight with , εἶπεν ἄν· Πρὸς δὲ ὑμᾶς, ὦ

look on your faces rejoices my heart," and to others, "You understand, gentlemen, that this battle is not for the victory of a day, but for all that we have won ere now, and for all our happiness to come." And to others, "My friends, we can never reproach the gods again: to-day they have put all blessings in our hands. Let us show ourselves good men and true." Or else, "Gentlemen, can we invite each other to a more glorious feast than this? This day all gallant hearts are bidden; this day they may feast their friends." Or again, "You know, I think, the prizes in this game: the victors pursue and smite and slay, and win wealth and fame and freedom and empire: the cowards lose them all. He who loves his own soul let him fight beside me: for I will have no disgrace." But if he met soldiers who had fought for him before, he only said, "To you, gentlemen, what need I say?"

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten**ἀντιτάσσω** set against**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
~station**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἐρῆμος** empty**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station**ἐψω** boil, be boiling**ἡνία** -ου (n) reins**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
~theater**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
~ceratopsia**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-  
forms) allot; receive**λυπέω** (ῶ) annoy, distress**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
~genus**πέζα** end of a chariot pole**Πέρσης** Persian**πλάγιος** sideways; treacherous**πλησίος** near, neighboring**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
come in**προστρέχω** run to, join, attack**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit**ὀφηνίοχος** driver (for)

ἄνδρες, τί δεῖ λέγειν; ἐπίστασθε γὰρ οἶαν τε οἱ ἀγαθοὶ ἐν ταῖς μάχαις ἡμέραν ἄγουσι καὶ οἶαν οἱ κακοί.

Ὡς δὲ παριὼν κατὰ Ἀβραδάταν ἐγένετο, ἔστη· καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτος παραδοὺς τῷ ὑψηνιόχῳ τὰς ἡνίας προσῆλθεν αὐτῷ· προσέδραμον δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν πλησίον τεταγμένων καὶ πεζῶν καὶ ἄρματηλατῶν. ὁ δ' αὖ Κῦρος ἐν τοῖς παραγεγεννημένοις ἔλεξεν· Ὁ μὲν θεός, ὦ Ἀβραδάτα, ὥσπερ σὺ ἡξίους, συνηξιώσέ σε καὶ τοὺς σὺν σοὶ πρωτοστάτας εἶναι τῶν συμμάχων· σὺ δὲ τοῦτο μέμνησο, ὅταν δέῃ σε ἡδὴ ἀγωνίζεσθαι, ὅτι Πέρσαι οἳ τε θεασόμενοι ὑμᾶς ἔσονται καὶ οἱ ἐφύομενοι ὑμῖν καὶ οὐκ ἐάσοντες ἐρήμους ὑμᾶς ἀγωνίζεσθαι. καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτας εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν καθ' ἡμᾶς ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ὦ Κῦρε, καλῶς ἔχειν· ἀλλὰ τὰ πλάγια λυπεῖ με, ὅτι τὰ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων κέρατα ἰσχυρὰ ὁρῶ ἀνατεινόμενα καὶ ἄρμασι καὶ παντοδαπῇ στρατιᾷ· ἡμέτερον δ' οὐδὲν ἄλλο αὐτοῖς ἀντιτέτακται ἢ ἄρματα· ὥστ' ἔγωγ', ἔφη, εἰ μὴ ἔλαχον τήνδε τὴν τάξιν, ἡσχυρόμην ἂν ἐνθάδε ὦν· οὕτω πολὺ



ἄνδρες, τί δεῖ λέγειν; ἐπίστασθε γὰρ οἷαν τε οἱ ἀγαθοὶ ἐν  
ταῖς μάχαις ἡμέραν ἄγουσι καὶ οἷαν οἱ κακοί.

Ὡς δὲ παριὼν κατὰ Ἀβραδάταν ἐγένετο, ἔστη· καὶ

ὁ Ἀβραδάτος |hand over τῷ |driver (for) τὰς |reins

|come forward, sur-|run to, join, attack καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν |near  
|render, come in

|arrange καὶ πεζῶν καὶ ἄρματηλατῶν. ὁ δ' αὖ

Κῦρος ἐν τοῖς |be beside, attend ἔλεξεν· Ὁ μὲν θεός,

ὦ Ἀβραδάτα, ὥσπερ σὺ |consider wor-, ξίωσέ σε καὶ τοὺς  
|thy, fitting

σὺν σοὶ πρωτοστάτας εἶναι τῶν συμμάχων· σὺ δὲ τοῦτο

|remind; whenever, σε ἤδη |contend, exert, ὅτι Πέρσαι οἱ τε  
(mid) |oneself

remember, turn one's thoughts to  
|let (+acc+inf), leave; leave |contend, exert καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτας  
|alone, not worry about |oneself

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν καθ' ἡμᾶς ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ὦ Κῦρε,

καλῶς ἔχειν· ἀλλὰ τὰ πλάγια |annoy, ε, ὅτι τὰ μὲν τῶν  
|distress

πολεμίων |horn; |strong, forceful, |lift, reach out, καὶ |chariot  
|military |violent |threaten

καὶ παντοδαπῇ |unit army |our, my δ' οὐδὲν ἄλλο αὐτοῖς

|set against ἢ |chariot ὥστ' ἔγωγ', ἔφη, εἰ μὴ ἔλαχον

τήνδε τὴν τάξιν, |spoil, ἂν |here, ὧν· οὕτω πολὺ  
|disgrace |hither

You know the brave man's part in battle, and the craven's." And when he came to Abradatas, he halted, and Abradatas gave the reins to his charioteer and came up to him, and others gathered round from the infantry and the chariots, and Cyrus said:

"God has rewarded you, Abradatas, according to your prayer, you and yours. You hold the first rank among our friends. And you will not forget, when the moment for action comes, that those who watch you will be Persians, and those who follow you, and they will not let you bear the brunt alone."

And Abradatas answered:

"Even so, Cyrus; and with us here, methinks, all looks well enough: but the state of our flanks troubles me: the enemy's wings are strong and stretch far: he has chariots there, and every kind of arm as well, while we have nothing else with which to oppose him. So that for myself," said he, "if I had not won by lot the post I hold, I should feel ashamed to be here in the

*vocabulary*

**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
 state ~ballistic  
**ἐμβολή** putting in; incursion, charge  
**ἐπικουφίζω** lighten a load  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἠώς ἡῶτι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart

**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness  
**κερδαλέος** clever, wily  
**κράτιστος** best  
**μεγαληγορέω** boast, extol  
**πάντως** by all means  
**παραθαρσύνω** encourage  
**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic  
**πλάγιος** sideways; treacherous  
**σαυτοῦ** yourself  
**σχολή** rest, leisure  
**φιλονικία** (ti) rivalry, competition

μοι δοκῶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν·  
 Ἄλλ' εἰ τὰ παρὰ σοὶ καλῶς ἔχει, θάρρει ὑπὲρ ἐκείνων·  
 ἐγὼ γάρ σοι σὺν θεοῖς ἔρημα τῶν πολεμίων τὰ πλάγια  
 ταῦτα ἀποδείξω. καὶ σὺ μὴ πρότερον ἔμβαλλε τοῖς  
 ἐναντίοις, διαμαρτύρομαι, πρὶν ἂν φεύγοντας τούτους οὖς  
 νῦν φοβῇ θεάσῃ· τοιαῦτα δ' ἐμεγαληγόρει, μελλούσης τῆς  
 μάχης γίνεσθαι· ἄλλως δ' οὐ μάλα μεγαλήγορος ἦν·  
 Ὅταν μέντοι ἴδῃς τούτους φεύγοντας, ἐμέ τε ἤδη παρεῖναι  
 νόμιζε καὶ ὄρμα εἰς τοὺς ἄνδρας· καὶ σὺ γὰρ τότε τοῖς  
 μὲν ἐναντίοις κακίοις ἂν χρήσαιο, τοῖς δὲ μετὰ σου  
 ἀρίστοις. ἀλλ' ἔως ἔτι σοι σχολή, ὦ Ἀβραδάτα, πάντως  
 παρελάσας παρὰ τὰ σου ἄρματα παρακάλει τοὺς σὺν  
 σοὶ εἰς τὴν ἐμβολήν, τῷ μὲν προσώπῳ παραθαρρύνων,  
 ταῖς δ' ἐλπίσιν ἐπικουφίζων. ὅπως δὲ κράτιστοι φανείσθῃ  
 τῶν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἄρμασι, φιλονικίαν αὐτοῖς ἔμβαλλε· καὶ  
 γάρ, εὖ ἴσθι, ἦν τάδε εὖ γένηται, πάντες ἐροῦσι τὸ  
 λοιπὸν μηδὲν εἶναι κερδαλέωτερον ἀρετῆς. ὁ μὲν  
 δὴ Ἀβραδάτας ἀναβὰς παρήλαυνε καὶ ταῦτ' ἐποίει.

μοι δοκῶ ἐν |safe, easy, steady, εἶναι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν·  
 |careful  
 Ἄλλ' εἰ τὰ παρὰ σοὶ καλῶς ἔχει, θάρρει ὑπὲρ ἐκείνων·  
 ἐγὼ γάρ σοι σὺν θεοῖς ἔρημα τῶν πολεμίων τὰ πλάγια  
 ταῦτα |show, point out; ἀρ- τὸ μὴ πρότερον |throw in; inspire  
 |point; (mid) declare  
 |opposite , διαμαρτύρομαι, πρὶν ἂν φεύγοντας τούτους οὖς  
 νῦν |scare, θεάσῃ· τοιαῦτα δ' |boast, extol , μελλούσης τῆς  
 |scare  
 μάχης |away γίνεσθαι· ἄλλως δ' οὐ μάλα μεγαλήγορος ἦν·  
 Ὅταν |however ᾗς τούτους φεύγοντας, ἐμέ τε ἤδη παρῆναι  
 |consider cūs-|spur, rush at ὕς ἄνδρας· καὶ σὺ γὰρ τότε τοῖς  
 |tomary; be-  
 |lieve  
 μέν |opposite κακίστοις ἂν χρήσαιο, τοῖς δὲ μετὰ |yourself  
 ἀρίστοις. ἀλλ' ἕως ἔτι σοι |rest, , ὧ Ἀβραδάτα, |by all means  
 |leisure  
 |pass, outstrip παρὰ τὰ |yourself |chariot |summon, exhort,· σὺν  
 |(pass) repent  
 σοὶ εἰς τὴν |putting in; incursion, |face |encourage  
 |charge  
 ταῖς δ' |hope |lighten a load . ὅπως δὲ |best φανείσθε  
 τῶν ἐπὶ τοῖς |chariot , φιλονικίαν αὐτοῖς |throw in; inspire  
 γάρ, εὖ ἴσθι, ἣν τάδε εὖ γένηται, πάντες ἐροῦσι τὸ  
 |left over μηδὲν εἶναι |clever, wily |excellence ὁ μὲν  
 δὴ Ἀβραδάτας |go up, em-|pass, καὶ ταῦτ' ἐποίει.  
 |bark |outstrip

safest place of all.”

”Nay,” answered Cyrus, ”if it is well with you, have no concern for the rest. God willing, I mean to relieve our flanks. But you yourself, I conjure you, do not attack until you see the rout of those detachments that you fear.”

So much of boasting did Cyrus allow himself on the eve of action, though he was the last man to boast at other times.

”When you see them routed,” he said, ”you may take it that I am there, and then make your rush, for that is the moment when you will find the enemy weakest and your own men strongest. And while there is time, Abradatas, be sure to drive along your front and prepare your men for the charge, kindle their courage by your looks, lift up their hearts by your hopes. Breathe a spirit of emulation into them, to make them prove themselves the flower of the chariot-force. Be assured if things go well with us all men will say nothing is so profitable as valour.”

Accordingly Abradatas mounted his chariot and drove along the lines

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐπικουρέω** fight in another's cause  
 ~cereal  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's  
 responsibility

**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike  
**ὀνομάζω** to address, name ~name  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πλάγιος** sideways; treacherous  
**πλευρόν** rib, side ~pleurisy  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
**σχολάζω** have leisure  
**φθάζω** do first, outstrip  
**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

Ὁ Δ' αὖ Κῦρος παριῶν ὥς ἐγένετο πρὸς τῷ εὐωνύμῳ,  
 ἔνθα ὁ Ὑστάσπας τοὺς ἡμίσεις ἔχων ἦν τῶν Περσῶν  
 ἱππέων, ὀνομάσας αὐτὸν εἶπεν· ὦ Ὑστάσπα, νῦν ὀράς;  
 ἔργον τῆς σῆς ταχυεργίας· νῦν γάρ ἦν φθάσωμεν τοὺς  
 πολεμίους κατακανόντες, οὐδεὶς ἡμῶν ἀποθανεῖται. καὶ  
 ὁ Ὑστάσπας ἐπιγελάσας εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῶν ἐξ  
 ἐναντίας ἡμῖν μελήσει, τοὺς δ' ἐκ πλαγίου σὺ ἄλλοις  
 πρόσταξον, ὅπως μὴδ' οὗτοι σχολάζωσι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
 εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐπὶ γε τούτους ἐγὼ αὐτοὺς παρέρχομαι· ἀλλ',  
 ὦ Ὑστάσπα, τόδε μέμνησο, ὅτῳ ἂν ἡμῶν ὁ θεὸς νίκην  
 διδῶ, ἦν τί που μένη πολέμιον, πρὸς τὸ μαχόμενον αἰὲ  
 συμβάλλωμεν. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν προΐει. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὸ  
 πλευρὸν παριῶν ἐγένετο καὶ κατὰ τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν ταύτῃ  
 ἀρμάτων, πρὸς τοῦτον ἔλεξεν· Ἐγὼ δὲ ἔρχομαι ὑμῖν  
 ἐπικουρήσων· ἀλλ' ὅποταν αἰσθησθε ἡμᾶς ἐπιτιθεμένους  
 κατ' ἄκρον, τότε καὶ ὑμεῖς πειρᾶσθε ἅμα διὰ τῶν  
 πολεμίων ἐλαύνειν· πολὺ γὰρ ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ ἔσεσθε ἔξω  
 γενόμενοι ἢ ἔνδον ἀπολαμβανόμενοι. ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ παριῶν



Ὁ Δ' αὖ Κῦρος παριῶν ὡς ἐγένετο πρὸς τῷ |honored; left-hand  
 ἔνθα ὁ Ὑστάσπας τοὺς |half ἔχων ἦν τῶν Περσῶν  
 |rider , |to address, name`.' εἶπεν· ὦ Ὑστάσπα, νῦν ὁρᾷς;  
 ἔργον τῆς σῆς ταχυεργίας· νῦν γὰρ ἦν φθάσωμεν τοὺς  
 πολεμίους |kill , οὐδεὶς ἡμῶν ἀποθανεῖται. καὶ  
 ὁ Ὑστάσπας ἐπιγελάσας εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῶν ἐξ  
 |opposite ἡμῶν |be in/on the mind`' ἐκ πλαγίου σὺ ἄλλοις  
 |post at, attach ὅπως |and not; not|have leisure . καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
 |to, command even  
 εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' ἐπὶ γε τούτους ἐγὼ αὐτὸς |pass, escape ἀλλ',  
 ὦ Ὑστάσπα, τόδε |remind; (mid) remember, ὃ θεὸς |victory  
 |turn one's thoughts to  
 διδῶ, ἣν τί που μένη πολέμιον, πρὸς τὸ μαχόμενον ἀεὶ  
 |pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall|to have been` δὲ κατὰ τὸ  
 |in with |before, earlier  
 |rib, side παριῶν ἐγένετο καὶ κατὰ τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν ταύτῃ  
 |chariot , πρὸς τοῦτον ἔλεξεν· Ἐγὼ δὲ ἔρχομαι ὑμῖν  
 |fight in an- ἀλλ' ὁπόταν |perceive ἡμᾶς |put on, apply; (mid) under-  
 |other's cause |take, attack  
 κατ' ἄκρον, τότε καὶ ὑμεῖς |try, test ἅμα διὰ τῶν  
 πολεμίων |drive πολὺ γὰρ ἐν |safe, easy, steady, ἔσεσθε ἔξω  
 |careful  
 γενόμενοι ἢ |in the|receive, recover, take. ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ παριῶν  
 |house |aside, cut off  
 |of;  
 |within

to do as Cyrus bade.

Meanwhile Cyrus went on to the left where Hystaspas was posted with half the Persian cavalry, and he called to him and said:

"Hystaspas, here is work to test your pace! If we are quick enough in cutting off their heads, none of us will be slaughtered first."

And Hystaspas answered with a laugh:

"Leave it to us! We'll see to the men opposite. But set some one to deal with the fellows on our flank: it would be a pity for them to be idle."

And Cyrus answered, "I am going to them myself. But remember, Hystaspas, to which ever of us God grants the victory, so long as a single foeman is on the field, attack we must, again and again, until the last has yielded."

With that he passed on, and as he came to the flank he went up to the officer in command of the chariots and said to him:

"Good, I intend to support you myself. And when you hear me fall on the wing, at that instant do your best to charge straight through your opponents; you will be far safer once outside their ranks than if you are caught half-way."

Then he went on to the rear

*vocabulary*

**αείρω** raise, win ~aorta  
**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten  
**ἀντία** opposite, facing  
**ἀντιάω** meet, fight, join  
**ἄνω** (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀρμάμαξα** Persian carriage  
**ἀσθενής** weak  
**γέλοιος** laughable; joking  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go  
 searching through  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**ἦρ ἡρός** (n) that which is agreeable  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater

**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κάμηλος** (f) camel  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
**μηκέτι** no more  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**πάντως** by all means  
**πέζα** end of a chariot pole  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon ~jet  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σημεῖον** sign  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx

ἐγένετο ὅπισθεν τῶν ἄρμαμαξῶν, Ἀρταγέρσαν μὲν καὶ Φαρνούχον ἐκέλευσεν ἔχοντας τήν τε τῶν πεζῶν χιλιοστὴν καὶ τήν τῶν ἰππέων μένειν αὐτοῦ. Ἐπειδὴ δ', ἔφη, αἰσθάνησθε ἐμοῦ ἐπιτιθεμένου τοῖς κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρασ, τότε καὶ ὑμεῖς τοῖς καθ' ὑμᾶς ἐπιχειρεῖτε· μαχεῖσθε δ', ἔφη, πρὸς κέρασ, ἥπερ ἀσθενέστατον στράτευμα γίγνεται, φάλαγγα δ' ἔχοντες, ὥσπερ ἂν ἰσχυρότατοι εἴητε. καὶ εἰσὶ μὲν, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, τῶν πολεμίων ἰππεῖς οἱ ἔσχατοι· πάντως δὲ πρότε πρὸς αὐτοὺς τήν τῶν καμήλων τάξιν, καὶ εὖ ἴστε ὅτι καὶ πρὶν μάχεσθαι γελοίους τοὺς πολεμίους θεάσεσθε.

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ταῦτα διαπραξάμενος ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν παρῆι· ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος νομίσας ἤδη ἐγγύτερον εἶναι τῶν πολεμίων τήν φάλαγγα σὺν ἧ αὐτὸς ἐπορεύετο ἢ τὰ ἀνατεινόμενα κέρατα, ἦρε τοῖς κέρασι σημεῖον μηκέτι ἄνω πορεύεσθαι, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ ἐν χώρᾳ στραφῆναι. ὡς δ' ἔστησαν ἀντία πρὸς τὸ τοῦ Κύρου στράτευμα ὁρῶντες, ἐσήμηνεν αὐτοῖς πορεύεσθαι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ οὕτω δὴ προσῆσαν τρεῖς φάλαγγες ἐπὶ τὸ Κῦρου

ἐγένετο |behind, |hereafter τῶν |Persian |carriage , Ἀρταγέρσαν μὲν καὶ  
 Φαρνούχον ἐκέλευσεν ἔχοντας τήν τε τῶν πεζῶν χιλιοστὴν  
 καὶ τήν τῶν ἰππέων μένειν αὐτοῦ. |when, δ', ἔφη, |after  
 |perceive ἑμοῦ |put on, apply; (mid) |undertake, attack κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν |horn; , |military |unit  
 τότε καὶ ὑμεῖς τοῖς καθ' ὑμᾶς |do, try, attack μαχεῖσθε δ',  
 ἔφη, πρὸς |horn; , |military |unit ἵππερ |weak |army γίγνεται,  
 |rank of battle |χοντες, ὥσπερ ἂν |strong, force- |ful, violent εἴητε. καὶ εἰσὶ  
 μὲν, ὡς ὀράτε, τῶν πολεμίων ἰππεῖς οἱ |farthest |by all means  
 δὲ |send forth, abandon `ς τήν τῶν |camel τάξιν, καὶ εὖ ἴστε  
 ὅτι καὶ πρὶν μάχεσθαι |laughable; |joking τοὺς πολεμίους θεάσεσθε.  
 Ὁ Μὲν δὲ Κύρος ταῦτα |travel over, ac- |complish ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν  
 παρήει· ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος νομίσας ἤδη |near εἶναι τῶν  
 πολεμίων τήν |rank of battle `ν ἧ αὐτὸς ἐπορεύετο ἢ τὰ  
 |lift, reach out, |horn; , |threaten ἦρε τοῖς |horn; |sign |no more  
 |military |unit |military |unit ἄνω πορεύεσθαι, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ ἐν χωρᾷ |turn . ὥς δ'  
 ἔστησαν ἀντία πρὸς τὸ τοῦ Κύρου |army ὁρῶντες,  
 |give orders to; |show; mark τοῖς πορεύεσθαι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ  
 οὕτω δὲ |approach τρεῖς |rank of battle `ι τὸ Κύρου

and the carriages, where the two detachments were stationed, a thousand horse and a thousand foot, and told Artagersas and Pharnouchus, their leaders, to keep the men where they were.

"But when," he added, "you see me close with the enemy on our right, then set upon those in front of you: take them in flank, where they are weakest, while you advance in line, at your full strength. Their lines, as you see, are closed by cavalry; hurl your camels at these, and you may be sure, even before the fighting begins, they will cut a comic figure."

Thus, with all his dispositions made, Cyrus rode round the head of his right. By this time Croesus, believing that the centre, where he himself was marching, must be nearer the enemy than the distant wings, had the signal raised for them to stop their advance, halt, and wheel round where they were. When they were in position opposite the Persian force, he signalled for them to charge, and thus three columns came at

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιπρόσωπος** facing  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντίθηναι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out  
**ἐξάρχω** take the lead in ~oligarch  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ἡνίκα** when  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
**ὀκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry  
**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ῖ, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**παιάν** -ήνοος (m, 3) paean

**πάντοθεν** from all directions  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**περιέχω** (mid) protect  
**περιπτύσσω** enfold  
**πλάγιος** sideways; treacherous  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**προσβάλλω** hit, attack, approach;  
 attach, offer ~ballistic  
**σιγά** silence  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατός** common people/soldiers  
 ~strategy  
**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

στράτευμα, ἡ μὲν μία κατὰ πρόσωπον, τὼ δὲ δύο, ἡ μὲν κατὰ τὸ δεξιόν, ἡ δὲ κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον· ὥστε πολὺν φόβον παρεῖναι πάσῃ τῇ Κύρου στρατιᾷ. ὥσπερ γὰρ μικρὸν πλινθίον ἐν μεγάλῳ τεθέν, οὕτω καὶ τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα πάντοθεν περιείχετο ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων καὶ ἱππεῦσι καὶ ὀπλίταις καὶ πελτοφόροις καὶ τοξόταις καὶ ἄρμασι πλὴν ἐξόπισθεν. ὅμως δὲ ὡς ὁ Κῦρος ἐπεὶ παρήγγειλεν, ἐστράφησαν πάντες ἀντιπρόσωποι τοῖς πολεμίοις· καὶ ἦν μὲν πολλὴ πανταχόθεν σιγὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ τὸ μέλλον ὀκνεῖν· ἥνίκα δὲ ἔδοξε τῷ Κύρῳ καιρὸς εἶναι, ἐξῆρχε παιᾶνα, συνεπήχησε δὲ πᾶς ὁ στρατός. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ τε ἅμα ἐπηλάλαξαν καὶ ἐξανίσταται ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ εὐθὺς μὲν μετὰ τῶν ἱππέων λαβὼν πλαγίους τοὺς πολεμίους ὁμόσε αὐτοῖς τὴν ταχίστην συνεμίγνυνεν· οἱ δὲ πεζοὶ αὐτῷ συντεταγμένοι ταχὺ ἐφείποντο, καὶ περιεπτύσσοντο ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, ὥστε πολὺ ἐπλεονέκει· φάλαγγι γὰρ κατὰ κέρας προσέβαλλεν· ὥστε ταχὺ ἰσχυρὰ φυγὴ ἐγένετο τοῖς πολεμίοις.



|army , ἡ μὲν μία κατὰ πρόσωπον, τὼ δὲ δύο, ἡ μὲν

κατὰ τὸ δεξιόν, ἡ δὲ κατὰ τὸ |honored; left-hand\_ πολὺν

|fear παρῆναι πάσῃ τῇ Κύρου |army ὥσπερ γὰρ

μικρὸν πλινθίον ἐν μεγάλῳ τεθέν, οὕτω καὶ τὸ Κύρου

|army |from all di-(mid) protect ἔπο τῶν πολεμίων καὶ  
|rections

ἱππεῦσι καὶ |hoplite, heavy\_ πελτοφόροις καὶ |archer καὶ  
|infantryman

|chariot πλὴν ἐξόπισθεν. |anyway, nevertheless\_ ὅρος ἐπεὶ

|transmit; order;turn πάντες |facing τοῖς  
|summon, recom-  
|mend, encourage

πολεμίοις\* καὶ ἦν μὲν πολλὴ πανταχόθεν σιγὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ

τὸ μέλλον |hesitate; |when δὲ ἔδοξε τῷ Κύρῳ καιρὸς εἶναι,  
|worry

|take the lead in ..., συνεπήχθη δὲ πᾶς ὁ |army . μετὰ δὲ

τοῦτο τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ τε ἅμα ἐπηλάλαξαν καὶ |raise, bring/send  
|out

Κῦρος, καὶ εὐθὺς μὲν μετὰ τῶν ἱππέων λαβὼν |sideways;  
|treacherous

τοὺς πολεμίους |to the same spot . ἦν ταχίστην συνεμύγνυνεν\*

οἱ δὲ πεζοὶ αὐτῷ |gather, assemble ταχὺ |ἐφάπω?: drive, meet,  
|follow; or ἐφάπω?:  
καὶ |enfold ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, ὥστε πολὺ  
|drive, meet, follow

|be greedy, take|rank of battle\_ρ κατὰ |horn; |hit, attack, approach; attach,  
|advantage |military |offer

ὥστε ταχὺ |strong, |flight, means\_το τοῖς πολεμίοις.  
|forceful, |of escape  
|violent

once against Cyrus, one facing his front and one on either flank. A tremor ran through the whole army; it was completely enclosed, like a little brick laid within a large, with the forces of the enemy all round it, on every side except the rear, cavalry and heavy infantry, targeteers, archers, and chariots. None the less, the instant Cyrus gave the word they swung round to confront the foe. There was deep silence through the ranks as they realised what they had to face, and then Cyrus, when the moment came, began the battle-hymn and it thundered through the host. And as it died away the war-cry rang out unto the God of Battles, and Cyrus swooped forward at the head of his cavalry, straight for the enemy's flank, and closed with them then and there, while the infantry behind him followed, swift and steady, wave on wave, sweeping out on either side, far out-flanking their opponents, for they attacked in line and the foe were in column, to the great gain of Cyrus. A short struggle, and the ranks broke and fled before him

*vocabulary***ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀναβοάω** shout out**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume**ἀντικρύ** (tū) straight ahead/through;  
face to face**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
state ~ballistic**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal**ἐνίημι** put in; motivate ~jet**ἐξάλλομαι** break away from ~sally**ἐπείκειμαι** impose; shut a door**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act,  
uncommon) handle, take care of**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand**ἰσχυρός** (ō) strong, forceful, violent**κάμηλος** (f) camel**κέντρον** goading rod?**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
~ceratopsia**παραβάτης** chariot fighter ~basis**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
~ion**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea**φείδομαι** spare, not use/harm ~aphid

Ὡς δὲ ἦσθετο Ἀρταγέρσης ἐν ἔργῳ ὄντα τὸν Κῦρον, ἐπιτίθεται καὶ αὐτὸς κατὰ τὰ εὐώνυμα, προεῖς τὰς καμήλους ὥσπερ Κῦρος ἐκέλευσεν. οἱ δὲ ἵπποι αὐτὰς ἐκ πάνυ πολλοῦ οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἔκφρονες γιγνόμενοι ἔφευγον, οἱ δ' ἐξήλλοντο, οἱ δ' ἐνέπιπτον ἀλλήλοις. τοιαῦτα γὰρ πάσχουσιν ἵπποι ὑπὸ καμήλων. ὁ δὲ Ἀρταγέρσης συντεταγμένους ἔχων τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ταραττομένοις ἐπέκειτο· καὶ τὰ ἄρματα δὲ κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν καὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἅμα ἐνέβαλλε. καὶ πολλοὶ μὲν τὰ ἄρματα φεύγοντες ὑπὸ τῶν κατὰ κέρας ἐπομένων ἀπέθνησκον, πολλοὶ δὲ τούτους φεύγοντες ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρμάτων ἠλίσκοντο.

Καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτας δὲ οὐκέτι ἔμελλεν, ἀλλ' ἀναβοήσας· Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἔπεσθε, ἐνίει οὐδὲν φειδόμενος τῶν ἵππων, ἀλλ' ἰσχυρῶς ἐξαιμάττων τῷ κέντρῳ· συνεξώρμησαν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀρματηλάται. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄρματα ἔφευγεν αὐτοὺς εὐθύς, τὰ μὲν ἀναλαβόντα τοὺς παραβάτας, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἀπολιπόντα. ὁ δὲ Ἀβραδάτας ἀντικρὺ διᾶπτων εἰς τὴν

Ὡς δὲ |perceive Ἀρταγέρσης ἐν ἔργῳ ὄντα τὸν Κῦρον,  
 |put on, apply; (mid) ὑπὸς κατὰ τὰ |honored; , |to have been  
 |undertake, attack |left-hand |before, earlier  
 |camel ὥσπερ Κῦρος ἐκέλευσεν. οἱ δὲ ἵπποι αὐτὰς  
 ἐκ |altogether, very οὐκ |accept, re- ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἔκφρονες  
 |ceive, await  
 γιγνόμενοι ἔφευγον, οἱ δ' |break away from δ' ἐνέπιπτον  
 ἀλλήλοις. τοιαῦτα γὰρ πάσχουσιν ἵπποι ὑπὸ |camel .  
 ὁ δὲ Ἀρταγέρσης |gather, assemble ἔχων τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ  
 |mess things up |impose; shut a door ἡ |chariot δὲ κατὰ τὸ  
 |right-hand τὸ |honored; left-hand |throw in; inspire πολλοὶ μὲν  
 τὰ |chariot φεύγοντες ὑπὸ τῶν κατὰ |horn; ἑπομένων  
 |military  
 ἀπέθνησκον, πολλοὶ δὲ τούτους φεύγοντες ὑπὸ τῶν  
 |unit  
 |chariot |be captured .  
 Καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτας δὲ |no more ἔμελλεν, ἀλλ' |shout out  
 Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἔπεσθε, |put in; mōti-|spare τῶν ἵππων,  
 |vate  
 ἀλλ' |strong, force- μιᾶν τῷ |goadng rod? ἐξώρμησαν δὲ  
 |ful, violent  
 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀρματηλάται. καὶ τὰ μὲν |chariot ἔφευγεν  
 αὐτοὺς εὐθύς, τὰ μὲν |take up, re- τοὺς |chariot fighter, τὰ δὲ  
 |cover, resume  
 καὶ ἀπολιπόντα. ὁ δὲ Ἀβραδάτας |straight on ἵππων εἰς τὴν

headlong. Artagersas, seeing that Cyrus had got to work, made his own charge on the left, hurling his camels forward as Cyrus had advised. Even at a distance the horses could not face the camels: they seemed to go mad with fear, and galloped off in terror, rearing and falling foul of one another: such is the strange effect of camels upon horses. So that Artagersas, his own troops well in hand, had easy work with the enemy's bewildered masses. At the same moment the war-chariots dashed in, right and left, so that many, flying from the chariots, were cut down by the troopers, and many, flying from these, were caught by the chariots. And now Abradatas could wait no longer. "Follow me, my friends," he shouted, and drove straight at the enemy, lashing his good steeds forward till their flanks were bloody with the goad, the other charioteers racing hard behind him. The enemy's chariots fled before them instantly, some not even waiting to take up their fighting-men. But Abradatas drove on through them, straight into

*vocabulary*

**ἀδιήγητος** indescribable  
**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
 muster  
**ἄλλοθι** elsewhere, abroad  
**ἀνατρέπω** defeat, thwart ~trophy  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate  
**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**διακόπτω** cut through, interrupt  
**δρέπανον** sickle ~dermatology  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐγκλίνω** (t) rest on ~incline  
**ἐκκλίνω** (t) turn away, back down,  
 shun  
**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of ~petal  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
 state ~ballistic  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis  
**ἐξάλλομαι** break away from ~sally  
**ἐπιλαμβάνω** take, attack, seize  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ἥνιοχος** rein holder  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κατακόπτω** cut down, shatter  
**ὁμοτράπεζος** messmate  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just  
 ~orthogonal  
**παίω** hit  
**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold  
**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold  
**πολλαχού** in many places  
**ρύμη** (ῶ) rush, swing; street  
**στῖφος** -εος (n, 3) close array  
**τάραχος** upsetness, confusion  
**τροχός** wheel  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx

τῶν Αἰγυπτίων φάλαγγα ἐμβάλλει· συνεισέβαλον δὲ αὐτῷ  
 καὶ οἱ ἐγγύτατα τεταγμένοι. πολλαχοῦ μὲν οὖν καὶ ἄλλοθι  
 δῆλον ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν ἰσχυροτέρα φάλαγξ ἢ ὅταν ἐκ φίλων  
 συμμάχων ἡθροισμένη ᾖ, καὶ ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐδήλωσεν. οἱ  
 μὲν γὰρ ἐταῖροί τε αὐτοῦ καὶ ὁμοτράπεζοι συνεισέβαλλον·  
 οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἡνίοχοι ὡς εἶδον ὑπομένοντας πολλῷ στίφει  
 τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους, ἐξέκλιναν κατὰ τὰ φεύγοντα ἄρματα  
 καὶ τούτοις ἐφείποντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Ἀβραδάταν ἦ  
 μὲν ἐνέβαλλον, ἅτε οὐ δυναμένων διαχάσασθαι τῶν  
 Αἰγυπτίων διὰ τὸ μένειν τοὺς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν αὐτῶν, τοὺς  
 μὲν ὀρθοὺς τῇ ρύμῃ τῇ τῶν ἵππων παίοντες ἀνέτρεπον,  
 τοὺς δὲ πίπτοντας κατηλόων καὶ αὐτοὺς καὶ ὅπλα καὶ  
 ἵπποις καὶ τροχοῖς. ὅτου δ' ἐπιλάβοιτο τὰ δρέπανα, πάντα  
 βίᾳ διεκόπτετο καὶ ὅπλα καὶ σώματα. ἐν δὲ τῷ ἀδιηγῆται  
 τούτῳ ταραχῇ ὑπὸ τῶν παντοδαπῶν σωρευμάτων  
 ἐξαλλομένων τῶν τροχῶν ἐκπίπτει ὁ Ἀβραδάτας καὶ  
 ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν συνεισβαλόντων, καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἐνταῦθα  
 ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ γενόμενοι κατεκόπησαν καὶ ἀπέθανον· οἱ



τῶν Αἰγυπτίων |rank of bat-|throw in; inspire |τέβαλον δὲ αὐτῶ  
 |tle  
 καὶ οἱ ἐγγύτατα τεταγμένοι. |in many places οὖν καὶ |elsewhere,  
 |abroad  
 |visible, |conspicuous ἔστιν ἰσχυροτέρα |rank of battle. |αν ἐκ φίλων  
 |sympathizers  
 συμμάχων |press close together; |ἐν τούτῳ δὲ |show, |οἱ  
 |(mid) muster |disclose  
 μὲν γὰρ ἐταῖροί τε αὐτοῦ καὶ |messmate |συνεισέβαλλον.  
 οἱ δ' ἄλλοι |rein holder |εἶδον |stay behind, await |λλῶ |close  
 |array  
 τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους, ἐξέκλιναν κατὰ τὰ φεύγοντα |chariot  
 καὶ τούτοις |ἐφέπω?: drive, meet, follow; |ὁρ' Ἀβραδάταν ἥ  
 |ἐφέπω?: drive, meet, follow  
 μὲν |throw in; inspire |οὐ δυναμένων διαχάσασθαι τῶν  
 Αἰγυπτίων διὰ τὸ μένειν τοὺς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν αὐτῶν, τοὺς  
 μὲν ὀρθοὺς τῇ |rush, |τῇ τῶν ἵππων |hit |defeat,  
 |swing; |thwart  
 |street  
 τοὺς δὲ πίπτοντας κατηλόων καὶ αὐτοὺς καὶ |tool καὶ  
 ἵπποις καὶ |wheel |ὅτου δ' ἐπιλάβοιτο τὰ |sickle |πάντα  
 βίᾳ |cut through, καὶ |tool καὶ σώματα. ἐν δὲ τῷ |indescribable  
 |interrupt  
 τούτῳ |upsetness, |ὑπὸ τῶν παντοδαπῶν σωρευμάτων  
 |confusion  
 |break away from |ῶν |wheel |fall out of |ὁ Ἀβραδάτας καὶ  
 ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν συνεισβαλόντων, καὶ οὗτοι μὲν |there, here  
 ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ γενόμενοι |cut down, shatter |ἀπέθανον. οἱ

the main body of the Egyptians, his rush shared by his comrades on either hand. And then, what has often been shown elsewhere was shown here, namely, that of all strong formations the strongest is a band of friends. His brothers-in- arms and his mess-mates charged with him, but the others, when they saw that the solid ranks of the Egyptians stood firm, swung round and pursued the flying chariots. Meanwhile Abradatas and his companions could make no further way: there was not a gap through the Egyptian lines on either hand, and they could but charge the single soldiers where they stood, overthrow them by the sheer weight of horse and car, and crush them and their arms beneath the hoofs and wheels. And where the scythes caught them, men and weapons were cut to shreds. In the midst of indescribable confusion, the chariots rocking among the weltering mounds, Abradatas was thrown out and some of his comrades with him. There they stood, and fought like men, and there they were cut down and died. The

*vocabulary***ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute**ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman

~acute

**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten**ἀναχάζω** pull back; (mp) back off;

grieve ~heir

**ἀντέχω** hold up as protection against

~ischemia

**ἀπαθής** unaffected, impassive**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit**ἄτε** as if; since**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**γέρον** wicker object**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental

state ~ballistic

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἠώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**ξυστός** lance, javelin**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**παίω** hit**Πέρσης** Persian**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage**πλήθω** be filled ~plenum**πύργος** ramparts, tower; line of troops**συγκλείω** hem in, connect, conclude**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**φονεύω** kill**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

**ώθέω** push

δὲ Πέρσαι συνεπισπόμενοι, ἥ μὲν ὁ Ἀβραδάτας ἐνέβαλε καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, ταύτῃ ἐπεισπεσόντες τεταραγμένους ἐφόνευον, ἥ δὲ ἀπαθείς ἐγένοντο οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι πολλοὶ δ' οὗτοι ἦσαν, ἐχώρουν ἐναντίοι τοῖς Πέρσαις.

Ἐνθα δὴ δεινὴ μάχη ἦν καὶ δοράτων καὶ ξυστῶν καὶ μαχαιρῶν· ἐπλεονέκτουν μέντοι οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι καὶ πλήθει καὶ τοῖς ὅπλοις. τά τε γὰρ δόρατα ἰσχυρὰ καὶ μακρὰ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἔχουσιν, αἳ τε ἀσπίδες πολὺ μᾶλλον τῶν θωράκων καὶ τῶν γέρρων καὶ στεγάζουσι τὰ σώματα καὶ πρὸς τὸ ὠθεῖσθαι συνεργάζονται πρὸς τοῖς ὤμοις οὔσαι. συγκλείσαντες οὖν τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐχώρουν καὶ ἐώθουν. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀντέχειν, ἅτε ἐν ἄκραις ταῖς χερσὶ τὰ γέρρα ἔχοντες, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ πόδα ἀνεχάζοντο παίοντες καὶ παιόμενοι, ἕως ὑπὸ ταῖς μηχαναῖς ἐγένοντο. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐνταῦθα ἦλθον, ἐπαίοντο αὖθις οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι ἀπὸ τῶν πύργων· καὶ οἱ ἐπὶ πᾶσι δὲ οὐκ εἶων φεύγειν οὔτε τοὺς τοξότας οὔτε τοὺς ἀκοντιστάς, ἀλλ' ἀνατεταμένοι τὰς μαχαίρας ἠνάγκαζον καὶ τοξεύειν καὶ ἀκοντίζειν.

δὲ Πέρσαι συνεπισπόμενοι, ἥ μὲν ὁ Ἀβραδάτας ἐνέβαλε

καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, ταύτῃ ἐπεισπεσόντες |mess things up

|kill , ἥ δὲ |unaffected, ' |μένοντο οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι πολλοὶ δ' |impassive

οὗτοι ἦσαν, |withdraw, 'give τίοι τοῖς Πέρσαις.  
|way to (+dat)

Ἐνθα δὴ δεινὴ μάχη ἦν καὶ δοράτων καὶ |lance, καὶ  
|javelin

|knife |be greedy, take μέντοι οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι καὶ πλήθει  
|advantage

καὶ τοῖς |tool . τά τε γὰρ δόρατα ἰσχυρὰ καὶ μακρὰ

ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἔχουσιν, αἳ τε ἀσπίδες πολὺ μᾶλλον τῶν

|breastplate καὶ τῶν |wicker καὶ στεγάζουσι τὰ σώματα καὶ  
|object

πρὸς τὸ |push συνεργάζονται πρὸς τοῖς ὤμοις οὔσαι.

|hem in, connect, οὖν τὰς ἀσπίδας |withdraw, give|push . οἱ  
|conclude |way to (+dat)

δὲ Πέρσαι οὐκ ἐδύναντο |hold up as 'protēc-|at the edge, 'extreme-  
|tion against

τὰ |wicker ἔχοντες, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ πόδα ἀνεχάζοντο |hit  
|object

καὶ |hit , ἕως ὑπὸ ταῖς |machine; mecha- οντο. ἐπεὶ  
|nism, way

μέντοι |there, here, 'λθον, |hit αὖθις οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι ἀπὸ

τῶν |wall, καὶ οἱ ἐπὶ πᾶσι δὲ οὐκ εἶων φεύγειν οὔτε  
|tower

τοὺς |archer οὔτε τοὺς |spearman , ἀλλ' |lift, reach out,  
|threaten

τὰς |knife ἠνάγκαζον καὶ |shoot an arrow|throw, (+gen) at  
|at

Persians, pouring in after them, dealt slaughter and destruction where Abradatas and his men had charged and shaken the ranks, but elsewhere the Egyptians, who were still unscathed, and they were many, moved steadily on to meet them.

There followed a desperate struggle with lance and spear and sword, and still the Egyptians had the advantage, because of their numbers and their weapons. Their spears were immensely stout and long, such as they carry to this day, and the huge shield not only gave more protection than corslet and buckler, but aided the thrust of the fighter, slung as it was from the shoulder.

Shield locked into shield, they thrust their way forward; and the Persians could not drive them back, with their light bucklers borne on the forearm only. Step by step they gave ground, dealing blow for blow, till they came under cover of their own artillery. Then at last a second shower of blows fell on the Egyptians, while the reserves would allow no flight of the archers or the javelin-men: at the sword's point

*vocabulary*

**ἀλγέω** suffer ~analgesic  
**ἀνακαλέω** call, summon, recall  
**ἀφοράω** look away, at ~panorama  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**βοά** din, a shout  
**βοάω** shout  
**βοεύς** βοῦος (m) leather rope ~bovine  
**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric  
**εἰσπίπτω** fall into, rush in  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπικαλέω** call upon  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**κτύπος** noise  
**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone

**παίω** hit  
**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold  
**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
 ~genus  
**παρακελεύομαι** recommend, encourage  
**πατέομαι** eat, drink ~pastor  
**πατέω** trample ~peripatetic  
**περιελαύνω** drive around  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πληγή** a hit ~plectrum  
**πλήσσω** hit ~plectrum  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προστίθιμι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis  
**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy  
**φόνος** killing ~offend  
**ώθέω** push

ἦν δὲ πολὺς μὲν ἀνδρῶν φόνος, πολὺς δὲ κτύπος  
ὅπλων καὶ βελῶν παντοδαπῶν, πολλή δὲ βοή τῶν μὲν  
ἀνακαλούντων ἀλλήλους, τῶν δὲ παρακελευομένων, τῶν  
δὲ θεοὺς ἐπικαλουμένων.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Κῦρος διώκων τοὺς καθ' αὐτὸν  
παραγίγνεται. ὥς δ' εἶδε τοὺς Πέρσας ἐκ τῆς χώρας  
ἑωσμένους, ἤλγησέ τε καὶ γνοὺς ὅτι οὐδαμῶς ἂν θάπτον  
σχοίῃ τοὺς πολεμίους τῆς εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν προόδου ἢ  
εἰ εἰς τὸ ὀπίσθεν περιελάσειεν αὐτῶν, παραγγείλας  
ἔπεσθαι τοῖς μεθ' αὐτοῦ περιήλανεν εἰς τὸ ὀπίσθεν·  
καὶ εἰσπεσόντες παίουσιν ἀφορῶντας καὶ πολλοὺς  
κατακαίνουσιν. οἱ δὲ Αἰγύπτιοι ὥς ἦσθοντο, ἐβόων τε  
ὅτι ὀπίσθεν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ ἐστρέφοντο ἐν ταῖς πληγαῖς.  
καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ φύρδην ἐμάχοντο καὶ πεζοὶ καὶ ἵππεις,  
πεπτωκὼς δέ τις ὑπὸ τῷ Κύρου ἵππῳ καὶ πατούμενος  
παίει εἰς τὴν γαστέρα τῇ μαχαίρᾳ τὸν ἵππον αὐτοῦ· ὁ δὲ  
ἵππος πληγείς σφαδάζων ἀποσιέεται τὸν Κῦρον. ἔνθα δὴ  
ἔγνω ἂν τις ὅσου ἄξιον εἴη τὸ φιλεῖσθαι ἄρχοντα



ἦν δὲ πολὺς μὲν ἀνδρῶν |killing, πολὺς δὲ |noise  
 |tool καὶ |missile παντοδαπῶν, πολλή δὲ βοή τῶν μὲν  
 |call, summon, ἀλλήλους, τῶν δὲ |recommend, , τῶν  
 |recall |encourage  
 δὲ θεοὺς |call upon

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Κῦρος διώκων τοὺς καθ' αὐτὸν  
 |be beside, attend ὥς δ' εἶδε τοὺς Πέρσας ἐκ τῆς χώρας  
 ἑωσμένους, |suffer τε καὶ γνοὺς ὅτι |not anyone ἔνθα ἴππους  
 σχοίη τοὺς πολεμίους τῆς εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν προόδου ἣ  
 εἰ εἰς τὸ |behind, |drive around αὐτῶν, |transmit; order, summon,  
 |hereafter |recommend, encourage  
 ἔπεσθαι τοῖς μεθ' αὐτοῦ |drive around εἰς τὸ |behind,  
 |hereafter  
 καὶ |fall into, rush in |hit |look away, at καὶ πολλοὺς  
 |kill οἱ δὲ Αἰγύπτιοι ὥς |perceive , |shout τε  
 ὅτι |behind, οἱ πολέμοι καὶ |turn ἐν ταῖς |a hit  
 |hereafter  
 καὶ |there, here ἣ φύρδην ἐμάχοντο καὶ |on foot; footsoldier,  
 πεπτωκὼς δέ τις ὑπὸ τῷ Κύρου ἵππῳ καὶ πατούμενος  
 |hit εἰς τὴν |belly τῇ |knife τὸν ἵππον αὐτοῦ· ὁ δὲ  
 ἵππος |hit σφαδάζων ἀποσείεται τὸν Κῦρον. ἔνθα δὲ  
 ἔγνω ἄν τις ὅσου ἀξίον εἶη τὸ φιλεῖσθαι ἄρχοντα

they made them do their duty. Thick was the slaughter, and loud the din of clashing weapons and whirring darts, and shouting warriors, cheering each other and calling on the gods.

At this moment Cyrus appeared, cutting his way through his own opponents. To see the Persians thrust from their position was misery to him, but he knew he could check the enemy's advance most quickly by galloping round to their rear, and thither he dashed, bidding his troops follow, and there they fell upon them and smote them as they were gazing ahead, and there they mowed them down.

The Egyptians, seeing what had happened, cried out that the enemy had taken them in the rear, and wheeled round under a storm of blows. At this the confusion reached its height, cavalry and infantry struggling all together. An Egyptian fell under Cyrus' horse, and as the hoofs struck him he stabbed the creature in the belly. The charger reared at the blow and Cyrus was thrown. Then was seen what it is

*vocabulary*

ἀκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
 ἀναβάλλω delay; lift up ~ballistic  
 ἀναβοάω shout out  
 ἀπορέω be confused, distressed  
 ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental  
 state ~ballistic  
 ἔξωθεν from outside  
 καθοράω look down ~panorama  
 καταπηδάω jump down  
 κατασκέπτομαι inspect, explore  
 ~skeptc  
 κατείδον look upon  
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle  
 μεστός full

μηχανή machine; mechanism, way  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
 οὐδαμοῦ nowhere  
 παίω hit  
 πάντοθεν from all directions  
 περιελαύνω drive around  
 Πέρσης Persian  
 πη somewhere, somehow  
 προσπίπτω attack; befall; kow-tow  
 πύργος ramparts, tower; line of troops  
 τοξεύω shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
 ὑπηρετέω serve  
 ὑπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer  
 φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
 ώθέω push

ὑπὸ τῶν περὶ αὐτόν. εὐθὺς γὰρ ἀνεβόησάν τε πάντες  
 καὶ προσπεσόντες ἐμάχοντο· ἐώθουν, ἐωθοῦντο, ἔπαιον,  
 ἐπαίοντο. καταπηδήσας δέ τις ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου τῶν τοῦ  
 Κύρου ὑπηρετῶν ἀναβάλλει αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἵππον.  
 ὥς δ' ἀνέβη ὁ Κύρος, κατείδε πάντοθεν ἤδη παιομένους  
 τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους· καὶ γὰρ Ὑστάσπας ἤδη παρῆν σὺν  
 τοῖς Περσῶν ἱππεῦσι καὶ Χρυσάντας. ἀλλὰ τούτους  
 ἐμβάλλειν μὲν οὐκέτι εἶα εἰς τὴν φάλαγγα τῶν Αἰγυπτίων,  
 ἔξωθεν δὲ τοξεύειν καὶ ἀκοντίζειν ἐκέλευεν. ὥς δ' ἐγένετο  
 περιελάνων παρὰ τὰς μηχανάς, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἀναβῆναι  
 ἐπὶ τῶν πύργων τινὰ καὶ κατασκέψασθαι εἴ πῃ καὶ ἄλλο  
 τι μένοι τῶν πολεμίων καὶ μάχοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνέβη,  
 κατείδε μεστὸν τὸ πεδῖον ἵππων, ἀνθρώπων, ἀρμάτων,  
 φευγόντων, διωκόντων, κρατούντων, κρατουμένων·  
 μένον δ' οὐδαμοῦ οὐδὲν ἔτι ἐδύνατο κατιδεῖν πλὴν τὸ τῶν  
 Αἰγυπτίων· οὗτοι δὲ ἐπειδὴ ἠποροῦντο, πάντοθεν κύκλον  
 ποιησάμενοι, ὥστε ὁρᾶσθαι τὰ ὄπλα, ὑπὸ ταῖς ἀσπίσιν  
 ἐκάθηντο· καὶ ἐποιοῦν μὲν οὐδὲν ἔτι, ἔπασχον δὲ πολλὰ

ὑπὸ τῶν περὶ αὐτόν. εὐθὺς γὰρ |shout out    τε πάντες  
 καὶ |attack;    befall; ἐμάχοντο· |push    , |push    , |hit    ,  
    |kow-tow  
 |hit    . |jump down    δέ τις ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου τῶν τοῦ  
 Κύρου ὑπηρετῶν |delay; sing    αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἵππον.  
 ὥς δ' ἀνέβη ὁ Κῦρος, κατείδε |from    all    ᾗρε·|hit  
    |tions  
 τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους· καὶ γὰρ Ὑστάσπας ἤδη παρῆν σὺν  
 τοῖς Περσῶν ἱππεῦσι καὶ Χρυσάντας. ἀλλὰ τούτους  
 |throw in; inspire    ὑκέτι εἶα εἰς τὴν |rank of battle    ἢν Αἰγυπτίων,  
 |from    οὐτ'·|shoot an arrow·|throw, (+gen)'at·.ευν. ὥς δ' ἐγένετο  
    |side    |at  
 |drive around    παρὰ τὰς |machine; mecha-·εν αὐτῷ ἀναβῆναι  
    |nism, way  
 ἐπὶ τῶν |wall,    τινὰ καὶ |inspect, explore    εἴ πη καὶ ἄλλο  
    |tower  
 τι μένοι τῶν πολεμίων καὶ μάχοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνέβη,  
 κατείδε |full    τὸ πεδῖον ἵππων, ἀνθρώπων, |chariot    ,  
 φευγόντων, διωκόντων, κρατούντων, κρατουμένων·  
 μένον δ' |nowhere    οὐδὲν ἔτι ἐδύνατο |look upon    ἄλῃν τὸ τῶν  
 Αἰγυπτίων· οὗτοι δὲ ἐπειδὴ |be    confused,|from all di·circle,  
    |distressed    |rections    |wheel  
 ποιησάμενοι, ὥστε ὀράσθαι τὰ |tool    , ὑπὸ ταῖς |shield  
 ἐκάθηντο· καὶ ἐποιοῦν μὲν οὐδὲν ἔτι, ἔπασχον δὲ πολλὰ

for a leader to be loved by his men. With a terrible cry the men dashed forward, conquering thrust with thrust and blow with blow. One of his squires leapt down and set Cyrus on his own charger. And as Cyrus sprang on the horse he saw the Egyptians worsted everywhere. For by now Hystaspas was on the ground with his cavalry, and Chrysantas also. Still Cyrus would not allow them to charge the Egyptian phalanx: the archers and javelin-men were to play on them from outside. Then he made his way along the lines to the artillery, and there he mounted one of the towers to take a survey of the field, and see if any of the foe still held their ground and kept up the fight. But he saw the plain one chaos of flying horses and men and chariots, pursuers and pursued, conquerors and conquered, and nowhere any who still stood firm, save only the Egyptians. These, in sore straits as they were, formed themselves into a circle behind a ring of steel, and sat down under cover of their enormous shields. They no longer attempted to act, but they suffered, and

*vocabulary***ἀγάζω** exalt, adore**ἀναχωρίζω** force back**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπερωτάω** consult, ask**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service

~ergonomics

**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary**οἰκτείρω** pity**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**πότερος** which, whichever of two**προδίδωμι** betray**συμμάχομαι** fight with

καὶ δεινά.

Ἀγασθεὶς δὲ ὁ Κῦρος αὐτοὺς καὶ οἰκτίρων ὅτι ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες ὄντες ἀπώλλυντο, ἀνεχώρισε πάντας τοὺς περιμαχομένους καὶ μάχεσθαι οὐδένα ἔτι εἶα. πέμπει δὲ πρὸς αὐτοὺς κήρυκα ἐρωτῶν πότερα βούλονται ἀπολέσθαι πάντες ὑπὲρ τῶν προδεδωκότων αὐτοὺς ἢ σωθῆναι ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ δοκοῦντες εἶναι. οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο· Πῶς δ' ἂν ἡμεῖς σωθείημεν ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ δοκοῦντες εἶναι; ὁ δὲ Κῦρος πάλιν ἔλεγεν· Ὅτι ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς ὀρώμεν μόνους καὶ μένοντας καὶ μάχεσθαι θέλοντας. Ἀλλὰ τὸυντεῦθεν, ἔφασαν οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι, τί καλὸν ἂν ποιοῦντες σωθείημεν; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος αὖ πρὸς τοῦτο εἶπεν· Εἰ τῶν τε συμμαχομένων μηδένα προδόντες σωθείητε Τά τε ὅπλα παραδόντες φίλοι τε γενόμενοι τοῖς αἰρουμένοις ὑμᾶς σῶσαι, ἐξὸν ἀπολέσαι. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπήρουντο· Ἦν δὲ γενώμεθά σοι φίλοι, τί ἡμῖν ἀξιώσεις χρῆσθαι; ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ Κῦρος Εὖ ποιεῖν καὶ εὖ πάσχειν. ἐπηρώτων πάλιν οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι Τίνα εὐεργεσίαν· πρὸς τοῦτο εἶπεν



καὶ δεινά.

<sup>|exalt, adore</sup> δὲ ὁ Κῦρος αὐτοὺς καὶ οἰκτίρων ὅτι ἀγαθοὶ

ἄνδρες ὄντες ἀπώλλυντο, <sup>|force back</sup> πάντας τοὺς

περιμαχομένους καὶ μάχεσθαι οὐδένα ἔτι εἶα. πέμπει

δὲ πρὸς αὐτοὺς <sup>|henchman, ask func-tionary</sup> <sup>|which, whichever</sup> βούλονται

ἀπολέσθαι πάντες ὑπὲρ τῶν <sup>|betray</sup> αὐτοὺς

ἢ σωθῆναι ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ δοκοῦντες εἶναι. οἱ δ'

<sup>|to reject; answer, oneself</sup> <sup>separate; how? why? (mp)</sup> <sup>defend</sup> ἡμεῖς σωθείμεν ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ  
δοκοῦντες εἶναι; ὁ δὲ Κῦρος πάλιν ἔλεγεν· "Ὅτι ἡμεῖς

ὕμᾱς ὀρώμεν μόνους καὶ μένοντας καὶ μάχεσθαι θέλοντας.

Ἀλλὰ <sup>|thence</sup> , ἔφασαν οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι, τί καλὸν ἂν

ποιοῦντες σωθείμεν; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος αὖ πρὸς τοῦτο εἶπεν·

Εἰ τῶν τε <sup>|fight with</sup> μηδένα <sup>|betray</sup> σωθείτε Τά

τε <sup>|tool</sup> <sup>|hand over</sup> φίλοι τε γενόμενοι τοῖς αἵρουμένοις

ὕμᾱς σῶσαι, <sup>|go forth; is possible</sup> ἔσαι. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα <sup>|ask as well; ask then</sup>

"Ἦν δὲ γενώμεθά σοι φίλοι, τί ἡμῖν ἀξιώσεις χρῆσθαι;

<sup>|to separate; reject; (mp)</sup> <sup>ἵδ</sup> ποιεῖν καὶ εἰ πάσχειν. <sup>|consult, ask answer, defend oneself</sup>

πάλιν οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι Τίνα <sup>|good deed, public service</sup> πρὸς τοῦτο εἶπεν

suffered heavily. Cyrus, in admiration and pity, unwilling that men so brave should be done to death, drew off his soldiers who were fighting round them, and would not let another man lift sword.

Then he sent them a herald asking if they wished to be cut to pieces for the sake of those who had betrayed them, or save their lives and keep their reputation for gallantry? And they answered, "Is it possible that we can be saved and yet keep our reputation untarnished?" And Cyrus said, "Surely yes, for we ourselves have seen that you alone have held your ground and been ready to fight." "But even so," said the Egyptians, "how can we act in honour if we save ourselves?"

"By betraying none of those at whose side you fought," answered Cyrus: "only surrender your arms to us, and become our friends, the friends of men who chose to save you when they might have destroyed you." "And if we become your friends," said they, "how will you treat us?" "As you treat us," answered he, "and the treatment shall be good."

"And what will that good treatment be?" they asked

*vocabulary*

**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy  
**διαμένω** continue, persevere  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**εὐδοκιμέω** be esteemed  
**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo  
**καταμένω** stay; not change  
**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**κράτιστος** best  
**μισθός** reward, wages

**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house  
 slave  
**ὅπλις** -τος (f) arming for war  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**σκοταῖος** dark, dark time of day  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
**συνομολογέω** agree  
**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition

ὁ Κῦρος· Μισθὸν μὲν ὑμῖν δοίην ἂν πλείονα ἢ νῦν  
 ἐλαμβάνετε ὅσον ἂν χρόνον πόλεμος ᾗ· εἰρήνης δὲ  
 γενομένης τῷ βουλομένῳ ὑμῶν μένειν παρ' ἐμοὶ χώραν τε  
 δώσω καὶ πόλεις καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ οἰκέτας. ἀκούσαντες  
 ταῦτα οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ Κροῖσον συστρατεύειν  
 ἀφελεῖν σφίσιν ἐδείθησαν· τούτῳ γὰρ μόνῳ γιννώσκεσθαι  
 ἔφασαν· τὰ δ' ἄλλα συνομολογήσαντες ἔδοσαν πίστιν  
 καὶ ἔλαβον. καὶ οἱ Αἰγύπτιοί τε οἱ καταμείναντες  
 τότε ἔτι καὶ νῦν βασιλεῖ πιστοὶ διαμένουσι, Κῦρός τε  
 πόλεις αὐτοῖς ἔδωκε, τὰς μὲν ἄνω, αἱ ἔτι καὶ νῦν πόλεις  
 Αἰγυπτίων καλοῦνται, Λάρισαν δὲ καὶ Κυλλήνην παρὰ  
 Κύμην πλησίον θαλάττης, ἃς ἔτι καὶ νῦν οἱ ἀπ' ἐκείνων  
 ἔχουσι. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἤδη σκοταῖος  
 ἀναγαγὼν ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐν Θυμβράροις.

Ἐν δὲ τῇ μάχῃ τῶν πολεμίων Αἰγύπτιοι μόνοι  
 ἠὺδοκίμησαν, τῶν δὲ σὺν Κύρῳ τὸ Περσῶν ἵππικὸν  
 κράτιστον ἔδοξεν εἶναι· ὥστ' ἔτι καὶ νῦν διαμένει ἡ ὄπλις  
 ἦν τότε Κῦρος τοῖς ἵππεῦσι κατεσκεύασεν. ἠὺδοκίμησε

ὁ Κῦρος· <sup>|reward,</sup> μὲν ὑμῖν δοίην ἂν πλείονα ἢ νῦν <sup>|wages</sup>  
 ἐλαμβάνετε ὅσον ἂν χρόνον πόλεμος ᾗ· <sup>|peace</sup> δὲ  
 γενομένης τῷ βουλομένῳ ὑμῶν μένειν παρ' ἐμοὶ <sup>|place</sup> τε  
 δώσω καὶ πόλεις καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ <sup>|household;</sup> <sup>|house slave</sup> <sup>|κούσαντες</sup>  
 ταῦτα οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ Κροῖσον <sup>|join in an expe-</sup>  
<sup>|take away</sup> <sup>|dition</sup> φίσιν ἐδέηθησαν· τούτῳ γὰρ μόνῳ γιγνώσκεισθαι  
 ἔφασαν· τὰ δ' ἄλλα <sup>|agree</sup> ἔδοσαν <sup>|faith; treaty, proof,</sup>  
<sup>|credit</sup> καὶ ἔλαβον. καὶ οἱ Αἰγύπτιοί τε οἱ <sup>|stay; not change</sup>  
 τότε ἔτι καὶ νῦν βασιλεῖ <sup>|faithful;</sup> <sup>|continue,</sup> <sup>|trust-</sup> <sup>|persevere</sup> <sup>|worthy</sup> , Κῦρός τε  
 πόλεις αὐτοῖς ἔδωκε, τὰς μὲν ἀνῶ, αἱ ἔτι καὶ νῦν πόλεις  
 Αἰγυπτίων καλοῦνται, Λάρισαν δὲ καὶ Κυλλήνην παρὰ  
 Κύμην <sup>|near</sup> θαλάττης, ἃς ἔτι καὶ νῦν οἱ ἀπ' ἐκείνων  
 ἔχουσι. ταῦτα δὲ <sup>|travel over, ac-</sup> <sup>|comply</sup> ὁ Κῦρος ἤδη <sup>|dark, dark</sup>  
<sup>|time of day</sup> <sup>|lead up;|encamp or take up sta-</sup> ἐν Θυμβράροις.  
<sup>(mp) set sail |tion</sup>  
 Ἐν δὲ τῇ μάχῃ τῶν πολεμίων Αἰγύπτιοι μόνον  
<sup>|be esteemed</sup> , τῶν δὲ σὺν Κύρῳ τὸ Περσῶν <sup>|of horses</sup>  
<sup>|best</sup> ἔδοξεν εἶναι· ὥστ' ἔτι καὶ νῦν <sup>|continue,</sup> <sup>|arming for war</sup>  
<sup>|persevere</sup> ἦν τότε Κῦρος τοῖς <sup>|rider</sup> <sup>|equip, build</sup> <sup>|be esteemed</sup>

once more. "This," said Cyrus: "better pay than you have had, so long as the war lasts, and when peace comes, if you choose to stay with me, lands and cities and women and servants." Then they asked him if he would excuse them from one duty, service against Croesus. Croesus, they said, was the only leader who knew them; for the rest, they were content to agree. And so they came to terms, and took and gave pledges of good faith. Thus it came about that their descendants are to this day faithful subjects of the king, and Cyrus gave them cities, some in the interior, which are still called the cities of the Egyptians, beside Larissa and Kyllene and Kyme on the coast, still held by their descendants.

When this matter was arranged darkness had already fallen, and Cyrus drew off his army and encamped at Thymbrara.

In this engagement the Egyptians alone among the enemy won themselves renown, and of the troops under Cyrus the Persian cavalry was held to have done the best, so much so that to this day they are still armed in

*vocabulary*

**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δειπνοποιέω** make dinner  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**διαμένω** continue, persevere  
**δρεπανηφόρος** having a scythe or  
 hook  
**ἐποχέομαι** carry, bear upon  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κάμηλος** (f) camel  
**κατακαίνω** kill

**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
 have sex  
**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise  
**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way  
**ὅποι** to which place  
**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into  
 contact with  
**πολεμιστήριος** of/for a warrior  
**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**σχῆμα** -τος (n, 3) form, figure  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
**φῶλον** race, tribe, class ~phylum  
**χρήσιμος** useful

δὲ ἰσχυρῶς καὶ τὰ δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο ἔτι καὶ νῦν διαμένει τὸ πολεμιστήριον τῷ αἰὲ βασιλεύοντι. αἱ μέντοι κάμηλοι ἐφόβουν μόνον τοὺς ἵππους, οὐ μέντοι κατέκαινόν γε οἱ ἐπ' αὐτῶν ἱππεῖς, οὐδ' αὐτοί γε ἀπέθνησκον ὑπὸ ἱππέων· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἵππος ἐπέλαζε. καὶ χρήσιμον μὲν ἐδόκει εἶναι· ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὔτε τρέφειν οὐδεὶς ἐθέλει καλὸς καγαθὸς κάμηλον ὥστ' ἐποχεῖσθαι οὔτε μελετᾶν ὡς πολεμήσων ἀπὸ τούτων. οὕτω δὴ ἀπολαβοῦσαι πάλιν τὸ ἐαυτῶν σχῆμα ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις διάγουσι.

## 7.2

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον δειπνοποιησάμενοι καὶ φυλακὰς καταστησάμενοι, ὥσπερ ἔδει, ἐκοιμήθησαν. Κροῖσος μέντοι εὐθὺς ἐπὶ Σάρδεων ἔφευγε σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι· τὰ δ' ἄλλα φύλα ὅποι ἐδύνατο προσωτάτω ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ τῆς ἐπ' οἶκον ὁδοῦ ἕκαστος ἀπεχώρει. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, εὐθὺς ἐπὶ Σάρδεϊς ἦγε Κῦρος. ὥς δ' ἐγένετο πρὸς τῷ τείχει τῷ ἐν Σάρδεϊ, τὰς τε μηχανὰς



δὲ |strong, force-ful, violent ἰ τὰ |having a scythe or hook ὥστε καὶ  
 τοῦτο ἔτι καὶ νῦν |continue, persevere τὸ |of/for a warrior τῷ ἀεὶ  
 |be king αἶ |however |camel ἐφόβουν μόνον τοὺς  
 ἵππους, οὐ |however |kill γε οἱ ἐπ' αὐτῶν |rider  
 οὐδ' αὐτοὶ γε ἀπέθνησκον ὑπὸ |rider οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἵππος  
 |bring/come to, near, into contact with μὲν ἐδόκει εἶναι· ἀλλὰ γὰρ  
 οὔτε |nurture οὐδεὶς ἐθέλει καλὸς κάγαθός |camel ὥστ'  
 |carry, bear upon εἶ |pursue, attend to, exercise πολεμήσων ἀπὸ τούτων.  
 οὕτω δὲ |receive, recover, take aside, cut off ἄλιν τὸ ἐαυτῶν |form, figure ἐν τοῖς  
 |pack animal, porter |lead through; pass a time

## 7.2

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον |make dinner καὶ  
 |guard, prison, watch καταστησάμενοι, ὥσπερ ἔδει, ἐκοιμήθησαν.  
 Κροίσος |however εὐθὺς ἐπὶ Σάρδεων ἔφευγε σὺν τῷ  
 |army τὰ δ' ἄλλα |race, tribe, class |to which place προσωτάτω  
 ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ τῆς ἐπ' οἶκον οὐοῦ ἕκαστος |go away |from, retreat ἐπειδὴ  
 δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, εὐθὺς ἐπὶ Σάρδεσι ἦγε Κῦρος. ὥς δ'  
 ἐγένετο πρὸς τῷ τείχει τῷ ἐν Σάρδεσι, τὰς τε |machine; mechanism, way

the manner that Cyrus devised. High praise also was given to the scythe-bearing chariots, and this engine of war is still employed by the reigning king. As for the camels, all they did was to scare the horses; their riders could take no part in the slaughter, and were never touched themselves by the enemy's cavalry. For not a horse would come near the camels. It was a useful arm, certainly, but no gallant gentleman would dream of breeding camels for his own use or learning to fight on camel-back. And so they returned to their old position among the baggage-train.

## 7.2

Then Cyrus and his men took their evening meal and posted their pickets and went to rest. But Croesus and his army fled in haste to Sardis, and the other tribes hurried away homewards under cover of night as fast and as far as they could. When day broke Cyrus marched straight for Sardis, and when he

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme  
**ἄκρῑς** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἀκρόπολις** -εως (f) citadel, high part of a city ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀνάβασις** -τος (f) going up, mounting, going inland  
**ἀναβιβάζω** make to mount, promote  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀπότομος** cut off; severe  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**βασιλείος** kingly  
**βοάω** shout  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve  
**κατάβασις** -εως (f) way down  
**κατακλείω** enclose; shut up  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon

**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe  
**κατατρέχω** overrun; trash talk  
**κινέω** (i) set in motion, move, remove ~kinetic  
**κλίμαξ** -κος (f) ladder, staircase ~climax  
**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**οἰκίζω** colonize, settle  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite  
**ὅποι** to which place  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**προσβάλλω** hit, attack, approach; attach, offer ~ballistic  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
**φρουρά** guard duty, a watch  
**φρουρέω** keep watch  
**φρουρός** watcher, guard  
**φύλαξ** -κος (m) guard; sentry ~phylactery

ἀνίστη ὡς προσβαλὼν πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος καὶ κλίμακας  
παρεσκευάζετο. ταῦτα δὲ ποιῶν κατὰ τὰ ἀποτομώτατα  
δοκοῦντα εἶναι τοῦ Σαρδιανῶν ἐρύματος τῆς ἐπιούσης  
νυκτὸς ἀναβιβάζει Χαλδαίους τε καὶ Πέρσας. ἠγγήσατο  
δ' αὐτοῖς ἀνὴρ Πέρσης δοῦλος γεγενημένος τῶν ἐν τῇ  
ἀκροπόλει τινὸς φρουρῶν καὶ καταμεμαθηκὼς κατάβασιν  
εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ ἀνάβασιν τὴν αὐτήν. ὡς δ' ἐγένετο  
τοῦτο δῆλον ὅτι εἶχετο τὰ ἄκρα, πάντες δὲ ἔφευγον  
οἱ Λυδοὶ ἀπὸ τῶν τειχῶν ὅποι ἐδύνατο ἕκαστος τῆς  
πόλεως. Κῦρος δὲ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰσῆει εἰς τὴν πόλιν  
καὶ παρήγγειλεν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως μηδένα κινεῖσθαι. ὁ δὲ  
Κροῖσος κατακλεισάμενος ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις Κῦρον ἐβόα·  
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τοῦ μὲν Κροίσου φύλακας κατέλιπεν, αὐτὸς  
δὲ ἀπαγαγὼν πρὸς τὴν ἐχομένην ἄκραν ὡς εἶδε τοὺς  
μὲν Πέρσας φυλάττοντας τὴν ἄκραν, ὥσπερ ἔδει, τὰ  
δὲ τῶν Χαλδαίων ὅπλα ἔρημα κατεδεδραμήκεσαν γὰρ  
ἀρπασόμενοι τὰ ἐκ τῶν οἰκιῶν, εὐθὺς συνεκάλεσεν αὐτῶν  
τοὺς ἄρχοντας καὶ εἶπεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι ἐκ τοῦ

|stand up; arouse ἰσβαλὼν πρὸς τὸ |outdoor wall κλίμακας  
 |prepare, render . ταῦτα δὲ ποιῶν κατὰ τὰ |cut off; severe  
 δοκοῦντα εἶναι τοῦ Σαρδιανῶν |protection τῆς |lie upon; approach  
 νυκτὸς |make to mount, |ιλδαίους τε καὶ Πέρσας. ἡγήσατο  
 |promote  
 δ' αὐτοῖς ἀνὴρ Πέρσης |born enslaved, |ημέρος τῶν ἐν τῇ  
 |servile  
 |citadel τινὸς φρουρῶν καὶ |examine, observe κατὰβασιν  
 εἰς τὸν |river καὶ ἀνάβασιν τὴν αὐτήν. ὥς δ' ἐγένετο  
 τοῦτο |visible, " εἶχετο τὰ ἄκρα, πάντες δὲ ἔφευγον  
 |conspicuous  
 οἱ Λυδοὶ ἀπὸ τῶν |outdoor |to which place . ἕκαστος τῆς  
 |wall  
 πόλεως. |authority;` |ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ |go in εἰς τὴν πόλιν  
 |validity  
 καὶ |transmit; order,`summon, |ἵξεως μηδένα |move, . ὁ δὲ  
 |recommend, encourage |remove  
 Κροῖσος |enclose; shut up ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις Κῦρον |shout  
 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τοῦ μὲν Κροίσου |guard; |leave behind, |υἱὸς  
 |sentry |abandon  
 δὲ |lead away, back, ὅς τὴν ἐχομένην ἄκραν ὥς εἶδε τοὺς  
 μὲν Πέρσας |guard; watch τὴν ἄκραν, ὥσπερ ἔδει, τὰ  
 δὲ τῶν Χαλδαίων |tool ἔρημα |overrun; trash talk γὰρ  
 |carry off, seize τὰ ἐκ τῶν οἰκιῶν, εὐθὺς |call together αὐτῶν  
 τοὺς ἄρχοντας καὶ εἶπεν αὐτοῖς |be absent,`go. οὐ  
 |away, return

came before the citadel he set up his engines as though for the assault and got out his ladders. But the following night he sent a scaling party of Persians and Chaldaeans to climb the fortifications at the steepest point. The guide was a Persian who had served as a slave to one of the garrison in the citadel, and who knew a way down to the river by which one could get up. As soon as it became clear that the heights had been taken, all the Lydians without exception fled from the walls and hid wherever they could. At daybreak Cyrus entered the city and gave orders that not a man was to leave the ranks. Croesus, who had shut himself up inside his palace, cried out on Cyrus, and Cyrus left a guard round the building while he himself went to inspect the captured citadel. Here he found the Persians keeping guard in perfect order, but the Chaldaean quarters were deserted, for the men had rushed down to pillage the town. Immediately he summoned their officers, and bade them leave his

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἀριστοποιέω** (ᾱ) make breakfast  
**ἀτακτέω** be undisciplined  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**διαφυλάσσω** guard, observe  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**εὐτακτος** orderly, disciplined  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**ἱκετεύω** approach to beg

**καταστρατοπεδεύω** encamp, station  
**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**μακαριστός** deemed happy  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy  
**παντοῖος** all kinds of  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**πωλέω** sell  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition

στρατεύματος ὡς τάχιστα. Οὐ γὰρ ἄν, ἔφη, ἀνασχοίμην  
 πλεονεκτοῦντας ὁρῶν τοὺς ἀτακτοῦντας. καὶ εὖ μὲν,  
 ἔφη, ἐπίστασθε ὅτι παρεσκευαζόμεν ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς τοὺς ἐμοὶ  
 συστρατευομένους πᾶσι Χαλδαίοις μακαριστοὺς ποιῆσαι·  
 νῦν δ', ἔφη, μὴ θαυμάζετε ἢν τις καὶ ἀπιοῦσιν ὑμῖν  
 κρείττων ἐντύχη. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἔδρισαν  
 τε καὶ ἰκέτευον παύσασθαι ὀργιζόμενον καὶ τὰ χρήματα  
 πάντα ἀποδώσειν ἔφασαν. ὁ δ' εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδὲν αὐτῶν  
 δέοιτο. Ἄλλ' εἴ με, ἔφη, βούλεσθε παύσασθαι ἀχθόμενον,  
 ἀπόδοτε πάντα ὅσα ἐλάβετε τοῖς διαφυλάξασι τὴν ἄκραν.  
 ἦν γὰρ αἰσθωνται οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ὅτι πλεονεκτοῦσιν  
 οἱ εὐτακτοὶ γενόμενοι, πάντα μοι καλῶς ἔξει. οἱ μὲν  
 δὴ Χαλδαῖοι οὕτως ἐποίησαν ὡς ἐκέλευσεν ὁ Κῦρος· καὶ  
 ἔλαβον οἱ πειθόμενοι πολλὰ καὶ παντοῖα χρήματα. ὁ  
 δὲ Κῦρος καταστρατοπεδεύσας τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ, ὅπου ἐδόκει  
 ἐπιτηδειότατον εἶναι τῆς πόλεως, μένειν ἐπὶ τοῖς ὅπλοις  
 παρήγγειλε καὶ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι.

Ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος ἀγαγεῖν ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ τὸν



|army                  ὡς τάχιστα. Οὐ γὰρ αἶν, ἔφη, |raise; endure

|be greedy, take ad- *ὁρῶν τοὺς* |be undisciplined *καὶ ἐν μέν,*  
|vantage

ἔφη, ἐπίστασθε ὅτι |prepare, render      ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς τοὺς ἐμοὶ

join in an expedition *πᾶσι Χαλδαίοις* |deemed happy *ποιῆσαι*.

$\nu\upsilon\nu$   $\delta'$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\phi\eta$ ,  $\mu\grave{\eta}$  |marvel       $\eta\breve{\nu}$   $\tau\iota\varsigma$   $\kappa\alpha\iota$  |be absent, go,  
away, return

κρείττων ἐντύχη. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ Χαλδαῖοι |to fear

<i>τε</i>	and	<i>καὶ</i>	approach	stop		anger,	pro-	<i>καὶ</i>	<i>τὰ</i>	possession,	money,
			to beg			voke,	annoy			business	

πάντα ἀποδώσειν ἔφασαν. ὁ δ' εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδὲν αὐτῶν

δέοιτο. Ἄλλ' εἴ με, ἔφη, βούλεσθε |stop |be burdened with

ἀπόδοτε πάντα ὅσα ἐλάβετε τοῖς |guard, observe τὴν ἄκραν.

*ἦν γὰρ* |perceive      *οἱ ἄλλοι* |soldier,  
mercenary      *ὅτι* |be greedy, take  
advantage

οἱ orderly,  
disciplined γινόμενοι, πάντα μοι καλῶς ἔξει. οἱ μὲν

δὴ Χαλδαῖοι οὕτως ἐποίησαν ὡς ἐκέλευσεν ὁ Κῦρος· καὶ

ἔλαβον οἱ πειθόμενοι πολλὰ καὶ | all kinds of possession, money, busi-

δὲ Κῦρος | encamp, station      τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ, | <sup>ness</sup>where ἰδóκει

|fit, suitable      εἶναι τῆς πόλεως, μένειν ἐπὶ τοῖς |tool

transmit;	order,	make breakfast
summon,	recom-	
mend, encourage		

Ταῦτα δὲ | travel over, ac- ἀγαγεῖν ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ τὸν  
| accomplish

army at once. "I could never endure," he said, "to have undisciplined fellows seizing the best of everything. You know well enough," he added, "all that was in store for you. I meant to make all who served with me the envy of their fellows; but now," he said, "you cannot be surprised if you encounter some one stronger than yourselves on your way home."

Fear fell on the Chaldaeans at this, and they intreated him to lay aside his anger and vowed they would give back all the booty they had taken. He answered that he had no need of it himself. "But if," he added, "you wish to appease me, you will hand it over to those who stayed and guarded the citadel. For if my soldiers see that discipline means reward, all will be well with us."

So the Chaldaeans did as he bade them, and the faithful and obedient received all manner of good things.

Then Cyrus made his troops encamp in the most convenient quarter of the town, and told them to stay at their posts and take their breakfast there. That done, he gave orders that Croesus should be brought to him,

*vocabulary*

**ἄρα** interrogative pcl  
**ἄρή** bane, harm; prayer  
**ἄρῃν** ἄρονός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool  
**ἄρης** war, warlike spirit  
**ἄρπαγή** seizure; rape  
**ἄρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of ~harpoon  
**ἐφίημι** (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at,  
 spring upon ~jet  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**προσαγορεύω** address, call by name  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**τύχη** fortune, act of a god  
**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

Κροῖσον. ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος ὡς εἶδε τὸν Κῦρον, Χαῖρε, ὦ δέσποτα, ἔφη· τοῦτο γὰρ ἡ τύχη καὶ ἔχειν τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε δίδωσι σοὶ καὶ ἐμοὶ προσαγορεύειν. Καὶ σύ γε, ἔφη, ὦ Κροῖσε, ἐπείπερ ἄνθρωποί γέ ἐσμεν ἀμφότεροι. ἀτάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Κροῖσε, ἂρ' ἂν τί μοι ἐθελήσῃς συμβουλευσαι; Καὶ βουλοίμην γ' ἂν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἀγαθόν τί σοι εὔρεῖν· τοῦτο γὰρ ἂν οἶμαι ἀγαθὸν κάμοι γενέσθαι. Ἄκουσον τοίνυν, ἔφη, ὦ Κροῖσε· ἐγὼ γὰρ ὁρῶν τοὺς στρατιώτας πολλὰ πεπονηκότας καὶ πολλὰ κεκινδυνευκότας καὶ νῦν νομίζοντας πόλιν ἔχειν τὴν πλουσιωτάτην ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ μετὰ Βαβυλῶνα, ἀξιῶ ὠφεληθῆναι τοὺς στρατιώτας. γιγνώσκω γάρ, ἔφη, ὅτι εἰ μὴ τινα καρπὸν λήψονται τῶν πόνων, οὐ δυνήσομαι αὐτοὺς πολὺν χρόνον πειθομένους ἔχειν. διαρπάσαι μὲν οὖν αὐτοῖς ἐφεῖναι τὴν πόλιν οὐ βούλομαι· τὴν τε γὰρ πόλιν νομίζω ἂν διαφθαρῆναι, ἔν τε τῇ ἀρπαγῇ εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι οἱ πονηρότατοι πλεονεκτήσειαν ἂν. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κροῖσος ἔλεξεν· Ἄλλ' ἐμέ, ἔφη, ἔασον λέξαι πρὸς οὓς ἂν ἐγὼ Λυδῶν ἔλθω ὅτι διαπέπραγμαι

Κροῖσον. ὁ δὲ Κροῖσος ὡς εἶδε τὸν Κῦρον, Χαῖρε, ᾧ

|master, , ἔφη· τοῦτο γὰρ ἡ |fortune, act·χειν τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε  
despot |of a god

δίδωσι σοὶ καὶ ἐμοὶ |address, call by Καὶ σύ γε, ἔφη, ᾧ  
name

Κροῖσε, ἐπεὶ περ ἄνθρωποί γέ ἐσμεν |both . ἀτάρ,

ἔφη, ᾧ Κροῖσε, ἄρ' ἂν τί μοι ἐθελήσῃς |συμβουλευ?: , give ad-  
vice; (mid) consult; or  
Καὶ βουλοίμην γ' ἂν, ἔφη, ᾧ Κῦρε, ἀγαθόν |συμβουλευ?: give advice;  
(mid) consult

τοῦτο γὰρ ἂν οἶμαι ἀγαθὸν κάμοι γενέσθαι. Ἄκουσον

|well, then ἦ, ᾧ Κροῖσε· ἐγὼ γὰρ ὁρώω τοὺς |soldier,  
mercenary

πολλὰ |work καὶ πολλὰ |encounter danger; (+inf) ὅν  
there is a danger that

|consider cus- ὅλιν ἔχειν τὴν |wealth ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ  
tomary; believe

μετὰ Βαβυλῶνα, |con- |help, be useful τοὺς |soldier,  
sider |mercenary

γιγνώσκω γάρ, ἔφη, ὅτι εἰ μὴ τίνα |wrist; λήψονται τῶν  
worthy, |fruit,  
fitting |grain

|toil, suffering ὕνησομαι αὐτοὺς πολλὸν χρόνον πειθομένους

ἔχειν. |make prey of, ἐν οὖν αὐτοῖς |send flying at πόλιν οὐ

βούλομαι· τήν τε γὰρ πόλιν |consider cus-|destroy, corrupt; (pf.) to be be-  
tomary; be-|side oneself  
lieve

τε τῇ ἀρπαγῇ εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι οἱ |oppressed; |be greedy, take ad-  
knaveish; useless|vantage

ἂν. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κροῖσος ἔλεξεν· Ἄλλ' ἐμέ, ἔφη, ἔασον

λέξαι πρὸς οὓς ἂν ἐγὼ Λυδῶν ἔλθω ὅτι |travel over, ac-  
|comply

and when he came into his presence, Croesus cried:

"Hail, Cyrus, my lord and master! Fate has given you that title from now henceforward, and thus must I salute you."

"All hail to you likewise," answered Cyrus: "we are both of us men. And tell me now," he continued, "would you be more willing to advise me as a friend?" "I should be more than glad," said Croesus, "to do you any good. It would mean good for myself, I know." "Listen, then," answered Cyrus: "I see that my soldiers have endured much toil and encountered many dangers, and now they are persuaded that they have taken the wealthiest city in all Asia, after Babylon. I would not have them cheated of their recompense, seeing that if they win nothing by their labour, I know not how I can keep them obedient to me for long. Yet I am unwilling to give them this city over to plunder. I believe it would be utterly destroyed, and moreover I know full well that in plunder the worst villains win the most."

To this Croesus answered, "Suffer me then to tell what Lydians I please that I have won your promise that the city shall not

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off; turn out

~basis

**ἄρπαγή** seizure; rape**ἄρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**ἀφανίζω** do away with, make off with;  
(pass) disappear**διαρπάζω** make prey of ~harpoon**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in  
too easily**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐξίστημι** displace, transform; (+gen)  
give up ~station**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure**κτῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possession**νέωτα** next year**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**πάντως** by all means**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake,  
associate with**πηγή** headwaters, fountain**πηγός** stout, mighty**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of  
~plethora**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance  
~technology**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;  
submit to**φυλακός** guard; sentry**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
~phylactery**χρηστήριον** oracle, response

παρὰ σοῦ μὴ ποιῆσαι ἀρπαγὴν μηδὲ ἑᾶσαι ἀφανισθῆναι  
παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας· ὑπεσχόμεν δέ σοι ἀντὶ τούτων ἡ  
μὴν παρ' ἐκόντων Λυδῶν ἔσεσθαι πᾶν ὅ τι καλὸν καγαθόν  
ἐστὶν ἐν Σάρδεσιν. ἦν γὰρ ταῦτα ἀκούσωσιν, οἶδ' ὅτι  
ἥξει σοι πᾶν ὅ τι ἐστὶν ἐνθάδε καλὸν κτῆμα ἀνδρὶ καὶ  
γυναικί· καὶ ὁμοίως εἰς νέωτα πολλῶν καὶ καλῶν πάλιν  
σοι πλήρης ἡ πόλις ἔσται. ἦν δὲ διαρπάσης, καὶ αἱ  
τέχναι σοι, ἃς πηγὰς φασὶ τῶν καλῶν εἶναι, διεφθαρμέναι  
ἔσονται. ἐξέσται δέ σοι ἰδόντι ταῦτα ἐλθόντα ἔτι καὶ  
περὶ τῆς ἀρπαγῆς βουλευσασθαι. πρῶτον δ', ἔφη, ἐπὶ  
τοὺς ἐμοὺς θησαυροὺς πέμπε καὶ παραλαμβανόντων οἱ σοὶ  
φύλακες παρὰ τῶν ἐμῶν φυλάκων. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ πάντα  
οὕτω συνήνεσε ποιεῖν ὁ Κῦρος ὥσπερ ἔλεξεν ὁ Κροῖσος.

Τάδε δέ μοι πάντως, ἔφη, ὦ Κροῖσε, λέξον πῶς σοι  
ἀποβέβηκε τὰ ἐκ τοῦ ἐν Δελφοῖς χρηστηρίου· σοὶ γὰρ δὴ  
λέγεται πάννυ γε τεθεραπεῦσθαι ὁ Ἀπόλλων καὶ σε πάντα  
ἐκείνῳ πειθόμενον πράττειν. Ἐβουλόμην ἄν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε,  
οὕτως ἔχειν· νῦν δὲ πάντα τάναντία εὐθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς



παρὰ σοῦ μὴ ποιῆσαι ἀρπαγὴν |and not; not|do away with, make off  
|even |with; (pass) disappear

παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας· |promise δέ σοι ἀντὶ τούτων ἥ

μὴν παρ' |willingly Λυδῶν ἔσεσθαι πᾶν ὃ τι καλὸν καὶ ἀγαθόν

ἐστὶν ἐν Σάρδεσιν. ἦν γὰρ ταῦτα ἀκούσωσιν, οἶδ' ὅτι

|be present, |have arrived ἦν ὃ τι ἐστὶν |here, |hither καλὸν |possession δρὶ καὶ

γυναικί· καὶ ὁμοίως εἰς |next year ἄλλων καὶ καλῶν πάλιν

σοι |full, complete; |(+gen) full of ὅλως ἔσται. ἦν δὲ |make prey of καὶ αἱ

|craft σοι, ἃς πηγὰς φασὶ τῶν καλῶν εἶναι, |destroy, corrupt; (pf.) to be  
|beside oneself

ἔσονται. ἐξέσται δέ σοι ἰδόντι ταῦτα ἐλθόντα ἔτι καὶ

περὶ τῆς |seizure; |rape |(mp) to deliberate πρῶτον δ', ἔφη, ἐπὶ

τοὺς ἐμὸνς |treasury πέμπε καὶ |receive, undertake, as- |sociate with  
|sociate with

|guard; |sentry παρὰ τῶν ἐμῶν φυλάκων. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ πάντα

οὕτω συνήνεσε ποιεῖν ὁ Κῦρος ὥσπερ ἔλεξεν ὁ Κροῖσος.

Τάδε δέ μοι |by all means' ἦ, ὦ Κροῖσε, λέξον πῶς σοι

|leave, get off; |turn out τὰ ἐκ τοῦ ἐν Δελφοῖς |oracle, |response σοὶ γὰρ δὴ

λέγεται |alto- |help, serve ὁ Ἀπόλλων καὶ σε πάντα

ἐκείνῳ |very, |πειθόμενον πράττειν. Ἐβουλόμην ἄν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε,

οὕτως ἔχειν· νῦν δὲ πάντα |opposite εὐθὺς ἐξ ἀρχῆς

be sacked, nor their women and children made away with. I promise you in return that my men will bring you willingly everything that is costly and beautiful in Sardis. If I can announce such terms, I am certain there is not one treasure belonging to man or woman that will not be yours to-morrow. Further, on this day year, the city will overflow once more with wealth and beauty. But if you sack it, you will destroy the crafts in its ruin, and they, we know, are the well-spring of all loveliness. Howbeit, you need not decide at once, wait and see what is brought to you. Send first," he added, "to my own treasures, and let your guards take some of my own men with them."

To all this Cyrus consented, and then he said:

"And now, O Croesus, tell me one thing more. How did matters go between you and the oracle at Delphi? It is said that you did much reverence to Apollo and obeyed him in all things."

"I Could wish it had been so," said Croesus, "but, truth to say, from the beginning I have acted

*vocabulary*

**ἀκμή** point, edge, top, culmination  
 ~acute  
**ἀληθεύω** speak truth; be true  
**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀνάθημα** -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift  
 ~thesis  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve ~stand  
**ἀποπειράομαι** try, try out  
**ἀργύρεος** silver ~Argentina  
**ἀργυροῦς** silver  
**ἄτοπος** strange, unnatural, disgusting  
**βίος** life ~biology  
**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
 ~apostle  
**ἐξιλάσχομαι** propitiate, atone

**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπερωτάω** consult, ask  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**θύον** kind of tree  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**καίπερ** even if  
**κωφός** blunt, insensible  
**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**παράδοξος** incredible  
**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far  
**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

πράττων προσηνέχθην τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι. Πῶς δέ; ἔφη ὁ  
 Κῦρος· δίδασκε· πάνν γὰρ παράδοξα λέγεις. Ὅτι πρῶτον  
 μέν, ἔφη, ἀμελήσας ἐρωτᾶν τὸν θεόν, εἴ τι ἐδεόμην,  
 ἀπεπειρώμην αὐτοῦ εἰ δύναιτο ἀληθεύειν. τοῦτο δ', ἔφη,  
 μὴ ὅτι θεός, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄνθρωποι καλοὶ καγαθοί, ἐπειδὴν  
 γνῶσιν ἀπιστούμενοι, οὐ φιλοῦσι τοὺς ἀπιστοῦντας. ἐπεὶ  
 μέντοι ἔγνω καὶ μάλ' ἄτοπα ἐμοῦ ποιούντος, καίπερ  
 πρόσω Δελφῶν ἀπέχοντος, οὕτω δὴ πέμπω περὶ παίδων.  
 ὁ δέ μοι τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οὐδ' ἀπεκρίνατο· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγὼ  
 πολλὰ μὲν πέμπων ἀναθήματα χρυσᾶ, πολλὰ δ' ἀργυρᾶ,  
 πάμπολλα δὲ θύων ἐξίλασάμην ποτὲ αὐτόν, ὥς ἐδόκουν,  
 τότε δὴ μοι ἀποκρίνεται ἐρωτῶντι τί ἂν μοι ποιήσαντι  
 παῖδες γένοιοντο· ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι ἔσονται. καὶ ἐγένοντο μέν,  
 οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἐψεύσατο, γενόμενοι δὲ οὐδὲν ὤνησαν.  
 ὁ μὲν γὰρ κωφὸς ὢν διετέλει, ὁ δὲ ἄριστος γενόμενος ἐν  
 ἀκμῇ τοῦ βίου ἀπώλετο. πιεζόμενος δὲ ταῖς περὶ τοὺς  
 παῖδας συμφοραῖς πάλιν πέμπω καὶ ἐπερωτῶ τὸν θεὸν τί  
 ἂν ποιῶν τὸν λοιπὸν βίον εὐδαιμονέστατα διατελέσαιμι·  
 ὁ

πράττων |present; resem- τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι. |how? why? ᾧ φη ὁ  
 |ble; add  
 Κῦρος· δίδασκε· |altogether, |incredible λέγεις. Ὅτι πρῶτον  
 |very  
 μέν, ἔφη, |disregard |ask τὸν θεόν, εἴ τι ἐδεόμην,  
 |try, try out αὐτοῦ εἰ δύναιτο |speak |truth; be τοῦτο δ', ἔφη,  
 |true  
 μὴ ὅτι θεός, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄνθρωποι καλοὶ κάγαθοί, |when,  
 |after  
 γνῶσιν |disbelieve , οὐ φιλοῦσι τοὺς |disbelieve . ἐπεὶ  
 |however ἔγνω καὶ μάλ' |strange, uñnatu- τοιοῦντος, |even if  
 |ral, disgusting  
 |forward, in the fu- |ward off, drive off, refrain, ἔμπω περὶ παίδων.  
 |ture; far |be at some distance  
 ὁ δέ μοι τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οὐδ' ἀπεκρίνατο· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγὼ  
 πολλὰ μὲν πέμπων |consecrated gift\_ υσᾶ, πολλὰ δ' ἀργυρᾶ,  
 πάμπολλα δὲ θύων |propitiate, |atone ποτὲ αὐτόν, ὥς ἐδόκουν,  
 τότε δὴ μοι ἀποκρίνεται |ask τί ἂν μοι ποιήσαντι  
 παῖδες γένοιτο· ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι ἔσονται. καὶ ἐγένοντο μὲν,  
 οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ τοῦτο |be false, deceive; |μενοι δὲ οὐδὲν |help, please,  
 |(mid) to lie |be available  
 ὁ μὲν γὰρ |blunt, ᾧ ν |accomplish; δὲ ἄριστος γενόμενος ἐν  
 |insensible |keep doing  
 |point, edge, top, ἀπώλετο. |press, δὲ ταῖς περὶ τοὺς  
 |culmination |squeeze  
 παῖδας συμφοραῖς πάλιν πέμπω καὶ |consult, ask ὃν θεὸν τί  
 ἂν ποιῶν τὸν λοιπὸν |life |blessed with a good |accomplish;  
 |genius |keep doing  
 ὁ

in all things against him." "How can that be?" said Cyrus. "Explain it to me: for your words seem strange indeed." "Because," he answered, "in the first place, instead of asking the god for all I wanted I must needs put him to the test, to see if he could speak the truth. This," he added, "no man of honour could endure, let be the godhead. Those who are doubted cannot love their doubters. And yet he stood the test; for though the things I did were strange, and I was many leagues from Delphi, he knew them all. And so I resolved to consult him about my children. At first he would not so much as answer me, but I sent him many an offering, some of gold and some of silver, and I propitiated him, as I deemed, by countless sacrifices, and at last he answered me when I asked him what I must do that sons might be born to me. He said they should be born. And so they were; in that he uttered no lie, but they brought me no joy. One of them was dumb his whole life long, and the noblest perished in the flower of his youth. And I, crushed by these sorrows, sent again to the god and asked him how I could live in happiness for the rest of my days, and he

*vocabulary*

**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology  
**ἀναπείθω** (aor, plupf) seduce,  
 persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,  
 be confident in  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**διαθρύπτω** break into pieces ~drop  
**ἐγκαλέω** demand payment; accuse  
**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit  
 up ~sit  
**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡμαι** sit, lie  
**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet

**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**κολακεύω** flatter  
**μαντεία** oracular power  
**περάω** cross over, drive across; sell as  
 a slave ~pierce  
**πέρνημι** export, sell as a slave ~porno  
**πλοῦτος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command  
**προστάτης** -ου (m, 1) leader, protector  
**σαυτοῦ** yourself  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
 from ~demagogue

δέ μοι ἀπεκρίνατο, Σαυτὸν γινώσκων εὐδαίμων, Κροῖσε,  
περάσεις.

Ἐγὼ δ' ἀκούσας τὴν μαντείαν ἤσθην· ἐνόμιζον γὰρ τὸ  
ῥᾶστον μοι αὐτὸν προστάξαντα τὴν εὐδαιμονίαν διδόναι.  
ἄλλους μὲν γὰρ γινώσκειν τοὺς μὲν οἶόν τ' εἶναι τοὺς δ'  
οὐ· ἑαυτὸν δὲ ὅστις ἐστὶ πάντα τινὰ ἐνόμιζον ἄνθρωπον  
εἰδέναι. καὶ τὸν μετὰ ταῦτα δὴ χρόνον, ἕως μὲν εἶχον  
ἡσυχίαν, οὐδὲν ἐνεκάλουν μετὰ τὸν τοῦ παιδὸς θάνατον  
ταῖς τύχαις· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀνεπίεσθην ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου ἐφ'  
ὕμᾱς στρατεύεσθαι, εἰς πάντα κίνδυνον ἦλθον· ἐσώθην  
μέντοι οὐδὲν κακὸν λαβών. οὐκ αἰτιῶμαι δὲ οὐδὲ τάδε τὸν  
θεόν. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἔγνων ἑμαυτὸν μὴ ἱκανὸν ὑμῖν μάχεσθαι,  
ἀσφαλῶς σὺν τῷ θεῷ ἀπῆλθον καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ σὺν  
ἐμοί. νῦν δ' αὖ πάλιν ὑπὸ τε πλούτου τοῦ παρόντος  
διαθρυπτόμενος καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν δεομένων μου προστάτην  
γενέσθαι καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν δώρων ὧν ἐδίδουσάν μοι καὶ ὑπ'  
ἀνθρώπων, οἳ με κολακεύοντες ἔλεγον ὥς εἰ ἐγὼ θέλωμι  
ἄρχειν, πάντες ἂν ἐμοὶ πείθοντο καὶ



δέ μοι |to separate;|yourself γινώσκων |blessed with a<sup>τ</sup>ροίσε,  
 reject; (mp) |good genius  
 answer, defend  
 περάσ|oneself

Ἐγὼ δ' ἀκούσας τὴν |oracular ἥσθην· |consider cūs- τὸ  
 |power |tomary; believe

|easy μοι αὐτὸν |post at, attach to, com-|prosperity διδόναι.  
 |mand

ἄλλους μὲν γὰρ γινώσκειν τοὺς μὲν οἶόν τ' εἶναι τοὺς δ'

οὐ· ἐαυτὸν δὲ ὅστις ἐστὶ πάντα τινὰ |consider cūs- ὡπον  
 |tomary; believe

εἰδέναι. καὶ τὸν μετὰ ταῦτα δὴ χρόνον, ἕως μὲν εἶχον

|peace and quiet... |demand pay-ετὰ τὸν τοῦ παιδὸς θάνατον  
 |ment; accuse

ταῖς τύχαις· ἐπειδὴ δὲ |(aor, plupf) seduce, persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust,  
 |obey, be confident in

ὑμᾶς |make an expedition, πάντα |danger ἦλθον· ἐσώθην  
 |war, campaign

|however ὃδὲν κακὸν λαβών. οὐκ |blame δὲ οὐδὲ τάδε τὸν

θεόν. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἔγνω ἐμαυτὸν μὴ |sufficient; fit, μάχεσθαι,  
 |empowered

ἀσφαλῶς σὺν τῷ θεῷ ἀπῆλθον καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ σὺν

ἐμοί. νῦν δ' αὖ πάλιν ὑπὸ τε |wealth τοῦ παρόντος

|break into pieces καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν δεομένων μου |leader,  
 |protector

γενέσθαι καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν |gift ὧν ἐδίδοσάν μοι καὶ ὑπ'

ἀνθρώπων, οἳ με |flatter ἔλεγον ὥς εἰ ἐγὼ θέλωμι

ἄρχειν, πάντες ἂν ἐμοὶ πείθοντο καὶ

answered:

''' Know thyself, O Croesus, and happiness shall be thine.' ''And when I heard the oracle, I was comforted. I said to myself, the god has laid the lightest of tasks upon me, and promised me happiness in return. Some of his neighbours a man may know and others not: but every one can know himself. So I thought, and in truth so long as I was at peace I had no fault to find with my lot after my son's death; but when the Assyrian persuaded me to march against you I encountered every danger. Yet I was saved, I came to no harm. Once again, therefore, I have no charge to bring against the god: when I knew myself incapable of warring against you, he came to my help and saved mine and me. But afterwards, intoxicated by my wealth, cajoled by those who begged me to be their leader, tempted by the gifts they showered on me, flattered by all who said that if I would but lead them they would obey me to a man, and that I

*vocabulary***ἀγνοέω** be ignorant of ~gnostic**ἀληθεύω** speak truth; be true**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀσκέω** work on**βασιλεύω** be king**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἐννοέω** consider**ἔρωτάω** ask about something**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**οἰκτείρω** pity**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστάτης** -ου (m, 1) leader, protector**προστίθμι** add; impose; (mp) agree;

side with ~thesis

**στρατηγία** office of command, strategy

~strategy

**ὑποδείκνυμι** (υὑ) show, trace out**ὑποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer

~doctrine

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

μέγιστος ἂν εἴην ἀνθρώπων, ὑπὸ τοιούτων δὲ λόγων ἀναφυσώμενος, ὡς εἵλοντό με πάντες οἱ κύκλω βασιλεῖς προστάτην τοῦ πολέμου, ὑπεδεξάμην τὴν στρατηγίαν, ὡς ἱκανὸς ὢν μέγιστος γενέσθαι, ἀγνοῶν ἄρα ἑμαυτόν, ὅτι σοὶ ἀντιπολεμεῖν ἱκανὸς ὄμην εἶναι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐκ θεῶν γεγονότι, ἔπειτα δὲ διὰ βασιλέων πεφυκότι, ἔπειτα δ' ἐκ παιδὸς ἀρετὴν ἀσκοῦντι· τῶν δ' ἐμῶν προγόνων ἀκούω τὸν πρῶτον βασιλεύσαντα ἅμα τε βασιλέα καὶ ἐλεύθερον γενέσθαι. ταῦτ' οὖν ἀγνοήσας δικαίως, ἔφη, ἔχω τὴν δίκην. ἀλλὰ νῦν δὴ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, γιγνώσκω μὲν ἑμαυτόν· σὺ δ', ἔφη, ἔτι δοκεῖς ἀληθεύειν τὸν Ἀπόλλω ὡς εὐδαίμων ἔσομαι γιγνώσκων ἑμαυτόν; σὲ δὲ ἐρωτῶ διὰ τοῦτο ὅτι ἄριστ' ἂν μοι δοκεῖς εἰκάσαι τοῦτο ἐν τῷ παρόντι· καὶ γὰρ δύνασαι ποιῆσαι.

Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· βουλήν μοι δὸς περὶ τούτου, ὦ Κροῖσε· ἐγὼ γάρ σου ἐννοῶν τὴν πρόσθεν εὐδαιμονίαν οἰκτίρω τέ σε καὶ ἀποδίδωμι ἤδη γυναικὰ τε ἔχειν ἣν εἶχες καὶ τὰς θυγατέρας ἀκούω γάρ σοι εἶναι, καὶ τοὺς φίλους καὶ

μέγιστος ἂν εἶην ἄνθρωπων, ὑπὸ τοιούτων δὲ λόγων

ἀναφυσώμενος, ὡς εἶλοντό με πάντες οἱ circle, βασιλεῖς  
wheel

leader, τοῦ πολέμου, ὑπεδεξάμην τὴν office of com-  
protector mand, strategy

sufficient; ἴfit, μέγιστος γενέσθαι, |be ignorant of ἑμαυτόν, ὅτι empowered

σοὶ ἀντιπολεμεῖν sufficient; ἴfit, εἶναι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐκ θεῶν  
empowered

γεγονότι, ἔπειτα δὲ διὰ βασιλέων πεφυκóτι, ἔπειτα δ' ἐκ

παιδὸς excel- |work on τῶν δ' ἐμῶν |elder, ἀκούω  
lence ancestor

τὸν πρῶτον |be king ἅμα τε βασιλέα καὶ |not enslaved

γενέσθαι. ταῦτ' οὖν |be ignorant of αἰῶς, ἔφη, ἔχω τὴν

|justice. ἀλλὰ νῦν δὴ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, γιγνώσκω μὲν ἑμαυτόν·

σὺ δ', ἔφη, ἔτι δοκεῖς |speak truth; be τὸν Ἀπόλλω ὡς |blessed with a  
true good genius

ἔσομαι γιγνώσκων ἑμαυτόν; σὲ δὲ |ask διὰ τοῦτο ὅτι

ἄριστ' ἂν μοι δοκεῖς |liken; οὗτο ἐν τῷ παρόντι· καὶ  
conjecture

γὰρ δύνασαι ποιῆσαι.

Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· |will, plan... οἱ δὲ περὶ τούτου, ὦ Κροῖσε·

ἐγὼ γάρ σου |consider τὴν πρόσθεν |prosperity οἰκτίρω τέ

σε καὶ |repay ἥδη γυναῖκά τε ἔχειν ἣν εἶχες καὶ τὰς

|daughter ἀκούω γάρ σοι εἶναι, καὶ τοὺς φίλους καὶ

would be the greatest ruler in all the world, and that all their kings had met together and chosen me for their champion in the war, I undertook the generalship as though I were born to be the monarch of the world, for I did not know myself. I thought myself able to fight against you, you who are sprung from the seed of the gods, born of a royal line, trained in valour and virtue from your youth, while I—I believe that the first of my ancestors to reign won his freedom and his crown on the self-same day. For this dull ignorance of mine I see I am justly punished. But now at last, O Cyrus,” he cried, ”now I know myself. And tell me, do you think the god will still speak truth? Do you think that, knowing myself, I can be happy now? I ask you, because you of all men have it in your power to answer best. Happiness is yours to give.”

Cyrus answered, ”Give me time to deliberate, Croesus. I bear in mind your former happiness and I pity you. I give you back at once your wife and your daughters (for they tell me you have daughters), and your friends and your attendants; they are yours once more. And

*vocabulary***ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**βιοτή** life**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**εὐφροσύνη** happiness ~frenzy**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper,

henchman, servant ~therapy

**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**μακάριος** blessed**μαλακός** soft**μέτεμι** be among, go, follow ~ion**μετέχω** partake of**ὅποι** to which place**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon**τοῖνυν** well, then**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid**φροντίς** -τος (f) thought, care**χρήσιμος** useful

τοὺς θεράποντας καὶ τράπεζαν σὺν οἷαπερ ἐζήτε· μάχας  
 δέ σοι καὶ πολέμους ἀφαιρῶ. Μὰ Δία μηδὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ  
 Κροῖσος, σὺ ἐμοὶ ἔτι βουλεύου ἀποκρίνασθαι περὶ τῆς ἐμῆς  
 εὐδαιμονίας· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἤδη σοι λέγω, ἣν ταῦτά μοι ποιήσης  
 ἃ λέγεις, ὅτι ἦν ἄλλοι τε μακαριωτάτην ἐνόμιζον εἶναι  
 βιοτήν καὶ ἐγὼ συνεγίγνωσκον αὐτοῖς, ταύτην καὶ ἐγὼ  
 νῦν ἔχων διάξω. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Τίς δὴ ὁ ἔχων ταύτην  
 τὴν μακαρίαν βιοτήν; Ἡ ἐμὴ γυνή, εἶπεν, ὦ Κῦρε· ἐκείνη  
 γὰρ τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν καὶ τῶν μαλακῶν καὶ εὐφροσυνῶν  
 πασῶν ἐμοὶ τὸ ἴσον μετείχε, φροντίδων δὲ ὅπως ταῦτα  
 ἔσται καὶ πολέμου καὶ μάχης οὐ μετὴν αὐτῇ. οὕτω δὴ  
 καὶ σὺ δοκεῖς ἐμὲ κατασκευάζειν ὥσπερ ἐγὼ ἦν ἐφίλουν  
 μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων, ὥστε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἄλλα μοι δοκῶ  
 χαριστήρια ὀφειλήσειν. ἀκούσας δ' ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς λόγους  
 αὐτοῦ ἐθαύμασε μὲν τὴν εὐθυμίαν, ἦγε δὲ τὸ λοιπὸν ὅποι  
 καὶ αὐτὸς πορεύοιτο, εἴτε ἄρα καὶ χρήσιμόν τι νομίζων  
 αὐτὸν εἶναι εἴτε καὶ ἀσφαλέστερον οὕτως ἡγούμενος.



τοὺς |companion      καὶ |a table      σὺν οἷαπερ ἐξῆτε· μάχας  
 δέ σοι καὶ πολέμους |take away      Μὰ Δία μηδὲν |well, then ᾗ ὁ  
 Κροῖσος, σὺ ἐμοὶ ἔτι |  
 (mp) to de- |to separate; reject; (mp) |  
 liberate |answer, defend oneself  
 εὐδαιμονίας· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἤδη σοι λέγω, ἣν ταῦτά μοι ποιήσης  
 ἃ λέγεις, ὅτι ἦν ἄλλοι τε |blessed      |consider      cus-  
 |life      καὶ ἐγὼ |acknowledge;      αὐτοῖς, ταύτην καὶ ἐγὼ  
 |life      |pardon  
 νῦν ἔχων διάξω. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Τίς δὴ ὁ ἔχων ταύτην  
 τὴν |blessed      |life      , Ἡ ἐμὴ γυνή, εἶπεν, ὦ Κῦρε· ἐκείνη  
 γὰρ τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν καὶ τῶν |soft      καὶ |happiness  
 πασῶν ἐμοὶ τὸ |equal |partake of |thought, care      Ὡς ὅπως ταῦτα  
 ἔσται καὶ πολέμου καὶ μάχης οὐ μετὴν αὐτῇ. οὕτω δὴ  
 καὶ σὺ δοκεῖς ἐμὲ |equip, build      ὥσπερ ἐγὼ ἦν |love  
 μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων, ὥστε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἄλλα μοι δοκῶ  
 χαριστήρια |owe, should, if only -as δ' ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς λόγους  
 αὐτοῦ |marvel      μὲν τὴν εὐθυμίαν, ἦγε δὲ τὸ |left over |to which place  
 καὶ αὐτὸς πορεύοιτο, |if, whenever; ei- |useful      τι |consider      customary;  
 |ther/or      |believe  
 αὐτὸν εἶναι |if, when- |safe, easy, steady, οὕτως ἡγούμενος.  
 |ever; ei- |careful  
 |ther/or

yours it is to sit at your own table as you used to live. But battles and wars I must put out of your power.”

”Now by the gods above us,” cried Croesus, ”you need take no further thought about your answer: if you will do for me what you say, I shall live the life that all men called the happiest of lives, and I knew that they were right.” ”And who,” said Cyrus, ”who was it that lived that life of happiness?” ”My own wife,” said Croesus; ”she shared all my good things with me, my luxuries, my softest joys; but in the cares on which those joys were based, in war and battle and strife, she had no part or lot. Methinks, you will provide for me as I provided for her whom I loved beyond all others in the world, and I must needs send to Apollo again, and send thank-offerings.”

And as Cyrus listened he marvelled at the man’s contentedness of soul, and for the future wherever he went he took Croesus with him, either because he thought he might be useful or perhaps because he felt it was safer so.

*vocabulary***ἄμαξα** wagon**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**διαλαγχάνω** divide, share**διαλαμβάνω** distribute**ἐγκλίνω** (i) rest on ~incline**ἐκκλίνω** (i) turn away, back down,  
shun**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
state ~ballistic**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
~heresy**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe  
~hegemony**ἐπισκευάζω** get ready; repair**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief ~hegemony**θαμίζω** frequently do, go to**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
have sex**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
great**ὅπου** where**οὐδαμοῦ** nowhere**παραδείκνυμι** (ō) receive, admit**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake,  
associate with**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**στῖφος** -εος (n, 3) close array**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**ὕπηρετέω** serve**ὕπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later

## 7.3

Καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ καλέσας ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς φίλους καὶ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τοῦ στρατεύματος, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἔταξε τοὺς θησαυροὺς παραλαμβάνειν, τοὺς δ' ἐκέλευσεν ὅποσα παραδοίῃ Κροῖσος χρήματα, πρῶτον μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς ἐξελεῖν ὅποι' ἂν οἱ μάγοι ἐξηγῶνται, ἔπειτα τὰλλα χρήματα παραδεχομένους ἐν ζυγάστροις στήσαντας ἐφ' ἀμάξων ἐπισκευάσαι καὶ διαλαχόντας τὰς ἀμάξας κομίζειν ὅποιπερ ἂν αὐτοὶ πορεύωνται, ἵνα ὅπου καιρὸς εἴη διαλαμβάνοιεν ἕκαστοι τὰ ἄξια. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν.

Ὁ Δὲ Κῦρος καλέσας τινὰς τῶν παρόντων ὑπηρετῶν, Εἵπατέ μοι, ἔφη, ἐώρακέ τις ὑμῶν Ἀβραδάταν; θαυμάζω γάρ, ἔφη, ὅτι πρόσθεν θαμίζων ἐφ' ἡμᾶς νῦν οὐδαμοῦ φαίνεται. τῶν οὖν ὑπηρετῶν τις ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι Ὡ δέσποτα, οὐ ζῇ, ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἀπέθανεν ἐμβαλὼν τὸ ἄρμα εἰς τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους· οἱ δ' ἄλλοι πλὴν τῶν ἐταίρων αὐτοῦ ἐξέκλιναν, ὥς φασιν, ἐπεὶ τὸ στίφος

## 7.3

Καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δ' |the next; later

καλέσας ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς φίλους καὶ τοὺς |leader τοῦ

|army , τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν |arrange τοὺς |treasury

|receive, undertake, τοὺς δ' ἐκέλευσεν |as/how |hand over  
|associate with |many/great

Κροῖσος |possession, ὅτον μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς |pick, steal; dedicate;  
|money, busi- |destroy

|whatever kind <sup>ness</sup> μάγοι |lead forth; set ἔπειτα τὰλλα |possession, money,  
|out, describe |business

παραδεχομένους ἐν ζυγαστροῖς στήσαντας ἐφ' |wagon

|get ready; repair αἱ |divide, share τὰς |wagon |tend; bring  
|back/away; (mp)

ὅποιπερ ἂν αὐτοὶ πορεύωνται, ἵνα |where καίρος εἴη

|distribute ἕκαστοι τὰ |worthy ἰ μὲν δὲ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν.

Ὁ Δὲ Κῦρος καλέσας τινὰς τῶν παρόντων ὑπηρετῶν,

Εἵπατέ μοι, ἔφη, ἑώρακέ τις ὑμῶν Ἀβραδάταν; |marvel

γάρ, ἔφη, ὅτι πρόσθεν |frequently δό,γό,τοῖ - νῦν |nowhere

φαίνεται. τῶν οὖν ὑπηρετῶν τις |to separate; reject; (mp) answer, de-  
|fend oneself

|master, , οὐ ζῇ, ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἀπέθανεν |throw in; inspire  
|despot

|chariot ἰς τοὺς Αἰγυπτίους· οἱ δ' ἄλλοι |except γῶν ἐταίρων

αὐτοῦ ἐξέκλιναν, ὥς φασιν, ἐπεὶ τὸ |close  
|array

## 7.3

So for that night they rested. But the next day Cyrus called his friends and generals together and told some to make an inventory of their treasures and others to receive all the wealth that Croesus brought in. First they were to set aside for the gods all that the Persian priests thought fit, and then store the rest in coffer, weight them, and pack them on waggon, distributing the waggons by lot to take with them on the march, so that they could receive their proper share at any convenient time. So they set about the work.

Then Cyrus called some of his squires and said:

"Tell me, have any of you seen Abradatas? I wonder that he who used to come to me so often is nowhere to be found."

Then one of the squires made answer, "My lord, he is dead: he fell in the battle, charging straight into the Egyptian ranks: the rest, all but his own companions, swerved before their

*vocabulary*

ἄγέλη herd ~demagogue  
 ἀναιρέω take up ~heresy  
 ἀναπηδάω leap up, start up  
 ἄρμαμαξα Persian carriage  
 γόνυ γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon  
 δακρύω weep  
 ἐνθάδε here, hither  
 ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
 ἐπισφάζω slaughter on, as well  
 ἕπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
 εὐνοῦχος eunuch  
 θεράπων -οντος (m, 3) helper, henchman, servant ~therapy

θήκη chest, grave  
 κόσμημα ornament  
 λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
 μεταδιώκω pursue  
 μηρός thigh, femur  
 ὅποι to which place  
 ὀρύσσω dig  
 πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition  
 παίζω play ~pediatrician  
 παίω hit  
 ποῖ whither? how long?  
 πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds  
 τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle  
 χαμαί on/near the ground  
 χίλιοι (ti) thousand ~kilo-

εἶδον τὸ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων. καὶ νῦν γε, ἔφη, λέγεται αὐτοῦ ἡ γυνὴ ἀνελομένη τὸν νεκρὸν καὶ ἐνθεμένη εἰς τὴν ἀρμάμαξαν, ἐν ἥπερ αὐτὴ ὠχεῖτο, προσκεκομικέναι αὐτὸν ἐνθάδε ποιὸς πρὸς τὸν Πακτωλὸν ποταμόν. καὶ τοὺς μὲν εὐνούχους καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας αὐτοῦ ὀρύττειν φασὶν ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς θήκην τῷ τελευτήσαντι· τὴν δὲ γυναῖκα λέγουσιν ὥς κάθηται χαμαὶ κεκοσμηκυῖα οἷς εἶχε τὸν ἄνδρα, τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ ἔχουσα ἐπὶ τοῖς γόνασι. ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Κῦρος ἐπαίσατο ἄρα τὸν μηρὸν καὶ εὐθὺς ἀναπηδήσας ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον λαβὼν χιλίους ἱππέας ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τὸ πάθος. Γαδάταν δὲ καὶ Γωβρύαν ἐκέλευσεν ὅ τι δύναιντο λαβόντας καλὸν κόσμημα ἀνδρὶ φίλῳ καὶ ἀγαθῷ τετελευτηκότι μεταδιώκειν· καὶ ὅστις εἶχε τὰς ἐπομένας ἀγέλας, καὶ βοῦς καὶ ἵππους εἶπε τούτῳ καὶ ἅμα πρόβατα πολλὰ ἐλαύνειν ὅποι ἂν αὐτὸν πυνθάνηται ὄντα, ὥς ἐπισφαγείῃ τῷ Ἀβραδάτῃ.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδε τὴν γυναῖκα χαμαὶ καθημένην καὶ τὸν νεκρὸν κείμενον, ἐδάκρυσέ τε ἐπὶ τῷ πάθει καὶ εἶπε· φεῦ, ὦ



εἶδον τὸ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων. καὶ νῦν γε, ἔφη, λέγεται  
 αὐτοῦ ἡ γυνή |take up τὸν νεκρὸν καὶ |load; mp:˘s  
 |take to heart  
 τὴν |Persian , ἐν ἧπερ αὐτὴ ὤχεϊτο, προσκεκομκέναι  
 |carriage  
 αὐτὸν |here, ποι πρὸς τὸν Πακτωλὸν ποταμόν. καὶ  
 |hither  
 τοὺς μὲν |eunuch καὶ τοὺς |companion αὐτοῦ |dig  
 φασὶν ἐπὶ |neck, crest on a|chest, τῷ |bring about, τὴν δὲ  
 |helmet, hilltop |grave |finish  
 γυναιῖκα λέγουσιν ὡς |sit |on the ground ,ηκυῖα οἷς εἶχε  
 τὸν ἄνδρα, τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ ἔχουσα ἐπὶ τοῖς |knee  
 ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Κῦρος ἐπαίσατο ἄρα τὸν |thigh καὶ  
 εὐθὺς |leap up, start up...τὸν ἵππον λαβὼν χιλίους |rider  
 ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τὸ |an experience, pas- δὲ καὶ Γωβρύαν ἐκέλευσεν  
 |sion, condition  
 ὅ τι δύναιτο λαβόντας καλὸν |ornament ἀνδρὶ φίλῳ καὶ  
 ἀγαθῷ |bring about, |pursue καὶ ὅστις εἶχε τὰς  
 |finish  
 ἐπομένας |herd , καὶ βοῦς καὶ ἵππους εἶπε τούτῳ καὶ ἅμα  
 |cattle, flocks, ἢ ἐλαύνειν |to which place` |learn, inquire, ὅντα,  
 |herds |(+gen) hear of  
 ὡς |slaughter on, τῷ Ἀβραδάτῃ.  
 |as well  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδε τὴν γυναιῖκα |on the|sit καὶ τὸν νεκρὸν  
 |ground  
 κείμενον, |weep τε ἐπὶ τῷ |an experience, pas- ῥεῦ, ὦ  
 |sion, condition

close array. And now," he added, "we hear that his wife has found his body and laid it in her own car, and has brought it here to the banks of the Pactolus. Her chamberlains and her attendants are digging a grave for the dead man upon a hill, and she, they say, has put her fairest raiment on him and her jewels, and she is seated on the ground with his head upon her knees."

Then Cyrus smote his hand upon his thigh and leapt up and sprang to horse, galloping to the place of sorrow, with a thousand troopers at his back. He bade Gadatas and Gobryas take what jewels they could find to honour the dear friend and brave warrior who had fallen, and follow with all speed: and he bade the keepers of the herds, the cattle, and the horses drive up their flocks wherever they heard he was, that he might sacrifice on the grave.

But when he saw Pantheia seated on the ground and the dead man lying there, the tears ran down his cheeks and he cried:

"O Noble

*vocabulary***ἀλγέω** suffer ~analgesic**ἀποκόπτω** cut off**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail**δείκνυμι** (ὄ) show, point out**δεξιόομαι** salute, greet**διακελεύομαι** give orders to, encourage**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐπακολουθέω** chase; accrue**ἐπικοσμέω** decorate; celebrate**ἥκιστος** least; above all**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**παρακάθημαι** sit near**παρακελεύομαι** recommend,  
encourage**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**σιωπή** silence**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter  
~diphthong**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

ἀγαθὴ καὶ πιστὴ ψυχὴ, οἷχῃ δὴ ἀπολιπὼν ἡμᾶς; καὶ ἅμα ἐδεξιούτο αὐτὸν καὶ ἡ χεὶρ τοῦ νεκροῦ ἐπηκολούθησεν· ἀπεκέκοπτο γὰρ κοπίδι ὑπὸ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων. ὁ δὲ ἰδὼν πολὺν ἔτι μᾶλλον ἤλγησε· καὶ ἡ γυνὴ δὲ ἀνωδύρατο καὶ δεξαμένη δὴ παρὰ τοῦ Κύρου ἐφίλησέ τε τὴν χεῖρα καὶ πάλιν ὡς οἶόν τ' ἦν προσήρμοσε, καὶ εἶπε· Καὶ τὰλλά τοι, ὦ Κῦρε, οὕτως ἔχει· ἀλλὰ τί δεῖ σε ὀράν; καὶ ταῦτα, ἔφη, οἶδ' ὅτι δι' ἐμὲ οὐχ ἥκιστα ἔπαθεν, ἴσως δὲ καὶ διὰ σέ, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδὲν ἦττον. ἐγὼ τε γὰρ ἡ μῶρα πολλὰ διεκελευόμην αὐτῷ οὕτω ποιεῖν, ὅπως σοι φίλος ἄξιος γενήσοιτο· αὐτός τε οἶδ' ὅτι οὗτος οὐ τοῦτο ἐνενόει ὅ τι πείσοιτο, ἀλλὰ τί ἂν σοι ποιήσας χαρίσαιοτο. καὶ γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη, αὐτὸς μὲν ἀμέμπτως τετελεύτηκεν, ἐγὼ δ' ἡ παρακελευομένη ζῶσα παρακάθημαι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος χρόνον μὲν τινα σιωπῇ κατεδάκρυσεν, ἔπειτα δὲ ἐφθέγγατο· Ἄλλ' οὗτος μὲν δῆ, ὦ γύναι, ἔχει τὸ κάλλιστον τέλος· νικῶν γὰρ τετελεύτηκε· σὺ δὲ λαβοῦσα τοῖσδε ἐπικόσμει αὐτὸν τοῖς παρ' ἐμοῦ· παρῇν δὲ ὁ Γωβρύας καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας πολὺν καὶ

ἀγαθὴ καὶ |faith- |soul; , |come, ᾧ ἱπολιπὼν ἡμᾶς; καὶ ἅμα  
 ful; |life  
 |salute, αὐτοῦ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ τοῦ |corpse |chase; accrue  
 greet  
 |cut off γὰρ κοπίδι ὑπὸ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων. ὁ δὲ ἰδὼν  
 πολὺ ἔτι μᾶλλον |suffer καὶ ἡ γυνὴ δὲ ἀνωδύρατο καὶ  
 δεξαμένη δὴ παρὰ τοῦ Κύρου |love τε τὴν χεῖρα καὶ  
 πάλιν ὡς οἶόν τ' ἦν προσήρμοσε, καὶ εἶπε· Καὶ τὰλλά  
 τοι, ὦ Κῦρε, οὕτως ἔχει· ἀλλὰ τί δεῖ σε ὁρᾶν; καὶ ταῦτα,  
 ἔφη, οἶδ' ὅτι δι' ἐμὲ οὐχ |least; ἔπαθεν, |equal δὲ καὶ διὰ  
 above  
 σέ, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδὲν ἡττον· |all ἐγὼ τε γὰρ ἡ μῶρα πολλὰ  
 διεκελευόμεν ἀντὶ οὗτω ποιεῖν, ὅπως σοι φίλος |worthy  
 γενήσοιτο· αὐτός τε οἶδ' ὅτι οὗτος οὐ τοῦτο |consider ὅ τι  
 πείσοιτο, ἀλλὰ τί ἂν σοι ποιήσας |gratify καὶ γὰρ  
 οὖν, ἔφη, αὐτὸς μὲν ἀμέμπτως |bring about, ἐγὼ δ' ἡ  
 finish  
 |recommend, ζῶσα |sit near . καὶ ὁ Κῦρος χρόνον  
 encourage  
 μὲν τινα |silence κατεδάκρυσεν, ἔπειτα δὲ |make a sound, ἔτα  
 οὗτος μὲν δὴ, ὦ γύναι, ἔχει τὸ κάλλιστον |end νικῶν γὰρ  
 |bring about, σὺ δὲ λαβοῦσα τοῖσδε |decorate; αὐτὸν τοῖς  
 finish |celebrate  
 παρ' ἐμοῦ· παρὴν δὲ ὁ Γωβρύας καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας πολὺν καὶ

and loyal spirit, have you gone from us?"

Then he took the dead man by the hand, but the hand came away with his own: it had been hacked by an Egyptian blade. And when he saw that, his sorrow grew, and Pantheia sobbed aloud and took the hand from Cyrus and kissed it and laid it in its place, as best she could, and said:

"It is all like that, Cyrus. But why should you see it?" And presently she said, "All this, I know, he suffered for my sake, and for yours too, Cyrus, perhaps as much. I was a fool: I urged him so to bear himself as became a faithful friend of yours, and he, I know, he never thought once of his own safety, but only of what he might do to show his gratitude. Now he has fallen, without a stain upon his valour: and I, who urged him, I live on to sit beside his grave."

And Cyrus wept silently for a while, and then he said:

"Lady, his end was the noblest and the fairest that could be: he died in the hour of victory. Take these gifts that I have brought and adorn him."

For now Gobryas and Gadatas

*vocabulary*

**ἀκινάκης** -ου (m, 1) Persian short sword  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**ἄτιμος** (ι) without honor  
**δηλώ** show, disclose  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἐννυμι** (ὅ) clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπισφάζω** slaughter on, as well  
**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch  
**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness  
**ἰκετεύω** approach to beg  
**ἱμάτιον** toga, cloth  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κατοικτείρω** have mercy, compassion

**κατοικτείρω** have mercy, compassion  
**κλαίω** weep  
**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic  
**μνημα** -τος (n, 3) reminder, memorial  
 ~mnemonic  
**ὀδύρομαι** (ὅ) lament ~anodyne  
**ὅποι** to which place  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas  
**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**παραμένω** stay with ~remain  
**στέρομαι** lack, lose  
**συνίστημι** unite; confront in battle  
 ~station  
**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation  
**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt  
**τροφός** (f) wet nurse ~atrophy  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage  
**χόω** heap up  
**χρήζω** need ~chresard  
**χώομαι** be troubled, angered

καλὸν κόσμον φέροντες· ἔπειτα δ', ἔφη, ἴσθι ὅτι οὐδὲ τὰ ἄλλα ἄτιμος ἔσται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ μνήμα πολλοὶ χάσουσιν ἀξίως ἡμῶν καὶ ἐπισφαγήσεται αὐτῷ ὅσα εἰκὸς ἀνδρὶ ἀγαθῷ. καὶ σὺ δ', ἔφη, οὐκ ἔρημος ἔσῃ, ἀλλ' ἐγὼ σε καὶ σωφροσύνης ἔνεκα καὶ πάσης ἀρετῆς καὶ τὰλλα τιμήσω καὶ συστήσω ὅστις ἀποκομιεῖ σε ὅποι ἂν αὐτῇ ἐθέλῃς· μόνον, ἔφη, δήλωσον πρὸς ἐμὲ πρὸς ὄντινα χρήξεις κομισθῆναι. καὶ ἡ Πάνθεια εἶπεν· ἀλλὰ θάρρει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐ μὴ σε κρύψω πρὸς ὄντινα βούλομαι ἀφικέσθαι. ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀπήει, κατοικτίρων τὴν τε γυναῖκα οἷον ἀνδρὸς στέροιτο καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα οἷαν γυναῖκα καταλιπὼν οὐκέτ' ὄψοιτο. ἡ δὲ γυνὴ τοὺς μὲν εὐνούχους ἐκέλευσεν ἀποσθῆναι, ἕως ἄν, ἔφη, τόνδ' ἐγὼ ὀδύρωμαι ὥς βούλομαι· τῇ δὲ τροφῷ εἶπε παραμένειν, καὶ ἐπέταξεν αὐτῇ, ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνῃ, περικαλύψαι αὐτήν τε καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα ἐνὶ ἱματίῳ. ἡ δὲ τροφὸς πολλὰ ἱκετεύουσα μὴ ποιεῖν τοῦτο, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲν ἦνυτε καὶ χαλεπαίνουσιν ἑώρα, ἐκάθητο κλαίονσα. ἡ δὲ ἀκινάκην πάλαι παρεσκευασμένον



καλὸν κόσμον φέροντες· ἔπειτα δ', ἔφη, ἴσθι ὅτι οὐδὲ  
 τὰ ἄλλα |without ἔσται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ |reminder, ὅλλοι  
 |honor |memorial  
 χώσουσιν ἀξίως ἡμῶν καὶ |slaughter on, as αὐτῷ ὅσα |likely  
 |well  
 ἀνδρὶ ἀγαθῷ. καὶ σὺ δ', ἔφη, οὐκ ἔρημος ἔσῃ, ἀλλ'  
 ἐγὼ σε καὶ |discretion, ἔνεκα καὶ πάσης |excellence αἰ  
 |moderation  
 τὰλλα |honor καὶ |unite; confront. us ἀποκομιεῖ σε |to which place  
 |in battle  
 ἂν αὐτῇ ἐθέλῃς· μόνον, ἔφη, |show, πρὸς ἐμὲ πρὸς  
 |disclose  
 ὄντινα |need |tend; bring back/away; Τάνθεια εἶπεν· ἀλλὰ  
 |(mp) travel  
 θάρρει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐ μὴ σε |hide, πρὸς ὄντινα  
 |cover  
 βούλομαι ἀφικέσθαι. ὁ μὲν δὲ ταῦτ' εἰπὼν |be absent, go away,  
 |return  
 κατοικτίρων τήν τε γυναῖκα οἴου ἀνδρὸς |lack, lose καὶ  
 τὸν ἄνδρα οἶαν γυναῖκα |leave behind, οὐκέτ' ὄψοιτο. ἡ  
 |abandon  
 δὲ γυνὴ τοὺς μὲν |eunuch ἐκέλευσεν ἀποστήναι, ἕως  
 ἂν, ἔφη, τόνδ' ἐγὼ |lament ὡς βούλομαι· τῇ δὲ |wet nurse  
 εἶπε |stay with , καὶ |enjoin; αὐτῇ, |when, ἀποθάνῃ,  
 |place near |after  
 περικαλύψαι αὐτήν τε καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα ἐνὶ |toga, ἡ δὲ  
 |cloth  
 |wet nurse .πολλὰ |approach to beg, ποιεῖν τοῦτο, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲν  
 |clothe in .ὡς |be violent, rage ἑώρα, |sit |weep . ἡ δὲ  
 |Persian πάλαι παρεσκευασμένον  
 |short  
 |sword

appeared with store of jewels and rich apparel. "He shall not lack for honour," Cyrus said; "many hands will raise his monument: it shall be a royal one; and we will offer such sacrifice as befits a hero. And you, lady," he added, "you shall not be left desolate. I reverence your chastity and your nobleness, and I will give you a guardian to lead you whithersoever you choose, if you will but tell me to whom you wish to go."

And Pantheia answered:

"Be at rest, Cyrus, I will not hide from you to whom I long to go."

Therewith Cyrus took his leave of her and went, pitying from his heart the woman who had lost so brave a husband, and the dead man in his grave, taken from so sweet a wife, never to see her more. Then Pantheia bade her chamberlains stand aside "until," she said, "I have wept over him as I would." But she made her nurse stay with her and she said:

"Nurse, when I am dead, cover us with the same cloak." And the nurse entreated and besought her, but she could not move her, and when she saw that she did but vex her mistress, she sat down and wept in silence. Then Pantheia took the scimitar, that had been

*vocabulary***ἀγάζω** exalt, adore**ἀκινάκης** -ου (m, 1) Persian short sword**ἄμφω** both ~amphora**ἄνω** (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea**ἀποσφάζω** cut the throat**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter**εἰκός** likely**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out ~plectrum**ἐπιγράφω** scratch, graze ~photograph**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**μέχρι** as far as, until**μνήμα** -τος (n, 3) reminder, memorial ~mnemonic**πάθος** -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex**πολεμόω** make an enemy of ~polemic**προσδοκάω** expect**σπάω** draw, pull out, pluck ~spatula**στασιάζω** revolt, be divided**στέρνον** breast, chest, seat of feelings ~sternum**στήλη** post, column**τροφός** (f) wet nurse ~atrophy**ὑπερμεγέθης** very difficult**χόω** heap up**χώομαι** be troubled, angered

σπασαμένη σφάττει ἐαυτὴν καὶ ἐπιθείσα ἐπὶ τὰ στέρνα τοῦ ἀνδρὸς τὴν ἐαυτῆς κεφαλὴν ἀπέθνησκεν. ἡ δὲ τροφὸς ἀνωλοφύρατό τε καὶ περιεκάλυπτεν ἄμφω ὥσπερ ἡ Πάνθεια ἐπέστειλεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὡς ᾗσθητο τὸ ἔργον τῆς γυναικὸς, ἐκπλαγεὶς ἵεται, εἴ τι δύναιτο βοηθῆσαι. οἱ δὲ εὐνούχοι ἰδόντες τὸ γεγενημένον, τρεῖς ὄντες σπασάμενοι κακῆνοι τοὺς ἀκινάκας ἀποσφάττονται οὐπερ ἔταξεν αὐτοὺς ἐστηκότες. καὶ νῦν τὸ μνήμα μέχρι τοῦ νῦν τῶν εὐνούχων κεχῶσθαι λέγεται· καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ ἄνω στήλῃ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ τῆς γυναικὸς ἐπιγεγράφθαι φασὶ τὰ ὀνόματα, Σύρια γράμματα, κάτω δὲ εἶναι τρεῖς λέγουσι στήλας καὶ ἐπιγεγράφθαι ΣΚΗΠΤΟΥΧΩΝ. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὡς ἐπλησίασε τῷ πάθει ἀγασθεὶς τε τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ κατολοφυράμενος ἀπῆει· καὶ τούτων μὲν ἡ εἰκὸς ἐπεμελήθη ὡς τύχοιεν πάντων τῶν καλῶν, καὶ τὸ μνήμα ὑπερμέγεθες ἐχώσθη, ὥς φασιν.

#### 7.4

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου στασιάζοντες οἱ Κᾶρες καὶ πολεμοῦντες

|draw, pull out φάττει ἐαυτὴν καὶ |put on, apply; (mid)|chest  
 |undertake, attack  
 τοῦ ἀνδρὸς τὴν ἐαυτῆς κεφαλὴν ἀπέθνησκεν. ἡ δὲ  
 |wet nurse ὠλοφύρατό τε καὶ περιεκάλυπτεν ἄμφω ὥσπερ  
 ἡ Πάνθεια |send to, order ἔ δὲ Κῦρος ὡς |perceive τὸ ἔργον τῆς  
 γυναικός, |panic, βέεται, εἴ τι δύναιτο βοηθῆσαι. οἱ δὲ  
 |knocked out  
 |eunuch ἰδόντες τὸ γεγεννημένον, τρεῖς ὄντες |draw, pull out  
 κἀκεῖνοι τοὺς |Persian |cut the throat οὐπερ ἔταξεν  
 |short  
 αὐτοὺς ἐστηκότες. καὶ νῦν τὸ |reminder|as far as, until ὅν  
 |memorial  
 |eunuch ἵσθαι λέγεται· καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ ἄνω τοῦ  
 |post, column καὶ τῆς γυναικός |graze ἵματα,  
 Σύρια, κατὰ |writing, letter ρεῖς λέγουσι καὶ  
 |post, column |graze ἵματα· ἔ δὲ Κῦρος ὡς  
 τῷ |bring/be near; an |exalt, ἀποτολοφυράμενος  
 |have sex |experience, adore  
 καὶ τούτων μὲν |be absent, go ὡς τὴν  
 |passion, return  
 |take care of, oversee ὅν καλῶν, καὶ |condition |reminder, memorial  
 |very difficult |heap up

## 7.4

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου |revolt, be divided ἔ Κᾶρες καὶ πολεμοῦντες

ready for her so long, and drew it across her throat, and dropped her head upon her husband's breast and died. And the nurse cried bitterly, but she covered the two with one cloak as her mistress had bidden her.

And when Cyrus heard what Pantheia had done he rushed out in horror to see if he could save her. And when the three chamberlains saw what had happened they drew their own scimitars and killed themselves, there where she had bidden them stand. [16, 17] And when Cyrus came to that place of sorrow, he looked with wonder and reverence on the woman, and wept for her and went his way and saw that all due honour was paid to those who lay there dead, and a mighty sepulchre was raised above them, mightier, men say, than had been seen in all the world before.

#### 7.4

After this the Carians, who were always at war and strife

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιστασιάζω** form a party against  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἀπόλεμος** unwarlike ~polemic  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**ἄφρων** senseless, unthinking ~frenzy  
**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion  
**ἐκάτερος** each of two  
**ἐπικαλέω** call upon  
**ἐπιπίπτω** fall upon, attack  
**ἐπιχώριος** native  
**ἐρείπω** pull down; fall ~reap

**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive  
**κρίος** (ι) ram  
**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἴκησις** -εως (f) habitation  
**ὅπότερος** which of two, either of two  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume  
**πώποτε** never  
**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian  
 governor  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἅτε τὰς οἰκήσεις ἔχοντες ἐν ἐχυροῖς  
 χωρίοις, ἑκάτεροι ἐπεκαλοῦντο τὸν Κῦρον. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
 αὐτὸς μὲν μένων ἐν Σάρδεσι μηχανὰς ἐποιεῖτο καὶ κριούς,  
 ὥς τῶν μὴ πειθομένων ἐρεύψων τὰ τείχη, Ἀδούσιον δὲ  
 ἄνδρα Πέρσῃν καὶ τᾶλλα οὐκ ἄφρονα οὐδ' ἀπόλεμον,  
 καὶ πάνυ δὴ εὖχαριν, πέμπει ἐπὶ τὴν Καρίαν, στράτευμα  
 δούς· καὶ Κίλικες δὲ καὶ Κύπριοι πάνυ προθύμως αὐτῷ  
 συνεστράτευσαν. ὧν ἔνεκα οὐδ' ἔπεμψε πώποτε Πέρσῃν  
 σατράπην οὔτε Κιλικῶν οὔτε Κυπρίων, ἀλλ' ἦρκουν  
 αὐτῷ αἰεὶ οἱ ἐπιχώριοι βασιλεύοντες· δασμὸν μέντοι  
 ἐλάμβανε καὶ στρατιᾶς ὁπότε δέοιτο ἐπήγγελλεν αὐτοῖς.  
 ὁ δὲ Ἀδούσιος ἄγων τὸ στράτευμα ἐπὶ τὴν Καρίαν  
 ἦλθε, καὶ ἀπ' ἀμφοτέρων τῶν Καρῶν παρήσαν πρὸς  
 αὐτὸν ἔτοιμοι ὄντες δέχεσθαι εἰς τὰ τείχη ἐπὶ κακῷ  
 τῶν ἀντιστασιαζόντων· ὁ δὲ Ἀδούσιος πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους  
 ταῦτ' ἐποίει· δικαιότερά τε ἔφη λέγειν τούτους ὁποτέρους  
 διαλέγοιτο, λαθεῖν τε ἔφη δεῖν τοὺς ἐναντίους φίλους σφᾶς  
 γενομένους, ὥς δὴ οὕτως ἂν μᾶλλον ἐπιπεσῶν



πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἅτε τὰς οἰκήσεις ἔχοντες ἐν <sup>|secure;</sup>  
<sup>|persuasive</sup>

<sup>|area;</sup> , <sup>|each of two</sup> |call upon τὸν Κῦρον. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος

<sup>|down-</sup>  
<sup>|wards</sup>

αὐτὸς μὲν μένων ἐν Σάρδεσι <sup>|machine; mecha-</sup>το καὶ <sup>|ram</sup> ,  
<sup>|nism, way</sup>

ὥς τῶν μὴ πειθομένων <sup>|pull down; fall</sup> εἶχη, Ἀδούσιον δὲ

ἄνδρα Πέρσῃν καὶ τὰλλα οὐκ <sup>|senseless,</sup> ὕν-<sup>|unwarlike</sup> ,  
<sup>|thinking</sup>

καὶ <sup>|altogether, very</sup> -ιν, πέμπει ἐπὶ τὴν Καρίαν, <sup>|army</sup>

δούς· καὶ Κίλικες δὲ καὶ Κύπριοι <sup>|alto-</sup> <sup>|willing,</sup> αὐτῷ  
<sup>|gether,</sup> <sup>|eager</sup>

<sup>|join in an expedi-</sup> ὧν ἔνεκα οὐδ' ἔπεμψε <sup>|very</sup> <sup>|never</sup> Πέρσῃν  
<sup>|tion</sup>

<sup>|satrap</sup> οὔτε Κιλικῶν οὔτε Κυπρίων, ἀλλ' <sup>|satisfy; ward off, de-</sup>  
<sup>|fend; suffice</sup>

αὐτῷ αἰεὶ οἱ <sup>|native</sup> <sup>|be king</sup> <sup>|portion,</sup> <sup>|however</sup>  
<sup>|tax, tribute</sup>

ἐλάμβανε καὶ <sup>|army</sup> <sup>|when</sup> δέοιτο ἐπήγγελλεν αὐτοῖς.

ὁ δὲ Ἀδούσιος ἄγων τὸ <sup>|army</sup> ἐπὶ τὴν Καρίαν

ἦλθε, καὶ ἀπ' ἀμφοτέρων τῶν Καρῶν παρήσαν πρὸς

αὐτὸν ἔτοιμοι ὄντες δέχεσθαι εἰς τὰ τεῖχη ἐπὶ κακῷ

τῶν <sup>|form a party against</sup> ὁ δὲ Ἀδούσιος πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους

ταῦτ' ἐποίει· δικαιοτέρα τε ἔφη λέγειν τούτους <sup>|which of two,</sup>  
<sup>|either of two</sup>

<sup>|go through,</sup> <sup>|escape</sup> <sup>|notice;</sup> ἐν τοῖς <sup>|opposite</sup> φίλους σφᾶς  
<sup>|debate</sup> <sup>| (mp+gen) forget</sup>

γενομένους, ὥς δὴ οὕτως ἂν μάλλον <sup>|fall upon, attack</sup>

with one another, because their dwellings were fortified, sent to Cyrus and asked for aid. Cyrus himself was unwilling to leave Sardis, where he was having engines of artillery made and battering-rams to overthrow the walls of those who would not listen to him. But he sent Adousius, a Persian, in his place, a man of sound judgment and a stout soldier and withal a person of winning presence. He gave him an army; and the Cilicians and Cypriotes were very ready to serve under him. That was why Cyrus never sent a Persian satrap to govern either Cilicia or Cyprus; he was always satisfied with the native kings; only he exacted tribute and levied troops whenever he needed them.

So Adousius took his army and marched into Caria, where he was met by the men of both parties, ready to receive him inside their walls to the detriment of their opponents. Adousius treated each in exactly the same way, he told whichever side was pleading that he thought their case was just, but it was essential that the others should not realise he was their friend, "for thus, you perceive, I will take them unprepared whenever I attack."

He insisted

*vocabulary***ἄδεής** (ἄ) fearless ~Deimos**ἄδολος** honest, genuine**ἀπαράσκευος** unprepared**ἀσφάλεια** safeguard**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with**δείκνυμι** (ὕ) show, point out**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**εἰσελάύνω** drive home; land ~elastic**εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to ~jet**ἐκάτερος** each of two**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious; vital**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve**καθέζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up**λάθρα** secretly**ὄμνυμι** (ὕ) swear**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with**Πέρσης** Persian**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis**τοιόσδε** such**φιλικός** friendly

ἀπαρασκεύοις τοῖς ἐναντίοις. πιστὰ δ' ἡξίου γενέσθαι, καὶ τοὺς μὲν Κᾶρας ὁμόσαι ἀδόλως τε δέξεσθαι εἰς τὰ τεῖχη σφᾶς καὶ ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ τῷ Κύρου καὶ Περσῶν· αὐτὸς δὲ ὁμόσαι θέλειν ἀδόλως εἰσιέναι εἰς τὰ τεῖχη καὶ ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ τῶν δεχομένων. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας ἀμφοτέροις λάθρα ἑκατέρων νύκτα συνέθετο τὴν αὐτήν, καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ εἰσήλασέ τε εἰς τὰ τεῖχη καὶ παρέλαβε τὰ ἐρύματα ἀμφοτέρων. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ καθεζόμενος εἰς τὸ μέσον σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἐκάλεσεν ἑκατέρων τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους. οἱ δὲ ἰδόντες ἀλλήλους ἠχθέσθησαν, νομίζοντες ἐξηπατησθαι ἀμφοτέροι. ὁ μὲντοι Ἀδούσιος ἔλεξε τοιάδε· Ἐγὼ ὑμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὥμοσα ἀδόλως εἰσιέναι εἰς τὰ τεῖχη καὶ ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ τῶν δεχομένων. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἀπολῶ ὅποτέρους ὑμῶν, νομίζω ἐπὶ κακῷ εἰσεληλυθέναι Καρῶν· ἣν δὲ εἰρήνην ὑμῖν ποιήσω καὶ ἀσφάλειαν ἐργάζεσθαι ἀμφοτέροις τὴν γῆν, νομίζω ὑμῖν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ παρεῖναι. νῦν οὖν χρὴ ἀπὸ τῆσδε τῆς ἡμέρας ἐπιμύγνυσθαι τε ἀλλήλοις φιλικῶς, ἐργάζεσθαι τε τὴν γῆν ἀδεῶς, διδόναι τε τέκνα καὶ

|unprepared τοῖς |opposite |faithful; |consider wor-<sup>αι</sup>,  
 trustwor-<sup>thy</sup> |thy, fitting  
 καὶ τοὺς μὲν Κᾶρας ὁμόσαι |honest, τε δέξεσθαι εἰς τὰ  
 |genuine  
 τείχη σφᾶς καὶ ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ τῷ Κύρου καὶ Περσῶν· αὐτὸς  
 δὲ ὁμόσαι θέλειν |honest, εἰσιέναι εἰς τὰ τείχη καὶ ἐπ'  
 |genuine  
 ἀγαθῷ τῶν δεχομένων. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας ἀμφοτέροις  
 |secretly |each of two λύκτα |hearken, mark αὐτήν, καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ  
 |drive home; land τὰ τείχη καὶ |receive, under-|protection  
 take, associate  
 ἀμφοτέρων. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ |act: set, seat; pass: τὸ μέσον  
 |sit down, sit up  
 σὺν τῇ |army ἐκάλεσεν |each of two τοὺς |at a fitting time; |  
 |serious; vital  
 δὲ ἰδόντες ἀλλήλους |be burdened with ῥιζόντες |trick, cheat  
 ἀμφότεροι. ὁ |however δούσιος ἔλεξε |such Ἐγὼ ὑμῖν, ὦ  
 ἄνδρες, ὥμοσα |honest, εἰσιέναι εἰς τὰ τείχη καὶ ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ  
 |genuine  
 τῶν δεχομένων. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἀπολω |which of two, ὧν,  
 |either of two  
 νομίζω ἐπὶ κακῷ εἰσεληλυθέναι Καρῶν· ἣν δὲ |peace ὑμῖν  
 ποιήσω καὶ |safeguard |work ἀμφοτέροις τὴν γῆν,  
 νομίζω ὑμῖν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ παρῆναι. νῦν οὖν |must, |τὸ τῆσδε  
 |should  
 τῆς ἡμέρας ἐπιμίγνυσθαι τε ἀλλήλοις |friendly |work  
 τε τὴν γῆν |fearless, διδόναι τε |child καὶ

they should give him pledges of good faith, and the Carians had to swear they would receive him without fraud or guile within their walls and for the welfare of Cyrus and the Persians; and on his side he was willing to swear that he would enter without fraud or guile himself and for the welfare of those who received him. Having imposed these terms on either party without the knowledge of the other, he fixed on the same night with both, entered the walls, and had the strongholds of both parties in his hands. At break of day he took his place in the midst with his army, and sent for the leading men on either side. Thus confronted with each other they were more than a little vexed, and both imagined they had been cheated. However, Adousius began:

"Gentlemen, I took an oath to you that I would enter your walls without fraud or guile and for the welfare of those who received me. Now if I am forced to destroy either of you, I am persuaded I shall have entered to the detriment of the Carians. But if I give you peace, so that you can till your lands in safety, I imagine I shall have come for your welfare. Therefore from this day forwards you must meet on friendly terms, cultivate your fields without fear, give your children to each

*vocabulary***ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄλλοσε** elsewhere ~alien**ἀνοίγνυμι** (ὄ) open**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet**ἐορτή** holiday, feast**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἔρωτάω** ask about something**εὐφροσύνη** happiness ~frenzy**ἵκετεύω** approach to beg**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κοινός** communal, ordinary**μεστός** full**μηχάνημα** -τος (n, 3) machine; mechanism, way**προσδέω** bind also; need also**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion**προσίημι** be allowed near**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**φρουρός** watcher, guard**χῶρος** place ~heir

λαμβάνειν παρ' ἀλλήλων. ἦν δὲ παρὰ ταῦτα ἀδικεῖν τις ἐπιχειρῇ, τούτοις Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡμεῖς πολέμιοι ἐσόμεθα. ἐκ τούτου πύλαι μὲν ἀνεωγμέναι ἦσαν τῶν τειχῶν, μεσται δὲ αἱ ὁδοὶ πορευομένων παρ' ἀλλήλους, μεστοὶ δὲ οἱ χῶροι ἐργαζομένων· ἐορτὰς δὲ κοινῇ ἦγον, εἰρήνης δὲ καὶ εὐφροσύνης πάντα πλέα ἦν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκον παρὰ Κύρου ἐρωτῶντες εἴ τι στρατιᾶς προσδέοιτο ἢ μηχανημάτων· ὁ δὲ Ἀδούσιος ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι καὶ τῇ παρούσῃ ἐξείη ἄλλοσε χρῆσθαι στρατιᾷ· καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα λέγων ἀπῆγε τὸ στράτευμα, φρουροὺς ἐν ταῖς ἄκραις καταλιπών. οἱ δὲ Κᾶρες ἰκέτευον μένειν αὐτόν· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἤθελε, προσέπεμψαν πρὸς Κῦρον δεόμενοι πέμψαι Ἀδούσιον σφίσι σατράπην.

Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐν τούτῳ ἀπεστάλκει Ὑστάσπαν στράτευμα ἄγοντα ἐπὶ Φρυγίαν τὴν περὶ Ἑλλάσποντον. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦκεν ὁ Ἀδούσιος, μετάγειν αὐτόν ἐκέλευσεν ἥπερ ὁ Ὑστάσπας προώχετο, ὅπως μᾶλλον πείθοντο τῷ Ὑστάσπα, ἀκούσαντες ἄλλο στράτευμα προσιόν. οἱ



λαμβάνειν παρ' ἀλλήλων. ἦν δὲ παρὰ ταῦτα |be, do wrong;  
|wrong someone

|do, try, attack ἵτοις Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡμεῖς πολέμοι ἐσόμεθα. ἐκ

τούτου |gate μὲν ἀνεωγμένοι ἦσαν τῶν |outdoor, |full  
|wall

δὲ αἱ ὁδοὶ πορευομένων παρ' ἀλλήλους, |full δὲ οἱ

|place |work |holiday, δὲ κοινῇ ἦγον, |peace δὲ  
|feast

καὶ |happiness πάντα πλέα ἦν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ |be present, have  
|arrived

παρὰ Κύρου |ask εἴ τι |army προσδέοιτο ἦ

|machine; mecha- ὁ δὲ Ἀδούσιος |to separate; reject; (mp) τῇ  
|nism, way |answer, defend oneself

παρουσίῃ ἐξείη |elsewhere, ῥῆσθαι |army καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα

λέγων |lead away|army, |watcher, ἐν ταῖς |at the edge, extreme  
|back |guard

|leave behind, οἱ δὲ Κᾶρες |approach to beg αὐτόν· ἐπεὶ δὲ  
|abandon

οὐκ ἤθελε, προσέπεμψαν πρὸς Κῦρον δεόμενοι πέμψαι

Ἀδούσιον σφίσι |satrap

Ὁ Δὲ Κῦρος ἐν τούτῳ |send; put on clothes ἵπαν |army

ἄγοντα ἐπὶ Φρυγίαν τὴν περὶ Ἑλλάσποντον. ἐπεὶ

δ' ἦκεν ὁ Ἀδούσιος, μετάγειν αὐτόν ἐκέλευσεν ἥπερ

ὁ Ὑστάσπας προώχeto, ὅπως μᾶλλον πείθοντο τῷ

Ὑστάσπᾳ, ἀκούσαντες ἄλλο |army προσιόν. οἱ

other, and if any one offends against these laws, Cyrus and ourselves will be his enemies.”

At that the city gates were flung wide open, the roads were filled with folk hurrying to one another, the fields were thronged with labourers. They held high festival together, and the land was full of peace and joyfulness.

Meanwhile messengers came from Cyrus inquiring whether there was need for more troops or siege-engines, but Adousius answered, on the contrary his present force was at Cyrus’ service to employ elsewhere if he wished, and so drew off his army, only leaving a garrison in the citadels. Thereupon the Carians implored him to remain, and when he would not, they sent to Cyrus begging him to make Adousius their satrap.

Meanwhile Cyrus had sent Hystaspas with an army into Phrygia on the Hellespont, and when Adousius came back he bade him follow, for the Phrygians would be more willing to obey Hystaspas if they heard that another

*vocabulary***ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**ἄφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
~practice**Ἕλλην** Greek**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἐρῆμος** empty**ἐρυμνός** fortified, impregnable**ἰσχυρός** (ὄ) strong, forceful, violent**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite**ὅποι** to which place**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
~pelt**Πέρσης** Persian**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign ~strategy**σφενδόνη** sling**σφέτερος** their**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle**ὑπαρχος** subordinate**φρουρά** guard duty, a watch

μὲν οὖν Ἕλληνες οἱ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ οἰκοῦντες πολλὰ δῶρα  
 δόντες διεπράξαντο ὥστε εἰς μὲν τὰ τεῖχη βαρβάρους μὴ  
 δέχεσθαι, δασμὸν δὲ ἀποφέρειν καὶ στρατεύειν ὅποι Κῦρος  
 ἐπαγγέλλοι. ὁ δὲ τῶν Φρυγῶν βασιλεὺς παρεσκευάζετο  
 μὲν ὡς καθέξων τὰ ἐρυμνὰ καὶ οὐ πεισόμενος καὶ  
 παρήγγελλεν οὕτως· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίσταντο αὐτοῦ οἱ ὕπαρχοι  
 καὶ ἔρημος ἐγίνετο, τελευτῶν εἰς χεῖρας ἦλθεν Ὑστάσπα  
 ἐπὶ τῇ Κύρου δίκῃ. καὶ ὁ Ὑστάσπας καταλιπὼν ἐν  
 ταῖς ἄκραις ἰσχυρὰς Περσῶν φρουρὰς ἀπήει ἄγων σὺν  
 τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ Φρυγῶν πολλοὺς ἱππείας καὶ πελταστάς.  
 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐπέστελλεν Ἀδουσίῳ συμμείξαντα πρὸς  
 Ὑστάσπαν τοὺς μὲν ἐλομένους Φρυγῶν τὰ σφέτερα  
 σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἄγειν, τοὺς δὲ ἐπιθυμήσαντας πολεμεῖν  
 τούτων ἀφελομένους τοὺς ἵππους καὶ τὰ ὅπλα σφενδόνας  
 ἔχοντας πάντας κελεύειν ἔπεσθαι.

Ὑτοὶ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποίουν. Κῦρος δὲ ὠρμᾶτο ἐκ  
 Σάρδεων, φρουρὰν μὲν πεζὴν καταλιπὼν πολλὴν ἐν  
 Σάρδεσι, Κροῖσον δὲ ἔχων, ἄγων δὲ πολλὰς ἀμάξας

μὲν οὖν |Greek οἱ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ |inhabit πολλὰ δῶρα  
 δόντες |travel over, ac- ὥστε εἰς μὲν τὰ τείχη |non-Greek μὴ  
 |comply  
 δέχεσθαι, |portion, tax, carry off καὶ |make an ex- |to |authority;  
 |tribute |pedition, war, |which |validity  
 ἐπαγγέλλοι. ὁ δὲ τῶν Φρυγῶν βασιλεὺς παρεσκευάζετο  
 μὲν ὡς |restrain; stop; |fortified καὶ οὐ πεισόμενος καὶ  
 |continue; keep;  
 |transmit; order, -summon, |take possession |subordinate  
 |recommend, encourage  
 καὶ ἔρημος ἐγίγνετο, τελευτῶν εἰς χεῖρας ἦλθεν Ὑστάσπα  
 ἐπὶ τῇ Κύρου δίκη. καὶ ὁ Ὑστάσπας |leave behind, ἐν  
 |abandon  
 ταῖς |at the |strong, force- |σῶν φρουρὰς |be absent, go σὺν  
 |edge, |ful, violent |away, return  
 |extreme  
 τοῖς αὐτοῦ καὶ Φρυγῶν πολλοὺς ἱππέας καὶ |light troops  
 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος |send to, order Ἀδουσίῳ |mix πρὸς  
 Ὑστάσπαν τοὺς μὲν ἐλομένους Φρυγῶν τὰ |their  
 σὺν τοῖς |tool ἄγειν, τοὺς δὲ |wish, covet πολεμεῖν  
 τούτων |take away τοὺς ἵππους καὶ τὰ |tool |sling  
 ἔχοντας πάντας κελεύειν ἔπεσθαι.

Ἔτσι μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν. Κῦρος δὲ ὥρμητο ἐκ

Σάρδεων, |guard duty, |on foot; leave behind, πολλὴν ἐν  
 |watch |foot sol- |abandon  
 Σάρδεσι, Κροῖσον δὲ ἔχων, ἄγων δὲ πολλὰς |wagon

army was advancing.

Now the Hellenes on the seaboard offered many gifts and bargained not to receive the Asiatics within their walls, but only to pay tribute and serve wherever Cyrus commanded. But the king of Phrygia made preparations to hold his fortresses and not yield, and sent out orders to that effect. However, when his lieutenants deserted him and he found himself all alone, he had to put himself in the hands of Hystaspas, and leave his fate to the judgment of Cyrus. Then Hystaspas stationed strong Persian garrisons in all the citadels, and departed, taking with him not only his own troops but many mounted men and targeteers from Phrygia. And Cyrus sent word to Adousius to join Hystaspas, put himself at the head of those who had submitted and allow them to retain their arms, while those who showed a disposition to resist were to be deprived of their horses and their weapons and made to follow the army as slingers.

While his lieutenants were thus employed, Cyrus set out from Sardis, leaving a large force of infantry to garrison the place, and taking

*vocabulary***ἀκριβής** (ἶ) exact**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐπίτροπος** agent**ἕπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**καλλωπίζω** embellish, make up**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic**κλέπτω** steal**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

**ὀρθόω** stand up**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**Πέρσης** Persian**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition**σφενδόνη** sling**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

πολλῶν καὶ παντοδαπῶν χρημάτων. ἦκε δὲ καὶ ὁ Κροῖσος γεγραμμένα ἔχων ἀκριβῶς ὅσα ἐν ἐκάστη ἦν τῇ ἀμάξῃ· καὶ διδοὺς τῷ Κύρῳ τὰ γράμματα εἶπε· Ταῦτ', ἔφη, ἔχων, ὦ Κῦρε, εἴσῃ τόν τέ σοι ὀρθῶς ἀποδιδόντα ἃ ἄγει καὶ τὸν μῆ. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔλεξεν· Ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν καλῶς ποιεῖς, ὦ Κροῖσε, προνοῶν· ἔμοιγε μέντοι ἄξουσι τὰ χρήματα οἷπερ καὶ ἔχειν αὐτὰ ἄξιοί εἰσιν· ὥστε ἦν τι καὶ κλέψωσι, τῶν ἐαυτῶν κλέφονται. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα λέγων ἔδωκε τὰ γράμματα τοῖς φίλοις καὶ τοῖς ἄρχουσιν, ὅπως εἰδεῖεν τῶν ἐπιτρόπων οἳ τε σῶα αὐτοῖς ἀποδιδόειν οἳ τε μῆ. ἦγε δὲ καὶ Λυδῶν οὓς μὲν ἐώρα καλλωπιζομένους καὶ ὅπλοις καὶ ἵπποις καὶ ἄρμασι καὶ πάντα πειρωμένους ποιεῖν ὅ τι ᾤοντο αὐτῷ χαριεῖσθαι, τούτους μὲν σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις· οὓς δὲ ἐώρα ἀχαρίτως ἐπομένους, τοὺς μὲν ἵππους αὐτῶν παρέδωκε Πέρσαις τοῖς πρώτοις συστρατευομένοις, τὰ δὲ ὅπλα κατέκαυσε· σφενδόνας δὲ καὶ τούτους ἠνάγκασεν ἔχοντας ἔπεσθαι. καὶ πάντας δὲ τοὺς ἀόπλους τῶν ὑποχειρίων γενομένων



πολλῶν καὶ παντοδαπῶν |possession, money, busi-  
 Κροῖσος |write; scratch ἔχων ἀκριβῶς ὅσα ἐν ἐκάστη ἦν τῇ  
 |wagon καὶ διδοὺς τῷ Κύρῳ τὰ |writing, letter εἶπε· Ταῦτ',  
 ἔφη, ἔχων, ὦ Κύρε, εἴση τόν τέ σοι ὀρθῶς |repay  
 ἂ ἄγει καὶ τὸν μή. καὶ ὁ Κύρος ἔλεξεν· Ἀλλὰ σὺ  
 μὲν καλῶς ποιεῖς, ὦ Κροῖσε, |foresee, think of ἔμοιγε |however  
 ἄξουσι τὰ |possession, money, busi- καὶ ἔχειν αὐτὰ |worthy· σιν· ὥστε  
 ἦν τι καὶ |steal , τῶν ἐαυτῶν |steal καὶ ἅμα  
 ταῦτα λέγων ἔδωκε τὰ |writing, letter τοῖς φίλοις καὶ τοῖς  
 ἄρχουσιν, ὅπως εἰδέειν τῶν |agent οἳ τε σῶα αὐτοῖς  
 |repay οἳ τε μή. ἦγε δὲ καὶ Λυδῶν οὓς μὲν ἐώρα  
 |embellish, make up καὶ |tool καὶ ἵπποις καὶ |chariot καὶ  
 πάντα πειρωμένους ποιεῖν ὅ τι ᾔνοντο αὐτῷ |gratify ,  
 τούτους μὲν σὺν τοῖς |tool οὓς δὲ ἐώρα ἀχαρίτως  
 ἐπομένους, τοὺς μὲν ἵππους αὐτῶν |hand over Πέρσαις  
 τοῖς πρώτοις |join in an expedition , τὰ δὲ |tool |burn down  
 |sling δὲ καὶ τούτους |force, compel ἔχοντας ἔπεσθαι.  
 καὶ πάντας δὲ τοὺς ἀόπλους τῶν |under one's hand , μένων

Croesus with him, and a long train of waggons laden with riches of every kind. Croesus presented an accurate inventory of everything in each waggon, and said, as he delivered the scrolls:

"With these in your possession, Cyrus, you can tell whether your officers are handing over their freights in full or not."

And Cyrus answered:

"It was kindly done, Croesus, on your part, to take thought for this: but I have arranged that the freights should be in charge of those who are entitled to them, so that if the men steal, they steal their own property."

With these words he handed the documents to his friends and officers to serve as checks on their own stewards.

Cyrus also took Lydians in his train; allowing some to carry arms, those, namely, who were at pains to keep their weapons in good order, and their horses and chariots, and who did their best to please him, but if they gave themselves ungracious airs, he took away their horses and bestowed them on the Persians who had served him from the beginning of the campaign, burnt their weapons, and forced them to follow the army as slingers. Indeed, as a rule, he compelled all the

*vocabulary*

**ἀγχέμαχος** hand-to-hand  
**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute  
**ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman  
 ~acute  
**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀναρίθμητος** countless  
**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out  
**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
 ~catastrophe  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise  
**μυρίος** (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad  
**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoeoteric

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**περιελαύνω** drive around  
**περίστημι** be around; turn out  
 ~station  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**σφενδονάω** sling  
**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral  
**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

σφενδονᾶν ἡνάγκαζε μελετᾶν, νομίζων τοῦτο τὸ ὄπλον  
 δουλικώτατον εἶναι· σὺν μὲν γὰρ ἄλλη δυνάμει μάλα ἔστιν  
 ἔνθα ἰσχυρῶς ὠφελοῦσι σφενδονῆται παρόντες, αὐτοὶ δὲ  
 καθ' αὐτοὺς οὐδ' ἂν οἱ πάντες σφενδονῆται μείνειαν πάνυ  
 ὀλίγους ὁμόσε ἰόντας σὺν ὅπλοις ἀγχεμάχοις.

Προϊὼν δὲ τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος κατεστρέψατο μὲν  
 Φρύγας τοὺς ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ Φρυγίᾳ, κατεστρέψατο  
 δὲ Καππαδόκας, ὑποχειρίους δ' ἐποιήσατο Ἀραβίους.  
 ἐξώπλισε δὲ ἀπὸ πάντων τούτων Περσῶν μὲν ἱππέας  
 οὐ μείον τετρακισμυρίους, πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους τῶν  
 αἰχμαλώτων καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς συμμάχοις διέδωκε· καὶ  
 πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα ἀφίκετο παμπόλλους μὲν ἱππέας ἔχων,  
 παμπόλλους δὲ τοξότας καὶ ἀκοντιστάς, σφενδονήτας δὲ  
 ἀναριθμήτους.

## 7.5

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνι ἦν ὁ Κῦρος, περιέστησε μὲν πᾶν  
 τὸ στράτευμα περὶ τὴν πόλιν, ἔπειτα αὐτὸς περιήλανε

|sling                      |force,                      |pursue, attend ἵζων τοῦτο τὸ |tool  
                                 |compel                      |to, exercise

δουλικώτατον εἶναι· σὺν μὲν γὰρ ἄλλη δυνάμει μάλα ἔστιν

ἔνθα |strong,                      |help, be use-|slinger                      παρόντες, αὐτοὶ δὲ  
                                 |forceful,                      |ful  
καθ' αὐτοὺς οὐδ' ἂν οἱ πάντες |slinger                      μείνειαν |altogether, very

ὀλίγους |to the same spot ἔν |tool                      |hand-to-hand

|to have been τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος |overturn, subdue μὲν  
|before, earlier

Φρύγας τοὺς ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ Φρυγίᾳ, |overturn, subdue

δὲ Καππαδόκας, |under one's hand ἐποιήσατο Ἀραβίους.

|prepare, arm ἑ ἀπὸ πάντων τούτων Περσῶν μὲν ἱππέας

οὐ |less,                      τετρακισμυρίους, πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους τῶν  
                                 |smaller

|captive                      καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς συμμάχοις |distribute, send out

πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα ἀφίκετο |very great                      μὲν ἱππέας ἔχων,

|very great                      δὲ |archer                      καὶ |spearman                      , |slinger                      δὲ

|countless

## 7.5

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνι ἦν ὁ Κῦρος, |be around; turn out ἔν

τὸ |army                      περὶ τὴν πόλιν, ἔπειτα αὐτὸς |drive around

subject population who had been disarmed to practise the use of the sling: it was, he considered, a weapon for slaves. No doubt there are occasions when a body of slingers, working with other detachments, can do excellent service, but, taken alone, not all the slingers in the world could face a mere handful armed with steel.

Cyrus was marching to Babylon, but on his way he subdued the Phrygians of Greater Phrygia and the Cappadocians, and reduced the Arabians to subjection. These successes enabled him to increase his Persian cavalry till it was not far short of forty thousand men, and he had still horses left over to distribute among his allies at large.

At length he came before Babylon with an immense body of cavalry, archers, and javelin-men, beside slingers innumerable.

### 7.5

When Cyrus reached the city he surrounded it entirely with his forces, and then rode round the walls himself, attended by his

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀναπτύσσω** unfold**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἀσθενής** weak**αὐτόμολος** deserting, defecting**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height**διπλάσιος** twofold, double**ἐκατέρωθεν** on both sides**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious;  
vital**ἠώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**καταθεάομαι** look down upon**κυκλέω** carry on wheels ~cycle**κυκλώω** circle, encircle**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman ~hoplite**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
~phalanx**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

τὴν πόλιν σὺν τοῖς φίλοις τε καὶ ἐπικαιρίοις τῶν  
συμμάχων. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεθέασατο τὰ τείχη, ἀπάγειν  
παρεσκευάσατο τὴν στρατιὰν ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως· ἐξελθὼν  
δέ τις αὐτόμολος εἶπεν ὅτι ἐπιτίθεσθαι μέλλοιεν αὐτῷ,  
ὁπότε ἀπάγοι τὸ στράτευμα· καταθεωμένοις γάρ, ἔφη,  
αὐτοῖς ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους ἀσθενῆς ἐδόκει εἶναι ἡ φάλαγξ·  
καὶ οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν ἦν οὕτως ἔχειν· περὶ γὰρ πολὺ τείχος  
κυκλουμένοις ἀνάγκη ἦν ἐπ' ὀλίγων τὸ βάθος γενέσθαι τὴν  
φάλαγγα. ἀκούσας οὖν ὁ Κῦρος ταῦτα, στὰς κατὰ μέσον  
τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν παρήγγειλεν ἀπὸ  
τοῦ ἄκρου ἐκατέρωθεν τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἀναπτύσσοντας τὴν  
φάλαγγα ἀπιέναι παρὰ τὸ ἐστηκὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος,  
ἕως γένοιτο ἐκατέρωθεν τὸ ἄκρον κατ' αὐτὸν καὶ  
κατὰ τὸ μέσον. οὕτως οὖν ποιούντων οἳ τε μένοντες  
εὐθὺς θαρραλεώτεροι ἐγίνοντο ἐπὶ διπλασίῳ τὸ βάθος  
γιγνόμενοι, οἳ τ' ἀπιόντες ὡσαύτως θαρραλεώτεροι·  
εὐθὺς γὰρ οἱ μένοντες ἀντ' αὐτῶν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
ἐγίνοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι



τὴν πόλιν σὺν τοῖς φίλοις τε καὶ <sup>|at a fitting time; ὦν  
serious; vital</sup>  
συμμάχων. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεθέασατο τὰ τεῖχη, <sup>|lead away, back</sup>

<sup>|prepare, render</sup> τὴν <sup>|army</sup> ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως· ἐξελθὼν

δέ τις <sup>|deserting,  
defecting</sup> εἶπεν ὅτι <sup>|put on, apply; (mid) <sup>^</sup>εν αὐτῷ,  
undertake, attack</sup>

<sup>|when</sup> <sup>|lead away, <sup>|army</sup>  
back</sup> καταθεωμένοις γάρ, ἔφη,

αὐτοῖς ἀπὸ τοῦ τεύχους <sup>|weak</sup> ἐδόκει εἶναι ἡ <sup>|rank of battle</sup>

καὶ οὐδὲν <sup>|wonderful;  
admirable</sup> ἦν οὕτως ἔχειν· περὶ γὰρ πολὺ τεῖχος

κυκλουμένοις <sup>|necessity</sup> ἦν ἐπ' ὀλίγων τὸ <sup>|depth, γενέσθαι τὴν  
height</sup>

<sup>|rank of battle'</sup> οὐσας οὖν ὁ Κῦρος ταῦτα, στὰς κατὰ μέσον

τῆς αὐτοῦ <sup>|army</sup> σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν <sup>|transmit; order, <sup>^</sup>summon, rec-  
ommend, encourage</sup>

τοῦ ἄκρου <sup>|on both sides</sup> τοὺς <sup>|hoplite, <sup>|unfold</sup>  
heavy in-  
fantryman</sup> τὴν

<sup>|rank of bat-  
tle</sup> <sup>|be absent, go, <sup>|αὐτὸν</sup>  
away, return</sup> τὸ ἐστὶν <sup>|army</sup>

ἕως γένοιτο <sup>|on both sides</sup> τὸ ἄκρον κατ' αὐτὸν καὶ

κατὰ τὸ μέσον. οὕτως οὖν ποιούντων οἳ τε μένοντες

εὐθὺς <sup>|bold</sup> ἐγίνοντο ἐπὶ <sup>|twofold, <sup>|depth,  
double</sup> height</sup>

γιγνόμενοι, οἳ τ' <sup>|be absent, <sup>|in the same <sup>|bold</sup>  
go away, <sup>|way</sup>  
return</sup></sup>

εὐθὺς γὰρ οἱ μένοντες αὐτ' αὐτῶν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους

ἐγίνοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι

friends and the leading officers of the allies. Having surveyed the fortifications, he prepared to lead off his troops, and at that moment a deserter came to inform him that the Assyrians intended to attack as soon as he began to withdraw, for they had inspected his forces from the walls and considered them very weak. This was not surprising, for the circuit of the city was so enormous that it was impossible to surround it without seriously thinning the lines. When Cyrus heard of their intention, he took up his post in the centre of his troops with his own staff round him and sent orders to the infantry for the wings to double back on either side, marching past the stationary centre of the line, until they met in the rear exactly opposite himself. Thus the men in front were immediately encouraged by the doubling of their depth, and those who retired were equally cheered, for they saw that the others would encounter the

*vocabulary***ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἀναπτύσσω** unfold**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic**βήμα** -τος (n, 3) step, pace**βραχύς** low, short**γυμνής** light infantry; serf**ἐγγύς** near**ἐκατέρωθεν** on both sides**ἐμπροσθεν** before (time, space)**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent**καταστρατοπεδεύω** encamp, station**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
~ceratopsia**μεταβάλλω** alter, transform**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**πρόεμι** to have been before, earlier  
~ion**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to**προσωτέρω** farther**σκηνή** tent; stage**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**συνάπτω** join, partake; adjoin; consult;  
fight ~haptic**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit**τελευταῖος** last, final**τόσος** so much, so great**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
~phalanx

ἐκατέρωθεν συνήψαν τὰ ἄκρα, ἔστησαν ἰσχυρότεροι  
γεγεννημένοι, οἳ τε ἀπεληλυθότες διὰ τοὺς ἔμπροσθεν,  
οἳ τ' ἔμπροσθεν διὰ τοὺς ὀπίσθεν προσγεγεννημένους.  
ἀναπτυχθείσης δ' οὕτω τῆς φάλαγγος ἀνάγκη τοὺς  
πρώτους ἀρίστους εἶναι καὶ τοὺς τελευταίους, ἐν μέσῳ δὲ  
τοὺς κακίστους τετάχθαι· ἡ δ' οὕτως ἔχουσα τάξις καὶ  
πρὸς τὸ μάχεσθαι ἐδόκει εὖ παρεσκευάσθαι καὶ πρὸς τὸ  
μὴ φεύγειν. καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς δὲ καὶ οἱ γυμνήτες οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν  
κεράτων αἰεὶ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίγνοντο τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοσούτῳ  
ὅσῳ ἡ φάλαγξ βραχυτέρα ἐγίγνετο ἀναδιπλουμένη. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ οὕτω συνεσπειράθησαν, ἀπῆσαν, ἕως μὲν ἐξικνεῖτο  
τὰ βέλη ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους, ἐπὶ πόδα· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔξω βελῶν  
ἐγένοντο, στραφέντες, καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ὀλίγα βήματα  
προϊόντες μετεβάλλοντο ἐπ' ἀσπίδα καὶ ἴσταντο πρὸς τὸ  
τεῖχος βλέποντες· ὅσῳ δὲ προσωτέρω ἐγίγνοντο, τόσῳ δὲ  
μανότερον μετεβάλλοντο. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ ἐδόκουν  
εἶναι, ξυνεῖρον ἀπιόντες, ἔστ' ἐπὶ ταῖς σκηναῖς ἐγένοντο.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο, συνεκάλεσεν ὁ Κῦρος

|on both sides |join, partake; `ad- :ρα, ἔστησαν |strong, force-  
 |join; consult; fight |ful, violent  
 γεγενημένοι, οἳ τε ἀπεληλυθότες διὰ τοὺς ἔμπροσθεν,  
 οἳ τ' ἔμπροσθεν διὰ τοὺς |behind, |become ally to  
 |hereafter  
 |unfold δ' οὕτω τῆς |rank of battle ὑνάγκῃ τοὺς  
 πρώτους ἀρίστους εἶναι καὶ τοὺς |last, final , ἐν μέσῳ δὲ  
 τοὺς κακίστους τετάχθαι· ἡ δ' οὕτως ἔχουσα τάξις καὶ  
 πρὸς τὸ μάχεσθαι ἐδόκει εὖ παρεσκευάσθαι καὶ πρὸς τὸ  
 μὴ φεύγειν. καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς δὲ καὶ οἱ |light οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν  
 |infantry;  
 |serf  
 |horn; αἰεὶ |near ἐγίνοντο τοῦ ἀρχοντος τοσοῦτω  
 |military  
 |unit  
 ὅσῳ ἡ |rank of |low, short ἐγίνετο ἀναδιπλουμένη. ἐπεὶ  
 |battle  
 δὲ οὕτω συνεσπειράθησαν, ἀπῆσαν, ἕως μὲν |arrive at  
 τὰ |missile ὑπὸ τοῦ τείχους, ἐπὶ πόδα· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔξω |missile  
 ἐγένοντο, |turn , καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ὀλίγα |step, pace  
 |to have been |alter, transform ἐπ' |shield καὶ ἴσταντο πρὸς τὸ  
 |before, ear-  
 |lier  
 τείχος |see, look at ὅσῳ δὲ |farther ἐγίνοντο, |so much, so great  
 μανότερον |alter, transform . ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν τῷ |safe, εἰσὶν  
 |steady, careful  
 εἶναι, ξυνεῖρον ἀπιόντες, ἔστ' ἐπὶ ταῖς |tent; ἐγένοντο.  
 |stage  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ |encamp, station , |call together ὁ Κῦρος

enemy first. The two wings being united, the power of the whole force was strengthened, those behind being protected by those in front and those in front supported by those behind. When the phalanx was thus folded back on itself, both the front and the rear ranks were formed of picked men, a disposition that seemed calculated to encourage valour and check flight. On the flanks, the cavalry and the light infantry were drawn nearer and nearer to the commander as the line contracted. When the whole phalanx was in close order, they fell back from the walls, slowly, facing the foe, until they were out of range; then they turned, marched a few paces, and then wheeled round again to the left, and halted, facing the walls, but the further they got the less often they paused, until, feeling themselves secure, they quickened their pace and went off in an uninterrupted march until they reached their quarters.

When they were encamped, Cyrus called

*vocabulary*

**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height  
**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere  
**διαμετρέω** measure ~metric  
**ἐλάχιστος** smallest, shortest, fewest  
**ἐξείμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious;  
 vital  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κρείσσων** more powerful; better  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**λιμός** (ι, f) famine

**ναί** yea  
**ὀρύσσω** dig  
**πλάτος** -εος (n, 3) width  
**πλατύς** extensive, wide  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph  
**ὑπερέχω** be over; protect  
**φυλακός** guard; sentry  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery  
**ὠθέω** push

τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους καὶ ἔλεξεν· Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, τεθεάμεθα  
 μὲν κύκλῳ τὴν πόλιν· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅπως μὲν ἂν τις τείχη  
 οὕτως μὲν κύκλῳ τὴν πόλιν· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅπως μὲν ἂν τις  
 τείχη οὕτως ὅσῳ δὲ πλείονες ἄνθρωποι ἐν τῇ πόλει εἰσίν,  
 ἐπείπερ οὐ μάχονται ἐξιόντες, τοσούτῳ ἂν θάττον λιμῶ  
 αὐτοὺς ἡγοῦμαι ἀλῶναι. εἰ μή τιν' οὖν ἄλλον τρόπον ἔχετε  
 λέγειν, τούτῳ πολιορκητέους φημὶ εἶναι τοὺς ἄνδρας. καὶ  
 ὁ Χρυσάντας εἶπεν· Ὁ δὲ ποταμός, ἔφη, οὗτος οὐ διὰ  
 μέσης τῆς πόλεως ρεῖ πλάτος ἔχων πλεον ἢ ἐπὶ δύο  
 στάδια; Ναὶ μὰ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, καὶ βάθος γ' ὥς  
 οὐδ' ἂν δύο ἄνδρες ὁ ἕτερος ἐπὶ τοῦ ἐτέρου ἐστηκὼς  
 τοῦ ὕδατος ὑπέρειχον· ὥστε τῷ ποταμῷ ἔτι ἰσχυροτέρα  
 ἐστὶν ἢ πόλις ἢ τοῖς τείχεσι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος, Ταῦτα μὲν,  
 ἔφη, ὦ Χρυσάντα, ἐῷμεν ὅσα κρείττω ἐστὶ τῆς ἡμετέρας  
 δυνάμεως· διαμετρησαμένους δὲ χρὴ ὥς τάχιστα τὸ μέρος  
 ἐκάστους ἡμῶν ὀρύττειν τάφρον ὥς πλατυτάτην καὶ  
 βαθυτάτην, ὅπως ὅτι ἐλαχίστων ἡμῖν τῶν φυλάκων δέη.  
 οὕτω δὴ κύκλῳ διαμετρήσας περὶ



τοὺς |at a fitting time; |serious; vital Ἰ ἐλεξεν· Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, |look at, be-  
 |hold, consider  
 μὲν |circle, τὴν πόλιν· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅπως μὲν ἂν τις |outdoor wall  
 |wheel  
 οὕτως μὲν |circle, τὴν πόλιν· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅπως μὲν ἂν τις  
 |wheel  
 |outdoor wall ὅσῳ δὲ πλείονες ἄνθρωποι ἐν τῇ πόλει εἰσίν,  
 ἐπείπερ οὐ μάχονται |go forth; is|so much ἂν θάττον |famine  
 |possible  
 αὐτοὺς ἡγοῦμαι ἀλῶναι. εἰ μή τιν' οὖν ἄλλον τρόπον ἔχετε  
 λέγειν, τούτῳ |besiege φημὶ εἶναι τοὺς ἄνδρας. καὶ  
 ὁ Χρυσάντας εἶπεν· Ὁ δὲ |river , ἔφη, οὗτος οὐ διὰ  
 μέσης τῆς πόλεως ρεῖ |width ἔχων πλεον ἢ ἐπὶ δύο  
 στάδια; |yea μὰ Δι', ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, καὶ |depth, γ' ὥς  
 |height  
 οὐδ' ἂν δύο ἄνδρες ὁ ἕτερος ἐπὶ τοῦ ἑτέρου ἐστηκὼς  
 τοῦ ὕδατος |be over; protect ἵτε τῷ |river ἔτι |strong, force-  
 |ful, violent  
 ἐστὶν ἢ πόλις ἢ τοῖς |outdoor wall ὁ Κῦρος, Ταῦτα μὲν,  
 ἔφη, ὦ Χρυσάντα, ἐῷμεν ὅσα κρείττω ἐστὶ τῆς |our, my  
 δυνάμεως· |measure δὲ |must, |should  
 ἐκάστους ἡμῶν |dig |ditch ὥς |extensive, wide καὶ  
 |high, deep , ὅπως ὅτι |smallest, short- |in τῶν φυλάκων δέη.  
 |est, fewest  
 οὕτω δὲ |circle, |measure περὶ  
 |wheel

a council of his officers and said, "My friends and allies, we have surveyed the city on every side, and for my part I fail to see any possibility of taking by assault walls so lofty and so strong; on the other hand, the greater the population the more quickly must they yield to hunger, unless they come out to fight. If none of you have any other scheme to suggest, I propose that we reduce them by blockade."

Then Chrysantas spoke:

"Does not the river flow through the middle of the city, and it is not at least a quarter of a mile in width?"

"To be sure it is," answered Gobryas, "and so deep that the water would cover two men, one standing on the other's shoulders; in fact the city is even better protected by its river than by its walls."

At which Cyrus said, "Well, Chrysantas, we must forego what is beyond our power: but let us measure off at once the work for each of us, set to, and dig a trench as wide and as deep as we can, that we may need as few guards

*vocabulary***ἀναβάλλω** delay; lift up ~ballistic**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
upwards, out to sea**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail**βάρος** -ους (n, 3) weight, burden**διαφεύγω** escape, survive**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
~thesis**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**καταγελάω** laugh at, deride**κυρτόω** bend ~kurtosis**μείων** less, smaller**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature**οἰκοδομέω** build, build a house**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager**ὀρύσσω** dig**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**πλεθριαῖος** 30 m in size ~plethora**πολιορκία** siege**προσδοκάω** expect**πύργος** ramparts, tower; line of troops**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**τάφρος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph**τύρσις** tower, castle**ὑπερμεγέθης** very difficult**ὑποτίθημι** suggest, advise ~hypothesis**φοῖνιξ** -χος (m) red or purple dye or  
color; bay (horse); palm tree**φυλακτήριον** fort; safeguard**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

τὸ τεῖχος, ἀπολιπὼν ὅσον τύρσεσι μεγάλαις ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ὥρυττεν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τοῦ τεύχους τάφρον ὑπερμεγέθη, καὶ τὴν γῆν ἀνέβαλλον πρὸς ἑαυτοῦς. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πύργους ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ὠκοδόμει, φοίνιξι θεμελιώσας οὐ μείον ἢ πλεθριαίοις εἰσὶ γὰρ καὶ μείζονες ἢ τοσοῦτοι τὸ μῆκος πεφυκότες· καὶ γὰρ δὴ πιεζόμενοι οἱ φοίνικες ὑπὸ βάρους ἄνω κυρτοῦνται, ὥσπερ οἱ ὄνοι οἱ κανθήλιοι· τούτους δ' ὑπετίθει τούτου ἔνεκα ὅπως ὅτι μάλιστα εἰκοι πολιορκήσιν παρασκευαζομένῳ, ὥς εἰ καὶ διαφύγοι ὁ ποταμὸς εἰς τὴν τάφρον, μὴ ἀνέλοι τοὺς πύργους. ἀνίστη δὲ καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς πύργους ἐπὶ τῆς ἀμβολάδος γῆς, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστα φυλακτήρια εἴη. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν· οἱ δ' ἐν τῷ τεύχει κατεγέλων τῆς πολιορκίας, ὥς ἔχοντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πλέον ἢ εἴκοσιν ἐτῶν. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος τὸ στράτευμα κατένειμε δώδεκα μέρη, ὥς μῆνα τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ ἕκαστον τὸ μέρος φυλάξον. οἱ δὲ αὖ Βαβυλώνιοι ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα πολὺν ἔτι μᾶλλον κατεγέλων, ἐννοούμενοι εἰ σφᾶς Φρύγες καὶ

τὸ τεῖχος, ἀπολιπὼν ὅσον |tower, castle μέγαις ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 ποταμοῦ, ὥρυττεν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τοῦ τείχους |ditch  
 |very difficult , καὶ τὴν γῆν |delay; sing πρὸς ἑαυτούς. καὶ  
 πρῶτον μὲν |wall, tower ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ |build, build a |red, red dye;  
 θεμελιώσας οὐ |less, smaller, |30 m in size εἰς γὰρ καὶ μείζονες  
 ἢ τοσοῦτοι τὸ |length, stature πεφυκότες· καὶ γὰρ δὴ |press, squeeze  
 οἱ |red, red dye; weight, palm tree |burden ἄνω |bend , ὥσπερ οἱ |donkey  
 οἱ κανθήλιοι· τούτους δ' |suggest τούτου ἕνεκα ὅπως ὅτι  
 μάλιστα εὐοίκοι |besiege |prepare, render , ὥς εἰ  
 καὶ |escape, survive ὁ ποταμὸς εἰς τὴν |ditch , μὴ ἀνέλοι τοὺς  
 |wall, tower . ἀνίστη δὲ καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς |wall, tower ἐπὶ  
 τῆς ἀμβολάδος γῆς, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστα |fort; safeguard ἦ.  
 οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποίουν· οἱ δ' ἐν τῷ τείχει |laugh at, deride  
 τῆς πολιορκίας, ὥς ἔχοντες τὰ |fit, suitable πλέον ἢ εἴκοσιν  
 ἐτών. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος τὸ |army κατένειμε  
 |twelve μέρη, ὥς μῆνα τοῦ |cycle of a year στον τὸ μέρος  
 φυλάξον. οἱ δὲ αὖ Βαβυλώνιοι ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα πολὺ  
 ἔτι μάλλον |laugh at, de-consider εἰ σφᾶς Φρύγες καὶ  
 |ride

as possible.”

Thereupon Cyrus took his measurements all round the city, and, leaving a space on either bank of the river large enough for a lofty tower, he had a gigantic trench dug from end to end of the wall, his men heaping up the earth on their own side. Then he set to work to build his towers by the river. The foundations were of palm-trees, a hundred feet long and more—the palm-tree grows to a greater height than that, and under pressure it will curve upwards like the spine of an ass beneath a load. He laid these foundations in order to give the impression that he meant to besiege the town, and was taking precautions so that the river, even if it found its way into his trench, should not carry off his towers. Then he had other towers built along the mound, so as to have as many guard-posts as possible. Thus his army was employed, but the men within the walls laughed at his preparations, knowing they had supplies to last them more than twenty years. When Cyrus heard that, he divided his army into twelve, each division to keep guard for one month in the year. At this the Babylonians laughed louder still, greatly pleased at the idea of being guarded by Phrygians and Lydians

*vocabulary***ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**ἔδαφος** -ους (n, 3) ground, floor

~edifice

**ἑορτή** holiday, feast**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**εὐμενής** kind**καταβιβάζω** bring down**κωμάζω** party, celebrate**ξηρός** dry, the land ~xeriscape**ὀρύσσω** dig**οὐρά** tail**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order**πέζα** end of a chariot pole**Πέρσης** Persian**πορσύνω** (ὑ) prepare (the marital bed)**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθμι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch

~skeptic

**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph**ὑπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

Λυδοὶ καὶ Ἀράβιοι καὶ Καππαδόκαι φυλάξοιεν, οὓς σφίσιν ἐνόμιζον πάντας εὐμενεστέρους εἶναι ἢ Πέρσαις.

Καὶ αἱ μὲν τάφροι ἤδη ὀρωνυγμέναι ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐπειδὴ ἐορτὴν τοιαύτην ἐν τῇ Βαβυλῶνι ἤκουσεν εἶναι, ἐν ᾗ πάντες Βαβυλώνιοι ὅλην τὴν νύκτα πίνουσι καὶ κωμάζουσιν, ἐν ταύτῃ, ἐπειδὴ τάχιστα συνεσκότασε, λαβὼν πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἀνεστόμωσε τὰς τάφρους πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν. ὥς δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, τὸ ὕδωρ κατὰ τὰς τάφρους ἐχώρει ἐν τῇ νυκτί, ἣ δὲ διὰ τῆς πόλεως τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁδὸς πορεύσιμος ἀνθρώποις ἐγίγνετο. ὥς δὲ τὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ οὕτως ἐπορσύνετο, παρηγγύησεν ὁ Κῦρος Πέρσαις χιλιάρχους καὶ πεζῶν καὶ ἱππέων εἰς δύο ἄγοντας τὴν χιλιοστὴν παρῆναι πρὸς αὐτόν, τοὺς δ' ἄλλους συμμάχους κατ' οὐρὰν τούτων ἔπεσθαι ἥπερ πρόσθεν τεταγμένους. οἱ μὲν δὴ παρήσαν· ὁ δὲ καταβιβάσας εἰς τὸ ξηρὸν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τοὺς ὑπηρέτας καὶ πεζοὺς καὶ ἱππέας, ἐκέλευσε σκέψασθαι εἰ πορεύσιμον εἴη τὸ ἔδαφος τοῦ ποταμοῦ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήγγειλαν ὅτι πορεύσιμον εἴη,



Λυδοὶ καὶ Ἀράβιοι καὶ Καππαδόκαι |guard; , οὓς σφίσιν  
|watch

|consider customary;|kind εἶναι ἢ Πέρσαις.  
|believe

Καὶ αἱ μὲν |ditch ἤδη |dig ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος

ἐπειδὴ |holiday, τοιαύτην ἐν τῇ Βαβυλῶνι ἤκουσεν εἶναι,  
|feast

ἐν ἣ πάντες Βαβυλώνιοι ὅλην τὴν νύκτα |drink καὶ

|party, , ἐν ταύτῃ, ἐπειδὴ τάχιστα συνεσκότασε,  
|celebrate

λαβὼν πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἀνεστόμωσε τὰς |ditch

πρὸς τὸν |river . ὥς δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, τὸ ὕδωρ κατὰ

τὰς |ditch |withdraw, giye λυκτί, ἣ δὲ διὰ τῆς πόλεως τοῦ  
|way to (+dat)

|river ὁδὸς πορεύσιμος ἀνθρώποις ἐγίνετο. ὥς δὲ τὸ

τοῦ |river οὕτως |prepare , |entrust; pass an ὁ Κῦρος  
|order

Πέρσαις χιλιάρχους καὶ πεζῶν καὶ |rider εἰς δύο ἄγοντας

τὴν χιλιοστὺν παρῆναι πρὸς αὐτόν, τοὺς δ' ἄλλους

συμμάχους κατ' |tail τούτων ἔπεσθαι ἥπερ πρόσθεν

|arrange . οἱ μὲν δὴ παρήσαν· ὁ δὲ |bring down εἰς

τὸ |dry, the land |river τοὺς |servant, καὶ |on foot; footsoldier  
|officer

|rider , ἐκέλευσε |look, look at, watch, ὕσιμον εἶναι τὸ |ground,  
|floor

τοῦ |river ἐπεὶ δὲ |announce, or- ὅτι πορεύσιμον εἶναι,  
|der, promise

and Arabians and Cappadocians, all of whom, they thought, would be more friendly to themselves than to the Persians.

However by this time the trenches were dug. And Cyrus heard that it was a time of high festival in Babylon when the citizens drink and make merry the whole night long. As soon as the darkness fell, he set his men to work. The mouths of the trenches were opened, and during the night the water poured in, so that the river-bed formed a highway into the heart of the town.

When the great stream had taken to its new channel, Cyrus ordered his Persian officers to bring up their thousands, horse and foot alike, each detachment drawn up two deep, the allies to follow in their old order. They lined up immediately, and Cyrus made his own bodyguard descend into the dry channel first, to see if the bottom was firm enough for marching. When they said it was, he called a council of all

*vocabulary*

**ἄσφαλτος** (f) asphalt, bitumen  
**ἄχρειος** serving no purpose ~chresard  
**γρηγορέω** be fully awake  
**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion  
**εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to ~jet  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out ~plectrum  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart ~thesis  
**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**ἡγεμῶν** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony

**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**μεθύω** be soaked, drunk ~mead  
**νήφω** be sober  
**παραχωρέω** yield, concede  
**πέζα** end of a chariot pole  
**πρόθυρον** front door ~door  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax  
**τέγος** -εος (n, 3) roof ~stegosaurus  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὕπεκκαυμα** -τος (n, 3) fuel  
**φοβερός** frightful, afraid  
**φοῖνιξ** -χος (m) red or purple dye or color; bay (horse); palm tree  
**χρίω** (i) anoint ~Christ

ἐνταῦθα δὴ συγκαλέσας τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τῶν πεζῶν καὶ ἱππέων ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

Ἄνδρες, ἔφη, φίλοι, ὁ μὲν ποταμὸς ἡμῖν παρακεχώρηκε τῆς εἰς τὴν πόλιν ὁδοῦ. ἡμεῖς δὲ θαρροῦντες εἰσίσωμεν μηδὲν φοβούμενοι εἶσω, ἐννοούμενοι ὅτι οὗτοι ἐφ' οὓς νῦν πορευσόμεθα ἐκεῖνοί εἰσιν οὓς ἡμεῖς καὶ συμμάχους πρὸς ἑαυτοῖς ἔχοντας καὶ ἐγρηγορότας ἅπαντας καὶ νήφοντας καὶ ἐξωπλισμένους καὶ συντεταγμένους ἐνικῶμεν· νῦν δ' ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἵμεν ἐν ᾧ πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν καθεύδουσι, πολλοὶ δ' αὐτῶν μεθύουσι, πάντες δ' ἀσύντακτοί εἰσιν· ὅταν δὲ αἰσθωνται ἡμᾶς ἔνδον ὄντας, πολὺ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἢ νῦν ἀχρεῖοι ἔσονται ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐκπεπληχθαι. εἰ δέ τις τοῦτο ἐννοεῖται, ὃ δὴ λέγεται φοβερὸν εἶναι τοῖς εἰς πόλιν εἰσιούσι, μὴ ἐπὶ τὰ τέγη ἀναβάντες βάλλωσιν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, τοῦτο μάλιστα θαρρεῖτε· ἦν γὰρ ἀναβῶσί τινες ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας, ἔχομεν σύμμαχον θεὸν Ἥφαιστον. εὐφλεκτα δὲ τὰ πρόθυρα αὐτῶν, φοίνικος μὲν αἱ θύραι πεποιημέναι, ἀσφάλτῳ δὲ ὑπεκκαύματι κεχριμέναι. ἡμεῖς δ' αὖ πολλὴν

|there, here ἤ |call together τοὺς |leader τῶν πεζῶν καὶ  
 |rider ἔλεξε |such .

Ἄνδρες, ἔφη, φίλοι, ὁ μὲν ποταμὸς ἡμῖν |yield, concede  
 τῆς εἰς τὴν πόλιν ὁδοῦ. ἡμεῖς δὲ θαρροῦντες εἰσίσωμεν  
 μηδὲν φοβούμενοι εἴσω, |consider ὅτι οὗτοι ἐφ' οὓς νῦν  
 πορευσόμεθα ἐκεῖνοί εἰσιν οὓς ἡμεῖς καὶ συμμάχους πρὸς  
 ἑαυτοῖς ἔχοντας καὶ ἐγρηγορότας ἅπαντας καὶ |be sober  
 καὶ |prepare, arm καὶ |gather, assemble ἐνικῶμεν· νῦν  
 δ' ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἴμεν ἐν ᾧ πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν |lie down ,  
 πολλοὶ δ' αὐτῶν |be soaked, drunk ὧς δ' ἀσύντακτοί εἰσιν·  
 ὅταν δὲ |perceive ἡμᾶς |in the house.s, πολὺ ἔτι μάλλον  
 |of; within  
 ἢ νῦν |serving no purpose ὑπὸ τοῦ |panic, be. εἰ δέ τις  
 |knocked out  
 τοῦτο |consider , ὃ δὲ λέγεται |frightful, εἶναι τοῖς εἰς πόλιν  
 |afraid  
 |go in , μὴ ἐπὶ τὰ |roof |go up, embark ἄλλωσιν ἔνθεν καὶ  
 ἔνθεν, τοῦτο μάλιστα θαρρεῖτε· ἦν γὰρ |go up, embark .s ἐπὶ  
 τὰς |building, ἔχομεν σύμμαχον θεὸν Ἥφαιστον. εὐφλεκτα  
 |house  
 δὲ τὰ |front door ὑπὸν, |red, red dye; palm|door πεποιημέναι,  
 |tree  
 |asphalt, δὲ |fuel |anoint . ἡμεῖς δ' αὖ πολλήν  
 |bitumen

his generals and spoke as follows:

”My friends, the river has stepped aside for us; he offers us a passage by his own high-road into Babylon. We must take heart and enter fearlessly, remembering that those against whom we are to march this night are the very men we have conquered before, and that too when they had their allies to help them, when they were awake, alert, and sober, armed to the teeth, and in their battle order. Tonight we go against them when some are asleep and some are drunk, and all are unprepared: and when they learn that we are within the walls, sheer astonishment will make them still more helpless than before. If any of you are troubled by the thought of volleys from the roofs when the army enters the city, I bid you lay these fears aside: if our enemies do climb their roofs we have a god to help us, the god of Fire. Their porches are easily set aflame, for the doors are made of palm-wood and varnished with bitumen, the

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon  
**ἀπαράσκευος** unprepared  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**βοάω** shout  
**δαίς** -τός (f) feast, banquet ~demon  
**δαῖς** δαδός (f) torch  
**δείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out  
**ἐντός** within  
**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable  
**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic

**κωμάζω** party, celebrate  
**οἰκίζω** colonize, settle  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**παίω** hit  
**πίσσα** pitch, resin ~pitch  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**συμβοάω** shout with  
**φλόξ** -γός (f) flame ~flame  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

μὲν δᾶδα ἔχομεν, ἥ ταχὺ πολὺ πῦρ τέξεται, πολλὴν δὲ  
 πίτταν καὶ στυππεῖον, ἃ ταχὺ παρακαλεῖ πολλὴν φλόγα·  
 ὥστε ἀνάγκην εἶναι ἢ φεύγειν ταχὺ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν  
 ἢ ταχὺ κατακεκαῦσθαι. ἀλλ' ἄγετε λαμβάνετε τὰ ὅπλα·  
 ἡγήσομαι δ' ἐγὼ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. ὑμεῖς δ', ἔφη, ὦ Γαδάτα  
 καὶ Γωβρύα, δείκνυτε τὰς ὁδοὺς· ἵστε γάρ· ὅταν δ' ἐντὸς  
 γενώμεθα, τὴν ταχίστην ἄγετε ἐπὶ τὰ βασιλεια. Καὶ μὴν,  
 ἔφασαν οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Γωβρύαν, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν  
 εἰ καὶ ἄκλειστοι αἱ πύλαι αἱ τοῦ βασιλείου εἶεν· κωμάζει  
 γὰρ ἡ πόλις πᾶσα τῇδε τῇ νυκτί. φυλακῇ μέντοι πρὸ  
 τῶν πυλῶν ἐντευξόμεθα· ἔστι γὰρ αἰὲς τεταγμένη. Οὐκ ἂν  
 μέλλειν δέοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀλλ' ἰέναι, ἵνα ἀπαρασκεύους  
 ὥς μάλιστα λάβωμεν τοὺς ἄνδρας.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐρρήθη, ἐπορεύοντο· τῶν δὲ ἀπαντῶντων  
 οἱ μὲν ἀπέθνησκον παιόμενοι, οἱ δ' ἔφευγον πάλιν εἴσω,  
 οἱ δ' ἐβόων· οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Γωβρύαν συνεβόων αὐτοῖς,  
 ὥς κωμασταὶ ὄντες καὶ αὐτοί· καὶ ἰόντες ἦ ἐδύναντο ὥς  
 τάχιστα ἐπὶ τοῖς βασιλείοις ἐγένοντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν



μὲν δᾶδα ἔχομεν, ἥ ταχὺ πολὺ πῦρ τέξεται, πολλήν δὲ

|pitch καὶ στυππεῖον, ἃ ταχὺ |summon, exhort, (pass)|flame  
|repent

ὥστε |necessity εἶναι ἥ φεύγειν ταχὺ τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν

ἥ ταχὺ |burn down . ἀλλ' ἄγετε λαμβάνετε τὰ |tool

ἡγήσομαι δ' ἐγὼ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. ὑμεῖς δ', ἔφη, ὦ Γαδάτα

καὶ Γωβρύα, |show τὰς ὁδοὺς· ἴστε γάρ· |when-? |within  
|ever

γενώμεθα, τὴν ταχίστην ἄγετε ἐπὶ τὰ βασίλεια. Καὶ μὴν,

ἔφασαν οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Γωβρύαν, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη |wonderful;  
|admirable

εἰ καὶ ἄκλειστοι αἱ |gate αἱ τοῦ βασιλείου εἶεν· |party,  
|celebrate

γὰρ ἡ πόλις πᾶσα τῇδε τῇ νυκτί. |guard, |however|before,  
|prison, |forward

τῶν πυλῶν ἐντευξόμεθα· ἔστι γὰρ αἰεὶ |watch  
|arrange . Οὐκ ἂν

μέλλειν δέοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀλλ' ἰέναι, ἵνα |unprepared

ὥς μάλιστα λάβωμεν τοὺς ἄνδρας.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐρρήθη, ἐπορεύοντο· τῶν δὲ |encounter, come upon

οἱ μὲν ἀπέθνησκον |hit , οἱ δ' ἔφευγον πάλιν εἴσω,

οἱ δ' |shout οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Γωβρύαν συνεβόων αὐτοῖς,

ὥς κωμασταὶ ὄντες καὶ αὐτοί· καὶ ἰόντες ἥ ἐδύναντο ὥς

τάχιστα ἐπὶ τοῖς βασιλείοις ἐγένοντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν

very food of fire. And we shall come with the pine-torch to kindle it, and with pitch and tow to feed it. They will be forced to flee from their homes or be burnt to death. Come, take your swords in your hand: God helping me, I will lead you on. Do you," he said, turning to Gadatas and Gobryas, "show us the streets, you know them; and once we are inside, lead us straight to the palace."

"So we will," said Gobryas and his men, "and it would not surprise us to find the palace-gates unbarred, for this night the whole city is given over to revelry. Still, we are sure to find a guard, for one is always stationed there."

"Then," said Cyrus, "there is no time for lingering; we must be off at once and take them unprepared."

Thereupon they entered: and of those they met some were struck down and slain, and others fled into their houses, and some raised the hue and cry, but Gobryas and his friends covered the cry with their shouts, as though they were revellers themselves. And thus, making their way by the quickest route, they soon found themselves before the king's

*vocabulary*

**ἀκινάκης** -ου (m, 1) Persian short sword  
**ἀνοίγνυμι** (ō) open  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**διαπέμπω** send out/over  
**εἰσπίπτω** fall into, rush in  
**ἐκθέω** run out  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station  
**θανατόω** kill ~euthanasia  
**θόρυβος** noise, clamor  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon people  
**κλείω** tell of; close  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**κτύπος** noise

**παίω** hit  
**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order  
**προβάλλω** throw before; propose; (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate  
 ~ballistic  
**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order before  
**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect  
 ~legion  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptical  
**σπάω** draw, pull out, pluck ~spatula  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
**τήχω** melt  
**φάος** φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl) eyes ~photon  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery  
**χειρόω** dominate, subdue

σὺν τῷ Γωβρύα καὶ Γαδάτα τεταγμένοι κεκλειμένας  
εὐρίσκουσι τὰς πύλας τοῦ βασιλείου· οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τοὺς  
φύλακας ταχθέντες ἐπεισπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς πίνουσι πρὸς  
φῶς πολὺ, καὶ εὐθὺς ὡς πολεμίοις ἐχρῶντο αὐτοῖς. ὡς  
δὲ κραυγὴ καὶ κτύπος ἐγένετο, αἰσθόμενοι οἱ ἔνδον τοῦ  
θορύβου, κελεύσαντος τοῦ βασιλέως σκέψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ  
πρᾶγμα, ἐκθέουσί τινες ἀνοίξαντες τὰς πύλας. οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ  
τὸν Γαδάταν ὡς εἶδον τὰς πύλας χαλώσας εἰσπίπτουσι  
καὶ τοῖς πάλιν φεύγουσιν εἴσω ἐφεπόμενοι καὶ παίοντες  
ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα· καὶ ἤδη ἐστηκότα αὐτὸν  
καὶ ἐσπασμένον ὃν εἶχεν ἀκινάκην εὐρίσκουσι. καὶ τοῦτον  
μὲν οἱ σὺν Γαδάτα καὶ Γωβρύα ἐχειροῦντο· καὶ οἱ σὺν  
αὐτῷ δὲ ἀπέθνησκον, ὁ μὲν προβαλλόμενός τι, ὁ δὲ  
φεύγων, ὁ δέ γε καὶ ἀμυνόμενος ὅτῳ ἐδύνατο. ὁ δὲ  
Κῦρος διέπεμπε τὰς τῶν ἱππέων τάξεις κατὰ τὰς ὁδοὺς  
καὶ προεῖπεν οὓς μὲν ἔξω λαμβάνοιεν κατακαίνειν, τοὺς  
δ' ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις κηρύττειν τοὺς συριστὶ ἐπισταμένους  
ἔνδον μένειν· εἰ δέ τις ἔξω ληφθείη, ὅτι θανατώσοιτο.

σὺν τῷ Γωβρύᾳ καὶ Γαδάτα |arrange |tell of; close  
 εὐρίσκουσι τὰς |gate τοῦ βασιλείου· οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τοὺς  
 |guard; ταχθέντες ἐπεισπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς πίνουσι πρὸς  
 |sentry  
 φῶς πολὺ, καὶ εὐθὺς ὡς πολεμίοις ἐχρῶντο αὐτοῖς. ὡς  
 δὲ |screaming, . καὶ |noise ἐγίγνετο, |perceive οἱ |in the house  
 |shouting |of; within  
 |noise, , κελεύσαντος τοῦ βασιλέως |look, look at, watch, γὰρ  
 |clamor  
 πρᾶγμα, |run out τινες ἀνοίξαντες τὰς |gate . οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ  
 τὸν Γαδάταν ὡς εἶδον τὰς |gate χαλώσας |fall into, rush in  
 καὶ τοῖς πάλιν φεύγουσιν εἴσω |drive, meet, follow |hit  
 |arrive πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα· καὶ ἤδη ἐστηκότα αὐτὸν  
 καὶ |draw, pull out ἦν εἶχεν |Persian εὐρίσκουσι. καὶ τοῦτον  
 |short  
 μὲν οἱ σὺν Γαδάτα καὶ Γωβρύᾳ |sword  
 |χειρώω?: dominate, subdue; or χειρώω?:  
 |dominate, subdue  
 αὐτῷ δὲ ἀπέθνησκον, ὁ μὲν |throw before; propose; (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate  
 φεύγων, ὁ δέ γε καὶ ἀμυνόμενος ὅτῳ ἐδύνατο. ὁ δὲ  
 Κῦρος |send out/over` τῶν |rider τάξεις κατὰ τὰς ὁδοὺς  
 καὶ προεῖπεν οὓς μὲν ἔξω λαμβάνοιεν |kill , τοὺς  
 δ' ἐν ταῖς |building, |be a henchman,` συριστὶ ἐπισταμένους  
 |house |summon people  
 |in the house .ν· εἰ δέ τις ἔξω ληφθείη, ὅτι |kill  
 |of; within

palace. Here the detachment under Gobryas and Gadatas found the gates closed, but the men appointed to attack the guards rushed on them as they lay drinking round a blazing fire, and closed with them then and there. As the din grew louder and louder, those within became aware of the tumult, till, the king bidding them see what it meant, some of them opened the gates and ran out. Gadatas and his men, seeing the gates swing wide, darted in, hard on the heels of the others who fled back again, and they chased them at the sword's point into the presence of the king.

They found him on his feet, with his drawn scimitar in his hand. By sheer weight of numbers they overwhelmed him: and not one of his retinue escaped, they were all cut down, some flying, others snatching up anything to serve as a shield and defending themselves as best they could. Cyrus sent squadrons of cavalry down the different roads with orders to kill all they found in the street, while those who knew Assyrian were to warn the inhabitants to stay indoors under pain of death. While they carried out these

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme  
**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
**ἀκροθίνιον** first-fruit sacrifice; the best  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἀναπέμπω** send up, back  
**ἀνόσιος** unholy  
**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear  
**δακρύω** weep  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐξαίρῶ** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
 ~heresy  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**εὐφροαίνω** gladden ~frenzy  
**ἐφίημι** (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at,  
 spring upon ~jet  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**κατατίθῃμι** put down, deposit, lay  
 aside ~thesis

**καταφιλέω** kiss, caress  
**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon  
 people  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὅπου** where  
**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake,  
 associate with  
**πότε** when?  
**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order  
**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems  
**προσκυνέω** kow tow to; kiss  
**τέμενος** -εος (n, 3) non-common land  
**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,  
 punish; aid one who has been attacked  
**φρούραρχος** garrison commander  
**φρουρός** watcher, guard  
**χαρά** joy

Οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποίουν. Γαδάτας δὲ καὶ Γωβρύας ἦκον· καὶ θεοὺς μὲν πρῶτον προσεκύνουν, ὅτι τετιμωρημένοι ἦσαν τὸν ἀνόσιον βασιλέα, ἔπειτα δὲ Κύρου κατεφίλουν καὶ χεῖρας καὶ πόδας, πολλὰ δακρύνοντες ἅμα χαρᾷ καὶ εὐφραινόμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο καὶ ἦσθοντο οἱ τὰς ἄκρας ἔχοντες ἐαλωκυῖάν τε τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὸν βασιλέα τεθνηκότα, παραδιδόασι καὶ τὰς ἄκρας. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὰς μὲν ἄκρας εὐθὺς παρελάμβανε καὶ φρουράρχους τε καὶ φρουροὺς εἰς ταύτας ἀνέπεμπε, τοὺς δὲ τεθνηκότας θάπτειν ἐφῆκε τοῖς προσήκουσι· τοὺς δὲ κήρυκας κηρύττειν ἐκέλευεν ἀποφέρειν πάντας τὰ ὄπλα Βαβυλωνίους· ὅπου δὲ ληφθήσοιτο ὄπλα ἐν οἰκίᾳ, προηγόρευεν ὥς πάντες οἱ ἔνδον ἀποθανοῖντο. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀπέφερον, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ταῦτα μὲν εἰς τὰς ἄκρας κατέθετο, ὥς εἴη ἔτοιμα, εἴ τί ποτε δέοι χρήσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἐπέπρακτο, πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς μάγους καλέσας, ὥς δοριαλώτου τῆς πόλεως οὔσης ἀκροθίνια τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ τεμένη ἐκέλευσεν ἐξελεῖν· ἐκ τούτου δὲ καὶ οἰκίας



Οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν. Γαδάτας δὲ καὶ Γωβρύας |be present, have  
 arrived  
 καὶ θεοὺς μὲν πρῶτον |kow tow to; kiss ἥτι |take vengeance,  
 |punish, aid  
 ἦσαν τὸν |unholy βασιλέα, ἔπειτα δὲ Κύρου |kiss, caress  
 καὶ χεῖρας καὶ πόδας, πολλὰ |weep ἄμα |joy  
 καὶ |gladden . ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο καὶ |perceive  
 οἱ τὰς ἄκρας ἔχοντες |be captured τε τὴν πόλιν καὶ  
 τὸν βασιλέα τεθνηκότα, παραδιδόασιν καὶ τὰς ἄκρας.  
 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὰς μὲν ἄκρας εὐθὺς |receive, undertake, ἡ  
 |associate with  
 |garrison τε καὶ |watcher, εἰς ταύτας |send up, back ὕς  
 |commander |guard  
 δὲ τεθνηκότας |bury |send flying at |belong to, it τοὺς  
 |beseems  
 δὲ |henchman, |be a henchman, ἔλευνεν |carry off πάντας τὰ  
 |functionary |summon people  
 |tool Βαβυλωνίους· |where δὲ ληφθήσοιτο |tool ἐν οἰκίᾳ,  
 |declare, pre- ὥς πάντες οἱ |in the house ἁνοῖντο. οἱ μὲν  
 |dict, order |of; within  
 δὴ |carry off , ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ταῦτα μὲν εἰς τὰς ἄκρας  
 |put down , ὥς εἶη ἕτοιμα, εἴ τί ποτε δέοι χρῆσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 ταῦτ' ἐπέπρακτο, πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς μάγους καλέσας, ὥς  
 δοριαλώτου τῆς πόλεως οὔσης |first-fruit sac-ῶς θεοῖς καὶ  
 |rifice; the best  
 |non-common land . |pick, steal; dedi- του δὲ καὶ οἰκίας  
 |cate; destroy

orders, Gobryas and Gاداتas returned, and first they gave thanks to the gods and did obeisance because they had been suffered to take vengeance on their unrighteous king, and then they fell to kissing the hands and feet of Cyrus, shedding tears of joy and gratitude. And when it was day and those who held the heights knew that the city was taken and the king slain, they were persuaded to surrender the citadel themselves. Cyrus took it over forthwith, and sent in a commandant and a garrison, while he delivered the bodies of the fallen to their kinsfolk for burial, and bade his heralds make proclamation that all the citizens must deliver up their arms: wherever weapons were discovered in any house all the inmates would be put to death. So the arms were surrendered, and Cyrus had them placed in the citadel for use in case of need. When all was done he summoned the Persian priests and told them the city was the captive of his spear and bade them set aside the first-fruits of the booty as an offering to the gods and mark out land for sacred demesnes. Then he distributed the houses and the public

*vocabulary***ἀμήχανος** helpless, impossible

~mechanism

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**ἀρχεῖον** central office**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**διανέμω** distribute, divide**ἐπιθυμέω** (ῶ) wish, covet**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐπίφθονος** jealous**ἥκιστος** least; above all**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**καταπράσσω** accomplish, build

~practice

**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**κράτιστος** best**μείων** less, smaller**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**ὅπου** where**Πέρσης** Persian**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent

~refurbish

**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order

before

**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect

~legion

**προσδέχομαι** await**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,

come in

**προσίημι** be allowed near**σεμνός** revered, holy**σπάνιος** rare, scanty**σπάνις** -εως (f) scarcity, rarity**ώθέω** push

διεδίδου καὶ ἀρχεῖα τούτοις οὕσπερ κοινῶνας ἐνόμιζε τῶν  
 καταπεπραγμένων· οὕτω δὲ διένειμεν, ὥσπερ ἐδέδοκτο,  
 τὰ κράτιστα τοῖς ἀρίστοις. εἰ δέ τις οἶοιτο μείον ἔχειν,  
 διδάσκειν προσιόντας ἐκέλευε. προεῖπε δὲ Βαβυλωνίους  
 μὲν τὴν γῆν ἐργάζεσθαι καὶ τοὺς δασμοὺς ἀποφέρειν  
 καὶ θεραπεύειν τούτους οἷς ἕκαστοι αὐτῶν ἐδόθησαν·  
 Πέρσας δὲ τοὺς κοινῶνας καὶ τῶν συμμάχων ὅσοι μένειν  
 ἡροῦντο παρ' αὐτῷ ὡς δεσπότης ὢν ἔλαβον προηγόρευε  
 διαλέγεσθαι.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἐπιθυμῶν ὁ Κῦρος ἤδη κατασκευάσασθαι  
 καὶ αὐτὸς ὡς βασιλεῖ ἡγείτο πρέπειν, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ τοῦτο  
 σὺν τῇ τῶν φίλων γνώμῃ ποιῆσαι, ὥς ὅτι ἥκιστα ἂν  
 ἐπιφθόνως σπάνιός τε καὶ σεμνὸς φανείη. ὦδε οὖν  
 ἐμηχανᾶτο τοῦτο. ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ στὰς ὅπου ἐδόκει  
 ἐπιτήδειον εἶναι προσεδέχετο τὸν βουλόμενον λέγειν τι  
 καὶ ἀποκρινάμενος ἀπέπεμπεν. οἱ δ' ἄνθρωποι ὡς  
 ἔγνωσαν ὅτι προσδέχοιτο, ἦκον ἀμήχανοι τὸ πλῆθος· καὶ  
 ὠθουμένων περὶ τοῦ προσελθεῖν μηχανή τε πολλή

|distribute, ...<sup>`</sup> |central |τούτοις οὕσπερ κοινῶνας ἐνόμιζε τῶν  
|send out |office

|accomplish, build οὕτω δὲ |distribute, , ὥσπερ ἐδέδοκτο,  
|divide

τὰ |best τοῖς ἀρίστοις. εἰ δέ τις οἶοιτο |less, ᾗχειν,  
|smaller

διδάσκειν προσιόντας ἐκέλευε. προεῖπε δὲ Βαβυλωνίους

μὲν τὴν γῆν |work καὶ τοὺς |portion, |carry off  
|tax, tribute

καὶ |help, serve τούτους οἷς ἕκαστοι αὐτῶν ἐδόθησαν·

Πέρσας δὲ τοὺς κοινῶνας καὶ τῶν συμμάχων ὅσοι μένειν

ἡροῦντο παρ' αὐτῷ ὡς |master, ὧν ἔλαβον |declare, pre-  
|despot |dict, order

|go through, debate

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου |wish, covet ὁ Κῦρος ἤδη |equip, build

καὶ αὐτὸς ὡς βασιλεῖ ἡγείτο |be conspicuous, ν αὐτῷ τοῦτο  
|preeminent

σὺν τῇ τῶν φίλων γνώμῃ ποιῆσαι, ὡς ὅτι |least; ἂν  
|above  
|jealous σπάνιός τε καὶ |revered, holy. εἰγ. ὧδε οὖν  
|all

|build, τοῦτο. ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ στὰς |where ἐδόκει  
|contrive

|fit, suitable εἶναι |await τὸν βουλόμενον λέγειν τι

καὶ ἀποκρινάμενος |send away οἱ δ' ἄνθρωποι ὡς

ἔγνωσαν ὅτι |await , ἥκον |helpless, τὸ πλῆθος· καὶ  
|impossible

|push περὶ τοῦ |come forward, |machine; mecha-<sup>`</sup> λή  
|surrender, |nism, way  
|come in

buildings to those whom he counted his partners in the exploit; and the distribution was on the principle accepted, the best prizes to the bravest men: and if any thought they had not received their deserts they were invited to come and tell him. At the same time he issued a proclamation to the Babylonians, bidding them till the soil and pay the dues and render willing service to those under whose rule they were placed. As for his partners the Persians, and such of his allies as elected to remain with him, he gave them to understand they were to treat as subjects the captives they received.

After this Cyrus felt that the time was come to assume the style and manner that became a king: and he wished this to be done with the goodwill and concurrence of his friends and in such a way that, without seeming ungracious, he might appear but seldom in public and always with a certain majesty. Therefore he devised the following scheme. At break of day he took his station at some convenient place, and received all who desired speech with him, and then dismissed them. The people, when they heard that he gave audience, thronged to him in multitudes, and in the struggle to gain access there was much jostling and scheming and no little

*vocabulary***ἀναγκάιος** coerced, coercing, slavery**αὔριον** tomorrow**διακρίνω** (ι) separate, sort ~critic**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken**διωθέω** tear, rend**ἐπιρρέζω** sacrifice to**ἐπιρρέω** flow over ~rheostat**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**περίστημι** be around; turn out

~station

**περιμένω** wait for**προσάγω** bring to a place

~demagogue

**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**προσίημι** be allowed near**προτείνω** hold out, offer**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear

~photon

**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have sex ~genus**σχολάζω** have leisure**ὑπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer**ὑστεραίῳς** the next; later**φθάζω** do first, outstrip**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip**χωρίον** area; downwards

καὶ μάχη ἦν. οἱ δὲ ὑπηρέται ὡς ἐδύναντο διακρίναντες προσίεσαν. ὁπότε δέ τις καὶ τῶν φίλων διωσάμενος τὸν ὄχλον προφανείῃ, προτείνων ὁ Κῦρος τὴν χεῖρα προσήγετο αὐτοὺς καὶ οὕτως ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες φίλοι, περιμένετε, ἕως ἂν τὸν ὄχλον διωσώμεθα· ἔπειτα δὲ καθ' ἡσυχίαν συγγενησόμεθα. οἱ μὲν δὴ φίλοι περιέμενον. ὁ δ' ὄχλος πλείων καὶ πλείων ἐπέρρει, ὥστ' ἔφθασεν ἐσπέρα γενομένη πρὶν τοῖς φίλοις αὐτὸν σχολάσαι καὶ συγγενέσθαι. οὕτω δὴ ὁ Κῦρος λέγει· ὦρα, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, νῦν μὲν καιρὸς διαλυθῆναι· αὔριον δὲ πρῶ ἔλθετε· καὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ βούλομαι ὑμῖν τι διαλεχθῆναι. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ φίλοι ἄσμενοι ὥχοντο ἀποθέοντες, δίκην δεδωκότες ὑπὸ πάντων τῶν ἀναγκαίων. καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ μὲν Κῦρος παρῆν εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ χωρίον, ἀνθρώπων δὲ πολὺ πλεόν πληθὸς περιειστῆκει βουλομένων προσιέναι, καὶ πολὺ πρότερον ἢ οἱ φίλοι παρῆσαν. ὁ οὖν Κῦρος περιστησάμενος τῶν ξυστοφόρων



καὶ μάχη ἦν. οἱ δὲ <sup>|servant, officer</sup> ὥς ἐδύναντο <sup>|separate, sort</sup>  
<sup>|be allowed near</sup> |when δέ τις καὶ τῶν φίλων <sup>|tear, rend</sup>  
τὸν <sup>|mob, crowd;</sup> <sup>|show; appear</sup> pass;|hold out, offer· Κῦρος τὴν χεῖρα  
<sup>|bring to a place</sup> <sup>|trouble</sup> τοὺς καὶ οὕτως ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες φίλοι,  
<sup>|wait for</sup> , ἕως ἂν τὸν <sup>|mob, crowd;</sup> <sup>|tear, rend</sup> ἔπειτα δὲ καθ'  
<sup>|peace and quiet</sup> and|associate with, <sup>|trouble</sup> οἱ μὲν δὴ φίλοι <sup>|wait for</sup> .  
<sup>|quiet</sup> <sup>|meet, have sex</sup>  
ὁ δ' <sup>|mob, crowd;</sup> <sup>|trouble</sup> πλείων ἐπέρρει, ὥστ' ἔφθασεν  
ἐσπέρα γενομένη πρὶν τοῖς φίλοις αὐτὸν <sup>|have leisure</sup> καὶ  
<sup>|associate with, meet, have sex</sup> οὕτω δὴ ὁ Κῦρος λέγει· "Ωρα, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες,  
νῦν μὲν καιρὸς <sup>|break up; re-|tomorrow</sup> <sup>|lax, weaken</sup> πρῶ ἔλθετε· καὶ γὰρ  
ἐγὼ βούλομαι ὑμῖν τι <sup>|go through, debate</sup> λύσαντες ταῦτα  
οἱ φίλοι <sup>|be pleased, enjoy</sup> <sup>|come, go</sup> ἀποθέοντες, δίκην δεδωκότες  
ὑπὸ πάντων τῶν ἀναγκαίων. καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως  
ἐκοιμήθησαν.  
Τῇ δ' <sup>|the next; later</sup> μὲν Κῦρος παρήν εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ  
<sup>|area; downwards</sup> τῶν δὲ πολὺ πλεόν <sup>|numeri- cal supe- riority</sup> <sup>|be around; turn out</sup>  
βουλομένων προσιέναι, καὶ πολὺ πρότερον ἢ οἱ φίλοι  
παρήσαν. ὁ οὖν Κῦρος <sup>|be around; turn out</sup> ὡν ξυστοφόρων

fighting. His attendants did their best to divide the suitors, and introduce them in some order, and whenever any of his personal friends appeared, thrusting their way through the crowd, Cyrus would stretch out his hand and draw them to his side and say, "Wait, my friends, until we have finished with this crowd, and then we can talk at our ease." So his friends would wait, but the multitude would pour on, growing greater and greater, until the evening would fall before there had been a moment's leisure for his friends. All that Cyrus could do then was to say, "Perhaps, gentlemen, it is a little late this evening and time that we broke up. Be sure to come early to-morrow. I am very anxious myself to speak with you." With that his friends were only too glad to be dismissed, and made off without more ado. They had done penance enough, fasting and waiting and standing all day long. So they would get to rest at last, but the next morning Cyrus was at the same spot and a much greater concourse of suitors round him than before, already assembled long before his friends arrived. Accordingly Cyrus had a cordon of Persian lancers stationed round

*vocabulary*

γέλοιος laughable; joking  
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?  
 διάκειμαι be in a condition  
 εἰκός likely  
 ἐννοέω consider  
 ἑσπέρα evening, west  
 εὐδαιμονία prosperity  
 εὐφραίνω gladden ~frenzy  
 ἔωθεν at first light  
 καταπράσσω accomplish, build  
 ~practice  
 καταπράττω accomplish, build  
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle  
 λάσκω cry, crack, ring  
 λήγω cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease  
 ~lax  
 λογίζομαι reckon, consider  
 μεθίστημι change, substitute;  
 withdraw; change sides; (mid) send

away ~station  
 μέμφομαι blame; reject  
 μέτεμι be among, go, follow ~ion  
 μέχρι as far as, until  
 παρέξιμι pass by; transgress  
 παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet  
 περίστημι be around; turn out  
 ~station  
 Πέρσης Persian  
 πρόσσεμι approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
 πρόσθεν before (time, space)  
 προσίημι be allowed near  
 προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
 σαφής clear, understandable  
 συνέρχομαι come together  
 σχολή rest, leisure  
 τοιόσδε such  
 χθές yesterday

Περσῶν κύκλον μέγαν εἶπε μηδένα παριέναι ἢ τοὺς φίλους  
 τε καὶ ἄρχοντας τῶν Περσῶν τε καὶ τῶν συμμάχων. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ συνήλθον οὗτοι, ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτοῖς τοιάδε· Ἄνδρες  
 φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι, τοῖς μὲν θεοῖς οὐδὲν ἂν ἔχοιμεν  
 μέμψασθαι τὸ μὴ οὐχὶ μέχρι τοῦδε πάντα ὅσα ἡνυόμεθα  
 καταπεπραχέναι· εἰ μέντοι τοιοῦτον ἔσται τὸ μέγαλα  
 πράττειν ὥστε μὴ οἶόν τ' εἶναι μήτε ἀμφ' αὐτὸν σχολὴν  
 ἔχειν μήτε μετὰ τῶν φίλων εὐφρανθῆναι, ἐγὼ μὲν χαίρειν  
 ταύτην τὴν εὐδαιμονίαν κελεύω. ἐνενόησατε γάρ, ἔφη, καὶ  
 χθὲς δήπου ὅτι ἔωθεν ἀρξάμενοι ἀκούειν τῶν προσιόντων  
 οὐκ ἐλήξαμεν πρόσθεν ἐσπέρας· καὶ νῦν ὁρᾶτε τούτους  
 ἄλλους πλείονας τῶν χθὲς παρόντας ὡς πράγματα ἡμῖν  
 παρέξοντας. εἰ οὖν τις τούτοις ὑφέξει ἐαυτόν, λογίζομαι  
 μικρὸν μὲν τι ὑμῖν μέρος ἐμοῦ μετεσόμενον, μικρὸν δέ τι  
 ἐμοὶ ὑμῶν· ἐμαυτοῦ μέντοι σαφῶς οἶδ' ὅτι οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν μοι  
 μετέσται. ἔτι δ', ἔφη, καὶ ἄλλο ὁρῶ γελοῖον πρᾶγμα· ἐγὼ  
 γὰρ δήπου ὑμῖν μὲν ὥσπερ εἰκὸς διάκειμαι· τούτων δὲ τῶν  
 περιεστηκότων ἢ τινα ἢ οὐδένα οἶδα, καὶ

Περσῶν |circle, μέγαν εἶπε μηδένα |dangle; pass -ους φίλους  
 |wheel |over, allow  
 τε καὶ ἄρχοντας τῶν Περσῶν τε καὶ τῶν συμμάχων. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ |come together<sup>6</sup> .οι, ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτοῖς |such Ἄνδρες  
 φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι, τοῖς μὲν θεοῖς οὐδὲν ἂν ἔχοιμεν  
 |blame; reject τὸ μὴ οὐχὶ |as far as, until γάντα ὅσα |declare; pray  
 καταπεπραχέναι· εἰ |however τοιοῦτον ἔσται τὸ μεγάλα  
 πράττειν ὥστε μὴ οἶόν τ' εἶναι μήτε ἀμφ' αὐτὸν |rest,  
 |leisure  
 ἔχειν μήτε μετὰ τῶν φίλων |gladden , ἐγὼ μὲν |rejoice  
 ταύτην τὴν |prosperity κελεύω. |consider γάρ, ἔφη, καὶ  
 |yes- |perhaps;<sup>7</sup> . is |at first light ἔμνοι ἀκούειν τῶν προσιόντων  
 |ter- |it not so?  
 |day οὐκ ἐλήξαμεν πρόσθεν ἐσπέρας· καὶ νῦν ὁρᾶτε τούτους  
 ἄλλους πλείονας τῶν |yesterday, -όντας ὡς πράγματα ἡμῖν  
 παρέξοντας. εἰ οὖν τις τούτοις ὑφέξει ἑαυτόν, |reckon,  
 |consider  
 |small μέν τι ὑμῖν μέρος ἐμοῦ |be among , |small δέ τι  
 ἐμοὶ ὑμῶν· ἐμαυτοῦ |how- |clear, under-<sup>8</sup> ὅτι οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν μοι  
 |ever |standable  
 μετέσται. ἔτι δ', ἔφη, καὶ ἄλλο ὁρῶ |laughable; , ῥάγμα· ἐγὼ  
 |joking  
 γὰρ |perhaps;<sup>9</sup> , is ' μὲν ὥσπερ |likely |be in a condition<sup>10</sup> . οὐν δὲ τῶν  
 |it not so?  
 |be around; turn out<sup>11</sup> . ινα ἢ οὐδένα οἶδα, καὶ

him, and gave out that no one except his personal friends and the generals were to be allowed access, and as soon as they were admitted he said:

"My friends, we cannot exclaim against the gods as though they had failed to fulfil our prayers. They have granted all we asked. But if success means that a man must forfeit his own leisure and the good company of all his friends, why, to that kind of happiness I would rather bid farewell. Yesterday," he added, "I make no doubt you observed yourselves that from early dawn till late evening I never ceased listening to petitioners, and to-day you see this crowd before us, larger still than yesterday's, ready with business for me. If this must be submitted to, I calculate that what you will get of me and I of you will be little enough, and what I shall get of myself will simply be nothing at all. Further," he added, "I foresee another absurd consequence. I, personally, have a feeling towards you which I need not state, but, of that audience yonder, scarcely one of them do I know at all, and yet they are

*vocabulary***ἀνάπαυσις** -τος (f) rest**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**δήτα** emphatic δῆ**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**πότε** when?**προσαγωγή** bringing to; solemn approach**σπάνιος** rare, scanty**συγγενής** inborn, kin to**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable**ὕστερίζω** be late**ώθέω** push

οὔτοι πάντες οὕτω παρεσκευασμένοι εἰσὶν ὥς, ἣν νικῶσιν  
 ὑμᾶς ὠθοῦντες, πρότεροι ἂ βούλονται ὑμῶν παρ' ἐμοῦ  
 διαπραξόμενοι. ἐγὼ δὲ ἡξίουν τοὺς τοιούτους, εἴ τίς τι  
 ἐμοῦ δέοιτο, θεραπεύειν ὑμᾶς τοὺς ἐμούς φίλους δεομένους  
 προσαγωγῆς. ἴσως ἂν οὖν εἴποι τις, τί δῆτα οὐχ οὕτως  
 ἐξ ἀρχῆς παρεσκευασάμην, ἀλλὰ παρείχον ἐν τῷ μέσῳ  
 ἐμαυτόν. ὅτι τὰ τοῦ πολέμου τοιαῦτα ἐγίνωσκον ὄντα  
 ὥς μὴ ὑστερίζειν δέον τὸν ἄρχοντα μήτε τῷ εἰδέναι ἂ δεῖ  
 μήτε τῷ πράττειν ἂ ἂν καιρὸς ᾗ· τοὺς δὲ σπανίους ἰδεῖν  
 στρατηγούς πολλὰ ἐνόμιζον ὧν δεῖ πραχθῆναι παριέναι,  
 νῦν δ' ἐπειδὴ καὶ ὁ φιλοπονώτατος πόλεμος ἀναπέπαυται,  
 δοκεῖ μοι καὶ ἡ ἐμὴ ψυχὴ ἀναπαύσεώς τινος ἀξιοῦν  
 τυγχάνειν. ὥς οὖν ἐμοῦ ἀποροῦντος ὅ τι ἂν τύχοιμι  
 ποιῶν ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν τά τε ἡμέτερα καὶ τὰ τῶν ἄλλων  
 ὧν ἡμᾶς δεῖ ἐπιμελεῖσθαι, συμβουλευέτω ὅ τι τις ὁρᾷ  
 συμφερότατον.

Κῦρος μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀνίσταται δ' ἐπ' αὐτῷ Ἀρτάβαζος  
 ὁ συγγενής ποτε φήσας εἶναι καὶ εἶπεν· Ἡ καλῶς, ἔφη,



οὔτοι πάντες οὕτω |prepare, render εἰσὶν ὥς, ἦν |win, defeat

ύμᾱς |push , πρότεροι ἂ βούλονται ύμῶν παρ' ἐμοῦ

|travel over, ac- ἐγὼ δὲ |consider wòr- τοιούτους, εἴ τίς τι  
|comply |thy, fitting

ἐμοῦ δέοιτο, |help, serve ύμᾱς τοὺς ἐμοὺς φίλους δεομένους

|bringing to;|equal ἂν οὖν εἴποι τις, τί |emphatic δὴ ἕτως  
|solemn approach

ἐξ ἀρχῆς |prepare, render , ἀλλὰ |furnish ἐν τῷ μέσῳ

ἐμμαντόν. ὅτι τὰ τοῦ πολέμου τοιαῦτα ἐγίγνωσκον ὄντα

ὥς μὴ |be late δέον τὸν ἄρχοντα |neither ᾧ εἰδέναι ἂ δεῖ

|neither ᾧ πράττειν ἂ ἂν καιρὸς ἦ· τοὺς δὲ |rare, ἰδεῖν  
|scanty

στρατηγούς πολλὰ |consider ἡcus- εἰ πραχθῆναι |dangle; pass  
|tomary; believe |over, allow

νῦν δ' ἐπειδὴ καὶ ὁ φιλοπονώτατος πόλεμος |cause to cease ,

δοκεῖ μοι καὶ ἡ ἐμὴ |soul; |rest τινος |consider worthy,  
|life |fitting

τυγχάνειν. ὥς οὖν ἐμοῦ |be confused, ὅ τι ἂν τύχοιμι  
|distressed

ποιῶν ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν τά τε |our, my καὶ τὰ τῶν ἄλλων

ὧν ἡμᾱς δεῖ |take care of, over-|give advice; ὅ τι τις ὀρᾷ  
|see |(mid) consult

|accompanying;  
|suitable

|authority; ὃ οὕτως εἶπεν· |stand up; arouse ὃ αὐτῷ Ἀρτάβαζος  
|validity

ὁ |inborn, kin to ἔφησας εἶναι καὶ εἶπεν· Ἡ καλῶς, ἔφη,

all prepared to thrust themselves in front of you, transact their business, and get what they want out of me before any of you have a chance. I should have thought it more suitable myself that men of that class, if they wanted anything from me, should pay some court to you, my friends, in the hopes of an introduction. Perhaps you will ask why I did not so arrange matters from the first, instead of always appearing in public. Because in war it is the first business of a commander not to be behindhand in knowing what ought to be done and seeing that it is done, and the general who is seldom seen is apt to let things slip. But to-day, when war with its insatiable demands is over, I feel as if I had some claim myself to rest and refreshment. I am in some perplexity, however, as to how I can arrange matters so that all goes well, not only with you and me, but also with those whom we are bound to care for. Therefore I seek your advice and counsel, and I would be glad to learn from any of you the happiest solution.”

Cyrus paused, and up rose Artabazus the Mede, who had claimed to be his kinsman, and said:

”You did well, Cyrus, to open this

*vocabulary*

**ἀγκάλη** the bent arm ~ankylosaurus  
**ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**ἐξαγγέλλω** bring news out ~angel  
**ἐοικότως** like; fairly  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὅ) wish, covet  
**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy  
**κατοκνέω** shrink from  
**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider  
**μεταλαμβάνω** share in; swap  
**νέομαι** go; come home ~nostalgia  
**νέω** spin; swim ~neuro

**ξέω** smooth

**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**ὀρμέω** be anchored  
**πεινάω** be hungry  
**περιφέρω** carry around  
**πότε** when?  
**πρόθυμος** (ὅ) willing, eager ~fume  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**συγγινώσκω** acknowledge; pardon  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
**σχολή** rest, leisure

ἐποίησας, ὦ Κῦρε, ἄρξας τοῦ λόγου. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἔτι νέου μὲν ὄντος σοῦ πάνυ ἀρξάμενος ἐπεθύμουν φίλος γενέσθαι, ὁρῶν δέ σε οὐδὲν δεόμενον ἐμοῦ κατώκνουν σοι προσιέναι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔτυχές ποτε καὶ ἐμοῦ δεηθεὶς προθύμως ἐξαγγεῖλαι πρὸς Μήδους τὰ παρὰ Κναζάρου, ἐλογιζόμην, εἰ ταῦτα προθύμως σοι συλλάβοιμι, ὥς οἰκεῖός τέ σοι ἐσοίμην καὶ ἐξέσοιτό μοι διαλέγεσθαί σοι ὅπόσον χρόνον βουλοίμην. καὶ ἐκεῖνα μὲν δὴ ἐπράχθη ὥστε σε ἐπαινεῖν. μετὰ τοῦτο Ὑρκάνιοι μὲν πρῶτοι φίλοι ἡμῖν ἐγένοντο καὶ μάλα πεινώσι συμμάχων· ὥστε μόνον οὐκ ἐν ταῖς ἀγκάλαις περιεφέρομεν αὐτοὺς ἀγαπῶντες. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἐπεὶ ἐάλω τὸ πολέμιον στρατόπεδον, οὐκ οἶμαι σχολή σοι ἦν ἀμφ' ἐμέ ἔχειν· καὶ ἐγὼ σοι συνεγίγνωσκον. ἐκ δὲ τούτου Γωβρύας ἡμῖν φίλος ἐγένετο, καὶ ἐγὼ ἔχαιρον· καὶ αὐτὸς Γαδάτας· καὶ ἤδη ἔργον σοῦ ἦν μεταλαβεῖν. ἐπεὶ γε μέντοι καὶ Σάκαι καὶ Καδούσιοι σύμμαχοι ἐγεγέννητο, θεραπεύειν εἰκότως ἔδει τούτους· καὶ γὰρ οὗτοι σέ ἐθεράπευον. ὥς δ' ἦλθομεν πάλιν ἔνθεν ὠρμήθημεν, ὁρῶν

ἐποίησας, ὦ Κῦρε, ἄρξας τοῦ λόγου. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἔτι  
 νέου μὲν ὄντος σοῦ |altogether, ýery...os |wish, covet φίλος  
 γενέσθαι, ὁρῶν δέ σε οὐδὲν δεόμενον ἐμοῦ |shrink from σοι  
 προσιέναι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔτυχές ποτε καὶ ἐμοῦ δεηθεὶς |willing,  
 |bring news out, ὅς Μήδους τὰ παρὰ Κναξάρου, |reckon, |eager  
 |consider  
 εἰ ταῦτα |willing, σοι |seize, capture; |un- |household, |fa- |  
 |eager |derstand |miliar, proper  
 ἐσοίμην καὶ |smooth μοι |go through, debate |as/how many/great  
 βουλοίμην. καὶ ἐκείνα μὲν δὴ ἐπράχθη ὥστε σε |concur  
 μετὰ τοῦτο Ὑρκάνιοι μὲν πρῶτοι φίλοι ἡμῖν ἐγένοντο  
 καὶ μάλα πεινώσι συμμάχων· ὥστε μόνον οὐκ ἐν ταῖς  
 |the bent arm|carry around αὐτοὺς |welcome, be host μετὰ δὲ  
 τοῦτο ἐπεὶ |be captured |ολέμιον |army camp , οὐκ οἶμαι  
 |rest, σοι ἦν ἀμφ' ἐμὲ ἔχειν· καὶ ἐγὼ σοι |acknowledge;  
 |leisure |pardon  
 ἐκ δὲ τούτου Γωβρύας ἡμῖν φίλος ἐγένετο, καὶ ἐγὼ  
 |rejoice καὶ |back, again, |ίτας· καὶ ἤδη ἔργον σοῦ ἦν  
 |moreover  
 |share in; swap ἐπεὶ γε |however καὶ Σάκαι καὶ Καδούσιοι  
 σύμμαχοι ἐγεγέννητο, |help, serve |like; ἔδει τούτους·  
 |fairly  
 καὶ γὰρ οὗτοι σέ |help, serve . ὥς δ' ἤλθομεν πάλιν ἐνθεν  
 ὠρμήθημεν, ὁρῶν

matter. Years ago, when you were still a boy, from the very first I longed to be your friend, but I saw you did not need me, and so I shrank from approaching you. Then came a lucky moment when you did have need of me to be your good messenger among the Medes with the order from Cyaxares, and I said to myself that if I did the work well, if I really helped you, I might become your comrade and have the right to talk with you as often as I wished. Well, the work was done, and done so as to win your praise. After that the Hyrcanians joined us, the first friends we made, when we were hungry and thirsty for allies, and we loved them so much we almost carried them about with us in our arms wherever we went. Then the enemy's camp was taken, and I scarcely think you had the leisure to trouble your head with me—oh, I quite forgave you. The next thing was that Gobryas became your friend, and I had to take my leave, and after him Gادات, and by that time it was a real task to get hold of you. Then came the alliances with the Sakians, and the Cadousians, and no doubt you had to pay them court; if they danced attendance on you, you must dance attendance on them. So that there I was, back again at my starting-point, and yet

*vocabulary***ἀγγελία** message, news ~angel**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἄσιτος** (i) not eating ~parasite**ἀφθονία** abundance**γελᾶω** laugh, smile, laugh at**δεξιόομαι** salute, greet**ἐξαγγέλλω** bring news out ~angel**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

**μετέχω** partake of**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**πη** somewhere, somehow**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συνουσία** society, sex**σχολάζω** have leisure**σχολή** rest, leisure**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral**χθές** yesterday

σε ἀμφ' ἵππους ἔχοντα, ἀμφ' ἄρματα, ἀμφὶ μηχανάς,  
 ἡγούμεν, ἐπεὶ ἀπὸ τούτων σχολάσαις, τότε σε καὶ ἀμφ'  
 ἐμὲ ἔξειν σχολήν. ὥς γε μέντοι ἦλθεν ἡ δεινὴ ἀγγελία  
 τὸ πάντας ἀνθρώπους ἐφ' ἡμᾶς συλλέγεσθαι, ἐγίγνωσκον  
 ὅτι ταῦτα μέγιστα εἶη· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς γένοιτο, εὖ ἤδη  
 ἐδόκουν εἰδέναι ὅτι πολλὴ ἔσοιτο ἀφθονία τῆς ἐμῆς καὶ τῆς  
 σῆς συνουσίας. καὶ νῦν δὴ νενικήκαμέν τε τὴν μεγάλην  
 μάχην καὶ Σάρδεις καὶ Κροῖσον ὑποχείριον ἔχομεν καὶ  
 Βαβυλῶνα ἡγήκαμεν καὶ πάντας κατεστράμμεθα, καὶ μὰ  
 τὸν Μίθρην ἐγὼ τοι ἐχθές, εἰ μὴ πολλοῖς διεπύκτευσα, οὐκ  
 ἂν ἐδυνάμην σοι προσελθεῖν. ἐπεὶ γε μέντοι ἐδεξιώσω με  
 καὶ παρὰ σοὶ ἐκέλευσας μένειν, ἤδη περίβλεπτος ἦν, ὅτι  
 μετὰ σοῦ ἄσιτος καὶ ἄποτος διημέρευον. νῦν οὖν εἰ μὲν  
 ἔσται πῃ ὅπως οἱ πλείστου ἄξιοι γεγεννημένοι πλείστόν  
 σου μέρος μεθέξομεν· εἰ δὲ μή, πάλιν αὖ ἐγὼ ἐθέλω παρὰ  
 σοῦ ἐξαγγέλλειν ἀπιέναι πάντας ἀπὸ σοῦ πλὴν ἡμῶν τῶν  
 ἐξ ἀρχῆς φίλων.

Ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἐγέλασε μὲν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοί·



σε ἀμφ' ἵππους ἔχοντα, ἀμφ' |chariot , ἀμφὶ |machine; mecha-  
 νism, way  
 ἡγούμεν, ἐπεὶ ἀπὸ τούτων |have leisure , τότε σε καὶ ἀμφ'  
 ἐμέ ἔξειν |rest, . ὥς γε |however ἦλθεν ἡ δεινὴ |message, news  
 |leisure  
 τὸ πάντας ἀνθρώπους ἐφ' ἡμᾶς |collect, , ἐγγίνωσκον  
 |assemble  
 ὅτι ταῦτα μέγιστα εἶη· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς γένοιτο, εὖ ἤδη  
 ἐδόκουν εἰδέναι ὅτι πολλὰ ἔσοιτο |abundance ἢς ἐμῆς καὶ τῆς  
 σῆς συνουσίας. καὶ νῦν δὴ |win, defeat τε τὴν μέγαλην  
 μάχην καὶ Σάρδεις καὶ Κροῖσον |under one's hand, ἐν καὶ  
 Βαβυλῶνα ἠρήκαμεν καὶ πάντας |overturn, subdue , καὶ μὰ  
 τὸν Μίθρην ἐγὼ τοι |yesterday , μὴ πολλοῖς διεπύκτευσα, οὐκ  
 ἂν ἐδυνάμην σοι |come forward, surrender, |however |salute, με  
 |come in |greet  
 καὶ παρὰ σοὶ ἐκέλευσας μένειν, ἤδη περίβλεπτος ἦν, ὅτι  
 μετὰ σοῦ |not eating ἢ ἄποτος διημέρευον. νῦν οὖν εἰ μὲν  
 ἔσται πῃ ὅπως οἱ πλείστου |worthy, εγεννημένοι πλείστόν  
 σου μέρος |partake of εἰ δὲ μή, πάλιν αὖ ἐγὼ ἐθέλω παρὰ  
 σοῦ |bring news out |be absent, γό τας ἀπὸ σοῦ |except ἡμῶν τῶν  
 |away, return  
 ἐξ ἀρχῆς φίλων.

Ἐπὶ τούτῳ |laugh, μὲν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοί·  
 |smile

all the while, as I saw you busy with horses and chariots and artillery, I consoled myself by thinking, 'when he is done with this he will have a little leisure for me.' And then came the terrible news that the whole world was gathering in arms against us; I could not deny that these were important matters, but still I felt certain, if all went well, a time would come at last when you need not grudge me your company, and we should be together to my heart's content, you and I. Now, the day has come; we have conquered in the great battle; we have taken Sardis and Babylon; the world is at our feet, and yesterday, by Mithras! unless I had used my fists a hundred times, I swear I could never have got near you at all. Well, you grasped my hand and gave me greeting, and bade me wait beside you, and there I waited, the cynosure of every eye, the envy of every man, standing there all day long, without a scrap to eat or a drop to drink. So now, if any way can be found by which we who have served you longest can get the most of you, well and good: but, if not, pray send me as your messenger once more, and this time I will tell them they can all leave you, except those who were your friends of old."

This appeal set them all laughing, Cyrus with the rest. Then Chrysantas the Persian

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

**ἄμοιρος** bereft, exempt

**ἀνακτάομαι** regain, revive; win over

**ἀπολαύω** have use, have a benefit

**βασίλεια** noblewoman

**βασίλειος** kingly

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐοικότως** like; fairly

**ἑστία** hearth ~Hestia

**ἡδέως** pleasantly ~hedonism

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy

**θύω** (ῶ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

**καρτερέω** be patient

**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage

**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)

**προστίθῃμι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis

**σαυτοῦ** yourself

**συμπονέω** work together

**συναγορεύω** support

**φανερὸς** visible, conspicuous ~photon

**φανερῶω** demonstrate ~photon

**χωρίον** area; downwards

Χρυσάντας δ' ἀνέστη ὁ Πέρσης καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ἀλλὰ  
 τὸ μὲν πρόσθεν, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰκότως ἐν τῷ φανερῷ σαυτὸν  
 παρεῖχες, δι' ἃ τε αὐτὸς εἶπας καὶ ὅτι οὐχ ἡμᾶς σοι  
 μάλιστα ἦν θεραπευτέον. ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν  
 ἔνεκα παρηγμεν· τὸ δὲ πλῆθος ἔδει ἀνακτᾶσθαι ἐκ παντὸς  
 τρόπου, ὅπως ὅτι ἥδιστα συμπονεῖν καὶ συγκινδυνεύειν  
 ἡμῖν ἐθέλοιεν. νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ οὐ τούτους τρόπον μόνον ἔχεις,  
 ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλους ἀνακτᾶσθαι δύνασαι οὓς καιρὸς εἴη,  
 ἥδη καὶ οἰκίας σε τυχεῖν ἄξιον· ἢ τί ἀπολαύσεις ἂν τῆς  
 ἀρχῆς, εἰ μόνος ἄμοιρος εἴης ἐστίας, οὐ οὔτε ὀσιώτερον  
 χωρίον ἐν ἀνθρώποις οὔτε ἥδιον οὔτε οἰκειότερόν ἐστιν  
 οὐδέν; ἔπειτα δ', ἔφη, οὐκ ἂν οἶε καὶ ἡμᾶς αἰσχύνεσθαι,  
 εἰ σὲ μὲν ὀρώμεν ἔξω καρτεροῦντα, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐν οἰκίαις  
 εἴημεν καὶ σοῦ δοκοίημεν πλεονεκτεῖν; ἐπεὶ δὲ Χρυσάντας  
 ταῦτα ἔλεξε, συνηγόρεον αὐτῷ κατὰ ταῦτα πολλοί. ἐκ  
 τούτου δὴ εἰσέρχεται εἰς τὰ βασίλεια, καὶ τὰ ἐκ Σάρδεων  
 χρήματα ἐνταῦθ' οἱ ἄγοντες ἀπέδωκαν. ἐπεὶ δ' εἰσῆλθεν ὁ  
 Κῦρος, πρῶτον μὲν Ἑστία ἔθυσεν, ἔπειτα Διὶ βασιλεῖ καὶ

Χρυσάντας δ' ἀνέστη ὁ Πέρσης καὶ ἔλεξεν |thus Ἀλλὰ  
 τὸ μὲν πρόσθεν, ὦ Κῦρε, |like; ἐν τῷ φανερῷ |yourself  
 |fairly  
 |furnish , δι' αὖ τε αὐτὸς εἶπας καὶ ὅτι οὐχ ἡμᾶς σοι  
 μάλιστα ἦν |help, serve . ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν  
 ἔνεκα παρήμεν· τὸ δὲ |numerical |su- |regain, revive; |κ παντὸς  
 |periority |win over  
 |turn; manner, |ς ὅτι ἥδιστα συμπονεῖν καὶ συγκινδυνεύειν  
 |kind, fashion  
 ἡμῖν ἐθέλοιεν. νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ οὐ τούτους τρόπον μόνον ἔχεις,  
 ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλους |regain, revive; δύνασαι οὓς καιρὸς εἴη,  
 |win over  
 ἥδη καὶ |building, εἰ τυχεῖν |worthy ἢ τί |have use, have ἂν τῆς  
 |house |a benefit  
 ἀρχῆς, εἰ μόνος |bereft, εἵης |hearth , οὐ οὔτε |pious, divinely  
 |exempt |sanctioned  
 |area; down'wards, ὥποις οὔτε |sweet οὔτε |household, fa- |στιν  
 |miliar, proper  
 οὐδέν; ἔπειτα δ', ἔφη, οὐκ ἂν οἶει καὶ ἡμᾶς |spoil, disgrace ,  
 εἰ σὲ μὲν ὀρώμεν ἕξω |be patient , αὐτοὶ δ' ἐν |building,  
 |house  
 εἶημεν καὶ σοῦ δοκοίημεν |be greedy, take |ἐπεὶ δὲ Χρυσάντας  
 |advantage  
 ταῦτα ἔλεξε, |support αὐτῷ κατὰ ταῦτὰ πολλοί. ἐκ  
 τούτου δὴ εἰσέρχεται εἰς τὰ βασίλεια, καὶ τὰ ἐκ Σάρδεων  
 |possession, |there, here· ἄγοντες |repay . ἐπεὶ δ' εἰσῆλθεν ὁ  
 |money,  
 |business  
 Κύρος, πρῶτον μὲν |hearth |rush; sacrifice . αὐτὸς δὲ βασιλεῖ καὶ

stood up and spoke as follows:

"Formerly, Cyrus, it was natural and right that you should appear in public, for the reasons you have given us yourself, and also because we were not the folk you had to pay your court to. We did not need inviting: we were with you for our own sakes. It was necessary to win over the masses by every means, if they were to share our toils and our dangers willingly. But now you have won them, and not them alone; you have it in your power to gain others, and the moment has come when you ought to have a house to yourself. What would your empire profit you if you alone were left without hearth or home? Man has nothing more sacred than his home, nothing sweeter, nothing more truly his. And do you not think," he added, "that we ourselves would be ashamed if we saw you bearing the hardships of the camp while we sat at home by our own firesides? Should we not feel we had done you wrong, and taken advantage of you?"

When Chrysantas had spoken thus, many others followed him, and all to the same effect. And so it came about that Cyrus entered the palace, and those in charge brought the treasures from Sardis thither, and handed them over. And Cyrus when he entered sacrificed to Hestia, the goddess of the Hearth, and to Zeus the Lord, and

*vocabulary***ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**διοικέω** manage, keep house**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe  
~hegemony**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch**κοίτη** rest, resting place, sleepiness**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider**λουτρόν** bathing water**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**οὐδαμοῦ** nowhere**παιδικός** childlike; a darling

~pediatrician

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πλουτίζω** enrich**ποτός** potable**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**σκοπέω** behold, consider**στέρομαι** lack, lose**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay  
~ballistic**ὕπνος** a sleep**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**φανερόω** demonstrate ~photon**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch

~phylactery

**φύσις** -εως (f) nature (of a thing)

~physics

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

εἴ τιτι ἄλλω θεῷ οἱ μάγοι ἐξηγοῦντο.

Ποίησας δὲ ταῦτα τὰ ἄλλα ἤδη ἤρχετο διοικεῖν. ἐννοῶν δὲ τὸ αὐτοῦ πρᾶγμα ὅτι ἐπιχειροῖ μὲν ἄρχειν πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων, παρασκευάζεται δὲ οἰκεῖν ἐν πόλει τῇ μεγίστῃ τῶν φανερῶν, αὕτη δ' οὕτως ἔχει αὐτῷ ὡς πολεμιοτάτῃ ἂν γένοιτο ἀνδρὶ πόλις, ταῦτα δὲ λογιζόμενος φυλακῆς περὶ τὸ σῶμα ἡγήσατο δεῖσθαι. γνοὺς δ' ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ ἄνθρωποι εὐχειρωτότεροί εἰσιν ἢ ἐν σίτοις καὶ ποτοῖς καὶ λουτροῖς καὶ κοίτῃ καὶ ὕπνῳ, ἐσκόπει τίνας ἂν ἐν τούτοις περὶ αὐτὸν πιστοτάτους ἔχει. ἐνόμισε δὲ μὴ ἂν γενέσθαι ποτὲ πιστὸν ἄνθρωπον ὅστις ἄλλον μᾶλλον φιλήσοι τοῦ τῆς φυλακῆς δεομένου. τοὺς μὲν οὖν ἔχοντας παῖδας ἢ γυναῖκας συναρμοστούσας ἢ παιδικὰ ἔγνω φύσει ἠναγκάσθαι ταῦτα μάλιστα φιλεῖν· τοὺς δ' εὐνούχους ὁρῶν πάντων τούτων στερομένους ἡγήσατο τούτους ἂν περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι οἵτινες δύναιτο πλουτίζειν μάλιστα αὐτοὺς καὶ βοηθεῖν, εἴ τι ἀδικοῖντο, καὶ τιμὰς περιάπτειν αὐτοῖς· τούτοις δ' εὐεργετοῦντα ὑπερβάλλειν



εἴ τινι ἄλλῳ θεῶ οἱ μάγοι |lead forth; set  
|out, describe

Ποιήσας δὲ ταῦτα τὰ ἄλλα ἤδη ἤρχετο |manage, |consider  
|keep house

δὲ τὸ αὐτοῦ πρᾶγμα ὅτι |do, try, attack... ἐν ἄρχειν πολλῶν

ἀνθρώπων, |prepare, render δὲ |inhabit ἐν πόλει τῇ μεγίστῃ

τῶν φανερῶν, αὕτη δ' οὕτως ἔχοι αὐτῷ ὡς πολεμιωτάτῃ

ἂν γένοιτο ἀνδρὶ πόλις, ταῦτα δὲ |reckon, |guard,  
|consider |prison,

περὶ τὸ |body, |ἡγήσατο δεῖσθαι. γνούς δ' ὅτι |watch  
|person, |nowhere  
|thing

ἀνθρωποὶ ἐσχειρωτότεροί εἰσιν ἢ ἐν |grain, καὶ |potable  
|bread,  
|food

καὶ |bathing καὶ |rest, resting|sleep, |behold, τίνας ἂν ἐν  
|water |place, sleepi- |consider  
|ness

τούτοις περὶ αὐτὸν |faithful; trust- ἔχοι. |consider ὅς-  
|worthy |tomary; believe

ἂν γενέσθαι ποτὲ |faithful; ὁ ἄνθρωπον ὅστις ἄλλον μᾶλλον  
|trustworthy

φιλήσοι τοῦ τῆς |guard, δεομένου. τοὺς μὲν οὖν ἔχοντας  
|prison,  
|watch

παῖδας ἢ γυναῖκας συναρμοττούσας ἢ παιδικὰ ἔγνω φύσει

|force, compel ταῦτα μάλιστα φιλεῖν· τοὺς δ' |eunuch

ὁρῶν πάντων τούτων |lack, lose ἡγήσατο τούτους

ἂν περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι οἵτινες δύναιτο |enrich

μάλιστα αὐτοὺς καὶ |rescue, εἴ τι |be, do wrong; |honor,  
|wrong someone |value

περιάπτειν αὐτοῖς· τούτοις δ' |be a benefactor |cause to go be-  
|yond; delay

to any other gods named by the Persian priests.

This done, he set himself to regulate the matters that remained. Thinking over his position, and the attempt he was making to govern an enormous multitude, preparing at the same time to take up his abode in the greatest of all famous cities, but yet a city that was as hostile to him as a city could be, pondering all this, he concluded that he could not dispense with a bodyguard for himself. He knew well enough that a man can most easily be assassinated at his meals, or in his bath, or in bed, or when he is asleep, and he asked himself who were most to be trusted of those he had about him. A man, he believed, can never be loyal or trustworthy who is likely to love another more than the one who requires his guardianship. He knew that men with children, or wives, or favourites in whom they delight, must needs love them most: while eunuchs, who are deprived of all such dear ones, would surely make most account of him who could enrich them, or help them if they were injured, or crown them with honour. And in the conferring of such

*vocabulary*

**ἄδοξος** of bad fame; unexpected  
**ἀμελής** careless  
**ἄναλκισ** not warlike ~Alexander  
**ἀπειθέω** disobey  
**ἀπείργω** exclude; divide; confine  
 ~ergonomics  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀποπαύω** stop ~pause  
**δάκνω** bite  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**ἐκτέμνω** cut out, fell ~tonsure  
**ἐπιθυμία** (ῥ) desire, thing desired  
**ἐπίκουρος** ally ~cereal  
**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch  
**ζῶον** being, animal; picture  
**θήρα** hunt ~fierce

**ἰσχύω** be strong; win  
**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**κωλύω** (ῥ) hinder, prevent  
**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy  
**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic  
**προσδέω** bind also; need also  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command  
**πρωτεύω** be first or foremost  
**στερέω** steal, take  
**ταῦρος** bull ~steer  
**τεκμαίρομαι** conclude, declare from evidence  
**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously  
**ὕβριστής** -οῦ (m, 1) wanton, savage  
**ὕφημι** lower; admit; slack off ~jet  
**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

αὐτὸν οὐδέν' ἂν ἡγείτο δύνασθαι. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἄδοξοι ὄντες οἱ εὐνούχοι παρὰ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις καὶ διὰ τοῦτο δεσπότου ἐπικούρου προσδέονται· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἀνὴρ ὅστις οὐκ ἂν ἀξιώσκειν εὐνούχου πλέον ἔχειν ἐν παντί, εἰ μὴ τι ἄλλο κρεῖττον ἀπείργοι· δεσπότη δὲ πιστὸν ὄντα οὐδὲν κωλύει πρωτεύειν καὶ τὸν εὐνούχον. ὁ δ' ἂν μάλιστά τις οἰηθείη, ἀνάλκιδας τοὺς εὐνούχους γίγνεσθαι, οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἐφαίνετο αὐτῷ. ἐτεκμαίρετο δὲ καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων ζώων ὅτι οἱ τε ὑβρίζουσι ἵπποι ἐκτεμνόμενοι τοῦ μὲν δάκνειν καὶ ὑβρίζειν ἀποπαύονται, πολεμικοὶ δὲ οὐδὲν ἥττον γίνονται, οἳ τε ταῦροι ἐκτεμνόμενοι τοῦ μὲν μέγα φρονεῖν καὶ ἀπειθεῖν ὑφίενται, τοῦ δ' ἰσχύειν καὶ ἐργάζεσθαι οὐ στερίσκονται, καὶ οἱ κύνες δὲ ὡσαύτως τοῦ μὲν ἀπολείπειν τοὺς δεσπότης ἀποπαύονται ἐκτεμνόμενοι, φυλάττειν δὲ καὶ εἰς θήραν οὐδὲν κακίους γίνονται. καὶ οἳ γε ἄνθρωποι ὡσαύτως ἡρεμέστεροι γίνονται στερισκόμενοι ταύτης τῆς ἐπιθυμίας, οὐ μέντοι ἀμελέστεροί γε τῶν προσταττομένων, οὐδ' ἥττόν τι

αὐτὸν οὐδέν' ἂν ἡγείτο δύνασθαι. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις

|of bad fame; |is οἱ |eunuch παρὰ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις  
|unexpected

καὶ διὰ τοῦτο |master, |ally προσδέονται· οὐδεὶς  
|despot

γὰρ ἀνὴρ ὅστις οὐκ ἂν ἀξιώσειεν |eunuch πλέον ἔχειν

ἐν παντί, εἰ μή τι ἄλλο κρείττον |exclude; di- |master, δὲ  
|vide; confine |despot

πιστὸν ὄντα οὐδέν κωλύει |be first or foremost |eunuch

ὁ δ' ἂν μάλιστά τις οἰηθείη, |not warlike τοὺς |eunuch

γίγνεσθαι, οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἐφαίνετο αὐτῷ. |conclude, declarè |καὶ  
|from evidence

ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων ζώων ὅτι οἳ τε |wanton, ἵπποι |cut out, fell  
|savage

τοῦ μὲν |bite καὶ |insult |stop , |warlike,  
|hostile

δὲ οὐδέν ἦττον γίνονται, οἳ τε ταῦροι |cut out, fell

τοῦ μὲν μέγα φρονεῖν καὶ |disobey |lower; admit; οὐ δ'  
|slack off

|be strong; win ᾧ γάξεσθαι οὐ στερίσκονται, καὶ οἱ κύνες δὲ

|in the same way, ἐν ἀπολείπειν τοὺς |master, |stop  
|despot

|cut out, fell , φυλάττειν δὲ καὶ εἰς |hunt οὐδὲν κακίους

γίνονται. καὶ οἳ γε ἄνθρωποι |in the same way, ἑστέροι

γίνονται στερισκόμενοι ταύτης τῆς ἐπιθυμίας, οὐ μέντοι

|careless γε τῶν |post at, attach to, οὐδ' ἦττόν τι  
|command

benefits he was disposed to think he could outbid the world. Moreover the eunuch, being degraded in the eyes of other men, is driven to seek the assistance of some lord and master. Without some such protection there is not a man in the world who would not think he had the right to over-reach a eunuch: while there was every reason to suppose that the eunuch would be the most faithful of all servants. As for the customary notion that the eunuch must be weak and cowardly, Cyrus was not disposed to accept it. He studied the indications to be observed in animals: a vicious horse, if gelded, will cease to bite and be restive, but he will charge as gallantly as ever; a bull that has been cut will become less fierce and less intractable, but he will not lose his strength, he will be as good as ever for work; castration may cure a dog of deserting his master, but it will not ruin him as a watch-dog or spoil him for the chase. So, too, with men; when cut off from this passion, they become gentler, no doubt, but not less quick to obey, not less

*vocabulary***ἀσθενής** weak**αὐτουργός** self-sufficient**βάσανος** (f) trial, torture**βασίλειος** kingly**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**δορυφόρος** spear-bearing**δυσμενής** hostile, enemy**ἐπίπονος** of/with pain, toil ~osteopenia**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**θυρωρός** doorman, porter**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops**κατάδηλος** manifest, visible**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**μυρίος** (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad**οἴκοι** at home ~economics**πενία** poverty ~osteopenia**Πέρσης** Persian**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**σίδηρος** iron ~siderite**σκοπέω** behold, consider**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune**τραχύτης** -τος (ᾱ, f, 3) roughness**φθορά** ruin, rape**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch

~phylactery

**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry

~phylactery

ἵππικοί, οὐδὲ ἡττόν τι ἀκοντιστικοί, οὐδὲ ἡττον φιλότιμοι. κατὰδηλοι δ' ἐγίγνοντο καὶ ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις καὶ ἐν ταῖς θήραις ὅτι ἔσωζον τὸ φιλόνικον ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς. τοῦ δὲ πιστοὶ εἶναι ἐν τῇ φθορᾷ τῶν δεσποτῶν μάλιστα βάσανον ἐδίδοσαν· οὐδένες γὰρ πιστότερα ἔργα ἀπεδείκνυντο ἐν ταῖς δεσποτικαῖς συμφοραῖς τῶν εὐνούχων. εἰ δέ τι ἄρα τῆς τοῦ σώματος ἰσχύος μειοῦσθαι δοκοῦσιν, ὁ σίδηρος ἀνισοῖ τοὺς ἀσθενεῖς τοῖς ἰσχυροῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ. ταῦτα δὴ γιγνώσκων ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῶν θυρωρῶν πάντας τοὺς περὶ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα θεραπευτῆρας ἐποιήσατο εὐνούχους.

Ἦγησάμενος δὲ οὐχ ἱκανὴν εἶναι τὴν φυλακὴν ταύτην πρὸς τὸ πλῆθος τῶν δυσμενῶς ἐχόντων, ἐσκόπει τίνας τῶν ἄλλων ἂν πιστοτάτους περὶ τὸ βασιλείον φύλακας λάβοι. εἰδὼς οὖν Πέρσας τοὺς οἴκοι κακοβιωτάτους μὲν ὄντας διὰ πενίαν, ἐπιπονώτατα δὲ ζῶντας διὰ τὴν τῆς χώρας τραχύτητα καὶ διὰ τὸ αὐτουργοὺς εἶναι, τούτους ἐνόμισε μάλιστ' ἂν ἀγαπᾶν τὴν παρ' αὐτῷ δίαιταν. λαμβάνει οὖν τούτων μυρίους δορυφόρους, οἱ κύκλω



|of horses, οὐδὲ ἥττον τι ἀκοντιστικοί, οὐδὲ ἥττον φιλότιμοι.

|manifest, δ' ἐγίνοντο καὶ ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις καὶ ἐν ταῖς  
|visible

|hunt ὅτι ἔσωζον τὸ φιλόνικον ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς. τοῦ δὲ

|faithful; ἔν τῃ |ruin, rape ἔν |master, μάλιστα |trial,  
|trustworthy |despot |torture

ἐδίδοσαν· οὐδένες γὰρ |faithful; ἔργα ἀπεδείκνυντο ἐν  
|trustworthy

ταῖς δεσποτικάῃς συμφοραῖς τῶν |eunuch . εἰ δέ τι ἄρα

τῆς τοῦ σώματος |strength; body |θαι δοκοῦσιν, ὁ |iron  
|of troops

ἀνισοὶ τοὺς |weak τοῖς |strong, force- γὰ πολέμῳ. ταῦτα  
|ful, violent

δὴ γινώσκων ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῶν |doorman, πάντας τοὺς  
|porter

περὶ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα θεραπευτήρας ἐποιήσατο |eunuch .

Ἐγησάμενος δὲ οὐχ |sufficient; fit, ι τὴν |guard, ταύτην  
|empowered |prison,

πρὸς τὸ πλῆθος τῶν |hostile, ἐχόντων, |watch, |behold, τίνας  
|enemy |consider

τῶν ἄλλων ἂν |faithful; trust- περὶ τὸ βασίλειον |guard;  
|worthy |sentry

λάβοι. εἰδὼς οὖν Πέρσας τοὺς |at home κοβιωτάτους μὲν

ὄντας διὰ |poverty, |of/with pain, toil ὁ ζῶντας διὰ τὴν τῆς

χώρας |roughness καὶ διὰ τὸ |self-sufficient εἶναι, τούτους

ἐνόμισε μάλιστ' ἂν |welcome, be host ἀρ' αὐτῷ |way of life; home; ar-  
|bitration

λαμβάνει οὖν τούτων μυρίους |spear-brearing οἷ |circle,  
|wheel

daring as horsemen, not less skilful with the javelin, not less eager for honour. In war and in the chase they show plainly enough that the fire of ambition is still burning in their hearts. And they have stood the last test of loyalty in the downfall of their masters. No men have shown more faithfulness than eunuchs when ruin has fallen on their lords. In bodily strength, perhaps, the eunuchs seem to be lacking, but steel is a great leveller, and makes the weak man equal to the strong in war. Holding this in mind, Cyrus resolved that his personal attendants, from his doorkeepers onwards, should be eunuchs one and all.

This guard, however, he felt was hardly sufficient against the multitude of enemies, and he asked himself whom he could choose among the rest. He remembered how his Persians led the sorriest of lives at home owing to their poverty, working long and hard on the niggard soil, and he felt sure they were the men who would most value the life at his court. Accordingly he selected ten thousand lancers from

*vocabulary*

ἀμήχανος helpless, impossible  
 ~mechanism  
 ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet  
 ἀποδημέω be absent, abroad  
 ἀρετή goodness, excellence  
 ἀσκησις -εως (f) exercise, training  
 βασίλεια noblewoman  
 βασιλεις kingly  
 διαμένω continue, persevere  
 εἴτε if, whenever; either/or  
 ἐλαχύς small; comp.: less ~light  
 ἐμμένω stay put, be faithful, fixed  
 ἐνθεν thence, whence  
 ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
 ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion  
 ἐπιδημέω inhabit; visit  
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee

ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near  
 μισθός reward, wages  
 μισθοφόρος mercenary  
 ποῖ whither? how long?  
 προσγίγνομαι become ally to  
 σκοπᾶω watch, observe  
 σκοπέω behold, consider  
 σκοπός (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
 target ~telescope  
 συνάγω assemble; join in battle  
 ~demagogue  
 ταπεινός low  
 ὑπήκοον -ῶ cumin  
 ὑπήκοος heeding, subject  
 φρουρός watcher, guard  
 φυλακή guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
 φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery

μὲν νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας ἐφύλαττον περὶ τὰ βασίλεια,  
 ὁπότε ἐπὶ χώρας εἴη· ὁπότε δὲ ἐξίοι ποι, ἔνθεν καὶ  
 ἔνθεν τεταγμένοι ἐπορεύοντο. νομίσας δὲ καὶ Βαβυλῶνος  
 ὅλης φύλακας δεῖν εἶναι ἱκανούς, εἴτ' ἐπιδημῶν αὐτὸς  
 τυγχάνοι εἴτε καὶ ἀποδημῶν, κατέστησε καὶ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι  
 φρουροὺς ἱκανούς· μισθὸν δὲ καὶ τούτοις Βαβυλωνίους  
 ἔταξε παρέχειν, βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς ὡς ἀμηχανωτάτους  
 εἶναι, ὅπως ὅτι ταπεινότατοι καὶ εὐκαθεκτότατοι εἶεν.

Αὕτη μὲν δὴ ἡ περὶ αὐτόν τε φυλακὴ καὶ ἡ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι  
 τότε κατασταθεῖσα καὶ νῦν ἔτι οὕτως ἔχουσα διαμένει.  
 σκοπῶν δ' ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἡ πᾶσα ἀρχὴ κατέχοιτο καὶ ἄλλη  
 ἔτι προσγίγνοιτο, ἡγήσατο τοὺς μισθοφόρους τούτους οὐ  
 τοσοῦτον βελτίονας τῶν ὑπηκόων εἶναι ὅσον ἐλάττονας·  
 τοὺς δὲ ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας ἐγίγνωσκε συνεκτέον εἶναι, οἵπερ  
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς τὸ κρατεῖν παρέσχον, καὶ ἐπιμελητέον  
 ὅπως μὴ ἀνήσουσι τὴν τῆς ἀρετῆς ἄσκησιν. ὅπως δὲ μὴ  
 ἐπιτάττειν αὐτοῖς δοκοίη, ἀλλὰ γνόντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ταῦτα  
 ἄριστα εἶναι οὕτως ἐμμένειν τε καὶ ἐπιμελοῖντο

μὲν νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας |guard; |watch |περὶ τὰ βασίλεια,  
 |when ἐπὶ χώρας εἴη· |when δὲ ἐξίοι ποι, ἔνθεν καὶ  
 ἔνθεν |arrange ἐπορεύοντο. νομίσας δὲ καὶ Βαβυλῶνος  
 ὅλης |guard; |sentry δεῖν εἶναι |sufficient; |if, |inhabit; |αὐτὸς  
 |fit, empow- |when |visit  
 |ered |ever;  
 |if, when |be absent, abroad |στῆσε καὶ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι  
 |ever; |ei- |ther/or  
 |watcher, |sufficient; |reward, δὲ καὶ τούτοις Βαβυλωνίους  
 |guard |fit, empow- |wages  
 |ered  
 |arrange... |αρεχεῖν, βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς ὡς |helpless, impossible  
 εἶναι, ὅπως ὅτι |low καὶ εὐκαθεκτότατοι εἶεν.

Αὕτη μὲν δὴ ἡ περὶ αὐτόν τε |guard, |καὶ ἡ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι  
 |prison,  
 |watch, |τότε κατασταθείσα καὶ νῦν ἐτι οὕτως ἔχουσα |continue, |persevere  
 σκοπῶν δ' ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἡ πᾶσα ἀρχὴ |restrain; stop; |continue; keep; take  
 |possession  
 ἐτι |become ally to , ἡγήσατο τοὺς |mercenary τούτους οὐ  
 |so much βελτίονας τῶν ὑπηκόων εἶναι ὅσον |small  
 τοὺς δὲ ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας ἐγίνωσκε |join εἶναι, οἵπερ  
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς τὸ κρατεῖν παρέσχον, καὶ |take care of,  
 |oversee  
 ὅπως μὴ ἀνήσουσι τὴν τῆς |excel- |exercise, |ὅπως δὲ μὴ  
 |lence |training  
 |enjoin; place αὐτοῖς δοκοίη, ἀλλὰ γνόντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ταῦτα  
 |near  
 ἄριστα εἶναι οὕτως |stay put, be faithful, |take care of,  
 |fixed |oversee

among them, to keep guard round the palace, night and day, whenever he was at home, and to march beside him whenever he went abroad. Moreover, he felt that Babylon must always have an adequate garrison, whether he was in the country or not, and therefore he stationed a considerable body of troops in the city; and he bade the Babylonians provide their pay, his object being to make the citizens helpless, and therefore humble and submissive. This royal guard that he established there, and the city guard for Babylon, survive to this day unaltered.

Lastly, as he pondered how the whole empire was to be kept together, and possibly another added to it, he felt convinced that his mercenaries did not make up for the smallness of their numbers by their superiority to the subject peoples. Therefore he must keep together those brave warriors, to whom with heaven's help the victory was due, and he must take all care that they did not lose their valour, hardihood, and

*vocabulary***ἀδικία** injustice, offence**ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἄλλότριος** someone else's; alien ~alien**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἄφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**βιοτεύω** live, live on**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious;  
vital**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**κατασκευή** fixed assets; condition**κοινωνός** partner**ὀμότιμος** (ἶ) equally honored**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
great**οὔκουν** certainly not**πολεμόω** make an enemy of ~polemic**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συνέρχομαι** come together**τοιόσδε** such**φιλανθρωπία** benevolence

τῆς ἀρετῆς, συνέλεξε τούς τε ὁμοτίμους καὶ πάντας  
ὁπόσοι ἐπικαίριοι ἦσαν καὶ ἀξιοχρεώτατοι ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ  
κοινωνοὶ εἶναι καὶ πόνων καὶ ἀγαθῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον,  
ἔλεξε τοιαῦδε.

Ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι, τοῖς μὲν θεοῖς μεγίστη χάρις  
ὅτι ἔδοσαν ἡμῖν τυχεῖν ὧν ἐνομίζομεν ἄξιοι εἶναι. νῦν γὰρ  
δὴ ἔχομεν καὶ γῆν πολλὴν καὶ ἀγαθὴν καὶ οἷτινες ταύτην  
ἐργαζόμενοι θρέψουσιν ἡμᾶς· ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ οἰκίας καὶ ἐν  
ταύταις κατασκευάς. καὶ μηδεὶς γε ὑμῶν ἔχων ταῦτα  
νομισάτω ἀλλότρια ἔχειν· νόμος γὰρ ἐν πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις  
αἰδιδός ἐστιν, ὅταν πολεμούντων πόλις ἀλῶ, τῶν ἐλόντων  
εἶναι καὶ τὰ σώματα τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ τὰ χρήματα.  
οὐκ οὐκ ἀδικία γε ἔξετε ὅ τι ἂν ἔχητε, ἀλλὰ φιланθρωπία  
οὐκ ἀφαιρήσεσθε, ἣν τι ἔατε ἔχειν αὐτούς. τὸ μέντοι  
ἐκ τοῦδε οὕτως ἐγὼ γινώσκω ὅτι εἰ μὲν τρεψόμεθα ἐπὶ  
ῥαδιουργίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν κακῶν ἀνθρώπων ἡδυπάθειαν,  
οἱ νομίζουσι τὸ μὲν πονεῖν ἀθλιότητα, τὸ δὲ ἀπόνως  
βιοτεύειν εὐδαιμονίαν, ταχὺ ἡμᾶς φημι ὀλίγου



τῆς |excellence |collect, τούς τε |equally καὶ πάντας  
 |assemble |honored  
 |as/how |at a fitting time; ν καὶ ἀξιοχρεώτατοι ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ  
 |many/great |serious; vital  
 |partner εἶναι καὶ |toil, suffering ἔγαθων. ἐπεὶ δὲ |come together  
 ἔλεξε |such

Ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι, τοῖς μὲν θεοῖς μεγίστη χάρις  
 ὅτι ἔδοσαν ἡμῖν τυχεῖν ὧν |consider cus- |worthy ἔναι. νῦν γὰρ  
 |tomary; be-  
 δὴ ἔχομεν καὶ γῆν πολλήν |lieve καὶ ἀγαθὴν καὶ οὔτινες ταύτην  
 |work |nurture ἡμᾶς· ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ |building, |ἐν  
 |house  
 ταύταις |fixed assets; καὶ μηδεὶς γε ὑμῶν ἔχων ταῦτα  
 |condition  
 |consider |someone ἔχειν νόμος γὰρ ἐν πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις  
 |customary; |else's; alien  
 |believe αἰδῖος ἐστίν, |whenever ἐμούντων πόλιν |be captured ἑλόντων  
 εἶναι καὶ τὰ |body, τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ τὰ |possession,  
 |person, money, busi-  
 |thing |nevolence  
 |certainly not ἵα γέγεξετε ὅ τι ἂν ἔχητε, ἀλλὰ |benevolence  
 οὐκ |take away , ἣν τι ἔατε ἔχειν αὐτούς. τὸ |however  
 ἐκ τοῦδε οὕτως ἐγὼ γινώσκω ὅτι εἰ μὲν |divert ἐπὶ  
 ῥαδιουργίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν κακῶν ἀνθρώπων ἡδυσπάθειαν,  
 οἷ |consider cus- μὲν |work ἀθλιότητα, τὸ δὲ ἀπόνως  
 |tomary; believe  
 |live, live on |prosperity , ταχὺ ἡμᾶς φημι ὀλέγου

skill. To avoid the appearance of dictating to them and to bring it about that they should see for themselves it was best to stay with him and remember their valour and their training, he called a council of the Peers and of the leading men who seemed to him most worthy of sharing their dangers and their rewards. And when they were met he began:

"Gentlemen, my friends and allies, we owe the utmost thanks to the gods because they have given us what we believed that we deserved. We are masters to-day of a great country and a good; and those who till it will support us; we have houses of our own, and all the furniture that is in them is ours. For you need not think that what you hold belongs to others. It is an eternal law the wide world over, that when a city is taken in war, the citizens, their persons, and all their property fall into the hands of the conquerors. It is not by injustice, therefore, that you hold what you have taken, rather it is through your own human kindness that the citizens are allowed to keep whatever they do retain.

"Yet I foresee that if we betake ourselves to the life of indolence and luxury, the life of the degenerate who think that labour is the worst of evils and freedom from toil the height of happiness, the day will come, and speedily, when we shall be

*vocabulary***ἀλκή** prowess, defense, victory

~Alexander

**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not

needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**ἀσκέω** work on**ἄσκησις** -εως (f) exercise, training**διασώζω** preserve through**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**καταπράσσω** accomplish, build

~practice

**καταχεύω** pour onto**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μείων** less, smaller**οὔκουν** certainly not**προῖημι** send forth, abandon**στερέω** steal, take**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance

~technology

ἀξίους ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ἔσεσθαι καὶ ταχὺ πάντων τῶν ἀγαθῶν  
 στερῆσεσθαι. οὐ γάρ τοι τὸ ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας γενέσθαι  
 τοῦτο ἀρκεῖ ὥστε καὶ διατελεῖν ὄντας ἀγαθοὺς, ἣν μή  
 τις αὐτοῦ διὰ τέλους ἐπιμελῆται· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ καὶ αἱ  
 ἄλλαι τέχναι ἀμεληθεῖσαι μείονος ἄξiai γίνονται καὶ  
 τὰ σώματά γε τὰ εὖ ἔχοντα, ὁπόταν τις αὐτὰ ἀνῆ ἐπὶ  
 ῥαδιουργίαν, πονήρως πάλιν ἔχει, οὕτω καὶ ἡ σωφροσύνη  
 καὶ ἡ ἐγκράτεια καὶ ἡ ἀλκή, ὁπόταν τις αὐτῶν ἀνῆ τὴν  
 ἀσκησιν, ἐκ τούτου εἰς τὴν πονηρίαν πάλιν τρέπεται.  
 οὐκ οὐκ δεῖ ἀμελεῖν οὐδ' ἐπὶ τὸ αὐτίκα ἡδὺ προιέναι αὐτοῦς.  
 μέγα μὲν γὰρ οἶμαι ἔργον καὶ τὸ ἀρχὴν καταπραῖσαι, πολὺν  
 δ' ἔτι μείζον τὸ λαβόντα διασώσασθαι. τὸ μὲν γὰρ λαβεῖν  
 πολλάκις τῷ τόλμαν μόνον παρασχομένῳ ἐγένετο, τὸ  
 δὲ λαβόντα κατέχειν οὐκέτι τοῦτο ἄνευ σωφροσύνης οὐδ'  
 ἄνευ ἐγκρατείας οὐδ' ἄνευ πολλῆς ἐπιμελείας γίνεσθαι. ἂ  
 χρὴ γινώσκοντας νῦν πολὺ μᾶλλον ἀσκεῖν τὴν ἀρετὴν ἢ  
 πρὶν τὰδε τὰγαθὰ κτήσασθαι, εὖ εἰδότας ὅτι ὅταν πλείστα  
 τις ἔχῃ, τότε πλείστοι

|worthy ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ἔσθαι καὶ ταχὺ πάντων τῶν ἀγαθῶν

|steal, take οὐ γάρ τοι τὸ ἀγαθὸς ἄνδρας γενέσθαι

τοῦτο |satisfy; ward off, de-|accomplish; ὥντας ἀγαθούς, ἣν μὴ  
|fend; suffice |keep doing

τις αὐτοῦ διὰ τέλους |take care of, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ καὶ αἱ  
|oversee

ἄλλαι |craft |disregard |less, |worthy ἴγνουνται καὶ  
|smaller

τὰ σώματά γε τὰ εὖ ἔχοντα, ὅποτε τις αὐτὰ ἀνῆ ἐπὶ

ῥαδιουργίαν, |oppressed; knāv- ' ἔχει, οὕτω καὶ ἡ |discretion,  
|ish; useless |moderation

καὶ ἡ ἐγκράτεια καὶ ἡ |strength ὅποτε τις αὐτῶν ἀνῆ τὴν

|exercise, , ἐκ τούτου εἰς τὴν πονηρίαν πάλιν |divert  
|training

|certainly ἵνα |disregard οὐδ' ἐπὶ τὸ |at once |sweet send forth, abandon

μέγα μὲν γὰρ οἶμαι ἔργον καὶ τὸ ἀρχὴν |accomplish, , πολὺ  
|build

δ' ἔτι μείζον τὸ λαβόντα |preserve τὸ μὲν γὰρ λαβεῖν  
|through

|often τῷ τόλμαν μόνον παρασχομένῳ ἐγένετο, τὸ

δὲ λαβόντα κατέχειν |no more οὗτο |away |discretion, οὐδ'  
|from; |moderation

|away from; not having; |away from; ἵνα |not  
|not needing |having; not |attention; as- ἴγνεται. ἃ  
|needing |need- ing, |signed task

χρὴ γιγνώσκοντας νῦν πολλοὺς μᾶλλον |work on ἣν |excellence,  
|need- ing

πρὶν τάδε ἀγαθὰ κτήσασθαι, εὖ εἰδότες ὅτι ὅταν πλείστα

τις ἔχῃ, τότε πλείστοι

unworthy of ourselves, and with the loss of honour will come the loss of wealth. Once to have been valiant is not enough; no man can keep his valour unless he watch over it to the end. As the arts decay through neglect, as the body, once healthy and alert, will grow weak through sloth and indolence, even so the powers of the spirit, temperance, self-control, and courage, if we grow slack in training, fall back once more to rottenness and death. We must watch ourselves; we must not surrender to the sweetness of the day. It is a great work, methinks, to found an empire, but a far greater to keep it safe. To seize it may be the fruit of daring and daring only, but to hold it is impossible without self-restraint and self-command and endless care. We must not forget this; we must train ourselves in virtue from now henceforward with even greater diligence than before we won this glory, remembering that the more a man possesses, the more there

*vocabulary***ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**ἄέκων** unwilling**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**δασμοφόρος** tributary**ἐλευθερία** freedom**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
~volunteer**ἐπιστήμη** skill, knowledge**ἐργάτης** -ου (ἄ, m, 1) worker**ἐρῆμος** empty**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**θεραπείη** -ας service, tending**κράτιστος** best**κτῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possession**μελέτη** care; practice**μεταδίδωμι** give part of ~donate**μήποτε** absolutely never**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**ὄργανον** tool; body organ**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**ποτή** flight? ~petal**ποτός** potable**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

**ὕπνον** a sleep**ὕπνος** a sleep**φθονέω** envy**ψῦχος** -εος (n, 3) coolness

~psychology

καὶ φθονοῦσι καὶ ἐπιβουλεύουσι καὶ πολέμιοι γίνονται,  
 ἄλλως τε καὶ παρ' ἀκόντων τά τε κτήματα καὶ τὴν  
 θεραπείαν ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς ἔχῃ. τοὺς μὲν οὖν θεοὺς οἶεσθαι  
 χρή σὺν ἡμῖν ἔσεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἐπιβουλεύσαντες ἀδίκως  
 ἔχομεν, ἀλλ' ἐπιβουλευθέντες ἐτιμωρησάμεθα. τὸ μέντοι  
 μετὰ τοῦτο κράτιστον ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς παρασκευαστέον·  
 τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶ τὸ βελτίονας ὄντας τῶν ἀρχομένων ἄρχειν  
 ἀξιούν. θάλπους μὲν οὖν καὶ ψύχους καὶ σίτων καὶ  
 ποτῶν καὶ πόνων καὶ ὕπνου ἀνάγκη καὶ τοῖς δούλοις  
 μεταδιδόναι· μεταδιδόντας γε μέντοι πειραῖσθαι δεῖ ἐν  
 τούτοις πρῶτον βελτίονας αὐτῶν φαίνεσθαι. πολεμικῆς  
 δ' ἐπιστήμης καὶ μελέτης παντάπασιν οὐ μεταδοτέον  
 τούτοις, οὐστinas ἐργάτας ἡμετέρους καὶ δασμοφόρους  
 βουλόμεθα καταστήσασθαι, ἀλλ' αὐτοὺς δεῖ τούτοις  
 τοῖς ἀσκήμασι πλεονεκτεῖν, γινώσκοντας ὅτι ἐλευθερίας  
 ταῦτα ὄργανα καὶ εὐδαιμονίας οἱ θεοὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις  
 ἀπέδειξαν· καὶ ὥσπερ γε ἐκείνους τὰ ὅπλα ἀφηγήμεθα,  
 οὕτως ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς δεῖ μήποτ' ἐρήμους ὅπλων γίγνεσθαι,



καὶ |envy καὶ |plot, plan, harm καὶ πολέμοι γίνονται,  
 ἄλλως τε καὶ παρ' ἀκόντων τά τε |possession καὶ τὴν  
 |service, ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς ἔχῃ. τοὺς μὲν οὖν θεοὺς οἶεσθαι  
 |tending  
 χρὴ σὺν ἡμῖν ἔσεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ |plot, plan, harm |unfair; ob-  
 |punish, aid stinate, bad  
 ἔχομεν, ἀλλ' |plot, plan, harm |take vengeance, τὸ μέντοι  
 |punish, aid  
 μετὰ τοῦτο |best ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς παρασκευαστέον·  
 τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶ τὸ βελτίονας ὄντας τῶν ἀρχομένων ἄρχειν  
 |consider wor- |λπους μὲν οὖν καὶ |coolness καὶ |grain, καὶ  
 |thy, fitting |bread,  
 ποτῶν καὶ |toil, suffering ὕπνου ἀνάγκη καὶ τοῖς |food  
 |born enslaved, |servile  
 |give part of |give part of γε μέντοι πειρᾶσθαι δεῖ ἐν  
 τούτοις πρῶτον βελτίονας αὐτῶν φαίνεσθαι. |warlike,  
 |hostile  
 δ' |skill, καὶ |care; |altogether; yes, cer- |give part of  
 |knowledge |practice |tainly  
 τούτοις, οὐστinas |worker ἡμετέρους καὶ |tributary  
 βουλόμεθα καταστήσασθαι, ἀλλ' αὐτοὺς δεῖ τούτοις  
 τοῖς ἀσκήμασι |be greedy, take |γινώσκοντας ὅτι ἐλευθερίας  
 |advantage  
 ταῦτα |tool; body organ ἰαμονίας οἱ θεοὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις  
 |show, point out; ἀ- |περ γε ἐκείνους τὰ |tool |take away  
 |point; (mid) declare  
 οὕτως ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς δεῖ |absolutely, ἡμους |tool γίνεσθαι,  
 |never

are to envy him, to plot against him, and be his enemies, above all when the wealth he wins and the services he receives are yielded by reluctant hands. But the gods, we need not doubt, will be upon our side; we have not triumphed through injustice; we were not the aggressors, it was we who were attacked and we avenged ourselves. The gods are with us, I say; but next to that supreme support there is a defence we must provide out of our own powers alone; and that is the righteous claim to rule our subjects because we are better men than they. Needs must that we share with our slaves in heat and cold and food and drink and toil and slumber, and we must strive to prove our superiority even in such things as these, and first in these. But in the science of war and the art of it we can admit no share; those whom we mean to make our labourers and our tributaries can have no part in that; we will set ourselves to defraud them there; we know that such exercises are the very tools of freedom and happiness, given by the gods to mortal men. We have taken their arms away from our slaves, and we must never lay our own aside, knowing well

*vocabulary*

**ἀνάπαυσις** -τος (f) rest  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἀνδραγαθία** bravery  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἀπολαύω** have use, have a benefit  
**βίος** life ~biology  
**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology  
**δαίμων** -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom  
 ~demon  
**δήτα** emphatic δή  
**διψάω** be thirsty ~dipsomaniac  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐνδεής** inadequate  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπιτείνω** intensify  
**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly ~hedonism

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**καρτερέω** be patient  
**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe  
**καταπράσσω** accomplish, build  
 ~practice  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὄφελος** -εος (n, 3) a use, a help  
**πεινάω** be hungry  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**πολυτελής** very expensive; (person)  
 extravagant  
**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**ποτή** flight? ~petal  
**ποτός** potable  
**προπονέω** prepare; suffer before  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**συμπαρασχευάζω** help prepare

εὖ εἰδότας ὅτι τοῖς ἀεὶ ἐγγυτάτῳ τῶν ὅπλων οὖσι  
 τούτοις καὶ οἰκειότατά ἐστιν ἂν βούλωνται. εἰ δέ τις  
 τοιαῦτα ἐννοεῖται, τί δῆτα ἡμῖν ὄφελος καταπραῖσαι ἂν  
 ἐπεθυμοῦμεν, εἰ ἔτι δεήσει καρτερεῖν καὶ πεινῶντας καὶ  
 διψῶντας καὶ πονοῦντας καὶ ἐπιμελουμένους, ἐκείνο δεῖ  
 καταμαθεῖν ὅτι τοσούτῳ τάγαθὰ μᾶλλον εὐφραίνει ὅσῳ  
 ἂν μᾶλλον προπονήσας τις ἐπ' αὐτὰ ἔη· οἱ γὰρ πόνοι ὄψον  
 τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς· ἄνευ δὲ τοῦ δεόμενον τυγχάνειν τινὸς οὐδὲν  
 οὕτω πολυτελῶς παρασκευασθείη ἂν ὥσθ' ἡδὺν εἶναι. εἰ  
 δὲ ὧν μὲν μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι ἐπιθυμοῦσιν ὁ δαίμων ἡμῖν  
 ταῦτα συμπαρασκευάκεν, ὥς δ' ἂν ἡδίστα ταῦτα φαίνοιτο  
 αὐτός τις αὐτῷ ταῦτα παρασκευάσει, ὁ τοιοῦτος ἀνὴρ  
 τοσούτῳ πλεονεκτήσει τῶν ἐνδεεστέρων βίου ὥς πεινήσας  
 τῶν ἡδίστων σίτων τεύξεται καὶ διψήσας τῶν ἡδίστων  
 ποτῶν ἀπολαύσεται καὶ δεηθεὶς ἀναπαύσεως ἢ ἡδιστον  
 ἀναπαύσεται. ὧν ἕνεκά φημι χρῆναι νῦν ἐπιταθῆναι ἡμᾶς  
 εἰς ἀνδραγαθίαν, ὅπως τῶν τε ἀγαθῶν ἢ ἄριστον καὶ  
 ἡδιστον ἀπολαύσωμεν καὶ ὅπως τοῦ πάντων

εὖ εἰδότας ὅτι τοῖς ἀεὶ ἐγγυτάτω τῶν ὅπλων οὖσι  
 τούτοις καὶ οἰκειότατά ἐστιν ἂν βούλωνται. εἰ δέ τις  
 τοιαῦτα |consider , τί |emphatic δὴ |a use, |accomplish, ἂ  
 |help |build  
 ἐπεθυμοῦμεν, εἰ ἔτι δεήσει |be patient καὶ |be hungry καὶ  
 |be thirsty καὶ |work καὶ |take care of, over-, ἐκεῖνο δεῖ  
 |see  
 |examine, ὅτι τοσούτῳ τὰγαθὰ μᾶλλον |gladden ὅσῳ  
 |observe  
 ἂν μᾶλλον |prepare; suffer τις ἐπ' αὐτὰ ἔη· οἱ γὰρ πόνοι ὄψον  
 |before  
 τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς· |away from; not hav- 'ον τυγχάνειν τινὸς οὐδὲν  
 |ing; not needing  
 οὕτῳ |expensive; παρασκευασθείη ἂν ὥσθ' ἡδὺν εἶναι. εἰ  
 |extravagant  
 δὲ ὦν μὲν μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι ἐπιθυμοῦσιν ὁ |a god, fate,, doom  
 ταῦτα συμπαρεσκεύακεν, ὡς δ' ἂν ἥδιστα ταῦτα φαίνοιτο  
 αὐτός τις αὐτῷ ταῦτα παρασκευάσει, ὁ τοιοῦτος ἀνὴρ  
 τοσούτῳ |be greedy, take τῶν |inadequate βίου ὡς πεινήσας  
 |advantage  
 τῶν ἡδίστων σίτων τεύξεται καὶ |be thirsty τῶν ἡδίστων  
 ποτῶν |have use, have καὶ δεηθεῖς |rest ἥ ἡδιστον  
 |a benefit  
 |cause to cease ὦν ἔνεκά φημι χρῆναι νῦν |intensify ἡμᾶς  
 εἰς |bravery , ὅπως τῶν τε ἀγαθῶν ἢ ἄριστον καὶ  
 ἡδιστον |have use, have a καὶ ὅπως τοῦ πάντων  
 |benefit

that the nearer the sword-hilt the closer the heart's desire. So. Does any man ask himself what profit he has gained from the fulfilment of his dreams, if he must still endure, still undergo hunger and thirst and toil and trouble and care? Let him learn the lesson that a man's enjoyment of all good things is in exact proportion to the pains he has undergone to gain them. Toil is the seasoning of delight; without desire and longing, no dish, however costly, could be sweet. Yes, if some spirit were to set before us what men desire most, and we were left to add for ourselves that final touch of sweetness, I say that we could only gain above the poorest of the poor in so far as we could bring hunger for the most delicious foods, and thirst for the richest wines, and weariness to make us woo the deepest slumber. Therefore, we must strain every nerve to win and to keep manhood and nobleness; so that we may gain that satisfaction which is the sweetest and the best, and be saved from the bitterest

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**ἄπειρος** untested; infinite  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?  
**δορυφορέω** be bodyguard  
**δορυφόρος** spear-bearing  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐπιπρέπω** have a specified appearance  
 ~refurbish  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**κολάζω** punish  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess

**λυπηρός** (ὁ) painful, causing pain, sad  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**προσέχω** belong to, it seems  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;  
 prediction ~fame  
**στερέω** steal, take  
**σωτηρία** saving, preservation  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery

χαλεπωτάτου ἄπειροι γενώμεθα. οὐ γὰρ τὸ μὴ λαβεῖν  
τὰγαθὰ οὕτω χαλεπὸν ὥσπερ τὸ λαβόντα στερηθῆναι  
λυπηρόν. ἐννοήσατε δὲ καὶ ἐκεῖνο τίνα πρόφασιν ἔχοντες  
ἂν προσιοίμεθα κακίονες ἢ πρόσθεν γενέσθαι. πότερον  
ὅτι ἄρχομεν; ἀλλ' οὐ δήπου τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν ἀρχομένων  
πονηρότερον προσήκει εἶναι. ἀλλ' ὅτι εὐδαιμονέστεροι  
δοκοῦμεν νῦν ἢ πρότερον εἶναι; ἔπειτα τῇ εὐδαιμονίᾳ  
φήσει τις τὴν κακίαν ἐπιπρέπειν; ἀλλ' ὅτι ἐπεὶ κεκτήμεθα  
δούλους, τούτους κολάσομεν, ἦν πονηροὶ ὦσι; καὶ τί  
προσήκει αὐτὸν ὄντα πονηρὸν πονηρίας ἔνεκα ἢ βλακείας  
ἄλλους κολάζειν; ἐννοεῖτε δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι τρέφειν  
μὲν παρεσκευάσμεθα πολλοὺς καὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων οἴκων  
φύλακας καὶ τῶν σωμάτων· αἰσχυρὸν δὲ πῶς οὐκ ἂν εἴη,  
εἰ δι' ἄλλους μὲν δορυφόρους τῆς σωτηρίας οἰησόμεθα  
χρῆναι τυγχάνειν, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς οὐ δορυφορήσομεν;  
καὶ μὴν εὖ γε δεῖ εἰδέναι ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλη φυλακὴ  
τοιαύτη οἷα αὐτόν τινα καλὸν καὶ ἀγαθὸν ὑπάρχειν· τοῦτο  
γὰρ δεῖ συμπαρομαρτεῖν· τῷ δ' ἀρετῆς ἐρήμῳ οὐδὲ ἄλλο



|hard to bear      |untested; *γενώμεθα*. οὐ γὰρ τὸ μὴ λαβεῖν  
|infinite

*τάγαθὰ οὕτω* |hard to bear" *ὑπερ τὸ λαβόντα* |steal, take

|painful,      |consider      *δὲ κακέينو τίνα* |pretext; motive; *ντες*  
|causing pain,      |prediction

*ἀν* |be allowed near *ακίονες ἢ πρόσθεν γενέσθαι*. |which,  
|whichever

*ὅτι ἄρχομεν; ἀλλ' οὐ* |perhaps; is *ἄρχοντα τῶν ἀρχομένων*  
|it not so?

|oppressed;      |belong to, *εἶναι*. *ἀλλ' ὅτι* |blessed with a good  
|knaveish; useless |it beseems      |genius

*δοκοῦμεν νῦν ἢ πρότερον εἶναι; ἔπειτα τῇ εὐδαιμονίᾳ*

*φήσει τις τὴν κακίαν* |have a specified *ἄλ' ὅτι ἐπεὶ* |acquire  
|appearance

|born enslaved, *ίτους* |punish      , *ἦν* |oppressed; knav- *καὶ τί*  
|servile      |ish; useless

|belong to, *αὐτὸν ὄντα* |oppressed; knav- *ίας ἔνεκα ἢ βλακειάς*  
|it beseems      |ish; useless

*ἄλλους* |punish      , |consider *δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι* |nurture

*μὲν* |prepare, render      *πολλοὺς καὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων οἴκων*

|guard;      *καὶ τῶν σωμάτων* |shameful *δὲ πῶς οὐκ ἂν εἴη,*  
|sentry

*εἰ δι' ἄλλους μὲν* |spear-brearing *τῆς σωτηρίας οἰησόμεθα*

*χρῆναι τυγχάνειν, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς οὐ* |be bodyguard      ,

*καὶ μὴν εὖ γε δεῖ εἰδέναι ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλη* |guard,  
|prison,  
*τοιαύτη οἷα αὐτόν τινα καλὸν κάγαθον ὑπάρχειν* |watch  
*τούτο*

*γὰρ δεῖ συμπαρομαρτεῖν τῷ δ'* |excellence, *ῥήμῳ οὐδὲ ἄλλο*

of sorrows; since to fail of good altogether is not so hard as to lose the good that has once been ours. And let us ask ourselves what excuse we could offer for being unworthy of our past. Shall we say it is because we have won an empire? Surely it is hardly fitting that the ruler should be baser than the ruled. Or is it that we seem to be happier to-day than heretofore? Is cowardice, then, an adjunct of happiness? Or is it simply because we have slaves and must punish them if they do wrong? But by what right can a man, who is bad himself, punish others for badness or stupidity? Remember, too, that we have arranged for the maintenance of a whole multitude, to guard our persons and our houses, and it would be shameful for us to depend for safety on the weapons of others and refuse to carry weapons for ourselves. Surely we ought to know that there can be no defence so strong as a man's own gallantry. Courage should be our companion all our days. For if virtue leave us, nothing else whatever can go well

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἄκέομαι** heal, fix**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀρχεῖον** central office**ἀσκέω** work on**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἐπιτήδευμα** -τος (n, 3) habit, business, custom**ἐπιτηδεύω** practice, pursue**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

**καινός** new, fresh, strange**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**μελέτη** care; practice**ὀμότιμος** (ἰ) equally honored**παιδεύω** raise; train**παράδειγμα** -τος (n, 3) model, precedent**Πέρσης** Persian**ποῦ** where?**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems**τιμάω** (ἰ) honor, exalt

καλῶς ἔχειν οὐδὲν προσήκει. τί οὖν φημι χρήναι ποιεῖν καὶ ποῦ τὴν ἀρετὴν ἀσκεῖν καὶ ποῦ τὴν μελέτην ποιεῖσθαι; οὐδὲν καινόν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐρῶ· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἐν Πέρσαις ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀρχείοις οἱ ὁμότιμοι διάγουσιν, οὕτω καὶ ἡμᾶς φημι χρήναι ἐνθάδε ὄντας τοὺς ὁμοτίμους πάντα ἅπερ κακεῖ ἐπιτηδεύειν, καὶ ὑμᾶς τε ἐμὲ ὁρῶντας κατανοεῖν παρόντας εἰ ἐπιμελόμενος ὦν δεῖ διάξω, ἐγὼ τε ὑμᾶς κατανοῶν θεάσομαι, καὶ οὓς ἂν ὁρῶ τὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰγαθὰ ἐπιτηδεύοντας, τούτους τιμήσω. καὶ τοὺς παῖδας δέ, οἳ ἂν ἡμῶν γίνωνται, ἐνθάδε παιδεύωμεν· αὐτοὶ τε γὰρ βελτίονες ἐσόμεθα, βουλόμενοι τοῖς παισὶν ὡς βέλτιστα παραδείγματα ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς παρέχειν, οἳ τε παῖδες οὐδ' ἂν εἰ βούλουντο ῥαδίως πονηροὶ γένοιτο, αἰσχρὸν μὲν μηδὲν μήτε ὁρῶντες μήτε ἀκούοντες, ἐν δὲ καλοῖς κάγαθοῖς ἐπιτηδεύμασι διημερεύοντες.

καλῶς ἔχειν οὐδὲν |belong to, it beseems τί οὖν φημι χρῆναι ποιεῖν  
καὶ |where? , |excellence |work on αἰ |where? , |care; ποιεῖσθαι;  
|practice  
οὐδὲν |new, fresh, strange -s, ἐρῶ· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἐν Πέρσαις  
ἐπὶ τοῖς |central οἱ |equally |lead through; ὕτω καὶ ἡμᾶς  
|office |honored |pass a time  
φημι χρῆναι |here, ὄντας τοὺς |equally πάντα ἅπερ  
|hither |honored  
κάκεϊ |practice, , καὶ ὑμᾶς τε ἐμὲ ὁρῶντας |notice, real-  
|pursue |ize, learn  
παρόντας εἰ ἐπιμελόμενος ὦν δεῖ διάξω, ἐγὼ τε ὑμᾶς  
|notice, real- θεάσομαι, καὶ οὓς ἂν ὁρῶ τὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰγαθὰ  
|ize, learn  
|practice, pursue , τούτους |honor . καὶ τοὺς παῖδας δέ, οἱ  
ἂν ἡμῶν γίγνωνται, |here, |raise; train αὐτοί τε γὰρ  
|hither  
βελτίονες ἐσόμεθα, βουλόμενοι τοῖς παισὶν ὥς |best,  
|noblest  
|model, precedent ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς |furnish , οἳ τε παῖδες οὐδ' ἂν  
εἰ βούλονται |easy |oppressed; , ἔκnavish;|shameful μὲν μηδὲν  
|useless  
|neither ῥῶντες |neither ῥκούοντες, ἐν δὲ καλοῖς κάγαθοῖς  
|habit, business, διημερεύοντες.  
|custom

with us. What, then, would I have you do? How are we to remember our valour and train our skill? Gentlemen, I have nothing novel to suggest; at home in Persia the Peers spend their days at the public buildings and here we should do the same. Here we are the men of rank and honour, as we are there, and we should hold to the same customs. You must keep your eyes on me and watch whether I am diligent in my duty, and I shall give heed to you, and honour him who trains himself in what is beautiful and brave. And here too let us educate our sons, if sons are born to us. We cannot but become better ourselves if we strive to set the best example we can to our children, and our children could hardly grow up to be unworthy, even if they wished, when they see nothing base before them, and hear nothing shameful, but live in the practice of all that is beautiful and good.”

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἄλλοτε** at another time ~alien  
**ἀπειθέω** disobey  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
 ~apostle  
**διαφυλάσσω** guard, observe  
**ἐνδεής** inadequate  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐπειδὴν** when, after  
**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse  
**εὐδαιμονέω** be lucky, happy  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be

overcome; (active) defeat  
**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn  
**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**μῆποτε** absolutely never  
**νίκη** (i) victory ~Nike  
**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce  
**ποίη** grass  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer  
**σωτηρία** saving, preservation  
**φίλιος** friendly

## 8

## 8.1

Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀνέστη δ' ἐπ' αὐτῷ Χρυσάντας καὶ εἶπεν ὦδε. Ἄλλὰ πολλάκις μὲν δῆ, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ ἄλλοτε κατενόησα ὅτι ἄρχων ἀγαθὸς οὐδὲν διαφέρει πατρὸς ἀγαθοῦ· οἳ τε γὰρ πατέρες προνοοῦσι τῶν παίδων ὅπως μήποτε αὐτοὺς τὰγαθὰ ἐπιλείψει, Κῦρός τέ μοι δοκεῖ νῦν συμβουλεύειν ἡμῖν ἀφ' ὧν μάλιστ' ἂν εὐδαιμονοῦντες διατελοῖμεν· ὃ δέ μοι δοκεῖ ἐνδεέστερον ἢ ὥς ἐχρῆν δηλῶσαι, τοῦτο ἐγὼ πειράσομαι τοὺς μὴ εἰδότας διδάξαι. ἐννοήσατε γὰρ δὴ τίς ἂν πόλις πολεμία ὑπὸ μὴ πειθομένων ἀλοίη· τίς δ' ἂν φιλία ὑπὸ μὴ πειθομένων διαφυλαχθείη· ποῖον δ' ἂν ἀπειθούντων στράτευμα νίκης τύχοι· πῶς δ' ἂν μᾶλλον ἐν μάχαις ἡττῶντο ἄνθρωποι ἢ ἐπειδὰν ἄρξωνται ἰδίᾳ ἕκαστος περὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ σωτηρίας βουλεύεσθαι· τί δ' ἂν ἄλλο ἀγαθὸν τελεσθείη ὑπὸ μὴ πειθομένων τοῖς κρείττοσι· ποῖαι δὲ πόλεις νομίμως ἂν οἰκήσειαν ἢ ποῖοι οἵκοι σωθείησαν· πῶς δ' ἂν νῆες



## 8

## 8.1

|authority;  
|validity ὁ οὖν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀνέστη δ' ἐπ' αὐτῷ Χρυσάντας  
 καὶ εἶπεν |thus Ἀλλὰ |often μὲν δὴ, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ  
 |at another|notice, real- ὅτι ἄρχων ἀγαθὸς οὐδὲν |carry on;  
|time |ize, learn |differ; excel  
 πατρὸς ἀγαθοῦ· οἳ τε γὰρ πατέρες |foresee, τῶν  
|think of  
 παιδων ὅπως |absolutely ὑτοὺς τάγαθὰ ἐπιλείψει, Κῦρός  
|never  
 τέ μοι δοκεῖ νῦν |give advice; ἡμῖν ἀφ' ὧν μάλιστ' ἂν  
|(mid) consult  
 |be lucky, happy |accomplish; ὃ δέ μοι δοκεῖ |inadequate ἢ  
|keep doing  
 ὥς |must, |show, , τοῦτο ἐγὼ πειράσομαι τοὺς μὴ εἰδότας  
|should |disclose  
 |teach |consider γὰρ δὴ τίς ἂν πόλις πολεμία ὑπὸ  
 μὴ πειθομένων ἀλοίη· τίς δ' ἂν |friendly· τὸ μὴ πειθομένων  
 |guard, observe |what kind ὃν |disobey |army |victory  
 τύχοι· πῶς δ' ἂν μᾶλλον ἐν μάχαις ἡττῶντο ἄνθρωποι ἢ  
 |when, ἄρξωνται |private, ...στος περὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ σωτηρίας  
|after |personal  
 |(mp) to deliberate· δ' ἂν ἄλλο ἀγαθὸν |fulfill, pay; ἵπφ μὴ  
|pass: be feasible  
 πειθομένων τοῖς κρείττοσι· ποῖαι δὲ πόλεις |customary, ὡ  
|legal, natural  
 |inhabit ἢ |what kind ι σωθείησαν· πῶς δ' ἂν νῆες

## 8

## 8.1

Such were the words of Cyrus; and Chrysantas rose up after him, saying, "Gentlemen, this is not the first time I have had occasion to observe that a good ruler differs in no respect from a good father. Even as a father takes thought that blessings may never fail his children, so Cyrus would commend to us the ways by which we can preserve our happiness. And yet, on one point, it seemed to me he had spoken less fully than he might; and I will try to explain it for the benefit of those who have not learnt it. I would have you ask yourselves, was ever a hostile city captured by an undisciplined force? Did ever an undisciplined garrison save a friendly town? When discipline was gone, did ever an army conquer? Is ever disaster nearer than when each soldier thinks about his private safety only? Nay, in peace as in war, can any good be gained if men will not obey their betters? What city could be at rest, lawful, and orderly? What household could be safe? What ship sail home to her

*vocabulary*

**ἄέκων** unwilling  
**ἄθρόος** grouped  
**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**διασώζω** preserve through  
**εἵπερ** if indeed  
**έκων** willingly, on purpose; giving in  
 too easily  
**έλευθερος** not enslaved  
**έπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near  
**έπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act,  
 uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ήμιτελής** half-finished ~hemisphere  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,  
 arrive; be proper  
**καθίημι** (ιι) speed down upon; take  
 down ~jet

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon  
 ~eclipse  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**καταπράσσω** accomplish, build  
 ~practice  
**καταπράττω** accomplish, build  
**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μοναρχία** monarchy  
**οικήω** inhabit ~economics  
**όποι** to which place  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
 ~genus  
**πειθαρχέω** obey authority  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**ύπηρετέω** serve

ὅποι δέι ἀφίκοντο· ἡμεῖς δὲ ἂ νῦν ἀγαθὰ ἔχομεν διὰ  
 τί ἄλλο μᾶλλον κατεπράξαμεν ἢ διὰ τὸ πείθεσθαι τῷ  
 ἄρχοντι; διὰ τοῦτο γὰρ καὶ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας ταχὺ μὲν  
 ὅποι ἔδει παρεγγιγνόμεθα, ἀθρόοι δὲ τῷ ἄρχοντι ἐπόμενοι  
 ἀνυπόστατοι ἦμεν, τῶν δ' ἐπιταχθέντων οὐδὲν ἡμιτελὲς  
 κατελείπομεν. εἰ τοίνυν μέγιστον ἀγαθὸν τὸ πειθαρχεῖν  
 φαίνεται εἰς τὸ καταπράττειν τὰγαθὰ, οὕτως εὖ ἴστε  
 ὅτι τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο καὶ εἰς τὸ διασώζειν ἂ δέι μέγιστον  
 ἀγαθὸν ἐστὶ. καὶ πρόσθεν μὲν δὴ πολλοὶ ἡμῶν ἦρχον μὲν  
 οὐδενός, ἦρχοντο δέ· νῦν δὲ κατεσκεύασθε οὕτω πάντες  
 οἱ παρόντες ὥστε ἄρχετε οἱ μὲν πλειόνων, οἱ δὲ μειόνων.  
 ὥσπερ τοίνυν αὐτοὶ ἀξιώσετε ἄρχειν τῶν ὑφ' ὑμῖν, οὕτω  
 καὶ αὐτοὶ πειθώμεθα οἷς ἂν ἡμᾶς καθήκη. τοσοῦτον δὲ  
 διαφέρειν δεῖ τῶν δούλων ὅσον οἱ μὲν δούλοι ἄκοντες τοῖς  
 δεσπόταις ὑπηρετοῦσιν, ἡμᾶς δ', εἴπερ ἀξιοῦμεν ἐλεύθεροι  
 εἶναι, ἐκόντας δεῖ ποιεῖν ὃ πλείστου ἄξιον φαίνεται εἶναι.  
 εὐρήσετε δ', ἔφη, καὶ ἔνθα ἄνευ μοναρχίας πόλις οἰκεῖται,  
 τὴν μάλιστα τοῖς ἄρχουσιν ἐθέλουσαν

|to which|arrive      ἡμεῖς δὲ ἂ νῦν ἀγαθὰ ἔχομεν διὰ  
 |place  
 τί ἄλλο μᾶλλον |accomplish, build ἢ διὰ τὸ πείθεσθαι τῷ  
 ἄρχοντι; διὰ τοῦτο γὰρ καὶ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας ταχὺ μὲν  
 |to which|be beside, attend , |grouped ἔ τῷ ἄρχοντι ἐπόμενοι  
 |place  
 ἀνυπόστατοι ἦμεν, τῶν δ' |enjoin;      place οὐδὲν |half-finished  
 |near  
 κατελείπομεν. εἰ |well, then ἔγιστον ἀγαθὸν τὸ |obey authority  
 φαίνεται εἰς τὸ καταπράττειν τὰγαθὰ, οὕτως εὖ ἴστε  
 ὅτι τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο καὶ εἰς τὸ |preserve      ἂ δὲ μέγιστον  
 |through  
 ἀγαθὸν ἐστι. καὶ πρόσθεν μὲν δὴ πολλοὶ ἡμῶν ἦρχον μὲν  
 οὐδενός, ἦρχοντο δέ· νῦν δὲ |equip, build      οὕτω πάντες  
 οἱ παρόντες ὥστε ἄρχετε οἱ μὲν πλειόνων, οἱ δὲ |less,  
 |smaller  
 ὥσπερ |well, then 'τοὶ |consider worth- χεῖν τῶν ὑφ' ὑμῖν, οὕτω  
 |thy, fitting  
 καὶ αὐτοὶ πειθώμεθα οἷς ἂν ἡμᾶς καθήκη. |so much      δὲ  
 |carry on; εἰ τῶν |born enslaved, οἱ μὲν |born enslaved, ἐς τοῖς  
 |differ; excel      |servile      |servile  
 |master,      |serve , ἡμᾶς δ', |if |consider |not enslaved  
 |despot      |indeed |worthy,  
 εἶναι, |willingly δὲ ποιεῖν ὁ πλείστον |fitting  
 |worthy, φαίνεται εἶναι.  
 εὐρήσετε δ', ἔφη, καὶ ἐνθα |away |monarchy πόλιν |inhabit ,  
 |from;  
 τὴν μάλιστα τοῖς ἄρχουσιν ἐθέλουσαν  
 |not  
 |hav-  
 |ing;  
 |not  
 |need-  
 |ing

haven? And we, to what do we owe our triumph, if not to our obedience? We obeyed; we were ready to follow the call by night and day; we marched behind our leader, ranks that nothing could resist; we left nothing half-done of all we were told to do. If obedience is the one path to win the highest good, remember it is also the one way to preserve it. Now in the old days, doubtless, many of us ruled no one else, we were simply ruled. But to-day you find yourselves rulers, one and all of you, some over many and some over few. And just as you would wish your subjects to obey you, so we must obey those who are set over us. Yet there should be this difference between ourselves and slaves; a slave renders unwilling service to his lord, but we, if we claim to be freemen, must do of our own free will that which we see to be the best. And you will find," he added, "that even when no single man is ruler, that city which is most careful to obey authority

*vocabulary***ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀρχεῖον** central office**ἀσκέω** work on**δηλόω** show, disclose**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

**διαφυλάσσω** guard, observe**ἐντιμος** (ἱ) honored**ἥκιστος** least; above all**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**καταχεύω** pour onto**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural**Πέρσης** Persian**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;

agree; (mp) happen ~bear

**ὑπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic

πείθεσθαι ταύτην ἥκιστα τῶν πολεμίων ἀναγκαζομένην ὑπακούειν. παρῶμέν τε οὖν, ὥσπερ Κῦρος κελεύει, ἐπὶ τόδε τὸ ἀρχεῖον, ἀσκῶμέν τε δι' ὧν μάλιστα δυνησόμεθα κατέχειν ἃ δεῖ, παρέχωμέν τε ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς χρῆσθαι Κύρῳ ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ. καὶ τοῦτο γὰρ εὖ εἰδέναι χρή ὅτι οὐ μὴ δυνήσεται Κῦρος εὔρεῖν ὅ τι αὐτῷ μὲν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ χρήσεται, ἡμῶν δὲ οὐ, ἐπείπερ τά γε αὐτὰ ἡμῶν συμφέροι καὶ οἱ αὐτοὶ εἰσιν ἡμῶν πολέμοι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπε Χρυσάντας, οὕτω δὴ καὶ ἄλλοι ἀνίσταντο πολλοὶ καὶ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν συμμάχων συνεροῦντες· καὶ ἔδοξε τοὺς ἐντίμους αἰεὶ παρεῖναι ἐπὶ θύρας καὶ παρέχειν αὐτοὺς χρῆσθαι ὅ τι ἂν βούληται, ἕως ἀφείη Κῦρος. ὥς δὲ τότε ἔδοξεν, οὕτω καὶ νῦν ἔτι ποιοῦσιν οἱ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν ὑπὸ βασιλεῖ ὄντες, θεραπεύουσι τὰς τῶν ἀρχόντων θύρας. ὥς δ' ἐν τῷ λόγῳ δεδήλωται Κῦρος καταστησάμενος εἰς τὸ διαφυλάττειν αὐτῷ τε καὶ Πέρσαις τὴν ἀρχήν, ταῦτα καὶ οἱ μετ' ἐκείνον βασιλεῖς νόμιμα ἔτι καὶ νῦν διατελοῦσι ποιοῦντες. οὕτω δ' ἔχει καὶ ταῦτα



πείθεσθαι ταύτην |least; above  
 |listen, reply. παρῶ<sup>all</sup>μέν τε οὖν, ὥσπερ Κῦρος κελεύει, ἐπὶ  
 τόδε τὸ |central , |work on τε δι' ὧν μάλιστα δυνησόμεθα  
 |office  
 κατέχειν ἃ δεῖ, |furnish τε ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς χρήσθαι Κύρῳ  
 ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ. καὶ τοῦτο γὰρ εὖ εἰδέναι |must, |should  
 δυνήσεται Κῦρος εὔρεῖν ὅ τι αὐτῷ μὲν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ χρήσεται,  
 ἡμῖν δὲ οὐ, ἐπείπερ τά γε αὐτὰ ἡμῖν |bring together; be expedient; agree;  
 | (mp) happen  
 εἰσιν ἡμῖν πολέμοι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπε Χρυσάντας, οὕτω δὴ καὶ ἄλλοι  
 |stand up; arouse ἄλλοι καὶ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν συμμάχων  
 συνεροῦντες· καὶ ἔδοξε τοὺς |honored αἰεὶ παρεῖναι ἐπὶ  
 |door καὶ |furnish αὐτοὺς χρήσθαι ὅ τι ἂν βούληται, ἕως  
 |throw, |release, ὥς δὲ τότε ἔδοξεν, οὕτω καὶ νῦν ἔτι ποιοῦσιν  
 |use up  
 οἱ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν ὑπὸ βασιλεῖ ὄντες, |help, serve τὰς  
 τῶν ἀρχόντων |door . ὥς δ' ἐν τῷ λόγῳ |show, |disclose Κῦρος  
 |set down, land; be- εἰς τὸ |guard, observe αὐτῷ τε καὶ Πέρσαις  
 |come, be  
 τὴν ἀρχήν, ταῦτα καὶ οἱ μετ' ἐκείνον βασιλεῖς νόμιμα ἔτι  
 καὶ νῦν |accomplish; ποιοῦντες. οὕτω δ' ἔχει καὶ ταῦτα  
 |keep doing

is the last to bow to the will of her enemies. Let us listen to the words of Cyrus. Let us gather round the public buildings and train ourselves, so that we may keep our hold on all we care for, and offer ourselves to Cyrus for his noble ends. Of one thing we may be sure: Cyrus will never put us to any service which can make for his own good and not for ours. Our needs are the same as his, and our foes the same.”

When Chrysantas had said his say, many others followed to support him, Persians and allies alike, and it was agreed that the men of rank and honour should be in attendance continually at the palace gates, ready for Cyrus to employ, until he gave them their dismissal. That custom is still in force, and to this day the Asiatics under the Great King wait at the door of their rulers. And the measures that Cyrus instituted to preserve his empire, as set forth in this account, are still the law of the land, maintained by all the kings who followed him. Only as in other matters,

*vocabulary*

**αἰχμή** spear point ~acute  
**βέλτιστος** best, noblest  
**βόσκημα** fed livestock  
**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration  
**δοτήρ** -ος (m) distributor ~donate  
**ἐντιμος** (i) honored  
**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task  
**ἐπιστάτης** -ου (m, f) suppliant,  
 dependant ~station  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity  
**καθαρός** clean, pure  
**κτῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possession  
**κυνέα** -ῆς helmet ~hound  
**κύνεος** doglike, shameless ~hound  
**κυνέω** kiss

**κύρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural  
**πέζα** end of a chariot pole  
**πρόσοδος** (f) approach, procession; a  
 rent  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command  
**συγκαταστρέφω** (mid) help to  
 conquer  
**συνδοκέω** seem good also  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**φαῦλος** trifling  
**φοιτάω** go back and forth  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery  
**χείρων** worse, more base, inferior,  
 weaker

ὥσπερ καὶ τᾶλλα· ὅταν μὲν ὁ ἐπιστάτης βελτίων γένηται, καθαρώτερον τὰ νόμιμα πράττεται· ὅταν δὲ χείρων, φαυλότερον. ἐφοίτων μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας Κύρου οἱ ἔντιμοι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις καὶ ταῖς αἰχμαῖς, συνδόξαν πᾶσι τοῖς ἀρίστοις τῶν συγκαταστρεψαμένων τὴν ἀρχήν.

Κῦρος δ' ἐπὶ μὲν τᾶλλα καθίστη ἄλλους ἐπιμελητάς, καὶ ἦσαν αὐτῷ καὶ προσόδων ἀποδεκτῆρες καὶ δαπανημάτων δοτῆρες καὶ ἔργων ἐπιστάται καὶ κτημάτων φύλακες καὶ τῶν εἰς τὴν δίαιταν ἐπιτηδείων ἐπιμεληταί· καὶ ἵππων δὲ καὶ κυνῶν ἐπιμελητὰς καθίστη οὓς ἐνόμιζε καὶ ταῦτα τὰ βοσκήματα βέλτιστ' ἂν παρέχειν αὐτῷ χρῆσθαι. οὓς δὲ συμφύλακας τῆς εὐδαιμονίας οἱ ᾤετο χρῆναι ἔχειν, τούτους ὅπως ὥς βέλτιστοι ἔσονται οὐκέτι τούτου τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν ἄλλοις προσέταπτεν, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ ἐνόμιζε τοῦτο ἔργον εἶναι. ἦδει γὰρ ὅτι, εἴ τι μάχης ποτὲ δεήσοι, ἐκ τούτων αὐτῷ καὶ παραστάτας καὶ ἐπιστάτας ληπτέον εἶη, σὺν οἷσπερ οἱ μέγιστοι κίνδυνοι· καὶ ταξιάρχους δὲ καὶ πεζῶν καὶ ἱππέων ἐγίνωσκεν ἐκ τούτων καταστατέον

ὥσπερ καὶ τᾶλλα· |whenever ὁ ἐπιστάτης βελτίων γένηται,

|clean, pure τὰ νόμιμα πράττεται· |whenever |worse, more base

|trifling . |go back and forth· ἐπὶ τὰς |door Κύρου οἱ

|honored τὸν τοῖς ἵπποις καὶ ταῖς |spear , συνδόξαν πᾶσι  
|point

τοῖς ἀρίστοις τῶν συγκαταστρεψαμένων τὴν ἀρχήν.

|authority; ἐπὶ μὲν τᾶλλα καθίστη ἄλλους ἐπιμελητάς, καὶ  
|validity

ἦσαν αὐτῷ καὶ |approach, pro- οδεκτῆρες καὶ δαπανημάτων  
|cession; a rent

|distributor . καὶ ἔργων ἐπιστάται καὶ |possession |guard; καὶ  
|sentry

τῶν εἰς τὴν |way |fit, suitable ἐπιμελεῖται· καὶ ἵππων  
|of life;

δὲ καὶ κυνῶν |home; ar- ἐπιμελητὰς καθίστη οὓς |consider . . . cus- ὅτα  
|bitration |tomary; believe

τὰ |fed livestock |best, ἂν |furnish αὐτῷ χρῆσθαι. οὓς  
|noblest

δὲ συμφύλακας τῆς εὐδαιμονίας οἱ ᾗετο χρῆναι ἔχειν,

τούτους ὅπως ὥς |best, ἔσονται |no more οὗτου τὴν  
|noblest

|attention; as- ἄλλοις |post at, attach, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ |consider . . . cus-  
|signed task |to, command |tomary; believe

ἔργον εἶναι. ἥδει γὰρ ὅτι, εἴ τι μάχης ποτὲ δεήσοι, ἐκ

τούτων αὐτῷ καὶ παραστάτας καὶ ἐπιστάτας ληπτέον εἶη,

σὺν οἷσπερ οἱ μέγιστοι |danger καὶ |military rank δὲ καὶ

πεζῶν καὶ |rider ἐγίγνωσκεν ἐκ τούτων καταστατέον

so here; with a good ruler, the government is pure; with a bad one, corrupt. Thus it came about that the nobles of Cyrus and all his honourable men waited at his gates, with their weapons and their horses, according to the common consent of the gallant men who had helped to lay the empire at his feet.

Then Cyrus turned to other matters, and appointed various overseers: he had receivers of revenue, controllers of finance, ministers of works, guardians of property, superintendents of the household. Moreover, he chose managers for his horses and his dogs, men who could be trusted to keep the creatures in the best condition and ready for use at any moment. But when it came to those who were to be his fellow-guardians for the commonwealth, he would not leave the care and the training of these to others; he regarded that as his own personal task. He knew, if he were ever to fight a battle, he would have to choose his comrades and supporters, the men on his right hand and left, from these and these alone; it was from them he must appoint his officers for horse and foot. If he had to send out  
a

*vocabulary*

**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**ἄσκησις** -εως (f) exercise, training  
**ἀσχολία** business, being busy  
**διανοέω** have in mind  
**ἐνδύω** go into, put on  
**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee

**κράτιστος** best  
**κτῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possession  
**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia  
**πρόσοδος** (f) approach, procession; a  
 rent  
**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian  
 governor  
**σχολή** rest, leisure  
**σωτηρία** saving, preservation  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery

εἶναι. εἰ δὲ δέοι καὶ στρατηγῶν που ἄνευ αὐτοῦ, ἦδει ὅτι ἐκ τούτων πεμπτέον εἴη· καὶ πόλεων δὲ καὶ ὅλων ἐθνῶν φύλαξι καὶ σατράπαις ἦδει ὅτι τούτων τισὶν εἴη χρηστέον καὶ πρέσβεις γε τούτων τινὰς πεμπτέον, ὅπερ ἐν τοῖς μεγίστοις ἡγείτο εἶναι εἰς τὸ ἄνευ πολέμου τυγχάνειν ὧν δέοιτο. μὴ ὄντων μὲν οὖν οἷων δεῖ δι' ὧν αἱ μέγισται καὶ πλείσται πράξεις ἔμελλον εἶναι, κακῶς ἡγείτο τὰ αὐτοῦ ἔξειν. εἰ δ' οὗτοι εἶεν οἷους δέοι, πάντα ἐνόμιζε καλῶς ἔσεσθαι. ἐνέδν μὲν οὖν οὕτω γνοὺς εἰς ταύτην τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν· ἐνόμιζε δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν καὶ αὐτῷ ἄσκησιν εἶναι τῆς ἀρετῆς. οὐ γὰρ ᾤετο οἷόν τε εἶναι μὴ αὐτόν τινα ὄντα οἷον δεῖ ἄλλους παρορμᾶν ἐπὶ τὰ καλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἔργα. ὥς δὲ ταῦτα διενεόθη, ἡγήσατο σχολῆς πρῶτον δεῖν, εἰ μέλλοι δυνήσεσθαι τῶν κρατίστων ἐπιμελείσθαι. τὸ μὲν οὖν προσόδων ἀμελεῖν οὐχ οἷόν τε ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι, προνοῶν ὅτι πολλὰ καὶ τελεῖν ἀνάγκη ἔσοιτο εἰς μεγάλην ἀρχήν· τὸ δ' αὖ πολλῶν κτημάτων ὄντων ἀμφὶ ταῦτα αὐτὸν αἰεὶ ἔχειν ἦδει ὅτι ἀσχολίαν παρέξοι τῆς τῶν ὅλων σωτηρίας



εἶναι. εἰ δὲ δέοι καὶ στρατηγῶν που |away from; not hav-  
 |ing; not needing τι  
 ἐκ τούτων πεμπτέον εἴη· καὶ πόλεων δὲ καὶ ὄλων |tribe  
 |guard; καὶ |satrap ἥδει ὅτι τούτων τισὶν εἴη χρηστέον  
 |sentry  
 καὶ πρέσβεις γε τούτων τινὰς πεμπτέον, ὅπερ ἐν τοῖς  
 μεγίστοις ἡγείτο εἶναι εἰς τὸ |away from; not hav-  
 |ing; not needing χάνειν ὦν  
 δέοιτο. μὴ ὄντων μὲν οὖν οἴων δεῖ δι' ὦν αἱ μέγιστα  
 καὶ πλείσται πράξεις ἔμελλον εἶναι, κακῶς ἡγείτο τὰ  
 αὐτοῦ ἔξειν. εἰ δ' οὗτοι εἶεν οἴους δέοι, πάντα |consider customary;  
 |believe  
 καλῶς ἔσσεσθαι. |go into, put on οὕτω γνοὺς εἰς ταύτην τὴν  
 |attention; as-consider ὡς αὐτὴν καὶ αὐτῷ |exercise, εἶναι  
 |signed task |tomary; believe |training  
 τῆς |excellence ὃ γὰρ ὤφετο οἶόν τε εἶναι μὴ αὐτόν τινα ὄντα  
 οἶον δεῖ ἄλλους παρορμῶν ἐπὶ τὰ καλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἔργα.  
 ὥς δὲ ταῦτα διενεόθη, ἡγήσατο |rest, πρῶτον δεῖν, εἰ  
 |leisure  
 μέλλοι δυνήσεσθαι τῶν |best |take care of, τὸ μὲν  
 |oversee  
 οὖν |approach, |disregard ὕχ οἶόν τε |consider custom-foresee,  
 |procession; |ary; believe |think of  
 ὅτι |a rent πολλὰ καὶ |fulfill, |necessity ἔσοιτο εἰς μεγάλην ἀρχήν·  
 |pay; pf  
 τὸ δ' αὖ πολλὰ |pass; be  
 |feasible |possession ὄντων ἀμφὶ ταῦτα αὐτὸν ἀεὶ  
 ἔχειν ἥδει ὅτι |business, |furnish τῆς τῶν ὄλων σωτηρίας  
 |being busy

general alone it would be from them that one must be sent: he must depend on them for satraps and governors over cities and nations; he would require them for ambassadors, and an embassy was, he knew, the best means for obtaining what he wanted without war. He foresaw that nothing could go well if the agents in his weightiest affairs were not what they ought to be, while, if they were, everything would prosper. This charge, therefore, he took upon his own shoulders, and he was persuaded that the training he demanded of others should also be undergone by himself. No man could rouse others to noble deeds if he fell short of what he ought to be himself. The more he pondered the matter, the more he felt the need of leisure, if he were to deal worthily with the highest matters. It was, he felt, impossible to neglect the revenues, in view of the enormous funds necessary for so vast an empire, yet he foresaw that if he was always to be occupied with the multitude of his possessions he would never have time to watch over the

*vocabulary*

**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn  
**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**κατάστασις** -εως (f) establishment  
**λοχαγέω** (ἄ) lead a company  
**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain  
**μυριάς** -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics

**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how great  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιωτικός** military  
**σχολή** rest, leisure

ἐπιμελείσθαι. οὕτω δὴ σκοπῶν, ὅπως ἂν τά τε οἰκονομικὰ καλῶς ἔχοι καὶ ἡ σχολὴ γένοιτο, κατενόησέ πως τὴν στρατιωτικὴν σύνταξιν. ὥς γὰρ τὰ πολλὰ δεκάδαρχοι μὲν δεκαδέων ἐπιμέλονται, λοχαγοὶ δὲ δεκαδάρχων, χιλιάρχοι δὲ λοχαγῶν, μυρίαρχοι δὲ χιλιάρχων, καὶ οὕτως οὐδεὶς ἀτημέλητος γίγνεται, οὐδ' ἦν πάνυ πολλαὶ μυριάδες ἀνθρώπων ὦσι, καὶ ὅταν ὁ στρατηγὸς βούληται χρῆσασθαί τι τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἀρκεῖ ἦν τοῖς μυριάρχοις παραγγεῖλη· ὥσπερ οὖν ταῦτ' ἔχει, οὕτω καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συνεκεφαλαιώσατο τὰς οἰκονομικὰς πράξεις· ὥστε καὶ τῷ Κύρῳ ἐγένετο ὀλίγοις διαλεγομένῳ μηδὲν τῶν οἰκείων ἀτημελήτως ἔχειν· καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἤδη σχολὴν ἦγε πλείω ἢ ἄλλος μιᾶς οἰκίας καὶ μιᾶς νεῶς ἐπιμελούμενος. οὕτω δὴ καταστησάμενος τὸ αὐτοῦ ἐδίδαξε καὶ τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν ταύτῃ τῇ καταστάσει χρῆσθαι.

Τὴν μὲν δὴ σχολὴν οὕτω κατεσκευάσατο αὐτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν, ἤρχετο δ' ἐπιστατεῖν τοῦ εἶναι οἷους δεῖ τοὺς κοινῶνας. πρῶτον μὲν ὅποσοι ὄντες ἱκανοὶ

|take care of, οὕτω δὴ σκοπῶν, ὅπως ἂν τά τε οἰκονομικά  
|oversee

καλῶς ἔχοι καὶ ἡ |rest, γένοιτο, |notice, realize, |somehow  
|leisure |learn

|military σύνταξιν. ὥς γὰρ τὰ πολλὰ δεκάδάρχου

μὲν δεκαδέων ἐπιμέλονται, |captain δὲ δεκαδάρχων,

χιλίαρχοι δὲ λοχαγῶν, μυρίαρχοι δὲ χιλιάρχων, καὶ

οὕτως οὐδεὶς ἀτημέλητος γίγνεται, οὐδ' ἦν |altogether, very

|countless, ἀνθρώπων ᾧσι, καὶ |whenever ῥατηγὸς βούληται  
|myriad

χρήσασθαι τι τῇ |army , |satisfy; ward off, μυρίαρχοις  
|defend; suffice

|transmit; order, ἕλκεν, ἢν ταῦτ' ἔχει, οὕτω καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
|recommend, encourage

συνεκεφαλαιώσατο τὰς οἰκονομικὰς πράξεις· ὥστε καὶ

τῷ Κύρῳ ἐγένετο ὀλίγοις |go through, debate ἔν τῶν οἰκείων

ἀτημελήτως ἔχειν· καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἤδη |rest, ἦγε πλείω  
|leisure

ἢ ἄλλος μῆς |building, καὶ μῆς νεὼς |take care of, οὕτω  
|house |oversee

δὴ |set down, land; be- τὸ αὐτοῦ |teach καὶ τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν  
|come, be

ταύτη τῇ καταστάσει χρῆσθαι.

Τὴν μὲν δὴ |rest, οὕτω |equip, build αὐτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς  
|leisure

περὶ αὐτόν, ἤρχετο δ' ἐπιστατεῖν τοῦ εἶναι οἷους δεῖ τοὺς

κοινῶνας. πρῶτον μὲν |as/how ὅτι . . . |sufficient; fit,  
|many/great |empowered

safety of the whole. As he pondered how he could compass both objects, the prosperity of the finances and the leisure he required, the old military organisation came into his mind. He remembered how the captains of ten supervised the squads of ten, and were supervised themselves by the company-captains, and they by the captains of the thousands, and these by the captains of ten thousand, and thus even with hundreds of thousands not a man was left without supervision, and when the general wished to employ his troops one order to the captains of ten thousand was enough. On this principle Cyrus arranged his finances and held his departments together; in this way, by conferring with a few officers he could keep the whole system under his control, and actually have more leisure for himself than the manager of a single household or the master of a single ship. Finally, having thus ordered his own affairs, he taught those about him to adopt the same system.

Accordingly, having gained the leisure he needed for himself and his friends, he could devote himself to his work of training his partners and colleagues. In the first place he dealt with those who, enabled as they were to

*vocabulary***ἀδικία** injustice, offence**αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀμέλεια** indifference, negligence**ἀναβάλλω** delay; lift up ~ballistic**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**διδασκαλία** teaching**διηγέομαι** detail, describe**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**κερδαλέος** clever, wily**κολάζω** punish**πότε** when?**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command**στέρομαι** lack, lose**σχολάζω** have leisure**ὑπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame**φοιτάω** go back and forth

ἄλλων ἐργαζομένων τρέφεσθαι μὴ παρῆεν ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας,  
 τούτους ἐπέζητει, νομίζων τοὺς μὲν παρόντας οὐκ ἂν  
 ἐθέλειν οὔτε κακὸν οὔτε αἰσχρὸν οὐδὲν πράττειν καὶ διὰ  
 τὸ παρ' ἄρχοντι εἶναι καὶ διὰ τὸ εἰδέναι ὅτι ὁρῶντ' ἂν  
 ὅ τι πράττοιεν ὑπὸ τῶν βελτίστων· οἱ δὲ μὴ παρῆεν,  
 τούτους ἡγείτο ἢ ἀκρατεία τινὲ ἢ ἀδικία ἢ ἀμελεία ἀπείναι.  
 τοῦτο οὖν πρῶτον διηγησόμεθα ὥς προσηνάγκαζε τοὺς  
 τοιούτους παρῆναι. τῶν γὰρ παρ' ἑαυτῷ μάλιστα φίλων  
 ἐκέλευσεν ἂν τινα λαβεῖν τὰ τοῦ μὴ φοιτῶντος, φάσκοντα  
 λαμβάνειν τὰ ἑαυτοῦ. ἐπεὶ οὖν τοῦτο γένοιτο, ἦκον  
 ἂν εὐθὺς οἱ στερόμενοι ὥς ἡδικημένοι. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
 πολὺν μὲν χρόνον οὐκ ἐσχόλαζε τοῖς τοιούτοις ὑπακούειν·  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀκούσειεν αὐτῶν, πολὺν χρόνον ἀνεβάλλετο τὴν  
 διαδικασίαν. ταῦτα δὲ ποιῶν ἡγείτο προσεθίζειν αὐτοὺς  
 θεραπεύειν, ἦττον δὲ ἐχθρῶς ἢ εἰ αὐτὸς κολάζων ἡνάγκαζε  
 παρῆναι. εἷς μὲν τρόπος διδασκαλίας ἦν αὐτῷ οὗτος τοῦ  
 παρῆναι· ἄλλος δὲ τὸ τὰ ῥᾶστα καὶ κερδαλεώτατα τοῖς  
 παροῦσι προστάττειν· ἄλλος δὲ τὸ μηδὲν ποτε τοῖς



ἄλλων |work |nurture μὴ παρείεν ἐπὶ τὰς |door ,  
 τούτους ἐπεζήτει, |consider .cus- μὲν παρόντας οὐκ ἂν  
 |tomary; believe  
 ἐθέλειν οὔτε κακὸν οὔτε |shameful οὐδὲν πράττειν καὶ διὰ  
 τὸ παρ' ἄρχοντι εἶναι καὶ διὰ τὸ εἰδέναι ὅτι ὁρῶντ' ἂν  
 ὅ τι πράττοιεν ὑπὸ τῶν |best, noblest οἱ δὲ μὴ παρείεν,  
 τούτους ἡγείτο ἢ ἀκρατεία τινὶ ἢ ἀδικία ἢ |indif- |be absent, go away,  
 |ference, |return  
 τοῦτο οὖν πρῶτον διηγησόμεθα ὥς παρὰ τὸν ἀρχαῖον |negli-  
 |gence  
 τοιούτους παρεῖναι. τῶν γὰρ παρ' ἑαυτῷ μάλιστα φίλων  
 ἐκέλευσεν ἂν τινα λαβεῖν τὰ τοῦ μὴ |go back and |declare, promise,  
 |forth |think  
 λαμβάνειν τὰ ἑαυτοῦ. ἐπεὶ οὖν τοῦτο γένοιτο, |be present, have  
 |arrived  
 ἂν εὐθὺς οἱ |lack, lose ὥς |be, do wrong; ὁ δὲ Κύρος  
 |wrong someone  
 πολὺν μὲν χρόνον οὐκ ἐσχόλαζε τοῖς τοιούτοις |listen, reply  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀκούσειεν αὐτῶν, πολὺν χρόνον |delay; sing τὴν  
 διαδικασίαν. ταῦτα δὲ ποιῶν ἡγείτο προσεθίζειν αὐτοὺς  
 |help, serve , ἡττον δὲ |hated, distasteful |punish |force,  
 |compel  
 παρεῖναι. εἰς μὲν |turn; |teaching ἦν αὐτῷ οὗτος τοῦ  
 |manner,  
 παρεῖναι· ἄλλος |kind, |fashion τὰ |easy καὶ |clever, wily τοῖς  
 παροῦσι |post at, attach ἄλλος δὲ τὸ μηδὲν ποτε τοῖς  
 |to, command

live on the labour of others, yet failed to present themselves at the palace; he would send for them and seek them out, convinced that attendance would be wholesome for them; they would be unwilling to do anything base or evil in the presence of their king and under the eye of their noblest men; those who were absent were so through self-indulgence or wrong-doing or carelessness. And I will now set forth how he brought them to attend. He would go to one of his most intimate friends and bid him lay hands on the property of the offender, asserting that it was his own. Then of course the truants would appear at once crying out that they had been robbed. But somehow for many days Cyrus could never find leisure to hear their complaints, and when he did listen he took care to defer judgment for many more. This was one way he had of teaching them to attend; another was to assign the lightest and most profitable tasks to those who were punctual, and a third to give nothing whatever

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀτακτέω** be undisciplined**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**ἄχρηστος** useless, unprofitable**ἐπαίρω** lift, raise ~heresy**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὕ) display, exhibit**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; be proper**κολάζω** punish**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add**ὑπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**χρήσιμος** useful

ἀποῦσι νέμειν· ὁ δὲ δὴ μέγιστος τρόπος τῆς ἀνάγκης ἦν, εἰ  
 τούτων μηδὲν τις ὑπακούοι, ἀφελόμενος ἂν τοῦτον ἃ ἔχοι  
 ἄλλω ἐδίδου ὃν ὥετο δύνασθαι ἂν ἐν τῷ δέοντι παρεῖναι·  
 καὶ οὕτως ἐγίγνετο αὐτῷ φίλος χρήσιμος ἀντὶ ἀχρήστου.  
 ἐπιζητεῖ δὲ καὶ ὁ νῦν βασιλεύς, ἥν τις ἀπῇ οἷς παρεῖναι  
 καθήκει.

Τοῖς μὲν δὴ μὴ παροῦσιν οὕτω προσεφέρετο. τοὺς  
 δὲ παρέχοντας ἑαυτοὺς ἐνόμισε μάλιστ' ἂν ἐπὶ τὰ  
 καλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἐπαίρειν, ἐπείπερ ἄρχων ἦν αὐτῶν,  
 εἰ αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιδεικνύειν πειρῶτο τοῖς ἀρχομένοις  
 πάντων μάλιστα κεκοσμημένον τῇ ἀρετῇ. αἰσθάνεσθαι  
 μὲν γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ διὰ τοὺς γραφομένους νόμους  
 βελτίους γιγνομένους ἀνθρώπους· τὸν δὲ ἀγαθὸν ἄρχοντα  
 βλέποντα νόμον ἀνθρώποις ἐνόμισεν, ὅτι καὶ τάττειν  
 ἱκανός ἐστι καὶ ὁρᾶν τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα καὶ κολάζειν. οὕτω  
 δὴ γιγνώσκων πρῶτον μὲν τὰ περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς μᾶλλον  
 ἐκπονοῦντα ἐπεδείκνυνεν ἑαυτὸν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ἐπεὶ  
 εὐδαιμονέστερος ἦν. καὶ τότε πρῶτον

|be absent, distribute δὲ δὴ μέγιστος |turn; manner, necessity ἦν, εἰ  
|kind, fashion

go away, return μηδέν τις |listen, , |take away ἂν τοῦτον ἂ ἔχοι  
reply

ἄλλω ἐδίδου ὃν ᾤετο δύνασθαι ἂν ἐν τῷ δέοντι παρῆναι·

καὶ οὕτως ἐγίγνετο αὐτῷ φίλος |useful ἀντὶ |useless, un-  
|profitable

ἐπιζητεῖ δὲ καὶ ὁ νῦν βασιλεὺς, ἦν τις |be absent, go away, return  
|away, return

|come down, (a day) to  
|fall, arrive; be proper

Τοῖς μὲν δὴ μὴ παροῦσιν οὕτω |present; resemble; add τοὺς

δὲ |furnish ἑαυτοὺς |consider , cūs- τ' ἂν ἐπὶ τὰ  
|tomary; believe

καλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ |lift, raise , ἐπεῖπερ ἄρχων ἦν αὐτῶν,

εἰ αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν |display, exhibit |try, test τοῖς ἀρχομένοις

πάντων μάλιστα |marshal, array τῇ |excellence|perceive

μὲν γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ διὰ τοὺς |write; scratch νόμους

βελτίους γιγνομένους ἀνθρώπους· τὸν δὲ ἀγαθὸν ἄρχοντα

|see, look at νόμον ἀνθρώποις |consider , cūs- καὶ |arrange  
|tomary; believe

|sufficient; fit, empowered, καὶ ὁρᾶν τὸν |be undisciplined ... |punish . οὕτω

δὴ γινώσκων πρῶτον μὲν τὰ περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς μᾶλλον

ἐκπονοῦντα ἐπεδείκνυνεν ἑαυτὸν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ἐπεὶ

|blessed with a good ἦν. καὶ τότε πρῶτον  
|genius

to the offenders. But the most effective of all, for those who paid no heed to gentler measures, was to deprive the truant of what he possessed and bestow it on him who would come when he was needed. By this process Cyrus gave up a useless friend and gained a serviceable one. To this day the king sends for and seeks out those who do not present themselves when they should.

Such was his method with the truants; with those who came forward he felt, since he was their rightful leader, that he could best incite them to noble deeds by trying to show that he himself had all the virtues that became a man. He believed that men do grow better through written laws, and he held that the good ruler is a living law with eyes that see, inasmuch as he is competent to guide and also to detect the sinner and chastise him. Thus he took pains to show that he was the more assiduous in his service to the gods the higher his fortunes rose. It was at this time that the Persian priests, the Magians, were

*vocabulary***ἀθρέω** observe, gaze**ἄθροος** noiseless**ἀθρόος** grouped**αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀνόσιος** unholy**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἀρέσκω** please, satisfy; make amends**ἀσεβέω** be impious**διαμένω** continue, persevere**ἐμφανίζω** show, explain, declare**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor**εὐσεβής** pious**θεοσεβής** revering the gods**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**κέρδος** -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider**μιμέομαι** (ι) imitate, represent**Πέρσης** Persian**ὑμνέω** recite, commemorate

κατεστάθησαν οἱ μάγοι[...] ὑμνεῖν τε αἰεὶ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοὺς θεοὺς καὶ θύειν ἀν' ἐκάστην ἡμέραν οἷς οἱ μάγοι θεοῖς εἵποιεν. οὕτω δὴ τὰ τότε κατασταθέντα ἔτι καὶ νῦν διαμένει παρὰ τῷ αἰεὶ ὄντι βασιλεῖ. ταῦτ' οὖν πρῶτον ἐμμουνοῦντο αὐτὸν καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι, νομίζοντες καὶ αὐτοὶ εὐδαιμονέστεροι ἔσεσθαι, ἣν θεραπεύωσι τοὺς θεοὺς, ὥσπερ ὁ εὐδαιμονέστατός τε ὢν καὶ ἄρχων· καὶ Κύρῳ δ' ἂν ἡγοῦντο ταῦτα ποιοῦντες ἀρέσκειν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὴν τῶν μεθ' αὐτοῦ εὐσέβειαν καὶ ἑαυτῷ ἀγαθὸν ἐνόμιζε, λογιζόμενος ὥσπερ οἱ πλεῖν αἰρούμενοι μετὰ τῶν εὐσεβῶν μᾶλλον ἢ μετὰ τῶν ἡσεβηκέναι τι δοκούντων. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἐλογίζετο ὡς εἰ πάντες οἱ κοινῶνες θεοσεβεῖς εἶεν, ἥττον ἂν αὐτοὺς ἐθέλειν περὶ τε ἀλλήλους ἀνόσιόν τι ποιεῖν καὶ περὶ ἑαυτόν, εὐεργέτης νομίζων εἶναι τῶν κοινόνων. ἐμφανίζων δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι περὶ πολλοῦ ἐποιεῖτο μηδένα μήτε φίλον ἀδικεῖν μήτε σύμμαχον, ἀλλὰ τὸ δίκαιον ἰσχυρῶς ἀθρῶν, μᾶλλον καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ὧρετ' ἂν τῶν μὲν αἰσchrῶν κερδῶν ἀπέχεσθαι, διὰ τοῦ δικαίου



|set down, land; οἱ μάγοι[...] |recite, ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ  
|become, be |commemorate

τοὺς θεοὺς καὶ |rush; sacrifice ἱστῆν ἡμέραν οἷς οἱ μάγοι

θεοῖς εἵποιεν. οὕτω δὲ τὰ τότε |set down, land; ἔτι καὶ νῦν  
|become, be

|continue, παρὰ τῷ ἀεὶ ὄντι βασιλεῖ. ταῦτ' οὖν πρῶτον  
|persevere

|imitate, αὐτὸν καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι, |consider cus-  
|represent |tomary; believe

αὐτοὶ |blessed with a good ἔσεσθαι, ἣν |help, serve τοὺς θεοὺς,  
|genius

ὥσπερ ὁ |blessed with a good τε ὢν καὶ ἄρχων· καὶ Κύρω  
|genius

δ' ἂν ἡγούντο ταῦτα ποιοῦντες |please, satisfy; δὲ Κύρος  
|make amends

τὴν τῶν μεθ' αὐτοῦ εὐσέβειαν καὶ ἑαυτῷ ἀγαθὸν |consider, customary;  
|believe

|reckon, ὥσπερ οἱ πλεῖν αἰρούμενοι μετὰ τῶν εὐσεβῶν  
|consider

μᾶλλον ἢ μετὰ τῶν |be impious τι δοκούντων. πρὸς

δὲ τούτοις |reckon, ὥς εἰ πάντες οἱ κοινῶνες |revering the gods  
|consider

εἶεν, ἥττον ἂν αὐτοὺς ἐθέλειν περὶ τε ἀλλήλους |unholy

τι ποιεῖν καὶ περὶ ἑαυτόν, |benefactor |consider cus-  
|tomary; believe

κοινῶνων. |show, explain, δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι περὶ πολλοῦ  
|declare

ἐποιεῖτο μηδένα |neither ἵλον |be, do|neither ἡμῶν, ἀλλὰ  
|wrong;

τὸ δίκαιον |strong, force-  
|ful, violent ἡμῶν, καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ὥς  
|wrong  
|someone

ἂν τῶν μὲν |shameful |advantage  
|cunning |ward off, drive off, refrain, αἰοῦ  
|be at some distance

first established as an order, and always at break of day Cyrus chanted a hymn and sacrificed to such of the gods as they might name. And the ordinances he established service to this day at the court of the reigning king. These were the first matters in which the Persians set themselves to copy their prince; feeling their own fortune would be the higher if they did reverence to the gods, following the man who was fortune's favourite and their own monarch. At the same time, no doubt, they thought they would please Cyrus by this. On his side Cyrus looked on the piety of his subjects as a blessing to himself, reckoning as they do who prefer to sail in the company of pious men rather than with those who are suspected of wicked deeds, and he reckoned further that if all his partners were god-fearing, they would be the less prone to crime against each other or against himself, for he knew he was the benefactor of his fellows. And by showing plainly his own deep desire never to be unfair to friend or fellow-combatant or ally, but always to fix his eyes on justice and rectitude, he believed he could induce others to keep from base actions and walk in the paths of righteousness. And

*vocabulary***αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed**αἰδώς** awe, shame, respect; genitals**αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀναιδής** shameless, ruthless**ἀπροφάσιτος** unhesitating**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀσθενής** weak**ἀσκέω** work on**διαίρῃω** divide, distinguish, distribute**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

**ἔμμονος** lasting, steadfast**ἐμπίμπλημι** fill with**ἐξεῖμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὄ) display, exhibit**ἐπίπονος** of/with pain, toil ~osteopenia**σωφρονέω** be sane, moderate**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**τεκμαίρομαι** conclude, declare from evidence**τιμάω** (ἱ) honor, exalt**τιμόω** honor, exalt**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously**ὕβριστικός** wanton**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**φανερόω** demonstrate ~photon

δ' ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι. καὶ αἰδοῦς δ' ἂν ἡγείτο μᾶλλον  
 πάντας ἐμπιμπλάναι, εἰ αὐτὸς φανερός εἴη πάντας οὕτως  
 αἰδούμενος ὥς μήτ' εἰπεῖν ἂν μήτε ποιῆσαι μηδὲν αἰσχρόν.  
 ἐτεκμαίρετο δὲ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔξειν ἐκ τοῦδε. μὴ γὰρ  
 ὅτι ἄρχοντα, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὓς οὐ φοβοῦνται, μᾶλλον τοὺς  
 αἰδουμένους αἰδοῦνται τῶν ἀναιδῶν οἱ ἄνθρωποι· καὶ  
 γυναῖκας δὲ ἅς ἂν αἰδουμένας αἰσθάνωνται, ἀνταιδεῖσθαι  
 μᾶλλον ἐθέλουσιν ὁρῶντες. τὸ δ' αὖ πείθεσθαι οὕτω  
 μάλιστ' ἂν ᾤετο ἔμμονον εἶναι τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν, εἰ τοὺς  
 ἀπροφασίστως πειθομένους φανερός εἴη μᾶλλον τιμῶν  
 τῶν τὰς μεγίστας ἀρετὰς καὶ ἐπιπονωτάτας δοκούντων  
 παρέχεσθαι. γιγνώσκων δ' οὕτω καὶ ποιῶν διετελεί.  
 καὶ σωφροσύνην δ' αὐτοῦ ἐπιδεικνὺς μᾶλλον ἐποίει καὶ  
 ταύτην πάντας ἀσκεῖν. ὅταν γὰρ ὁρῶσιν, ᾧ μάλιστα  
 ἔξεστιν ὑβριῖζειν, τοῦτον σωφρονοῦντα, οὕτω μᾶλλον οἷ  
 γε ἀσθενέστεροι ἐθέλουσιν οὐδὲν ὑβριστικὸν ποιοῦντες  
 φανεροὶ εἶναι. διήρει δὲ αἰδῶ καὶ σωφροσύνην τῇδε, ὥς  
 τοὺς μὲν αἰδουμένους τὰ ἐν τῷ φανερῷ αἰσχρὰ

δ' ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι. καὶ |awe, shame, re- ἵγείτο μᾶλλον  
spect; genitals

πάντας |fill with , εἰ αὐτὸς |visible, ..., πάντας οὕτως  
conspicuous

|respect, be ashamed', ' εἰπεῖν ἂν μήτε ποιῆσαι μηδὲν |shameful .

|conclude, declare τοῦτο οὕτως ἔξειν ἐκ τοῦδε. μὴ γὰρ  
from evidence

ὅτι ἄρχοντα, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὓς οὐ φοβοῦνται, μᾶλλον τοὺς

|respect, be|respect, ... be|shameless, εἰ ἄνθρωποι· καὶ  
ashamed |ashamed |ruthless

γυναικας δὲ ἅς ἂν |respect, be ashamed' . ωνται, ἀνταιδεῖσθαι

μᾶλλον ἐθέλουσιν ὁρῶντες. τὸ δ' αὖ πείθεσθαι οὕτω

μάλιστ' ἂν ᾤετο |lasting, εἶναι τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν, εἰ τοὺς  
steadfast

|unhesitating πειθομένους |visible, ... μᾶλλον τιμῶν  
conspicuous

τῶν τὰς μεγίστας |excellence . καὶ |of/with pain, toil δοκούντων

παρέχεσθαι. γινώσκων δ' οὕτω καὶ ποιῶν |accomplish;  
|keep doing

καὶ |discretion, δ' αὐτοῦ |display, μᾶλλον ἐποίει καὶ  
moderation |exhibit

ταύτην πάντας |work on ὅταν γὰρ ὁρῶσιν, ᾧ μάλιστα

ἔξεστιν |insult , τοῦτον |be sane, moderate ὕτω μᾶλλον οἷ

γε |weak ἐθέλουσιν οὐδὲν |wanton ποιούντες

|visible, ... αι. |divide, ... |awe, ... |discretion, τῇδε, ὡς  
conspicuous |distinguish, shame, |moderation

τοὺς μὲν |respect, be ashamed |genitals φανερώ |shameful

he would bring more modesty, he hoped, into the hearts of all men if it were plain that he himself revered all the world and would never say a shameful word to any man or woman or do a shameful deed. He looked for this because he saw that, apart from kings and governors who may be supposed to inspire fear, men will reverence the modest and not the shameless, and modesty in women will inspire modesty in the men who behold them. And his people, he thought, would learn to obey if it were plain that he honoured frank and prompt obedience even above virtues that made a grander show and were harder to attain. Such was his belief, and his practice went with it to the end. His own temperance and the knowledge of it made others more temperate. When they saw moderation and self-control in the man who above all others had licence to be insolent, lesser men were the more ready to abjure all insolence of their own. But there was this difference, Cyrus held, between modesty and self-control: the modest

*vocabulary***αἰδώς** awe, shame, respect; genitals**ἀμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;

appoint; (mid) declare

**ἀσκέω** work on**ἄσκησις** -εως (f) exercise, training**ἀφανής** unseen, occult, obscure**γέλως** laughter**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**ἔλκω** drag, pull, hoist; rape**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὁ) display, exhibit**εὐταξία** good order ~syntax**εὐφροσύνη** happiness ~frenzy**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel**ἡδονή** pleasure**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**κάλλος** -εος (n, 3) beauty

~kaleidoscope

**κραυγή** screaming, shouting**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold**παραυτίκα** immediately**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**προπονέω** prepare; suffer before**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy**τοιγάρ** therefore**ὕβριστικός** wanton**ὕπείκω** yield, withdraw ~victor**χειρόν** worse, more base, inferior,  
weaker**χωρίον** area; downwards

φεύγοντας, τοὺς δὲ σώφρονας καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ ἀφανεί.  
καὶ ἐγκράτειαν δὲ οὕτω μάλιστ' ἂν ᾤετο ἀσκεῖσθαι, εἰ  
αὐτὸς ἐπιδεικνύοι ἑαυτὸν μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν παραυτίκα ἡδονῶν  
ἐλκόμενον ἀπὸ τῶν ἀγαθῶν, ἀλλὰ προπονεῖν ἐθέλοντα  
πρῶτον σὺν τῷ καλῷ τῶν εὐφροσυνῶν. τοιγαροῦν  
τοιούτος ὢν ἐποίησεν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις πολλὴν μὲν τῶν  
χειρόνων εὐταξίαν, ὑπεικόντων τοῖς ἀμείνοσι, πολλὴν δ'  
αἰδῶ καὶ εὐκοσμίαν πρὸς ἀλλήλους. ἐπέγνως δ' ἂν ἐκεῖ  
οὐδένα οὔτε ὀργιζόμενον κραυγῇ οὔτε χαίροντα ὑβριστικῶ  
γέλωτι, ἀλλὰ ἰδὼν ἂν αὐτοὺς ἡγήσω τῷ ὄντι εἰς κάλλος  
ζῆν.

Τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ ποιοῦντες καὶ ὁρῶντες ἐπὶ θύραις διῆγον.  
τῆς πολεμικῆς δ' ἔνεκα ἀσκήσεως ἐπὶ θήραν ἐξῆγεν  
οὔσπερ ἀσκεῖν ταῦτα ᾤετο χρῆναι, ταύτην ἡγούμενος καὶ  
ὅλως ἀρίστην ἄσκησιν πολεμικῶν εἶναι, καὶ ἵππικῆς δὲ  
ἀληθεστάτην. καὶ γὰρ ἐπόχους ἐν παντοδαποῖς χωρίοις  
αὕτη μάλιστα ἀποδείκνυσι διὰ τὸ θηρίοις φεύγουσιν  
ἐφέπεσθαι, καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων ἐνεργοὺς αὕτη μάλιστα



φεύγοντας, τοὺς δὲ |sensible, καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ |unseen, oc-  
|prudent |cult, obscure

καὶ ἐγκράτειαν δὲ οὕτω μάλιστ' ἂν ᾤετο |work on , εἰ

αὐτὸς |display, εἰαυτὸν μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν |immediately |pleasure  
|exhibit

|drag, pull, ἀπὸ τῶν ἀγαθῶν, ἀλλὰ |prepare; suf- θέλοντα  
|hoist; rape |fer before

πρῶτον σὺν τῷ καλῷ τῶν |happiness τοιγαροῦν

τοιούτος ὧν ἐποίησεν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις πολλὴν μὲν τῶν

|worse, |good order |yield, τοῖς |better , πολλὴν δ'  
|more base |withdraw

|awe, shame, re- σμίαν πρὸς ἀλλήλους. ἐπέγνωσ δ' ἂν ἐκεί  
|spect; genitals

οὐδένα οὔτε |anger, pro-|screaming, ὅτε χαίροντα |wanton  
|voke, annoy |shouting

|laughter, ἀλλὰ ἰδὼν ἂν αὐτοὺς ἡγήσω τῷ ὄντι εἰς |beauty

ζῆν.

Τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ ποιοῦντες καὶ ὁρῶντες ἐπὶ θύραις |lead through; pass a  
|time

τῆς |warlike, δ' ἔνεκα |exercise, ἐπὶ |hunt |lead out  
|hostile |training

οὐσπερ |work on αὐτα ᾤετο χρῆναι, ταύτην ἡγούμενος καὶ

ὅλως ἀρίστην |exercise, |warlike, εἶναι, καὶ |of horses δὲ  
|training |hostile

ἀληθεστάτην. καὶ γὰρ ἐπόχους ἐν παντοδαποῖς χωρίοις

αὕτη μάλιστα |show, point out; ἀπ- τὸ θηρίοις φεύγουσιν  
|point; (mid) declare

|drive, meet, follow τὸ τῶν ἵππων ἐνεργούς αὕτη μάλιστα

man will do nothing shameful in the light of day, but the man of self-control nothing base, not even in secret. Self-restrain, he believed, would best be cultivated if he made men see in himself one who could not be dragged from the pursuit of virtue by the pleasure of the moment, one who chose to toil first for the happy-hearted joys that go hand-in-hand with beauty and nobleness. Thus, being the man he was, he established at his gates a stately company, where the lower gave place to the higher, and they in their turn showed reverence to each other, and courtesy, and perfect harmony. Among them all there was never a cry of anger to be heard, nor a burst of insolent laughter; to look at them was to know that they lived for honour and loveliness.

Such was the life at the palace-gates, and to practise his nobles in martial exercises he would lead them out to the hunt whenever he thought it well, holding the chase to be the best training for war and the surest way to excellence in horsemanship. A man learns to keep his seat, no matter what the ground may be, as he follows the flying quarry, learns to hurl and strike on horseback in his eagerness to bring down the

*vocabulary*

**ἀσκέω** work on  
**ἀσκός** wine skin, leather bag  
**δεῖπνον** meal, food  
**δεῖπνος** meal, food  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
 ~apostle  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
 state ~ballistic  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue  
**ἐπιθυμία** (ῥ) desire, thing desired  
**θήρα** hunt ~fierce  
**θηράω** hunt, chase  
**ἰδρώω** sweat ~exude  
**λιμός** (ι, φ) famine  
**μελέτη** care; practice  
**οἴκοι** at home ~economics

**παράδειγμα** -τος (n, 3) model,  
 precedent  
**παράδεισος** park  
**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**πότε** when?  
**προερέω** say beforehand  
**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect  
 ~legion  
**προσῆκω** belong to, it befits  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σκηπτοῦχος** scepter-bearer ~scepter  
**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance  
 ~technology  
**τοιγάρ** therefore  
**φιλοτιμία** (τι) ambition  
**ψυχος** -εος (n, 3) coolness  
 ~psychology

ἀπεργάζεται διὰ τὴν τοῦ λαμβάνειν φιλοτιμίαν καὶ ἐπιθυμίαν· καὶ τὴν ἐγκράτειαν δὲ καὶ πόνους καὶ ψύχη καὶ θάληπην καὶ λιμὸν καὶ δίψην δύνασθαι φέρειν ἐνταῦθα μάλιστα προσείθιζε τοὺς κοινῶνας. καὶ νῦν δ' ἔτι βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ περὶ βασιλέα ταῦτα ποιοῦντες διατελοῦσιν. ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐκ ᾔετο προσήκειν οὐδενὶ ἀρχῆς ὅστις μὴ βελτίων εἴη τῶν ἀρχομένων καὶ τοῖς προειρημένοις πᾶσι δῆλον, καὶ ὅτι οὕτως ἀσκῶν τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν πολὺ μάλιστα αὐτὸς ἐξεπόνει καὶ τὴν ἐγκράτειαν καὶ τὰς πολεμικὰς τέχνας καὶ τὰς μελέτας. καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ θήραν τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ἐξῆγεν, ὁπότε μὴ μένειν ἀνάγκη τις εἴη· αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ ὁπότε ἀνάγκη εἴη, οἴκοι ἐθήρα τὰ ἐν τοῖς παραδείσοις θηρία τρεφόμενα· καὶ οὐτ' αὐτὸς ποτε πρὶν ἰδρῶσαι δειπνον ἤρειτο οὔτε ἵπποις ἀγυμνάστοις σίτον ἐνέβαλλε· συμπαρακάλει δὲ καὶ εἰς ταύτην τὴν θήραν τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν σκηπτούχους. τοιγαροῦν πολὺ μὲν αὐτὸς διέφερεν ἐν πᾶσι τοῖς καλοῖς ἔργοις, πολὺ δὲ οἱ περὶ ἐκείνον, διὰ τὴν αἰὲ μελέτην. παράδειγμα μὲν δὴ

ἀπεργάζεται διὰ τὴν τοῦ λαμβάνειν |ambition καὶ  
 |desire, thing καὶ τὴν ἐγκράτειαν δὲ καὶ |toil, suffering |coolness  
 |desired  
 καὶ θάληπῃ καὶ |famine καὶ δύψος δύνασθαι φέρειν |there, here  
 μάλιστα προσεΐθιζε τοὺς κοινῶνας. καὶ νῦν δ' ἔτι βασιλεὺς  
 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ περὶ βασιλέα ταῦτα ποιοῦντες |accomplish;  
 |keep doing  
 ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐκ ᾔετο |belong to, it οὐδενὶ ἀρχῆς ὅστις  
 |beseems  
 μὴ βελτίων εἶη τῶν ἀρχομένων καὶ τοῖς προειρημένοις  
 πᾶσι |visible, ... ὅτι οὕτως ἀσκῶν τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν πολὺ  
 |conspicuous  
 μάλιστα αὐτὸς ἐξεπόνει καὶ τὴν ἐγκράτειαν καὶ τὰς  
 |warlike, |craft καὶ τὰς |care; καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ |hunt  
 |hostile |practice  
 τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους |lead out |when μὴ μένειν |necessity τις εἶη·  
 αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ |when |necessity εἶη, |at |hunt, τὰ ἐν τοῖς  
 |home |chase  
 |park θηρία |nurture καὶ οὗτ' αὐτός ποτε πρὶν  
 |sweat δειπνον ἡρείτο οὔτε ἵπποις ἀγυμνάστοις |grain,  
 |throw in; inspire παρεκάλει δὲ καὶ εἰς ταύτην τὴν |bread,  
 |food  
 τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν |scepter-bearer τοιγαροῦν πολὺ μὲν αὐτὸς  
 |carry on; πᾶσι τοῖς καλοῖς ἔργοις, πολὺ δὲ οἱ περὶ  
 |differ; excel  
 ἐκείνον, διὰ τὴν αἰὲ |care; |model, μὲν δὲ  
 |practice |precedent

game and win applause. And here, above all, was the field in which to inure his colleagues to toil and hardship and cold and heat and hunger and thirst. Thus to this day the Persian monarch and his court spend their leisure in the chase. From all that has been said, it is clear Cyrus was convinced that no one has a right to rule who is not superior to his subjects, and he held that by imposing such exercises as these on those about him, he would lead them to self-control and bring to perfection the art and discipline of war. Accordingly he would put himself at the head of the hunting-parties and take them out himself unless he was bound to stay at home, and, if he was, he would hunt in his parks among the wild creatures he had reared. He would never touch the evening meal himself until he had sweated for it, nor give his horses their corn until they had been exercised, and he would invite his own mace-bearers to join him in the chase. Therefore he excelled in all knightly accomplishments, he and those about him, because of their constant practice. Such was

*vocabulary***γεραίρω** honor**γοῦν** at least then**ἔδρα** ( $\bar{\alpha}$ ) seat, seated group

~polyhedron

**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐνδεής** inadequate**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἐπιδείκνυμι** ( $\bar{\upsilon}$ ) display, exhibit**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**προσίημι** be allowed near**πτύω** ( $\bar{\upsilon}$ ) spit out**στολή** equipment**ὑπόδημα** -τος (n, 3) sandals**ὑποτίθημι** suggest, advise ~hypothesis**ὑποχρίω** ( $\bar{\iota}$ ) anoint**φιλοτιμία** ( $\bar{\iota}$ ) ambition**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry

~bear

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

τοιούτον ἑαυτὸν παρείχετο. πρὸς δὲ τούτῳ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων οὐσινας μάλιστα ὀρώη τὰ καλὰ διώκοντας, τούτους καὶ δώροις καὶ ἀρχαῖς καὶ ἔδραις καὶ πάσαις τιμαῖς ἐγέραιρην· ὥστε πολλὴν πᾶσι φιλοτιμίαν ἐνέβαλλεν ὅπως ἕκαστος ὅτι ἄριστος φανήσοιτο Κύρῳ.

Καταμαθεῖν δὲ τοῦ Κύρου δοκοῦμεν ὡς οὐ τούτῳ μόνῳ ἐνόμιζε χρῆναι τοὺς ἄρχοντας τῶν ἀρχομένων διαφέρειν, τῷ βελτίονας αὐτῶν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ καταγοητεύειν ὥετο χρῆναι αὐτούς. στολήν τε γοῦν εἴλετο τὴν Μηδικὴν αὐτός τε φορεῖν καὶ τοὺς κοινῶνας ταύτην ἔπεισεν ἐνδύεσθαι.— αὕτη γὰρ αὐτῷ συγκρύπτειν ἐδόκει εἴ τίς τι ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐνδεὲς ἔχοι, καὶ καλλίστους καὶ μεγίστους ἐπιδεικνύναι τοὺς φοροῦντας· καὶ γὰρ τὰ ὑποδήματα τοιαῦτα ἔχουσιν ἐν οἷς μάλιστα λαθεῖν ἔστι καὶ ὑποτιθεμένους τι, ὥστε δοκεῖν μείζους εἶναι ἢ εἰσί.— καὶ ὑποχρίεσθαι δὲ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς προσίετο, ὡς εὐοφθαλμότεροι φαίνονται ἢ εἰσί, καὶ ἐντρίβεσθαι, ὡς εὐχρώτεροι ὀρώητο ἢ πεφύκασιν. ἐμελέτησε δὲ καὶ ὡς μὴ πτύοντες μὴδὲ



τοιούτων |spit out |furnish and not; not, even τούτω καὶ τῶν ἄλλων  
οὐστίνας μάλιστα ὁράῃ τὰ καλὰ |chase , τούτους καὶ  
|gift καὶ ἀρχαῖς καὶ |seat καὶ πάσαις |honor, |honor  
|value  
ὥστε πολλὴν πᾶσι |ambition |throw in; inspire : ἕκαστος  
ὅτι ἄριστος φανήσοιτο Κύρῳ.

δὲ τοῦ Κύρου δοκοῦμεν ὡς οὐ τούτῳ μόνῳ

|examine, |observe, αὐτῶν τοὺς ἄρχοντας τῶν ἀρχομένων ,  
|consider, |cous- τῶν αὐτῶν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ κατὰ |carry, |on;  
|tomary; believe |differ; excel  
ᾧετο χρήναι αὐτούς. τε εἴλετο τὴν  
Μηδικὴν αὐτός τε |equipment |at least then αὐτήν  
ἔπεισεν — |frequentative of ᾧ συγκρύπτειν ἐδόκει  
|φέρω, to carry  
εἰ τίς |go into, put on ἔχοι, καὶ καλλίστους  
καὶ μεγίστους |body, |inadequate καὶ γὰρ  
|person,  
τὰ |display, |thing ἔλαυνεν ἐν |frequentative of  
|exhibit |φέρω, to carry  
ἔστ' |sandals τι, ὥστε δοκεῖν μείζους |escape, notice;  
|(mp+gen) forget  
εἰσί' — κ' |suggest δὲ τοὺς , ὡς  
εὐοφθαλμοὶ |anoint φαίνονται ἢ εἰ |eye καὶ ἔν, |be allowed near  
εὐχρώτεροι ὁρῶντο ἢ πεφύκασιν. δὲ καὶ ὡς  
μὴ |pursue, attend  
|to, exercise

the example he set before his friends. But he also kept his eye on others, and would single out those who worshipped noble deeds, and reward them with gifts, and high commands, and seats at festivals, and every kind of honour. And thus their hearts were filled with ambition, and every man longed to outdo his fellows in the eyes of Cyrus.

But we seem to learn also that Cyrus thought it necessary for the ruler not only to surpass his subjects by his own native worth, but also to charm them through deception and artifice. At any rate he adopted the Median dress, and persuaded his comrades to do likewise; he thought it concealed any bodily defect, enhancing the beauty and stature of the wearer. The shoe, for instance, was so devised that a sole could be added without notice, and the man would seem taller than he really was. So also Cyrus encouraged the use of ointments to make the eyes more brilliant and pigments to make the skin look fairer. And he trained his courtiers never to spit or

*vocabulary*

**ἀναμένω** wait for ~remain  
**ἀνδράποδον** -ς slave ~androgynous  
**ἀπομύσσω** blow one's nose  
**ἄσιτος** (ι) not eating ~parasite  
**βουλιμιάω** (ιι) be ravenous  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
 ~apostle  
**δουλεύω** serve, be a slave  
**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow  
 ~trophy  
**θήρα** hunt ~fierce  
**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess

**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise  
**μελέτη** care; practice  
**μεταστρέφω** turn around, change  
 one's mind ~atrophy  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**πότε** when?  
**προίστημι** put forward; (+gen) be  
 head of, guard ~station  
**σεμνός** revered, holy  
**σῖτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

ἀπομυττόμενοι φανεροὶ εἶεν, μηδὲ μεταστρεφόμενοι ἐπὶ θέαν μηδενός, ὥς οὐδὲν θαυμάζοντες. πάντα δὲ ταῦτα ᾧετο φέρειν τι εἰς τὸ δυσκαταφρονητοτέρους φαίνεσθαι τοῖς ἀρχομένοις.

Οὓς μὲν δὴ ἄρχειν ᾧετο χρῆναι, δι' ἑαυτοῦ οὕτω κατεσκεύασε καὶ μελέτη καὶ τῷ σεμνῶς προεστάναι αὐτῶν· οὓς δ' αὖ κατεσκεύαζεν εἰς τὸ δουλεύειν, τούτους οὔτε μελετᾶν τῶν ἐλευθερίων πόνων οὐδένα παρώρμα οὔθ' ὅπλα κεκτηῆσθαι ἐπέτρεπεν· ἐπεμελείτο δὲ ὅπως μήτε ἄσιτοι μήτε ἄποτοί ποτε ἔσονται ἐλευθερίων ἔνεκα μελετημάτων. καὶ γὰρ ὁπότε ἐλαύνοιεν τὰ θηρία τοῖς ἵππεῦσιν εἰς τὰ πεδία, φέρεσθαι σῖτον εἰς θήραν τούτοις ἐπέτρεπε, τῶν δὲ ἐλευθέρων οὐδενί· καὶ ὁπότε πορεία εἴη, ἦγεν αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὰ ὕδατα ὥσπερ τὰ ὑποζύγια. καὶ ὁπότε δὲ ὥρα εἴη ἀρίστου, ἀνέμενεν αὐτοὺς ἔστ' ἐμφάγοιέν τι, ὥς μὴ βουλιμιῶεν· ὥστε καὶ οὗτοι αὐτὸν ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι πατέρα ἐκάλουν, ὅτι ἐπεμέλετο αὐτῶν ὅπως ἀναμφιλόγως ἀεὶ ἀνδράποδα διατελοῖεν.

|blow one's nose |visible, |turn around, change ἐπὶ  
|conspicuous |one's mind

θέαν μηδενός, ὥς οὐδὲν |marvel . πάντα δὲ ταῦτα

ᾗετο φέρειν τι εἰς τὸ δυσκαταφρονητοτέρους φαίνεσθαι

τοῖς ἀρχομένοις.

Οὓς μὲν δὴ ἄρχειν ᾗετο χρῆναι, δι' ἑαυτοῦ οὕτω

|equip, build καὶ |care; καὶ τῷ |revered, holy |εἰσταναι  
|practice

αὐτῶν· οὓς δ' αὖ |equip, build εἰς τὸ |serve, be a slave' . οὓς

οὔτε |pursue, attend ἐλευθερίων |toil, suffering' ἔλα παρώρμα  
|to, exercise

οὔθ' |tool κεκτήσθαι |entrust, decide, |take care of, δὲ ὅπως  
|allow |oversee

μήτε |not eating ἔτε ἄποτοί ποτε ἔσονται ἐλευθερίων ἔνεκα

μελετημάτων. καὶ γὰρ |when ἐλαύνουσιν τὰ θηρία

τοῖς ἱππεύουσιν εἰς τὰ |plain, sea, ἔρεσθαι |grain, εἰς |hunt  
|bread,

τούτοις |entrust, de- τῶν δὲ |not enslaved |υποδένει· καὶ |when  
|cide, allow |food

|gait, εἴη, ἦγεν αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὰ ὕδατα ὥσπερ τὰ  
|march

|beast of burden' |when δὲ ὥρα εἴη ἀρίστου, |wait for αὐτοὺς

ἔστ' ἐμφάγοιεν τι, ὥς μὴ |be ravenous ὥστε καὶ οὔτοι

αὐτὸν ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι πατέρα ἐκάλουν, ὅτι |take care of,  
|oversee

αὐτῶν ὅπως ἀναμφιλόγως αἰεὶ |slave |accomplish;  
|keep doing

blow the nose in public or turn aside to stare at anything; they were to keep the stately air of persons whom nothing can surprise. These were all means to one end; to make it impossible for the subjects to despise their rulers.

Thus he moulded the men he considered worthy of command by his own example, by the training he gave them, and by the dignity of his own leadership. But the treatment of those he prepared for slavery was widely different. Not one of them would he incite to any noble toil, he would not even let them carry arms, and he was careful that they should never lack food or drink in any manly sort. When the beaters drove the wild creatures into the plain he would allow food to be brought for the servants, but not for the free men; on a march he would lead the slaves to the water-springs as he led the beasts of burden. Or when it was the hour of breakfast he would wait himself till they had taken a snatch of food and stayed their wolfish hunger; and the end of it was they called him their father even as the nobles did, because he cared for

*vocabulary*

**ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad  
**ἄθρόος** grouped  
**ἄκινδυνος** (ῥ) safe  
**ἄναλκς** not warlike ~Alexander  
**ἀποδοκιμάζω** reject  
**ἀπόλεμος** unwarlike ~polemic  
**ἀσφάλεια** safeguard  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
 ~catastrophe

**κράτιστος** best  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**πέζα** end of a chariot pole  
**περιαιρέω** strip off  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex  
**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope  
**φρόνημα** -τος (n, 3) mind, spirit  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery

Τῇ μὲν δὴ ὅλῃ Περσῶν ἀρχῇ οὕτω τὴν ἀσφάλειαν  
 κατεσκεύαζεν. αὐτῷ δὲ ὅτι μὲν οὐχ ὑπὸ τῶν  
 καταστραφέντων κίνδυνος εἴη παθεῖν τι ἰσχυρῶς ἐθάρρει·  
 καὶ γὰρ ἀνάλκιδας ἠγείτο εἶναι αὐτοὺς καὶ ἀσυντάκτους  
 ὄντας ἑώρα, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις οὐδ' ἐπλησίαζε τούτων  
 οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ οὔτε νυκτὸς οὔτε ἡμέρας. οὓς δὲ κρατίστους  
 τε ἠγείτο καὶ ὠπλισμένους καὶ ἀθρόους ὄντας ἑώρα—  
 καὶ τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἦδει ἱππέων ἠγεμόνας ὄντας, τοὺς  
 δὲ πεζῶν· πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ φρονήματα ἔχοντας  
 ἠσθάνετο ὡς ἱκανοὺς ὄντας ἄρχειν· καὶ τοῖς φύλαξι δὲ  
 αὐτοῦ οὗτοι μάλιστα ἐπλησίαζον, καὶ αὐτῷ δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ  
 τούτων πολλοὶ πολλάκις συνεμίγνυσαν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν,  
 ὅ τι καὶ χρῆσθαι ἔμελλεν αὐτοῖς— ὑπὸ τούτων οὖν  
 καὶ κίνδυνος ἦν αὐτὸν μάλιστα παθεῖν τι κατὰ πολλοὺς  
 τρόπους. σκοπῶν οὖν ὅπως ἂν αὐτῷ καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τούτων  
 ἀκίνδυνα γένοιτο, τὸ μὲν περιελέσθαι αὐτῶν τὰ ὅπλα καὶ  
 ἀπολέμους ποιῆσαι ἀπεδοκίμασε, καὶ ἄδικον ἠγούμενος  
 καὶ κατάλυσιν τῆς ἀρχῆς ταύτην νομίζων· τὸ δ' αὖ



Τῇ μὲν δὴ ὅλη Περσῶν ἀρχῇ οὕτω τὴν |safeguard  
 |equip, build . αὐτῷ δὲ ὅτι μὲν οὐχ ὑπὸ τῶν  
 |overturn, subdue |danger εἴη παθεῖν τι |strong, force-ful, violent-ῥρει·  
 καὶ γὰρ |not warlike ἡγεῖτο εἶναι αὐτοὺς καὶ ἀσυντάκτους  
 ὄντας ἐώρα, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις οὐδ' |bring/be near; |ύτων  
 |have sex  
 οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ οὔτε νυκτὸς οὔτε ἡμέρας. οὗς δὲ |best  
 τε ἡγεῖτο καὶ |prepare, arm καὶ |grouped ὄντας ἐώρα—  
 καὶ τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἦδει |rider |leader ὄντας, τοὺς  
 δὲ πεζῶν· πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ |mind, spirit ἔχοντας  
 |perceive ὥς |sufficient; fit, as ἄρχειν· καὶ τοῖς |guard; δὲ  
 |empowered |sentry  
 αὐτοῦ οὔτοι μάλιστα |bring/be near; καὶ αὐτῷ δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ  
 |have sex  
 τούτων πολλοὶ |often συνεμίγνυσαν· |necessity γὰρ ἦν,  
 ὅ τι καὶ χρῆσθαι ἔμελλεν αὐτοῖς— ὑπὸ τούτων οὖν  
 καὶ |danger ἦν αὐτὸν μάλιστα παθεῖν τι κατὰ πολλοὺς  
 |turn; manner, |πῶν οὖν ὅπως ἂν αὐτῷ καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τούτων  
 |kind, fashion  
 |safe γένοιτο, τὸ μὲν |strip off αὐτῶν τὰ |tool καὶ  
 |unwarlike ποιῆσαι |reject , καὶ |unfair; ob- |ύμενος  
 |stinate, bad  
 καὶ κατάλυσιν τῆς ἀρχῆς ταύτην |consider |cus- |αῖ  
 |tomary; believe

them, but the object of his care was to keep them slaves for ever.

Thus he secured the safety of the Persian empire. He himself, he felt sure, ran no danger from the massed forces of the conquered people; he saw they had no courage, no unity, and no discipline, and, moreover, not one of them could ever come near him, day or night. But there were others whom he knew to be true warriors, who carried arms, and who held by one another, commanders of horse and foot, many of them men of spirit, confident, as he could plainly see, of their own power to rule, men who were in close touch with his own guards, and many of them in constant intercourse with himself; as indeed was essential if he was to make any use of them at all. It was from them that danger was to be feared; and that in a thousand ways. How was he to guard against it? He rejected the idea of disarming them; he thought this unjust, and that it would lead to the dissolution of the

*vocabulary***ἀδύνατος** unable; impossible**ἄημι** blow**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve ~stand**ἀσφάλεια** safeguard**διηγέομαι** detail, describe**ἐμφανίζω** show, explain, declare**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θηρεύω** hunt, fish ~fierce**κράτιστος** best**μισέω** (i) hate, wish to prevent

~misogyny

**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia**προπονέω** prepare; suffer before**προσίημι** be allowed near**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**συνήδομαι** rejoice, sympathize with**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**φιλανθρωπία** benevolence**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy**φίλιος** friendly

μὴ προσίεσθαι αὐτοὺς καὶ τὸ ἀπιστοῦντα φανερόν εἶναι ἀρχὴν ἡγήσατο πολέμου· ἐν δὲ ἀντὶ πάντων τούτων ἔγνω καὶ κράτιστον εἶναι πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἀσφάλειαν καὶ κάλλιστον, εἰ δύναίτο ποιῆσαι τοὺς κρατίστους ἑαυτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους ἢ ἀλλήλοις. ὥς οὖν ἐπὶ τὸ φιλεῖσθαι δοκεῖ ἡμῖν ἔλθειν, τοῦτο πειρασόμεθα διηγῆσθαι.

## 8.2

Πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ διὰ παντὸς αἰὲ τοῦ χρόνου φιланθρωπίαν τῆς ψυχῆς ὥς ἐδύνατο μάλιστα ἐνεφάνιζεν, ἡγούμενος, ὥσπερ οὐ ῥᾷδιόν ἐστι φιλεῖν τοὺς μισεῖν δοκοῦντας οὐδ' εὖνοεῖν τοῖς κακόνοις, οὕτω καὶ τοὺς γνωσθέντας ὥς φιλοῦσι καὶ εὖνοοῦσιν, οὐκ ἂν δύνασθαι μισεῖσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν φιλεῖσθαι ἡγουμένων. ἕως μὲν οὖν χρήμασιν ἀδυνατώτερος ἦν εὐεργετεῖν, τῷ τε προνοεῖν τῶν συνόντων καὶ τῷ προπονεῖν καὶ τῷ συνηδόμενος μὲν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς φανερός εἶναι, συναχθόμενος δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς κακοῖς, τούτοις ἐπειρᾶτο τὴν φιλίαν θηρεύειν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγένετο αὐτῷ ὥστε χρήμασιν εὐεργετεῖν, δοκεῖ

μὴ |be allowed near ᾽ γοὺς καὶ τὸ |disbelieve |visible, |conspicuous  
 ἀρχὴν ἡγήσατο πολέμου· ἐν δὲ ἀντὶ πάντων τούτων  
 ἔγνω καὶ |best εἶναι πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ |safeguard  
 καὶ κάλλιστον, εἰ δύναίτο ποιῆσαι τοὺς |best ἑαυτῷ  
 μᾶλλον φίλους ἢ ἀλλήλοις. ὥς οὖν ἐπὶ τὸ |love δοκεῖ  
 ἡμῖν ἐλθεῖν, τοῦτο πειρασόμεθα |detail, describe.

## 8.2

Πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ διὰ παντὸς αἰὲ τοῦ χρόνου |benevolence

τῆς |soul; life ὥς ἐδύνατο |very |show, explain, ἡγούμενος,  
 |declare  
 ὥσπερ οὐ ράδιόν ἐστι |love τοὺς |hate δοκοῦντας  
 οὐδ' εὐνοεῖν τοῖς κακόνοις, οὕτω καὶ τοὺς γνωσθέντας  
 ὥς |love καὶ εὐνοοῦσιν, οὐκ ἂν δύνασθαι |hate  
 ὑπὸ τῶν |love ἡγουμένων. ἕως μὲν οὖν |possession,  
 |money, |business  
 |unable; ἦν |be a benefactor ᾧ τε |foresee, |think of  
 |impossible τῶν  
 |be with; have sex ᾧ |prepare; suf- καὶ τῷ |rejoice, sympa- μὲν  
 |fer before |thize with  
 ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς |visible, |conspicuous αἰ, συναχθόμενος δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς  
 κακοῖς, τούτοις |try, test τὴν φιλίαν |hunt, fish ἐπειδὴ δὲ  
 ἐγένετο αὐτῷ ὥστε |possession, |be a benefactor |ceῖ  
 |money,  
 |business

empire. To refuse them admission into his presence, to show them his distrust, would be, he considered, a declaration of war. But there was one method, he felt, worth all the rest, an honourable method and one that would secure his safety absolutely; to win their friendship if he could, and make them more devoted to himself than to each other. I will now endeavour to set forth the methods, so far as I conceive them, by which he gained their love.

## 8.2

In the first place he never lost an opportunity of showing kindness wherever he could, convinced that just as it is not easy to love those who hate us, so it is scarcely possible to feel enmity for those who love us and wish us well. So long as he had lacked the power to confer benefits by wealth, all he could do then was to show his personal care for his comrades and his soldiers, to labour in their behalf, manifest his joy in their good fortune and his sympathy in their sorrows, and try to win them in that way. But when the time came for

*vocabulary***ἀγάζω** exalt, adore**δαπάνη** cost, funds, extravagance**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out**διαπέμπω** send out/over**ἐμποιέω** make inside of ~poet**ἐνδείκνυμι** (ὅ) address, consider**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**εὖνοια** good will, gift**θεραπείη** -ας service, tending**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**μνήμη** reminder, memorial**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, f) household; house  
slave**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**πάμπολυς** very great**παρατίθημι** put near, put at risk  
~thesis**ποτή** flight? ~petal**ποτός** potable**πράξις** -εως (f) result, business

~practice

**σιτέομαι** (ἰ) eat ~parasite**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**τιμάω** (ἰ) honor, exalt**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid**φιλοφροσύνη** consideration,  
friendliness ~frenzy**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
~phylactery**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

ἡμῶν γινώσκειν πρῶτον μὲν ὡς εὐεργέτημα ἀνθρώποις  
πρὸς ἀλλήλους οὐδέν ἐστιν ἀπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς δαπάνης  
ἐπιχαριτώτερον ἢ σίτων καὶ ποτῶν μετάδοσις. τοῦτο  
δ' οὕτω νομίσας πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ τράπεζαν  
συνέταξεν ὅπως οἷς αὐτὸς σιτοῖτο σίτοις, τούτοις ὅμοια  
ἀεὶ παρατίθεται αὐτῷ ἱκανὰ παμπόλλοις ἀνθρώποις· ὅσα  
δὲ παρατεθείη, ταῦτα πάντα, πλὴν οἷς αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ  
σύνδειπνοι χρήσαιντο, διεδίδου οἷς δὴ βούλοιτο τῶν φίλων  
μνήμην ἐνδείκνυσθαι ἢ φιλοφροσύνην. διέπεμπε δὲ καὶ  
τούτοις οὓς ἀγασθείη ἢ ἐν φυλακαῖς ἢ ἐν θεραπείαις ἢ  
ἐν αἰστισιν οὖν πράξειςιν, ἐνσημαινόμενος τοῦτο, ὅτι οὐκ  
ἂν λανθάνοιεν χαρίζεσθαι βουλόμενοι. ἐτίμα δὲ καὶ τῶν  
οἰκετῶν ἀπὸ τῆς τραπέζης ὁπότε τινὰ ἐπαινέσειε· καὶ  
τὸν πάντα δὲ σίτον τῶν οἰκετῶν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ τράπεζαν  
ἐπετίθετο, οἰόμενος ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς κυσὶν ἐμποιεῖν τινα καὶ  
τοῦτο εὖ νοῖαν. εἰ δὲ καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι τινα βούλοιτο τῶν  
φίλων ὑπὸ πολλῶν, καὶ τούτοις ἔπεμπε ἀπὸ τραπέζης·  
καὶ νῦν γὰρ ἔτι οἷς ἂν ὀρώσι



ἡμῖν γνῶναι πρῶτον μὲν ὡς εὐεργέτημα ἀνθρώποις  
 πρὸς ἀλλήλους οὐδέν ἐστιν ἀπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς |cost, funds,  
 |extravagance  
 ἐπιχαριώτερον ἢ |grain, καὶ ποτῶν μετάδοσις. τοῦτο  
 |bread,  
 |food  
 δ' οὕτω νομίσας πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ |a table  
 |gather, ὅπως οἷς αὐτὸς σιτοῖτο |grain, , τούτοις ὅμοια  
 |assemble |bread,  
 αἰεὶ |put near, put αὐτῷ ἱκανὰ παμπόλλοις ἀνθρώποις· ὅσα  
 |at risk |food  
 δὲ |put near, put, ταῦτα πάντα, πλὴν οἷς αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ  
 |at risk  
 σύνδειπνοι χρήσαιντο, |distribute, send ὅτι 'λοιτο τῶν φίλων  
 |reminder, |address, ἢ |consideration, |send out/over ἔκ καὶ  
 |memorial |consider |friendliness  
 τούτοις οὓς |exalt, ἢ ἐν |guard, ἢ ἐν |service, ἢ  
 |adore |prison, |tending  
 ἐν αἰστισιν οὖν |result, , ἐνσημαίνόμενος τοῦτο, ὅτι οὐκ  
 |business  
 ἂν λανθάνοιεν |gratify βουλόμενοι. |honor δὲ καὶ τῶν  
 |household; ᾧ πὸ τῆς |a table ὁπότε τινὰ |concur καὶ  
 |house slave  
 τὸν πάντα δὲ |grain, τῶν |household; ᾧ τὴν αὐτοῦ |a table  
 |bread, |house slave  
 |food  
 |put on, apply; (mid) ; ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς |dog |make inside of καὶ  
 |undertake, attack  
 τοῦτο |good will, gift ἔκ καὶ |help, serve τινα βούλοιο τῶν  
 φίλων ὑπὸ πολλῶν, καὶ τούτοις ἔπεμπεν ἀπὸ |a table  
 καὶ νῦν γὰρ ἔτι οἷς ἂν ὀρώσι

the gifts of wealth, he realised that of all the kindnesses between man and man none come with a more natural grace than the gifts of meat and drink. Accordingly he arranged that his table should be spread every day for many guests in exactly the same way as for himself; and all that was set before him, after he and his guests had dined, he would send out to his absent friends, in token of affection and remembrance. He would include those who had won his approval by their work on guard, or in attendance on himself, or in any other service, letting them see that no desire to please him could ever escape his eyes. He would show the same honour to any servant he wished to praise; and he had all the food for them placed at his own board, believing this would win their fidelity, as it would a dog's. Or, if he wished some friend of his to be courted by the people, he would single him out for such gifts; even to this day the world will

*vocabulary*

**ἀδύνατος** unable; impossible  
**ἀνδρεῖος** of a man, manly  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**ἄροτρον** plow ~arable  
**γυναικεῖος** of women ~queen  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**διαφερόντως** differently  
**ἐντιμος** (ι) honored  
**ἐξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo  
**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy

**ἡδονή** pleasure  
**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable  
**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy  
**κλίνη** (ι) bed, couch ~clinic  
**οἰκοδομέω** build, build a house  
**σῖτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**τεχνάομαι** make, invent ~oxytocin  
**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance  
 ~technology  
**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid  
**ὕπόδημα** -τος (n, 3) sandals

πεμπόμενα ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλέως τραπέζης, τούτους πάντες  
 μᾶλλον θεραπεύουσι, νομίζοντες αὐτοὺς ἐντίμους εἶναι  
 καὶ ἱκανοὺς διαπράττειν, ἣν τι δέωνται. ἔτι δὲ καὶ  
 οὐ τούτων μόνον ἔνεκα τῶν εἰρημένων εὐφραίνει τὰ  
 πεμπόμενα παρὰ βασιλέως, ἀλλὰ τῷ ὄντι καὶ ἡδονῇ  
 πολὺ διαφέρει τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλέως τραπέζης. καὶ  
 τοῦτο μέντοι οὕτως ἔχειν οὐδέν τι θαυμαστόν· ὥσπερ  
 γὰρ καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τέχναι διαφερόντως ἐν ταῖς μεγάλας  
 πόλεσιν ἐξεργασμέναι εἰσί, κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον καὶ  
 τὰ παρὰ βασιλεῖ σῖτα πολὺ διαφερόντως ἐκπεπώνηται.  
 ἐν μὲν γὰρ ταῖς μικραῖς πόλεσιν οἱ αὐτοὶ ποιοῦσι κλίνην,  
 θύραν, ἄροτρον, τράπεζαν, πολλάκις δ' ὁ αὐτὸς οὔτος καὶ  
 οἰκοδομεῖ, καὶ ἀγαπᾷ ἣν καὶ οὕτως ἱκανοὺς αὐτὸν τρέφειν  
 ἐργοδότας λαμβάνῃ· ἀδύνατον οὖν πολλὰ τεχνώμενον  
 ἄνθρωπον πάντα καλῶς ποιεῖν. ἐν δὲ ταῖς μεγάλας  
 πόλεσι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἐκάστου δεῖσθαι ἀρκεῖ καὶ μία  
 ἐκάστῳ τέχνη εἰς τὸ τρέφεσθαι· πολλάκις δὲ οὐδ' ὅλη μία·  
 ἀλλ' ὑποδήματα ποιεῖ ὁ μὲν ἀνδρεῖα, ὁ δὲ γυναικεῖα·

πεμπόμενα ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλέως |a table , τούτους πάντες  
 μάλλον |help, serve , νομίζοντες αὐτοὺς |honored εἶναι  
 καὶ ἱκανοὺς |travel over, ac-, ἦν τι δέωνται. ἔτι δὲ καὶ  
 |complich  
 οὐ τούτων μόνον ἔνεκα τῶν εἰρημένων |gladden τὰ  
 πεμπόμενα παρὰ βασιλέως, ἀλλὰ τῷ ὄντι καὶ |pleasure  
 πολὺ |carry on; ἀ ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλέως |a table . καὶ  
 |differ; excel  
 τοῦτο μέντοι οὕτως ἔχειν οὐδέν τι |wonderful; ὥσπερ  
 |admirable  
 γὰρ καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι |craft |differently ἐν ταῖς μεγάλοις  
 πόλεσιν |accomplish; undo ᾧ, κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον καὶ  
 τὰ παρὰ βασιλεῖ |grain, πολὺ |differently ἐκπεπόμεναι.  
 |bread,  
 ἐν μὲν γὰρ ταῖς μικραῖς πόλεσιν οἱ αὐτοὶ ποιοῦσι |bed, couch  
 |door , |plow , |a table , |often δ' ὁ αὐτὸς οὗτος καὶ  
 οἰκοδομεῖ, καὶ |welcome, be host ἵππως ἱκανοὺς αὐτὸν |nurture  
 ἐργοδότας λαμβάνη· |unable; οὐν πολλὰ |make, invent  
 |impossible  
 ἄνθρωπον πάντα καλῶς ποιεῖν. ἐν δὲ ταῖς μεγάλοις  
 πόλεσι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἐκάστου δεῖσθαι |satisfy; ward, off,  
 |defend; suffice  
 ἐκάστω |craft εἰς τὸ |nurture |often δὲ οὐδ' ὅλη μία·  
 ἀλλ' |sandals ποιεῖ ὁ μὲν |of a man, manly|of women

pay court to those who have dishes sent them from the Great King's table, thinking they must be in high favour at the palace and can get things done for others. But no doubt there was another reason for the pleasure in such gifts, and that was the sheer delicious taste of the royal meats. Nor should that surprise us; for if we remember to what a pitch of perfection the other crafts are brought in great communities, we ought to expect the royal dishes to be wonders of finished art. In a small city the same man must make beds and chairs and ploughs and tables, and often build houses as well; and indeed he will be only too glad if he can find enough employers in all trades to keep him. Now it is impossible that a single man working at a dozen crafts can do them all well; but in the great cities, owing to the wide demand for each particular thing, a single craft will suffice for a means of livelihood, and often enough even a single department of that; there are shoe-makers who will only make sandals for men

*vocabulary*

**ἀλλοῖος** of another kind ~alien  
**ἄλλοτε** at another time ~alien  
**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**ἄρτος** bread, loaf  
**βραχύς** low, short  
**δίαίτα** way of life; home; arbitration  
**διατρίβω** (τι) wear down, delay  
 ~tribology  
**διαφερόντως** differently  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**εἶδος** -ους (n, 3) appearance, form  
 ~oid  
**ἐξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**εὐδοκιμέω** be esteemed  
**ἔψω** boil, be boiling  
**θεραπείη** -ας service, tending  
**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy  
**ἰχθύς** -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology

**κλίνη** (ι) bed, couch ~clinic  
**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos  
**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine  
**μαίομαι** search, seek out, seize  
**μάσσω** handle, knead ~mass  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὀπτάω** roast, bake  
**ὄψον** piece of cooked meat, relish  
**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold  
**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold  
**πρόσοδος** (f) approach, procession; a rent  
**προχωρέω** proceed, come forward  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis  
**σχίζω** split ~schism  
**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid  
**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay  
 ~ballistic  
**ὕπόδημα** -τος (n, 3) sandals  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor

ἔστι δὲ ἔνθα καὶ ὑποδήματα ὁ μὲν νευρορραφῶν μόνον τρέφεται, ὁ δὲ σχίζων, ὁ δὲ χιτῶνας μόνον συντέμνων, ὁ δὲ γε τούτων οὐδὲν ποιῶν ἀλλὰ συντιθεὶς ταῦτα. ἀνάγκη οὖν τὸν ἐν βραχυτάτῳ διατρίβοντα ἔργῳ τοῦτον καὶ ἄριστα δὴ ἡναγκάσθαι τοῦτο ποιεῖν. τὸ αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο πέπονθε καὶ τὰ ἀμφὶ τὴν δίαιταν. ᾧ μὲν γὰρ ὁ αὐτὸς κλίνην στρώννυσι, τράπεζαν κοσμεῖ, μάττει, ὅψα ἄλλοτε ἄλλοῖα ποιεῖ, ἀνάγκη οἶμαι τούτῳ, ὥς ἂν ἕκαστον προχωρῇ, οὕτως ἔχειν· ὅπου δὲ ἱκανὸν ἔργον ἐνὶ ἔψειν κρέα, ἄλλω ὀπτᾶν, ἄλλω δὲ ἰχθὺν ἔψειν, ἄλλω ὀπτᾶν, ἄλλω ἄρτους ποιεῖν, καὶ μηδὲ τούτους παντοδαπούς, ἀλλ' ἀρκεῖ ἂν ἐν εἶδος εὐδοκιμοῦν παρέχῃ, ἀνάγκη οἶμαι καὶ ταῦτα οὕτω ποιούμενα πολὺ διαφερόντως ἐξειργάσθαι ἕκαστον.

Τῇ μὲν δὴ τῶν σίτων θεραπείᾳ τοιαῦτα ποιῶν πολὺ ὑπερεβάλλετο πάντας· ὥς δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι θεραπεύων πολὺ ἐκράτει, τοῦτο νῦν διηγῆσομαι· πολὺ γὰρ διενεγκὼν ἀνθρώπων τῷ πλείστας προσόδους λαμβάνειν πολὺ ἔτι πλέον διήνεγκε τῷ πλείστα ἀνθρώπων



ἔστι δὲ ἔνθα καὶ |sandals ὁ μὲν νευρορραφῶν μόνον  
 τρέφεται, ὁ δὲ |split , ὁ δὲ |tunic μόνον συντέμνων, ὁ δὲ  
 γε τούτων οὐδὲν ποιῶν ἀλλὰ |hearken, mark-α. ἀνάγκη οὖν  
 τὸν ἐν |low, short |wear down, delay , ὡ τοῦτον καὶ ἄριστα  
 δὴ |force, compel τοῦτο ποιεῖν. τὸ αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο πέπονθε  
 καὶ τὰ ἀμφὶ τὴν |way of life; home; , γὰρ ὁ αὐτὸς |bed, couch  
 |arbitration  
 στρώννυσι, |a table |marshal, μάττει, |piece |at an-|of another kind  
 |array of |other  
 ποιεῖ, ἀνάγκη οἶμαι τούτῳ, ὡς ἂν |cooked |meat, |proceed, come  
 |relish |forward  
 οὕτως ἔχειν· |where δὲ ἰκανὸν ἔργον ἐνὶ ἔψειν |meat , ἄλλω  
 |roast, bake-λω δὲ |fish ἔψειν, ἄλλω |roast, bake-λω ἄρτους  
 ποιεῖν, καὶ μηδὲ τούτους παντοδαπούς, ἀλλ' |satisfy; ward off, defend;  
 |suffice  
 |form |be esteemed παρέχει, ἀνάγκη οἶμαι καὶ ταῦτα οὕτω  
 ποιούμενα πολὺν |differently |accomplish; undo-στον.  
 Τῇ μὲν δὴ τῶν σίτων |service, τοιαῦτα ποιῶν πολὺν  
 |tending  
 |cause to go be- πάντας· ὡς δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι  
 |yond; delay  
 |help, serve πολὺν ἐκράτει, τοῦτο νῦν |detail, πολὺν γὰρ  
 |describe  
 διενεγκὼν ἀνθρώπων τῷ πλείστας |approach, pro- μβάνειν  
 |cession; a rent  
 πολὺν ἔτι πλέον διήνεγκε τῷ πλείστα ἀνθρώπων

and others only for women. Or one artisan will get his living merely by stitching shoes, another by cutting them out, a third by shaping the upper leathers, and a fourth will do nothing but fit the parts together. Necessarily the man who spends all his time and trouble on the smallest task will do that task the best. The arts of the household must follow the same law. If one and the same servant makes the bed, spreads the table, kneads the dough, and cooks the various dishes, the master must take things as they come, there is no help for it. But when there is work enough for one man to boil the pot, and another to roast the meat, and a third to stew the fish, and a fourth to fry it, while some one else must bake the bread, and not all of it either, for the loaves must be of different kinds, and it will be quite enough if the baker can serve up one kind to perfection—it is obvious, I think, that in this way a far higher standard of excellence will be attained in every branch of the work.

Thus it is easy to see how Cyrus could outdo all competitors in the grace of hospitality, and I will now explain how he came to triumph in all other services. Far as he excelled mankind in the scale of his revenues, he excelled them even more in the grandeur of his

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διαμένω** continue, persevere**δωρέω** give ~donate**ἐνιοι** some**ἐξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**κατάρχω** hold ready (sacrificial materials) ~oligarch**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)

~megaton

**οὖς οὖατος** (n) ear**Πέρσης** Persian**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat**στολή** equipment**στρεπτός** pliant; type of necklace

~strep throat

**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**χρυσοχάλινος** (ι) gold-bridled**φέλιον** armlet, anklet

δωρεῖσθαι. κατήρξε μὲν οὖν τούτου Κῦρος, διαμένει  
 δ' ἔτι καὶ νῦν τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν ἢ πολυδωρία. τίνι  
 μὲν γὰρ φίλοι πλουσιώτεροι ὄντες φανεροὶ ἢ Περσῶν  
 βασιλεῖ; τίς δὲ κοσμῶν κάλλιον φαίνεται στολαῖς τοὺς  
 περὶ αὐτὸν ἢ βασιλεύς; τίνος δὲ δῶρα γινώσκεται  
 ὥσπερ ἔνια τῶν βασιλέως, ψέλια καὶ στρεπτοὶ καὶ ἵπποι  
 χρυσοχάλινοι; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἔξεστιν ἐκεῖ ταῦτα ἔχειν ὧ ἂν μὴ  
 βασιλεὺς δῶ. τίς δ' ἄλλος λέγεται δώρων μεγέθει ποιεῖν  
 αἰρεῖσθαι αὐτὸν καὶ ἀντ' ἀδελφῶν καὶ ἀντὶ πατέρων καὶ  
 ἀντὶ παίδων; τίς δ' ἄλλος ἐδυνάσθη ἐχθροὺς ἀπέχοντας  
 πολλῶν μηνῶν ὁδὸν τιμωρεῖσθαι ὡς Περσῶν βασιλεύς;  
 τίς δ' ἄλλος καταστρεψάμενος ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχομένων  
 πατὴρ καλούμενος ἀπέθανεν ἢ Κῦρος; τοῦτο δὲ τοῦνομα  
 δῆλον ὅτι εὐεργετοῦντός ἐστι μᾶλλον ἢ ἀφαιρουμένου.  
 κατεμάθομεν δὲ ὡς καὶ τοὺς βασιλέως καλουμένους  
 ὀφθαλμοὺς καὶ τὰ βασιλέως ὦτα οὐκ ἄλλως ἐκθήσατο ἢ  
 τῷ δωρεῖσθαί τε καὶ τιμᾶν· τοὺς γὰρ ἀπαγγείλαντας ὅσα  
 καιρὸς αὐτῷ εἶη πεπύσθαι

δωρεῖσθαι. |hold ready, |ἐν οὖν τούτου Κῦρος, |continue, |persevere  
 δ' ἔτι καὶ νῦν τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν ἡ πολυδωρία. τῖνι  
 μὲν γὰρ φίλοι |wealth οὖντες |visible, |Περσῶν  
 |conspicuous  
 βασιλεῖ; τίς δὲ |marshal, |κάλλιον φαίνεται |equipment οὖς  
 |array  
 περὶ αὐτὸν ἢ βασιλεύς; τίνος δὲ |gift γιγνώσκεται  
 ὥσπερ |some τῶν βασιλέως, |armlet, |καὶ |pliant; type |αἱ ἵπποι  
 |anklet |of necklace  
 |gold-bridled , οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἔξεστιν |there αὐτὰ ἔχειν ᾧ ἂν μὴ  
 βασιλεὺς δῶ. τίς δ' ἄλλος λέγεται |gift |tall, big ποιεῖν  
 αἰρεῖσθαι αὐτὸν καὶ ἀντ' ἀδελφῶν καὶ ἀντὶ πατέρων καὶ  
 ἀντὶ παίδων; τίς δ' ἄλλος ἐδυνάσθη |hated, dis- |ward off, drive off, re-  
 |tasteful |frain, be at some distance  
 πολλῶν μνηῶν ὁδὸν |take vengeance, |Περσῶν βασιλεύς;  
 |punish, aid  
 τίς δ' ἄλλος |overturn, subdue ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχομένων  
 πατὴρ καλούμενος ἀπέθανεν ἢ Κῦρος; τοῦτο δὲ τοῦνομα  
 |visible, |be a benefactor ἐστὶ μᾶλλον ἢ |take away  
 |conspicuous  
 |examine, |δὲ ὥς καὶ τοὺς βασιλέως καλουμένους  
 |observe  
 |eye καὶ τὰ βασιλέως |ear οὐκ ἄλλως ἐκτήσατο ἢ  
 τῷ δωρεῖσθαί τε καὶ |honor τοὺς γὰρ |announce, order, ὅσα  
 |promise  
 καιρὸς αὐτῷ εἶη |learn, inquire,  
 |(+gen) hear of

gifts. It was Cyrus who set the fashion; and we are familiar to this day with the open-handedness of Oriental kings. There is no one, indeed, in all the world whose friends are seen to be as wealthy as the friends of the Persian monarch: no one adorns his followers in such splendour of rich attire, no gifts are so well known as his, the bracelets, and the necklaces, and the chargers with the golden bridles. For in that country no one can have such treasures unless the king has given them. And of whom but the Great King could it be said that through the splendour of his presents he could steal the hearts of men and turn them to himself, away from brothers, fathers, sons? Who but he could stretch out an arm and take vengeance on his enemies when yet they were months and months away? Who but Cyrus ever won an empire in war, and when he died was called father by the people he overcame? — a title that proclaims the benefactor and not the robber. Indeed, we are led to think that the offices called "the king's eyes" and "the king's ears" came into being through this system of gifts and honours. Cyrus' munificence toward all who told him what it was well for him to know

*vocabulary*

**ἄγγέλλω** carry a message, announce  
 ~angel

**αἰρετός** takeable, desirable ~heresy

**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course

**διάκειμαι** be in a condition

**διακέομαι** repair

**διοπτεύω** spy ~diopter

**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task

**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor

**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor

**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just  
 ~orthogonal

**ὀρθόω** stand up

**οὐκουν** certainly not

**οὖς οὔατος** (n) ear

**πανταχοῦ** everywhere; completely

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage

**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command

**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable

**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame

**φλαῦρος** trifling

**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

μεγάλως εὐεργετῶν πολλοὺς ἐποίησεν ἀνθρώπους καὶ  
 ὠτακουστέιν καὶ διοπτρεύειν τί ἂν ἀγγείλαντες ὠφελήσειαν  
 βασιλέα. ἐκ τούτου δὴ καὶ πολλοὶ ἐνομίσθησαν βασιλέως  
 ὀφθαλμοὶ καὶ πολλὰ ὦτα. εἰ δέ τις οἶεται ἓνα αἰρετὸν  
 εἶναι ὀφθαλμὸν βασιλεῖ, οὐκ ὀρθῶς οἶεται· ὀλίγα γὰρ εἰς  
 γ' ἂν ἴδοι καὶ εἰς ἀκούσειε· καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ὥσπερ ἀμελεῖν  
 ἂν παρηγγελμένον εἴη, εἰ ἐνὶ τούτῳ προστεταγμένον εἴη·  
 πρὸς δὲ καὶ ὄντινα γιγνώσκοιεν ὀφθαλμὸν ὄντα, τοῦτον  
 ἂν εἶδεῖεν ὅτι φυλάττεσθαι δεῖ. ἀλλ' οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει, ἀλλὰ  
 τοῦ φάσκοντος ἀκοῦσαί τι ἢ ἰδεῖν ἄξιον ἐπιμελείας παντὸς  
 βασιλεὺς ἀκούει. οὕτω δὴ πολλὰ μὲν βασιλέως ὦτα,  
 πολλοὶ δ' ὀφθαλμοὶ νομίζονται· καὶ φοβοῦνται πανταχοῦ  
 λέγειν τὰ μὴ σύμφορα βασιλεῖ, ὥσπερ αὐτοῦ ἀκούοντος,  
 καὶ ποιεῖν ἃ μὴ σύμφορα, ὥσπερ αὐτοῦ παρόντος. οὐκ οὖν  
 ὅπως μνησθῆναι ἂν τις ἐτόλμησε πρὸς τινα περὶ Κύρου  
 φλαυρόν τι, ἀλλ' ὥς ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς πᾶσι καὶ ὥσὶ βασιλέως  
 τοῖς αἰὲ παροῦσιν οὕτως ἕκαστος διέκειτο. τὸ δὲ οὕτω  
 διακείσθαι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐγὼ μὲν οὐκ οἶδα



μεγάλως εὐεργετῶν πολλοὺς ἐποίησεν ἀνθρώπους καὶ

ὠτακουστῆν καὶ |spy τί ἂν |carry a mes-|help, be useful  
|sage, announce

βασιλέα. ἐκ τούτου δὴ καὶ πολλοὶ |consider cus-|βασιλέως  
|tomary; believe

|eye καὶ πολλὰ |ear εἰ δέ τις οἶται ἓνα |takeable,  
|desirable

εἶναι |eye βασιλεῖ, οὐκ ὀρθῶς οἶται· ὀλίγα γὰρ εἰς

γ' ἂν ἴδοι καὶ εἰς ἀκούσει· καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ὥσπερ |disregard

ἂν |transmit; order, summon, ἐνὶ τούτῳ |post at, attach to, εἴη·  
|recommend, encourage |command

πρὸς δὲ καὶ ὄντινα γινγνώσκοιεν |eye ὄντα, τούτων

ἂν εἰδεῖν ὅτι |guard; watch δεῖ. ἀλλ' οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει, ἀλλὰ

τοῦ |declare, promise, ὕσασθαι τι ἢ ἰδεῖν |wor- |attention; as-|αὐτὸς  
|think |thy |signed task

βασιλεὺς ἀκούει. οὕτω δὴ πολλὰ μὲν βασιλέως |ear ,

πολλοὶ δ' |eye |consider cus-|ὲν φοβοῦνται |everywhere;  
|tomary; believe |completely

λέγειν τὰ μὴ |accompanying; λεί, ὥσπερ αὐτοῦ ἀκούοντος,  
|suitable

καὶ ποιεῖν ἂ μὴ |accompanying; . γερ αὐτοῦ παρόντος. |certainly not  
|suitable

ὅπως |remind; (mid) re-|dare πρὸς τινα περὶ Κύρου  
|member, turn one's

|trifling thoughts to· ὡς ἐν |eye πᾶσι καὶ |ear βασιλέως

τοῖς αἰὲ παροῦσιν οὕτως ἕκαστος |be in a condition· οὕτω

διακεῖσθαι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐγὼ μὲν οὐκ οἶδα

set countless people listening with all their ears and watching with all their eyes for news that might be of service to him. Thus there sprang up a host of "king's eyes" and "king's ears," as they were called, known and reputed to be such. But it is a mistake to suppose that the king has one chosen "eye." It is little that one man can see or one man hear, and to hand over the office to one single person would be to bid all others go to sleep. Moreover, his subjects would feel they must be on their guard before the man they knew was "the king's eye." The contrary is the case; the king will listen to any man who asserts that he has heard or seen anything that needs attention. Hence the saying that the king has a thousand eyes and a thousand ears; and hence the fear of uttering anything against his interest since "he is sure to hear," or doing anything that might injure him "since he may be there to see." So far, therefore, from venturing to breathe a syllable against Cyrus, every man felt that he was under the eye and within the hearing of a king who was always present. For this universal feeling towards him I can give no other reason than his resolve to be a benefactor on

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology**ἄξιόλογος** remarkable**ἀπομνημονεύω** remember, record**βασιλεύω** be king**εἴπερ** if indeed**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**θεραπείη** -ας service, tending**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure**κατάδηλος** manifest, visible**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person) ~megaton**νομεύς** -ος (m) shepherd, herder

~nemesis

**νουθετέω** remind, warn**παραπλήσιος** similar to**πένης** -τος (m) poor**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain ~genus**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**τοίνυν** well, then**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay ~ballistic**χρυσός** (ῶ) gold**χρυσόω** (ῶ) make golden, gild**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

ὅ τι ἂν τις αἰτιάσαιτο μᾶλλον ἢ ὅτι μεγάλα ἤθελεν ἀντὶ μικρῶν εὐεργετεῖν.

Καὶ τὸ μὲν δὴ μεγέθει δώρων ὑπερβάλλειν πλουσιώτατον ὄντα οὐ θαυμαστόν· τὸ δὲ τῇ θεραπείᾳ καὶ τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ τῶν φίλων βασιλεύοντα περιγίγνεσθαι, τοῦτο ἀξιολογώτερον. ἐκεῖνος τοίνυν λέγεται κατάδηλος εἶναι μηδενὶ ἂν οὕτως αἰσχυνθεῖς ἡττώμενος ὡς φίλων θεραπείᾳ· καὶ λόγος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἀπομνημονεύεται ὡς λέγοι παραπλήσια ἔργα εἶναι νομέως ἀγαθοῦ καὶ βασιλέως ἀγαθοῦ· τόν τε γὰρ νομέα χρῆναι ἔφη εὐδαίμονα τὰ κτήνη ποιοῦντα χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς, ἢ δὴ προβάτων εὐδαιμονία, τόν τε βασιλέα ὡσαύτως εὐδαίμονας πόλεις καὶ ἀνθρώπους ποιοῦντα χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς. οὐδὲν οὖν θαυμαστόν, εἴπερ ταύτην εἶχε τὴν γνώμην, τὸ φιλονίκως ἔχειν πάντων ἀνθρώπων θεραπείᾳ περιγίγνεσθαι. καλὸν δ' ἐπίδειγμα καὶ τοῦτο λέγεται Κῦρος ἐπιδείξαι Κροίσῳ, ὅτε ἐνουθέτει αὐτὸν ὡς διὰ τὸ πολλὰ διδόναι πένης ἔσοιτο, ἐξὸν αὐτῷ θησαυροὺς χρυσοῦ πλείστους ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ

ὅ τι ἄν τις αἰτιάσαιτο μᾶλλον ἢ ὅτι μεγάλα ἤθελεν ἀντὶ

μικρῶν |be a benefactor

Καὶ τὸ μὲν δὴ |tall, big δώρων |cause to go be- πλουσιώτατον  
|yond; delay

ὄντα οὐ |wonderful; τὸ δὲ τῇ |service, καὶ τῇ  
|admirable |tending

|attention; as- ὧν φίλων |be king |surpass; sur- τοῦτο  
|signed task |vive; attain

|remarkable ἐκεῖνος τοίνυν λέγεται |manifest,  
|visible

εἶναι μηδενὶ ἂν οὕτως |spoil, ἡττώμενος ὥς φίλων  
|disgrace

|service, καὶ λόγος δὲ αὐτοῦ |remember, record ὥς λέγοι  
|tending

|similar to ἔργα εἶναι |shepherd, ἰγαθοῦ καὶ βασιλέως  
|herder

ἀγαθοῦ· τὸν τε γὰρ |shepherd, ἦναι ἔφη |blessed with ἁ|herd animal  
|herder |good genius

ποιῶντα χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς, ἣ δὴ |cattle, flocks, ὑδαίμονία, τὸν  
|herds

τε βασιλέα |in the same|blessed with a τολεῖς καὶ ἀνθρώπους  
|way |good genius

ποιῶντα χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς. οὐδὲν οὖν |wonderful; , |if indeed  
|admirable

ταύτην εἶχε τὴν γνώμην, τὸ φιλονίκως ἔχειν πάντων

ἀνθρώπων |service, |surpass; sur- καλὸν δ' ἐπίδειγμα  
|tending |vive; attain

καὶ τοῦτο λέγεται Κῦρος |display, Κροίσω, ὅτε |remind, warn  
|exhibit

αὐτὸν ὥς διὰ τὸ πολλὰ διδόναι |poor ἔσοιτο, |go forth; ,  
|is possible

|treasury χρυσοῦ πλείστους ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ

a most mighty scale.

It is not surprising, no doubt, that being the wealthiest of men, he could outdo the world in the splendour of his gifts. The remarkable thing was to find a king outstrip his courtiers in courtesy and kindness. There was nothing, so the story runs, that could ever shame him more than to be outdone in courtesy. Indeed, a saying of his is handed down comparing a good king to a good shepherd—the shepherd must manage his flock by giving them all they need, and the king must satisfy the needs of his cities and his subjects if he is to manage them. We need not wonder, then, that with such opinions his ambition was to excel mankind in courtesy and care. There was a noble illustration of his philosophy in the answer we are told he gave to Croesus, who had taken him to task, saying his lavish gifts would bring him to beggary, although he could lay by more treasures for himself than any man had ever had before. Cyrus,

*vocabulary*

**ἄγος** ἄγους (n, 3) religious uncleanness  
**ἀριθμός** number  
**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter  
**ἐγγράφω** engrave, enroll  
**ἐπιστολή** message, letter  
**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go  
 searching through  
**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper,  
 henchman, servant ~therapy  
**κατατίθηναι** put down, deposit, lay  
 aside ~thesis  
**ὅπως** as many as, how many, how  
 great

**πάμπολυς** very great  
**περιέρχομαι** go around; come next to  
**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**πορίζω** bring about, provide  
**πόσος** how many, much, far?  
**πράξις** -εως (f) result, business  
 ~practice  
**προσδέω** bind also; need also  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**συνέμπεω** send with ~pomp  
**χρυσίον** (ῥ) gold coin

καταθέσθαι· καὶ τὸν Κῦρον λέγεται ἐρέσθαι· Καὶ πόσα ἂν ἤδη οἶμι μοι χρήματα εἶναι, εἰ συνέλεγον χρυσίον ὥσπερ σὺ κελεύεις ἐξ ὅτου ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ εἰμι· καὶ τὸν Κροῖσον εἰπεῖν πολὺν τινα ἀριθμόν. καὶ τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς ταῦτα, Ἄγε δῆ, φάναι, ὦ Κροῖσε, σύμπεμψον ἄνδρα σὺν Ὑστάσπα τουτωῖ ὅτῳ σὺ πιστεύεις μάλιστα. σὺ δέ, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, ἔφη, περιελθὼν πρὸς τοὺς φίλους λέγε αὐτοῖς ὅτι δέομαι χρυσίου πρὸς πρᾶξιν τινα· καὶ γὰρ τῷ ὄντι προσδέομαι· καὶ κέλευε αὐτοὺς ὅποσα ἂν ἕκαστος δύνηται πορίσαι μοι χρήματα γράψαντας καὶ κατασημνημένους δοῦναι τὴν ἐπιστολὴν τῷ Κροῖσου θεράποντι φέρειν. ταῦτα δὲ ὅσα ἔλεγε καὶ γράψας καὶ σημηνάμενος ἐδίδου τῷ Ὑστάσπα φέρειν πρὸς τοὺς φίλους· ἐνέγραψε δὲ πρὸς πάντας καὶ Ὑστάσπαν ὡς φίλον αὐτοῦ δέχεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ περιῆλθε καὶ ἤνεγκεν ὁ Κροῖσου θεράπων τὰς ἐπιστολάς, ὁ δὲ Ὑστάσπας εἶπεν· ὦ Κῦρε βασιλεῦ, καὶ ἐμοὶ ἤδη χρὴ ὡς πλουσίῳ χρῆσθαι· πάμπολλα γὰρ ἔχων πάρεμι δῶρα διὰ τὰ σὰ γράμματα. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Εἰς



put down	<i>καὶ τὸν Κῦρον λέγεται</i>	ask,	search	how many, much, far?
		through		

ἤδη οἶε μοι | possession, money | collect, | gold coin ὅσπερ  
| business | assemble

σὺ κελεύεις ἐξ ὅτου ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ εἰμι; καὶ τὸν Κροῖσον εἶπεν

πολύν τινα |number . καὶ τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς ταῦτα, |religious un-  
cleanness

δή, φάναι, ὦ Κροῖσε, | συμπέμπω?: send with; or Ὑστάσπα  
| συμπέμπω?: send with

τουτωῖ ὅτω σὺ πιστεύεις μάλιστα. σὺ δέ, ὦ Ὑστάσπα,

ἔφη, | go around; πρὸς τοὺς φίλους λέγε αὐτοῖς ὅτι δέομαι  
| come next to

gold coin	πρὸς	result,	τινα· καὶ γὰρ τῷ ὄντι προσδέομαι·
		business	

<i>καὶ κέλευε αὐτοὺς</i>	as/how many/great	<i>ἡ δύνηται</i>	bring about, provide	<i>μοι</i>
<i>καταγγέλλων· ὁρίωνται οὐρανὸν καὶ γῆνιν ἐκείνην</i>				<i>πρὸς τὴν πόλιν</i>

possession, money, business message, letter | write, scratch *καὶ κατασημνημένους* <sup>provide</sup> *δοῦναι τὴν*  
*τῷ Κροίσου* | companion *φέρειν. ταῦτα δὲ ὅσα*

ἔλεγε καὶ	write; scratch	καὶ	give orders to; show; mark	ἐδίδου τῷ Ὑστάσπῃ
-----------	-------------------	-----	-------------------------------	-------------------

φέρειν πρὸς τοὺς φίλους· engrave, δὲ πρὸς πάντας καὶ  
enroll

Ἰστάσπαν ὡς φίλον αὐτοῦ	accept, receive, await	ἐπεὶ δὲ	go around; come next to
-------------------------	------------------------	---------	-------------------------

καὶ ἤνεγκεν ὁ Κροῖσου |companion γὰρ |message, , ὁ δὲ  
letter

Ἰστιάσπας εἶπεν· ὦ Κῦρε βασιλεῦ, καὶ ἐμοὶ ἤδη | must, should

|wealth *χρη̑σθαι· πάμπολλα γὰρ ἔχων πάρειμι* |gift *διὰ*

τὰ σὰ	writing, letter	καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Εἰς
-------	--------------------	------------------------

it is said, asked him in return, "How much wealth do you suppose I could have amassed already, had I collected gold, as you bid me, ever since I came into my empire?"

And Croesus named an enormous sum. Then Cyrus said, "Listen, Croesus, here is my friend, Hystaspas, and you must send with him a man that you can trust." Then, turning to Hystaspas, "Do you," he said, "go round to my friends and tell them that I need money for a certain enterprise—and that is true, I do need it. Bid each of them write down the amount he can give me, seal the letter, and hand it to the messenger of Croesus, who will bring it here." Thereupon Cyrus wrote his wishes and put his seal on the letter, and gave it to Hystaspas to carry round, only he added a request that they should all welcome Hystaspas as a friend of his. And when the messengers came back, the officer of Croesus carrying the answers, Hystaspas cried, "Cyrus, my lord, you must know I am a rich man now! I have made my fortune, thanks to your letter! They have loaded me with gifts." And Cyrus said, "There, Croesus, that is treasure number

*vocabulary*

**ἄπληστος** insatiable, greedy  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure  
**καταθεάομαι** look down upon  
**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider  
**μισέω** (i) hate, wish to prevent  
 ~misogyny  
**μισθοφόρος** mercenary  
**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic

**πένης** -τος (m) poor  
**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain  
 ~genus  
**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy  
**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**πολλαπλάσιος** many times more  
**πόσος** how many, much, far?  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon  
**φθονέω** envy  
**φρουρός** watcher, guard  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery

μὲν τοῖνυν καὶ οὗτος ἤδη θησαυρὸς ἡμῖν, ὦ Κροῖσε·  
 τοὺς δ' ἄλλους καταθεῶ καὶ λόγισαι πόσα ἐστὶν ἔτοιμα  
 χρήματα, ἣν τι δέωμαι χρῆσθαι. λέγεται δὴ λογιζόμενος  
 ὁ Κροῖσος πολλαπλάσια εὑρεῖν ἢ ἔφη Κύρῳ ἂν εἶναι ἐν  
 τοῖς θησαυροῖς ἤδη, εἰ συνέλεγεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο φανερόν  
 ἐγένετο, εἰπεῖν λέγεται ὁ Κῦρος· Ὅρᾱς, φάναι, ὦ Κροῖσε,  
 ὥς εἰσὶ καὶ ἐμοὶ θησαυροί; ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν κελεύεις με παρ'  
 ἐμοὶ αὐτοὺς συλλέγοντα φθονεῖσθαι τε δι' αὐτοὺς καὶ  
 μισεῖσθαι, καὶ φύλακας αὐτοῖς ἐφιστάντα μισθοφόρους  
 τούτοις πιστεύειν· ἐγὼ δὲ τοὺς φίλους πλουσίους ποιῶν  
 τούτους μοι νομίζω θησαυροὺς καὶ φύλακας ἅμα ἐμοῦ  
 τε καὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἀγαθῶν πιστοτέρους εἶναι ἢ εἰ  
 φρουροὺς μισθοφόρους ἐπεστησάμην. καὶ ἄλλο δέ σοι  
 ἐρῶ· ἐγὼ γάρ, ὦ Κροῖσε, ὃ μὲν οἱ θεοὶ δόντες εἰς τὰς ψυχὰς  
 τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐποίησαν ὁμοίως πάντας πένητας, τούτου  
 μὲν οὐδ' αὐτὸς δύναμαι περιγενέσθαι, ἀλλ' εἰμὶ ἄπληστος  
 καὶ γὰρ ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι χρημάτων· τῇδὲ γε μέντοι διαφέρειν  
 μοι δοκῶ τῶν πλείστων ὅτι οἱ μὲν ἐπειδὰν τῶν ἀρκούντων

μὲν |well, then |ὁ οὗτος ἤδη |treasury |ἡμῖν, ὦ Κροῖσε·  
 τοὺς δ' ἄλλους καταθεῶ καὶ |reckon, |how many, much, far?  
 |consider  
 χρήματα, ἣν τι δέωμαι χρῆσθαι. λέγεται δὲ |reckon,  
 |consider  
 ὁ Κροῖσος |many times more |ρεῖν ἢ ἔφη Κύρῳ ἂν εἶναι ἐν  
 τοῖς |treasury |ἤδη, εἰ |collect,  
 |assemble |ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο |visible,  
 |conspicuous  
 ἐγένετο, εἰπεῖν λέγεται ὁ Κύρος· Ὁρᾷς, φάναι, ὦ Κροῖσε,  
 ὥς εἰσὶ καὶ ἐμοὶ |treasury , ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν κελεύεις με παρ'  
 ἐμοὶ αὐτοὺς |collect,  
 |assemble |envy |τε δι' αὐτοὺς καὶ  
 |hate , καὶ |guard;  
 |sentry |αὐτοῖς |set; (mp)|mercenary  
 |come/be near,  
 |direct, stop  
 τούτοις πιστεύειν· ἐγὼ δὲ τοὺς φίλους |wealth |ποιῶν  
 τούτους μοι νομίζω |treasury καὶ |guard;  
 |sentry |ἅμα ἐμοῦ  
 |τε καὶ τῶν |our, my |ἀγαθῶν |faithful; trust- εἶναι ἢ εἰ  
 |worthy  
 |watcher, |mercenary |set; (mp) |come/be καὶ ἄλλο δέ σοι  
 |guard |near, direct, stop  
 ἐρῶ· ἐγὼ γάρ, ὦ Κροῖσε, ὁ μὲν οἱ θεοὶ δόντες εἰς τὰς ψυχὰς  
 τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐποίησαν ὁμοίως πάντας |poor , τούτου  
 μὲν οὐδ' αὐτὸς δύναμαι |surpass; |sur-, ἀλλ' εἰμὶ |insatiable,  
 |vive; attain |greedy  
 καὶ γὰρ ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι χρημάτων· τῇδε γὰρ μέντοι |carry on;  
 |differ; excel  
 μοι δοκῶ τῶν πλείστων ὅτι οἱ μὲν |when, |τῶν |satisfy; ward off, defend;  
 |after |suffice

one; and now run through the rest, and count what sums I have in hand, in case I need them." And Croesus counted, and found, so the story tells us, that the sum was far larger than the amount he had said would have been lying in the treasury if only Cyrus had made a hoard. At this discovery Cyrus said, so we are told, "You see, Croesus, I have my treasures too. Only you advise me to collect them and hide them, and be envied and hated because of them, and set mercenaries to guard them, putting my trust in hirelings. But I hold to it that if I make my friends rich they will be my treasures themselves, and far better guards too, for me and all we have, than if I set hired watchmen over my wealth. And I have somewhat else to say; I tell you, Croesus, there is something the gods have implanted in our souls, and there they have made us all beggars alike, something I can never overcome. I too, like all the rest, am insatiate of riches, only in one respect I fancy I am different. Most men when they have more wealth than they require

*vocabulary*

**ἀμφιέννυμι** (ὑ) put on a person ~vest  
**ἀποπνίγω** (ι) strangle; stew; (π) drown  
**ἀριθμέω** to count ~arithmetic  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**ἀσφάλεια** safeguard  
**διαρρήγνυμι** (ὑ) break through  
**ἐνδεια** a lack, need  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐξακέομαι** cure, appease, make up for  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor  
**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor  
**εὐκλεια** good repute ~Euclid  
**εὐνοια** good will, gift

**καρπώω** bear fruit; harvest it  
**κατορύσσω** bury  
**κοῦφος** light, nimble  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess  
**λυμαίνομαι** (ὑ) abuse, violate, desecrate  
**μετρέω** measure, traverse ~metric  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὀρέγω** hold out, offer, thrust ~reach  
**περισσός** prodigious, superfluous  
**πλουτίζω** enrich  
**ὑπηρετέω** serve  
**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy  
**φίλιος** friendly

περιττὰ κτήσονται, τὰ μὲν αὐτῶν κατορύττουσι, τὰ  
 δὲ κατασήπουσι, τὰ δὲ ἀριθμοῦντες καὶ μετροῦντες καὶ  
 ιστάντες καὶ διαψύχοντες καὶ φυλάττοντες πράγματα  
 ἔχουσι, καὶ ὅμως ἔνδον ἔχοντες τοσαῦτα οὔτε ἐσθίουσι  
 πλείω ἢ δύνανται φέρειν, διαρραγεῖν γὰρ ἂν, οὔτ'  
 ἀμφιέννυνται πλείω ἢ δύνανται φέρειν, ἀποπνιγεῖν γὰρ  
 ἂν, ἀλλὰ τὰ περιττὰ χρήματα πράγματα ἔχουσιν· ἐγὼ  
 δ' ὑπηρετῶ μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ὀρέγομαι αἰὲν πλειόνων·  
 ἐπειδὰν δὲ κτήσωμαι, ἃ ἂν ἴδω περιττὰ ὄντα τῶν  
 ἐμοὶ ἀρκούντων, τούτοις τάς τ' ἐνδείας τῶν φίλων  
 ἐξακοῦμαι καὶ πλουτίζων καὶ εὐεργετῶν ἀνθρώπους  
 εὖνοϊαν ἐξ αὐτῶν κτῶμαι καὶ φιλίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτων  
 καρποῦμαι ἀσφάλειαν καὶ εὐκλειαν· ἃ οὔτε κατασῆπεται  
 οὔτε ὑπερληροῦντα λυμαίνεται, ἀλλὰ ἡ εὐκλεία ὅσω ἂν  
 πλείων ᾗ, τοσούτῳ καὶ μείζων καὶ καλλίων καὶ κουφοτέρα  
 φέρειν γίγνεται, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ τοὺς φέροντας αὐτὴν  
 κουφοτέρους παρέχεται. ὅπως δὲ καὶ τοῦτο εἰδῆς, ἔφη,  
 ὦ Κροῖσε, ἐγὼ οὐ τοὺς πλείεστα ἔχοντας καὶ φυλάττοντας



περιττὰ κτήσονται, τὰ μὲν αὐτῶν |bury , τὰ  
 δὲ κατασῆπουσι, τὰ δὲ |to count καὶ |measure, καὶ  
 |traverse  
 ιστάντες καὶ διαψύχοντες καὶ |guard; watch πράγματα  
 ἔχουσι, καὶ |any- |in the ἡouse of;|so much οὔτε ἐσθίουσι  
 |way, |within  
 πλείω ἢ διὰ τὸ φέρειν, |never- |break γὰρ ἂν, οὐτ'  
 |theless |through  
 |put on a person πλείω ἢ δύνανται φέρειν, |strangle; stew; γὰρ  
 |(p) drown  
 ἂν, ἀλλὰ τὰ περιττὰ |possession, πράγματα ἔχουσιν· ἐγὼ  
 |money, busi-  
 δ' |serve μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ |ness |hold out, of- ἔει πλειόνων·  
 |fer, thrust  
 |when, δὲ κτήσωμαι, ἃ ἂν ἴδω περιττὰ ὄντα τῶν  
 |after  
 ἐμοὶ |satisfy; ward off, οὗτοις τὰς τ' |a lack, need ἔν φιλῶν  
 |defend; suffice  
 |moderate καὶ |enrich καὶ εὐεργετῶν ἀνθρώπους  
 |good will, gift αὐτῶν κτῶμαι καὶ φιλίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτων  
 |bear fruit;|safeguard καὶ |good reputē οὔτε κατασῆπεται  
 |harvest it  
 οὔτε ὑπερληροῦντα |abuse, violate, ἀλλὰ ἢ |good reputē ἢ ἂν  
 |desecrate  
 πλείων ἢ, |so much καὶ μείζων καὶ καλλίων καὶ |light, nimble  
 φέρειν γίγνεται, |often δὲ καὶ τοὺς φέροντας αὐτὴν  
 |light, nimble |furnish ὅπως δὲ καὶ τοῦτο εἰδῆς, ἔφη,  
 ὦ Κροῖσε, ἐγὼ οὐ τοὺς πλείστα ἔχοντας καὶ |guard; watch

bury some of it underground, and let some of it rot, and some they count and measure, and they guard it and they air it, and give themselves a world of trouble, and yet for all their wealth they cannot eat more than they have stomach for—they would burst asunder if they did—nor wear more clothes than they can carry—they would die of suffocation—and so their extra wealth means nothing but extra work. For my part, I serve the gods, and I stretch out my hands for more and more; only when I have got what is beyond my own requirements I piece out the wants of my friends, and so, helping my fellows, I purchase their love and their goodwill, and out of these I garner security and renown, fruits that can never rot, rich meats that can work no mischief; for glory, the more it grows, the grander it becomes, and the fairer, and the lighter to be borne; it even gives a lighter step to those who bear it. One thing more, Croesus, I would have you know; the happiest men, in my judgment, are not the holders of vast riches and the masters who have

*vocabulary***ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**θησαυρίζω** hoard**ἰατρός** (ᾱ) physician**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**κατατίθημι** put down, deposit, lay

aside ~thesis

**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**ὄργανον** tool; body organ**ποτή** flight? ~petal**ποτός** potable**σῖτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**συγχομίζω** gather**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable**ὕγαινω** be healthy**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**φάρμακον** drug, potion ~pharmacy**χρήσιμος** useful

πλείστα εὐδαιμονεστάτους ἡγοῦμαι· οἱ γὰρ τὰ τείχη φυλάττοντες οὕτως ἂν εὐδαιμονέστατοι εἴσαν· πάντα γὰρ τὰ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι φυλάττουσιν· ἀλλ' ὅς ἂν κτᾶσθαι τε πλείστα δύνηται σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ χρῆσθαι πλείστοις σὺν τῷ καλῷ, τοῦτον ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονέστατον νομίζω καὶ τὰ χρήματα. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ φανερὸς ἦν ὥσπερ ἔλεγε καὶ πράττων.

Πρὸς δὲ τούτοις κατανοήσας τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὅτι ἦν μὲν ὑγιαίνοντες διατελῶσι, παρασκευάζονται ὅπως ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ κατατίθενται τὰ χρήσιμα εἰς τὴν τῶν ὑγαινόντων δίαιταν· ὅπως δὲ ἦν ἀσθενήσωσι τὰ σύμφορα παρέσται, τούτου οὐ πάνυ ἐπιμελομένους ἑώρα· ἔδοξεν οὖν καὶ ταῦτα ἐκπονήσαι αὐτῷ, καὶ ἰατροὺς τε τοὺς ἀρίστους συνεκομίσατο πρὸς αὐτὸν τῷ τελεῖν ἐθέλειν καὶ ὅποσα ἦ ὄργανα χρήσιμα ἔφη τις ἂν αὐτῶν γενέσθαι ἢ φάρμακα ἢ σῖτα ἢ ποτά, οὐδὲν τούτων ὃ τι οὐχὶ παρασκευάσας ἐθησαύριζε παρ' αὐτῷ. καὶ ὁπότε δέ τις ἀσθενήσειε τῶν

πλείστα |blessed with a good |genius ἡγοῦμαι· οἱ γὰρ τὰ τείχη  
 |guard; watch οὕτως ἂν |blessed with a good |genius εἶσαν· πάντα  
 γὰρ τὰ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι |guard; watch ἀλλ' ὅς ἂν κτᾶσθαι  
 τε πλείστα δύνηται σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ χρῆσθαι πλείστοις  
 σὺν τῷ καλῷ, τοῦτον ἐγὼ |blessed with a good νομίζω καὶ τὰ  
 |genius χρήματα. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ |visible, |conspicuous ὥσπερ ἔλεγε καὶ  
 πράττων.

Πρὸς δὲ τούτοις |notice, realize, |learn τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν  
 ἀνθρώπων ὅτι ἦν μὲν |be healthy |accomplish; |keep doing  
 |prepare, render ὅπως ἔξουσιν τὰ |fit, suitable καὶ  
 |put down τὰ |useful εἰς τὴν τῶν |be healthy  
 |way of life; home; |arbitration ἦν |be weak, sick τὰ |accompanying; |suitable  
 τούτου οὐ |altogether, very μένους ἑώρα· ἔδοξεν οὖν καὶ  
 ταῦτα ἐκπονήσαι αὐτῷ, καὶ |physician τε τοὺς ἀρίστους

|gather πρὸς αὐτὸν τῷ |fulfill, pay; pf pass: be/as/how many/great  
 |feasible  
 |tool; |useful ἔφη τις ἂν αὐτῶν γενέσθαι ἢ |drug,  
 |body |potion  
 |organ  
 ἢ |grain, ἢ ποτά, οὐδὲν τούτων ὅ τι οὐχὶ |prepare, render  
 |bread,  
 |food  
 |hoard παρ' αὐτῷ. καὶ |when δέ τις |be weak, sick ὦν

the most to guard; else the sentinels of our citadels would be the happiest of mortals, seeing they guard the whole wealth of the state. He, I hold, has won the crown of happiness who has had the skill to gain wealth by the paths of righteousness and use it for all that is honourable and fair.”

That was the doctrine Cyrus preached, and all men could see that his practice matched his words.

Moreover, he observed that the majority of mankind, if they live in good health for long, will only lay by such stores and requisites as may be used by a healthy man, and hardly care at all to have appliances at hand in case of sickness. But Cyrus was at the pains to provide these; he encouraged the ablest physicians of the day by his liberal payments, and if ever they recommended an instrument or a drug or a special kind of food or drink, he never failed to procure it and have it stored in the palace.

And whenever any one fell sick among those who had peculiar claims on his

*vocabulary***ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἄγωνισμα** -τος (n, 3) contest, feat**ἄθλον** ἄέθλου prize ~athlete**ἀνταγωνίζομαι** vie with**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἀσκέω** work on**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διάκρισις** -εως (f) separation, decision**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐμποιέω** make inside of ~poet**ἔπαινος** (noun) praise**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious; vital**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπισκοπέω** look upon, inspect**ἔρις** -δος (f) strife**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**ἰάομαι** (ι) cure ~pediatrician**ἰατρός** (ᾱ) physician**κράτιστος** best**κριτής** -οῦ (m, 1) judge**κριτός** chosen, appointed ~critic**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

**μισέω** (ι) hate, wish to prevent

~misogyny

**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προσποιέω** give over to; pretend

~poet

**πρωτεύω** be first or foremost**συντρέχω** rush together**φθονέω** envy**φιλονικία** (ι) rivalry, competition

θεραπεύεσθαι ἐπικαιρίων, ἐπεσκόπει καὶ παρέιχε πάντα ὅτου ἔδει. καὶ τοῖς ἰατροῖς δὲ χάριν ἤδει, ὅποτε τις ἰάσαιτό τινα τῶν παρ' ἐκείνου λαμβάνων.

Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ καὶ τοιαῦτα πολλὰ ἐμηχανᾶτο πρὸς τὸ πρωτεύειν παρ' οἷς ἐβούλετο ἑαυτὸν φιλείσθαι. ὦν δὲ προηγόρευέ τε ἀγῶνας καὶ ἄθλα προυτίθει, φιλονικίας ἐμποιεῖν βουλόμενος περὶ τῶν καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἔργων, ταῦτα τῷ μὲν Κύρῳ ἔπαινον παρέιχεν ὅτι ἐπεμέλετο ὅπως ἀσκοῖτο ἢ ἀρετῇ· τοῖς μέντοι ἀρίστοις οἱ ἀγῶνες οὗτοι πρὸς ἀλλήλους καὶ ἔριδας καὶ φιλονικίας ἐνέβαλλον. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ὥσπερ νόμον κατεστήσατο ὁ Κῦρος, ὅσα διακρίσεως δέοιτο εἴτε δίκη εἴτε ἀγωνίσματι, τοὺς δεομένους διακρίσεως συντρέχειν τοῖς κριταῖς. δῆλον οὖν ὅτι ἐστοχάζοντο μὲν οἱ ἀνταγωνιζόμενοί τι ἀμφοτέρω τῶν κρατίστων καὶ τῶν μάλιστα φίλων κριτῶν· ὁ δὲ μὴ νικῶν τοῖς μὲν νικῶσιν ἐφθόνει, τοὺς δὲ μὴ ἑαυτὸν κρίνοντας ἐμίσει· ὁ δ' αὖ νικῶν τῷ δικαίῳ προσεποιεῖτο νικᾶν, ὥστε χάριν οὐδενὶ ἡγεῖτο ὀφείλειν. καὶ οἱ πρωτεύειν δὲ



|help, serve |at a fitting|look upon, inspect *ἰρεῖχε πάντα*  
 time; serious;  
*οὔτου ἔδει. καὶ τοῖς* |vital|physician. *ἔχ' ἁρὶν ἤδει, ὅποτε τις* |cure  
*τινα τῶν παρ' ἐκείνου λαμβάνων.*

Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ καὶ τοιαῦτα πολλὰ |build, πρὸς τὸ  
 |contrive  
 |be first or foremost *ἵς ἐβούλετο ἑαυτὸν φιλεῖσθαι. ὦν δὲ*

|declare, pre- τε |gathering καὶ |prize *προτυθίει, φιλονικίας*  
 |dict, order |place  
 |make inside of *ὁ μένος περὶ τῶν καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἔργων,*

*ταῦτα τῷ μὲν Κύρῳ* |(noun) praise, *εἶχεν ὅτι* |take care of,  
 |oversee

*ὅπως* |work on *ἡ ἀρετὴ τοῖς μέντοι ἀρίστοις οἱ* |gathering  
 |place

*οὔτοι πρὸς ἀλλήλους καὶ* |strife *καὶ φιλονικίας* |throw in; inspire

*πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ὥσπερ νόμον κατεστήσατο ὁ Κῦρος,*

*ὅσα* |separation, *δέοιτο εἴτε δίκη εἴτε* |contest, feat *, τοὺς*  
 |decision

*δεομένους* |separation, |rush together *οἷς κριταῖς.* |visible, *ἔ*  
 |decision |conspicuous

*ὅτι ἐστοχάζοντο μὲν οἱ* |vie with *τι ἀμφοτέρω τῶν*

|best *καὶ τῶν μάλιστα φίλων κριτῶν· ὁ δὲ μὴ νικῶν*

*τοῖς μὲν νικῶσιν* |envy *, τοὺς δὲ μὴ ἑαυτὸν κρίνοντας*

|hate *ὁ δ' αὖ νικῶν τῷ δικαίῳ* |give over to; *νικᾶν, ὥστε*  
 |pretend

*ἁρὶν οὐδενὶ ἡγείτο* |owe, should, if only|be first or foremost

attentions, he would visit them and bring them all they needed, and he showed especial gratitude to the doctors if they cured their patients by the help of his own stores. These measures, and others like them, he adopted to win the first place in the hearts of those whose friendship he desired. Moreover, the contests he proclaimed and the prizes he offered to awaken ambition and desire for gallant deeds all redounded to his own glory as a man who had the pursuit of nobleness at heart, while they bred strife and bitter rivalry among the champions themselves. Further, he laid it down that in every matter needing arbitration, whether it were a suit-at-law or a trial of skill, the parties should concur in their choice of a judge. Each would try to secure the most powerful man he knew and the one most friendly to himself, and if he lost he envied his successful rival and hated the judge who had declared against him, while the man who won claimed to win because his case was just and felt he owed no gratitude to

*vocabulary*

βασιλῆις kingly

δηλώ show, disclose

διάγω lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

διαδίδωμι distribute, send out

διηγέομαι detail, describe

ἐκποδών out of the way

ἐνδύ go into, put on

ἐξαιρέω pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

ἐξέλασις expulsion; expedition

ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic

ἐπίφθονος jealous

εὐκαταφρόνητος contemptible

θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos

κράτιστος best

μηχανάομαι build, contrive

~mechanism

Πέρσης Persian

σεμνότης -τος (f, 3) solemnity, dignity

στολή equipment

συμπράσσω cooperate

τέμενος -εος (n, 3) non-common land

τέχνη craft, art, plan, contrivance

~technology

φίλιος friendly

βουλόμενοι φιλία παρὰ Κύρῳ, ὥσπερ ἄλλοι ἐν πόλεσι, καὶ οὗτοι ἐπιφθόνως πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶχον, ὥσθ' οἱ πλείονες ἐκποδὼν ἐβούλοντο ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον γενέσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ συνέπραξαν ἂν τι ἀλλήλοις ἀγαθόν. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δεδήλωται ὡς ἐμηχανᾶτο τοὺς κρατίστους αὐτὸν μᾶλλον πάντας φιλεῖν ἢ ἀλλήλους.

## 8.3

Νῦν δὲ ἤδη διηγησόμεθα ὡς τὸ πρῶτον ἐξήλασε Κῦρος ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· καὶ γὰρ αὐτῆς τῆς ἐξέλασεως ἡ σεμνότης ἡμῖν δοκεῖ μία τῶν τεχνῶν εἶναι τῶν μεμηχανημένων τὴν ἀρχὴν μὴ εὐκαταφρόνητον εἶναι. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν πρὸ τῆς ἐξέλασεως εἰσκαλέσας πρὸς αὐτὸν τοὺς τὰς ἀρχὰς ἔχοντας Περσῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων συμμάχων διέδωκεν αὐτοῖς τὰς Μηδικὰς στολάς· καὶ τότε πρῶτον Πέρσαι Μηδικὴν στολὴν ἐνέδυσαν· διαδιδούς τε ἅμα τάδε ἔλεγεν αὐτοῖς ὅτι ἐλάσαι βούλοιτο εἰς τὰ τεμένη τὰ τοῖς θεοῖς ἐξηρημένα καὶ θῦσαι μετ' ἐκείνων. πάρεστε οὖν, ἔφη, ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας κοσμηθέντες ταῖς στολαῖς

βουλόμενοι |friendly πρὰ Κύρῳ, ὥσπερ ἄλλοι ἐν πόλεσι, καὶ  
οὔτοι |jealous πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶχον, ὥσθ' οἱ πλείονες  
|out of the way ἔλοντο ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον γενέσθαι μᾶλλον  
ἢ |cooperate ἂν τι ἀλλήλοις ἀγαθόν. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν  
|show, |disclose ὥς |build, |contrive τοὺς |best αὐτὸν μᾶλλον  
πάντας |love ἢ ἀλλήλους.

## 8.3

Νῦν δὲ ἤδη διηγησόμεθα ὡς τὸ πρῶτον |drive out Κύρος ἐκ  
τῶν βασιλείων· καὶ γὰρ αὐτῆς τῆς |expulsion; |ex-solemnity,  
|pedition |dignity  
ἡμῖν δοκεῖ μία τῶν |craft εἶναι τῶν |build, contrive τὴν  
ἀρχὴν μὴ |contemptible εἶναι. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν |before,  
|forward  
τῆς |expulsion; |expedition εἰσκαλέσας πρὸς αὐτὸν τοὺς τὰς ἀρχὰς  
ἔχοντας Περσῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων συμμάχων |distribute, send out  
αὐτοῖς τὰς Μηδικὰς |equipment αἰ τότε πρῶτον Πέρσαι  
Μηδικὴν |equip- |go into, put |distribute, send out τάδε ἔλεγεν  
|ment |on  
αὐτοῖς ὅτι |drive βούλοιτο εἰς τὰ |non-common land ἑοῖς  
|pick, steal; |dedi- |rush; sacrifice εἰνων. πάρεστε οὖν, ἔφη, ἐπὶ  
|cate; destroy  
τὰς |door |marshal, array ταῖς |equipment

anybody. Thus all who wished to be first in the affections of Cyrus, just as others in democratic states, were full of rancour against each other, in fact most of them would sooner have seen their rivals exterminated than join with them for any common good. Such are some of the devices by which he made the ablest of his subjects more attached to himself than to one another.

### 8.3

I Will now describe the first public progress that Cyrus made. For the very solemnity of the ceremony was one of the artifices by which he won reverence for his government. The day before it he summoned the officers of state, the Persians and the others, and gave them all the splendid Median dress. This was the first time the Persians wore it, and as they received the robes he said that he wished to drive in his chariot to the sacred precincts and offer sacrifice with them. "You will present yourselves at my gates," he added, "before the

*vocabulary*

**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀνατέλλω** cause to grow ~apostle  
**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out  
**ἐκφέρω** carry off ~bear  
**ἐξαγγέλλω** bring news out ~angel  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony

**ἥλιος** sun  
**ἱμάτιον** toga, cloth  
**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos  
**κράτιστος** best  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**στολή** equipment  
**φείδομαι** spare, not use/harm ~aphid  
**φοινικίς** -δος (f) red or purple cloth

ταύταις πρὶν ἥλιον ἀνατέλλειν, καὶ καθίστασθε ὡς ἂν ὑμῖν Φεραύλας ὁ Πέρσης ἐξαγγείλῃ παρ' ἐμοῦ· καὶ ἐπειδάν, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ἡγῶμαι, ἔπεσθε ἐν τῇ ῥηθείᾳ χώρα. ἦν δ' ἄρα τινὶ δοκῇ ὑμῶν ἄλλῃ κάλλιον εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἂν νῦν ἐλαύνωμεν, ἐπειδὴν πάλιν ἔλθωμεν, διδασκέτω με· ὅπῃ γὰρ ἂν κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον ὑμῖν δοκῇ εἶναι, ταύτῃ ἕκαστα δεῖ καταστήσασθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῖς κρατίστοις διέδωκε τὰς καλλίστας στολὰς, ἐξέφερε δὴ καὶ ἄλλας Μηδικὰς στολὰς, παμπόλλας γὰρ παρεσκευάσατο, οὐδὲν φειδόμενος οὔτε πορφυρίδων οὔτε ὀρφνίνων οὔτε φοινικίδων οὔτε καρυκίνων ἱματίων· νείμας δὲ τούτων τὸ μέρος ἐκάστω τῶν ἡγεμόνων ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς τούτοις κοσμεῖν τοὺς αὐτῶν φίλους, ὥσπερ, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς κοσμῶ. καί τις τῶν παρόντων ἐπήρετο αὐτόν· Σὺ δέ, ὦ Κῦρε, ἔφη, πότε κοσμήσῃ; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Οὐ γὰρ νῦν, ἔφη, δοκῶ ὑμῖν αὐτὸς κοσμεῖσθαι ὑμᾶς κοσμῶν; ἀμέλει, ἔφη, ἦν δύνωμαι ὑμᾶς τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν, ὁποίαν ἂν ἔχων στολὴν τυγχάνω, ἐν ταύτῃ καλὸς φανοῦμαι.



ταύταις πρὶν |sun |cause to grow καὶ |set down, land; |S ἂν  
 |become, be  
 ὑμῖν Φεραύλας ὁ Πέρσης |bring news out -ρ' ἐμοῦ· καὶ  
 |when, , ἔφη, ἐγὼ ἡγῶμαι, ἔπεσθε ἐν τῇ ῥηθείᾳ |place .  
 |after  
 ἦν δ' ἄρα τινὲ δοκῇ ὑμῶν ἄλλη κάλλιον εἶναι ἢ ὡς  
 ἂν νῦν |drive , |when, , πάλιν ἔλθωμεν, διδασκέτω  
 |after  
 με· |wherever, , ἂν κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον ὑμῖν δοκῇ  
 |however  
 εἶναι, ταύτῃ ἕκαστα δεῖ |set down, land; be- . ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῖς  
 |come, be  
 |best |distribute, send out ἵστας |equip- , |carry off δὴ καὶ  
 |ment  
 ἄλλας Μηδικὰς |equip- , |very great γὰρ |prepare, render ,  
 |ment  
 οὐδὲν |spare οὔτε πορφυρίδων οὔτε ὀρφνίνων οὔτε  
 |red or purple cloth . αρυκίνων |toga, |distribute ἡ τούτων τὸ  
 |cloth  
 μέρος ἐκάστω τῶν |leader ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς τούτοις  
 |marshal, τοὺς αὐτῶν φίλους, ὥσπερ, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς |marshal,  
 |array |array  
 καὶ τις τῶν παρόντων |ask as well; ὑτόν· Σὺ δέ, ὦ Κῦρε,  
 |ask then  
 ἔφη, πότε |marshal, , ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Οὐ γὰρ νῦν, ἔφη,  
 |array  
 δοκῶ ὑμῖν αὐτὸς |marshal, ὑμᾶς |marshal, , ἀμέλει, ἔφη,  
 |array |array  
 ἦν δύνωμαι ὑμᾶς τοὺς φίλους εἴ ποιεῖν, |whatever kind ἂν  
 |equipment γχάνω, ἐν ταύτῃ καλὸς φανοῦμαι.

sun rises, attired in these robes, and you will take your places where Pheraulas the Persian bids you on my behalf. As soon as I lead the way you will follow in your appointed order. And if any of you should think of some change to heighten the beauty and stateliness of our procession, you will acquaint me with it, I pray, on our return; it is for us to see that all is done in the manner you feel to be most beautiful and best."

With that Cyrus gave the most splendid robes to his chief notables, and then he brought out others, for he had stores of Median garments, purple and scarlet and crimson and glowing red, and gave a share to each of his generals and said to them, "Adorn your friends, as I have adorned you." Then one of them asked him, "And you, O Cyrus, when will you adorn yourself?" But he answered, "Is it not adornment enough for me to have adorned you? If I can but do good to my friends, I shall look glorious enough, whatever robe I wear."

So his nobles took their leave, and sent for their friends and

*vocabulary*

ἀμελής careless  
 ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot  
 αὔριον tomorrow  
 δημότης -ου (m, 1) commoner  
 δορυφόρος spear-bearer  
 δυσμενής hostile, enemy  
 ἐξέλασις expulsion; expedition  
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee  
 εὐτακτος orderly, disciplined  
 ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony  
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
 κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos  
 μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon  
 ~pomp  
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage

πότε when?

σκοπᾶω watch, observe  
 σκοπέω behold, consider  
 στολή equipment  
 συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer  
 συναγορεύω support  
 συνδοκέω seem good also  
 συνετός smart; intelligible  
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
 τιμάω (ἱ) honor, exalt  
 ὑπάγω lead under the yoke, lead away  
 from ~demagogue  
 φοβερός frightful, afraid  
 χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma  
 χιτῶν -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor

οὕτω δὴ οἱ μὲν ἀπελθόντες μεταπεμπόμενοι τοὺς φίλους ἐκόσμουν ταῖς στολαῖς. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος νομίζων Φεραύλαν τὸν ἐκ τῶν δημοτῶν καὶ συνετὸν εἶναι καὶ φιλόκαλον καὶ εὐτακτον καὶ τοῦ χαρίζεσθαι αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀμελῇ, ὅς ποτε καὶ περὶ τοῦ τιμᾶσθαι ἕκαστον κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν συνεῖπε, τοῦτον δὴ καλέσας συνεβουλεύετο αὐτῷ πῶς ἂν τοῖς μὲν εὖνοις κάλλιστα ἰδεῖν ποιοίτο τὴν ἐξέλασιν, τοῖς δὲ δυσμενέσι φοβερώτατα. ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπούντοιν αὐτοῖν ταῦτά συνέδοξεν, ἐκέλευσε τὸν Φεραύλαν ἐπιμεληθῆναι ὅπως ἂν οὕτω γένηται αὔριον ἢ ἐξέλασις ὥσπερ ἔδοξε καλῶς ἔχειν. Εἵρηκα δέ, ἔφη, ἐγὼ πάντας πείθεσθαι σοι περὶ τῆς ἐν τῇ ἐξελάσει τάξεως· ὅπως δ' ἂν ἥδιον παραγγέλλοντός σου ἀκούωσι, φέρε λαβῶν, ἔφη, χιτῶνας μὲν τουτουσὶ τοῖς τῶν δορυφόρων ἡγεμόσι, κασᾶς δὲ τούσδε τοὺς ἐφιππίους τοῖς τῶν ἱππέων ἡγεμόσι δός, καὶ τῶν ἀρμάτων τοῖς ἡγεμόσιν ἄλλους τούσδε χιτῶνας. ὁ μὲν δὴ ἔφερε λαβῶν· οἱ δὲ ἡγεμόνες ἐπεὶ ἴδοιεν αὐτόν, ἔλεγον· Μέγας δὴ σύγε, ὦ Φεραύλα, ὅποτε γε καὶ ἡμῖν

οὕτω δὴ οἱ μὲν ἀπελθόντες |send; (mid) summon ὑς φίλους  
 |marshal, ταῖς |equipment ὁ δὲ Κῦρος νομίζων Φεραύλαν  
 array  
 τὸν ἐκ τῶν |com- καὶ |smart; intelligible αὐτὸν φιλόκαλον  
 moner  
 καὶ |orderly, καὶ τοῦ |gratify αὐτῷ οὐκ |careless ὅς  
 disciplined  
 ποτε καὶ περὶ τοῦ |honor ἕκαστον κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν  
 συνείπε, τοῦτον δὴ καλέσας |give advice; αὐτῷ πῶς ἂν  
 |(mid) consult  
 τοῖς μὲν εὖνοις κάλλιστα ἰδεῖν ποιοῖτο τὴν |expulsion; τοῖς  
 expedition  
 δὲ |hostile, |frightful, afraid ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπούντων αὐτοῖν  
 enemy  
 ταῦτα |seem good also ἔλευσε τὸν Φεραύλαν |take care of,  
 oversee  
 ὅπως ἂν οὕτω γένηται |tomorrow, |expulsion; ὥστε ἐδοξε  
 expedition  
 καλῶς ἔχειν. Εἴρηκα δέ, ἔφη, ἐγὼ πάντας πείθεσθαι  
 σοι περὶ τῆς ἐν τῇ |expulsion; ἡμέρας ὅπως δ' ἂν |sweet  
 expedition  
 |transmit; order, summon, κούωσι, φέρε λαβών, ἔφη, |tunic  
 |recommend, encourage  
 μὲν τουτουσὶ τοῖς τῶν |spear-bearing |leader , κασᾶς δὲ  
 τούσδε τοὺς ἐφιππίους τοῖς τῶν |rider |leader δός, καὶ  
 τῶν |chariot τοῖς |leader ἄλλους τούσδε |tunic ὁ  
 μὲν δὴ ἔφερε λαβών· οἱ δὲ |leader ἐπεὶ ἴδοιεν αὐτόν,  
 ἔλεγον· Μέγας δὴ σύγε, ὦ Φεραύλα, |when γε καὶ ἡμῖν

put the splendid raiment on them. Meanwhile Cyrus summoned Pheraulas, knowing that, while he was a man of the people, he was also quick-witted, a lover of the beautiful, prompt to understand and to obey, and one who had ever an eye to please his master. It was he who had supported Cyrus long ago when he proposed that honour should be given in proportion to desert. And now Cyrus asked him how he thought the procession might be made most beautiful in the eyes of friends and most formidable in the sight of foes. So they took counsel and were of the same mind, and Cyrus bade Pheraulas see that all was done on the morrow as they had agreed.

"I Have issued orders," he added, "for all to obey you in the matter, but to make them the more willing, take these tunics yourself and give them to the captains of the guard, and these military cloaks for the cavalry officers, and these tunics for those who command the chariots."

So Pheraulas took the raiment and departed, and when the generals saw him, they met him with shouts and cries,

*vocabulary***αἵρεσις** -εως (f) choice, plan**γοῦν** at least then**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out**διακονέω** (ᾱ) serve, minister to**διάκονος** (ᾱ, f) servant, attendant**δορυφόρος** spear-bearing**ἔζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**εἴσεμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to ~jet**ἔμπροσθεν** before (time, space)**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐνοχλέω** be annoyed**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
~thesis**ἐντός** within**ἐξέλασις** expulsion; expedition**ἐπιλανθάνω** mp: forget ~Lethe**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἡνίκα** when**κατάρα** curse**κατηγορέω** accuse; indicate**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two**παίω** hit**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae**στοῖχος** row, file**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000 ~kilo-**τιμάω** (i) honor, exalt**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later**φθόνος** malice, envy

τάξεις ἃ ἂν δέῃ ποιεῖν. Οὐ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Φεραύλας, οὐ μόνον γε, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ συσκευοφορήσω· νῦν γοῦν φέρω τῷδε δύο κασᾶ, τὸν μὲν σοί, τὸν δὲ ἄλλω· σὺ μέντοι τούτων λαβὲ ὁπότερον βούλει. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ μὲν λαμβάνων τὸν κασᾶν τοῦ μὲν φθόνου ἐπελέληστο, εὐθὺς δὲ συνεβουλεύετο αὐτῷ ὁπότερον λαμβάνοι· ὁ δὲ συμβουλεύσας ἂν ὁπότερος βελτίων εἴη καὶ εἰπών· Ἦν μου κατηγορήσης ὅτι αἵρεσίν σοι ἔδωκα, εἰς αὖθις ὅταν διακονῶ, ἐτέρῳ χρήσῃ μοι διακόνω· ὁ μὲν δὴ Φεραύλας οὕτω διαδοὺς ἥ ἐτάχθη εὐθὺς ἐπεμελείτο τῶν εἰς τὴν ἐξέλασιν ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἕκαστα ἔξοι.

Ἦνίκα δ' ἡ ὑστεραία ἦκε, καθαρὰ μὲν ἦν πάντα πρὸ ἡμέρας, στοῖχοι δὲ εἰστήκεσαν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῆς ὁδοῦ, ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἔτι ἴστανται ἥ ἂν βασιλεὺς μέλλῃ ἐλαύνειν· ὧν ἐντὸς οὐδενὶ ἔστιν εἰσιέναι τῶν μὴ τετιμημένων· μαστιγοφόροι δὲ καθέστασαν, οἳ ἔπαιον εἴ τις ἐνοχλοίῃ. ἔστασαν δὲ πρῶτον μὲν τῶν δορυφόρων εἰς τετρακισχιλίους ἔμπροσθεν τῶν πυλῶν εἰς τέτταρας,



τάξεις ἂν δέη ποιεῖν. Οὐ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Φεραύλας,  
οὐ μόνον γε, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ συσκευοφορήσω· νῦν  
|at least|then τῷδε δύο κασᾶ, τὸν μὲν σοί, τὸν δὲ ἄλλω·  
σὺ |however| οὐτῶν λαβὲ |which of two,|ύλει. ἐκ τούτου δὴ  
|either of two|  
ὁ μὲν λαμβάνων τὸν κασᾶν τοῦ μὲν |malice, |mp: forget  
|envy|  
εὐθὺς δὲ |give advice;| αὐτῷ |which of two,|μβάνοι· ὁ δὲ  
|(mid) consult|either of two|  
|give advice;| αὐτῷ |which of two,|λτίων εἶη καὶ εἰπών· Ἦν  
|(mid) consult|either of two|  
μου |accuse; indicate| ὅτι |choice, plan| ἔδωκα, εἰς αὐθις ὅταν  
|serve, |, ἐτέρῳ χρήσῃ μοι |servant, ὁ μὲν δὴ Φεραύλας  
|minister|attendant|  
οὕτω |distribute, |, |arrange| εὐθὺς |take care of,| τῶν εἰς τὴν  
|send out|send out|oversee|  
|expulsion;| ὥπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἕκαστα ἔξοι.  
|expedition|  
|when| δ' ἢ |the next; later|, καθαρὰ μὲν ἦν πάντα πρὸ  
ἡμέρας, |row, file| δὲ εἰστήκεσαν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῆς  
ὁδοῦ, ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἔτι ἴστανται ἥ ἂν βασιλεὺς  
μέλλῃ |drive| ὦν |within| οὐδενὶ ἔστιν εἰσιέναι τῶν μὴ  
|honor| μαστιγοφόροι δὲ καθέστασαν, οἱ |hit| εἰ  
τις |be annoyed| ἵστασαν δὲ πρῶτον μὲν τῶν |spear-bearing|eis  
|4000| |before (time, space)|. ἁλῶν εἰς |four|,

"A monstrous fine fellow you are, Pheraulas!" said one: "you are to give us our orders, it seems!"

"Oh, yes," said Pheraulas, "and carry your baggage too. Here I come with two cloaks as it is, one for you and another for somebody else: you must choose whichever you like the best."

At that the officer put out his hand to take the cloak; he had clean forgotten his jealousy, and fell to asking Pheraulas which he had better choose. And Pheraulas gave his advice, adding, "But if you inform against me, and let out that I gave you the choice, the next time I have to wait upon you you will find me a very different sort of serving-man."

Thus he distributed the gifts he brought, and then he saw to the arrangements for the procession so that everything should be as far as possible.

On the morrow all things were ready before day-break, ranks lining the road on either hand, as they do to this day when the king is expected to ride abroad—no one may pass within the lines unless he is a man of mark—and constables were posted with whips, to use at any sign of disturbance.

In front of the palace stood the imperial guard of lancers, four thousand strong, drawn up four

*vocabulary***ἀναπετάννυμι** (ῥ) open wide**ἀριστερός** left-hand**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**βασιλῆιος** kingly**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**διείρομαι** interrogate ~rhetoric**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-**ἐκατέρωθεν** on both sides**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe  
~hegemony**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act,  
uncommon) handle, take care of**ἐσχάρα** hearth**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere**θύμα** -τος (n, 3) victim, sacrifice**χάνδυσ** sleeved jacket**λευκός** white ~light**ὀπίσθεν** behind, hereafter**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just  
~orthogonal**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθῃμι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear  
~photon**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae**στέφω** crown, put around**ταῦρος** bull ~steer**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid**τεχνίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) craftsman**φοινικίς** -δος (f) red or purple cloth**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

δισχίλιοι δ' ἐκατέρωθεν τῶν πυλῶν. καὶ οἱ ἵππεις δὲ  
 πάντες παρήσαν καταβεβηκότες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, καὶ  
 διειρκότες τὰς χεῖρας διὰ τῶν κανδύων, ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν  
 ἔτι διείρουσιν, ὅταν ὀρᾷ βασιλεύς. ἔστασαν δὲ Πέρσαι  
 μὲν ἐκ δεξιᾶς, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι σύμμαχοι ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς τῆς  
 ὁδοῦ, καὶ τὰ ἄρματα ὡσαύτως τὰ ἡμίσεα ἐκατέρωθεν.  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἀνεπετάννυντο αἱ τοῦ βασιλείου πύλαι, πρῶτον μὲν  
 ἤγοντο τῷ Διὶ ταῦροι πάγκαλοι εἰς τέτταρας καὶ οἷς τῶν  
 ἄλλων θεῶν οἱ μάγοι ἐξηγοῦντο· πολὺ γὰρ οἴονται Πέρσαι  
 χρῆναι τοῖς περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς μᾶλλον τεχνίταις χρῆσθαι ἢ  
 περὶ τᾶλλα. μετὰ δὲ τοὺς βοῦς ἵπποι ἤγοντο θῦμα τῷ  
 Ἥλιῳ· μετὰ δὲ τούτους ἐξήγετο ἄρμα λευκὸν χρυσόζυγον  
 ἐστεμμένον Διὸς ἱερόν· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο Ἥλιου ἄρμα λευκόν,  
 καὶ τοῦτο ἐστεμμένον ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο  
 ἄλλο τρίτον ἄρμα ἐξήγετο, φοινικίσι καταπεπταμένοι οἱ  
 ἵπποι, καὶ πῦρ ὀπισθεν αὐτοῦ ἐπ' ἐσχάρας μεγάλης ἄνδρες  
 εἶποντο φέροντες. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἤδη αὐτὸς ἐκ τῶν πυλῶν  
 προυφαίνεται ὁ Κῦρος ἐφ' ἄρματος ὀρθὴν

[2000            δ' |on both sides τῶν πυλῶν. καὶ οἱ ἰππεῖς δὲ  
πάντες παρήσαν καταβεβηκότες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, καὶ  
διειρκότες τὰς χεῖρας διὰ τῶν |sleeved , ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν  
|jacket  
ἐτι διεύρουσιν, ὅταν ὀράῃ βασιλεύς. ἔστασαν δὲ Πέρσαι  
μὲν ἐκ δεξιᾶς, οἳ δὲ ἄλλοι σύμμαχοι ἐξ |left-hand τῆς  
ὁδοῦ, καὶ τὰ |chariot |in the same way |half |on both sides .  
ἐπεὶ δ' |open wide αἱ τοῦ βασιλείου |gate , πρῶτον μὲν  
ἤγοντο τῷ Διὶ ταυροὶ πάγκαλοι εἰς τέτταρας καὶ οἷς τῶν  
ἄλλων θεῶν οἱ μάγοι |lead forth; set ὁλὴ γὰρ οἶονται Πέρσαι  
|out, describe  
χρηναί τοις περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς μάλλον |craftsman χρῆσθαι ἢ  
περὶ τᾶλλα. μετὰ δὲ τοὺς βοῦς ἵπποι ἤγοντο |victim, ἡ  
|sacrifice  
Ἡλίῳ· μετὰ δὲ τούτους |lead out |chariot|white χρυσόζυγον  
|crown, put around. ἑρόν· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο Ἡλίου |char- |white  
|iot  
καὶ τοῦτο |crown, put around. ρ τὸ πρόσθεν· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο  
ἄλλο τρίτον |chariot|lead out , |red or purple cloth |ταμένοι οἱ  
ἵπποι, καὶ πῦρ |behind, ὑποῦ ἐπ' |hearth μεγάλης ἀνδρες  
|hereafter  
εἶποντο φέροντες. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἤδη αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῶν πυλῶν  
|show; pass: appear ἕως ἐφ' |chariot |upright, straight;  
|correct, just

deep on either side of the gates. And all the cavalry were there, the men standing beside their horses, with their hands wrapped in their cloaks, as is the custom to this day for every subject when the king's eye is on him. The Persians stood on the right, and the allies on the left, and the chariots were posted in the same way, half on one side and half on the other. Presently the palace-gates were flung open, and at the head of the procession were led out the bulls for sacrifice, beautiful creatures, four and four together. They were to be offered to Zeus and to any other gods that the Persian priests might name. For the Persians think it of more importance to follow the guidance of the learned in matters pertaining to the gods than in anything else whatever.

After the oxen came horses, an offering to the Sun, then a white chariot with a golden yoke, hung with garlands and dedicated to Zeus, and after that the white car of the Sun, wreathed like the one before it, and then a third chariot, the horses of which were caparisoned with scarlet trappings, and behind walked men carrying fire upon a mighty hearth. And then at last Cyrus himself was seen, coming forth from the gates in his chariot, wearing his tiara on his head, and

*vocabulary*

ἀναξυρίδες Persian pants  
 ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot  
 διακόσιοι (ᾱ) two hundred  
 δισχίλιοι 2000 ~kilo-  
 δορυφόρος spear-bearing  
 εἴτε if, whenever; either/or  
 ἐκατέρωθεν on both sides  
 ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out  
 ~plectrum  
 ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion  
 ἐφέπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
 ἡνίοχος rein holder  
 ἱμάτιον toga, cloth  
 κἀνδύς sleeved jacket  
 κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos  
 μείων less, smaller  
 πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas  
 παράγω deflect; bring forward  
 παρασκευή preparation  
 παρείπον persuade  
 Πέρσης Persian

πορφύρεος purple  
 πορφυρέω heave (like the sea)  
 πορφυροεῖς purple  
 πορφυροῦς purple  
 πρόεimi to have been before, earlier  
 ~ion  
 προηγέομαι go first  
 πρόσθεν before (time, space)  
 προσκυνέω kow tow to; kiss  
 προστίθιμι add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
 σημείον sign  
 σκέλος -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis  
 σκηπτοῦχος scepter-bearer ~scepter  
 συγγενεὺς inborn, kin to  
 συγγενής inborn, kin to  
 τετρακισχίλιοι 4000 ~kilo-  
 τριακόσιοι three hundred ~three  
 χειρίς -δος (ī, f) glove ~chiral  
 χιτὼν -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor  
 χρυσοχάλινος (ōī) gold-bridled

ἔχων τὴν τιάραν καὶ χιτῶνα πορφυροῦν μεσόλευκον ἄλλω  
 δ' οὐκ ἔξεστι μεσόλευκον ἔχειν, καὶ περὶ τοῖς σκέλεσιν  
 ἀναξυρίδας ὑσγίνοβαφεῖς, καὶ κἀνδυν ὀλοπόρφυρον. εἶχε  
 δὲ καὶ διάδημα περὶ τῇ τιάρᾳ· καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς δὲ αὐτοῦ τὸ  
 αὐτὸ τοῦτο σημεῖον εἶχον, καὶ νῦν τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἔχουσι.  
 τὰς δὲ χεῖρας ἔξω τῶν χειρίδων εἶχε. παρωχεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ  
 ἡνίοχος μέγας μὲν, μείων δ' ἐκείνου εἴτε καὶ τῷ ὄντι εἴτε  
 καὶ ὅπως οὖν· μείζων δ' ἐφάνη πολὺ Κῦρος. ἰδόντες δὲ  
 πάντες προσεκύνησαν, εἴτε καὶ ἄρξαι τινὲς κεκελευσμένοι  
 εἴτε καὶ ἐκπλαγέντες τῇ παρασκευῇ καὶ τῷ δόξαι μέγαν τε  
 καὶ καλὸν φανῆναι τὸν Κῦρον. πρόσθεν δὲ Περσῶν οὐδεὶς  
 Κῦρον προσεκύνει. ἐπεὶ δὲ προῆει τὸ τοῦ Κύρου ἄρμα,  
 προηγοῦντο μὲν οἱ τετρακισχίλιοι δορυφόροι, παρείποντο  
 δὲ οἱ δισχίλιοι ἐκατέρωθεν τοῦ ἄρματος· ἐφείποντο δὲ  
 οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν σκηπτοῦχοι ἐφ' ἵππων κεκοσμημένοι σὺν  
 τοῖς παλτοῖς ἀμφὶ τοὺς τριακοσίους. οἱ δ' αὖ τῷ Κύρῳ  
 τρεφόμενοι ἵπποι παρήγοντο χρυσοχάλινι, ράβδω τοῖς  
 ἱματίοις καταπεπταμένοι, ἀμφὶ τοὺς διακοσίους· ἐπὶ δὲ



ἔχων τὴν τιάραν καὶ |tunic πορφυροῦν μεσόλευκον ἄλλω

δ' οὐκ ἔξεστι μεσόλευκον ἔχειν, καὶ περὶ τοῖς |leg

|Persian pants ὑσγινοβαφεῖς, καὶ |sleeved |jacket ὀλοπόρφυρον. εἶχε

δὲ καὶ διάδημα περὶ τῇ τιάρᾳ· καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς δὲ αὐτοῦ τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο σημεῖον εἶχον, καὶ νῦν τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἔχουσι.

τὰς δὲ χεῖρας ἔξω τῶν |glove εἶχε. παρωχεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ

|rein holder ἄγας μὲν, |less, ὃ ἐκείνου εἶτε καὶ τῷ ὄντι εἶτε  
|smaller

καὶ ὁπωσοῦν· μεῖζων δ' ἐφάνη πολὺ Κῦρος. ἰδόντες δὲ πάντες |kow tow to; kiss , εἶτε καὶ ἄρξαι τινὲς κεκελευσμένοι

εἶτε καὶ |panic, be τῇ |preparation καὶ τῷ δόξαι μέγαν τε  
|knocked out

καὶ καλὸν φανῆναι τὸν Κῦρον. πρόσθεν δὲ Περσῶν οὐδεὶς

Κῦρον |kow tow to; kiss ἔειδεν· εἰ δὲ |to have been ἢ Κύρου |chariot  
|before, earlier

|go first μὲν οἱ |4000 |spear-bearing |persuade

δὲ οἱ |2000 |on both sides τοῦ |chariot |ἐφ' ἑμέω?: drive, meet, fol-  
|low; or ἐφ' ἑμέω?: drive,  
οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν |scepter-bearer ἐφ' ἵππων |marshal, array |meet, follow σὺν

τοῖς |shake, ἀμφὶ τοὺς |three hundred οἱ δ' αὖ τῷ Κύρῳ  
|brandish

τρεφόμενοι ἵπποι |deflect; bring |gold-bridled , ῥαβδωτοῖς  
|forward

|toga, καταπεπταμένοι, ἀμφὶ τοὺς |two hundred ἐπὶ δὲ  
|cloth

a purple tunic shot with white, such as none but the king may wear, and trews of scarlet, and a cloak of purple. Round his tiara he wore a diadem, and his kinsmen wore the same, even as the custom is to this day. And the king's hands hung free outside his cloak. Beside him stood a charioteer—he was a tall man, but he seemed to be dwarfed by Cyrus; whether it was really so, or whether there was some artifice at work, Cyrus towered above him. At the sight of the king, the whole company fell on their faces. Perhaps some had been ordered to do this and so set the fashion, or perhaps the multitude were really overcome by the splendour of the pageant and the sight of Cyrus himself, stately and tall and fair. For hitherto none of the Persians had done obeisance to Cyrus.

And now, as the chariot moved onwards, the four thousand lancers went before it, two thousand on either side, and close behind came the mace-bearers, mounted on horseback, with javelins in their hands, three hundred strong. Then the royal steeds were led past, with golden bridles and striped housings, two hundred and more, and then followed two

*vocabulary***ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**διαγγέλλω** send news, proclaim**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-**ἐκατέρωθεν** on both sides**ἵππαρχος** horse-ruling (epithet of Poseidon) ~hippo**μυρίος** (ἑ) 10,000 ~myriad**πάμπολυς** very great**πανταχῇ** everywhere**παρεῖπον** persuade**Πέρσης** Persian**πράξις** -εως (f) result, business  
~practice**σημεῖον** sign**σκηπτουῆχος** scepter-bearer ~scepter**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

τούτοις δισχίλιοι ξυστοφόροι· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἵππεῖς οἱ  
 πρῶτοι γενόμενοι μύριοι, εἰς ἑκατὸν πανταχῇ τεταγμένοι·  
 ἠγείτο δ' αὐτῶν Χρυσάντας· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις μύριοι ἄλλοι  
 Περσῶν ἵππεῖς τεταγμένοι ὡσαύτως, ἠγείτο δ' αὐτῶν  
 Ὑστάσπας· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἄλλοι μύριοι ὡσαύτως, ἠγείτο  
 δ' αὐτῶν Δατάμας· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἄλλοι, ἠγείτο δ'  
 αὐτῶν Γαδάτας· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Μῆδοι ἵππεῖς, ἐπὶ δὲ  
 τούτοις Ἀρμένιοι, μετὰ δὲ τούτους Ὑρκάνιοι, μετὰ δὲ  
 τούτους Καδούσιοι, ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Σάκαι· μετὰ δὲ τοὺς  
 ἱππέας ἄρματα ἐπὶ τεττάρων τεταγμένα, ἠγείτο δ' αὐτῶν  
 Ἀρταβάτας Πέρσης.

Πορευομένου δὲ αὐτοῦ πάμπολλοι ἄνθρωποι παρείποντο  
 ἔξω τῶν σημείων, δεόμενοι Κύρου ἄλλος ἄλλης πράξεως.  
 πέμψας οὖν πρὸς αὐτοὺς τῶν σκηπτούχων τινάς, οἱ  
 παρείποντο αὐτῷ τρεῖς ἑκατέρωθεν τοῦ ἄρματος αὐτοῦ  
 τούτου ἔνεκα τοῦ διαγγέλλειν, ἐκέλευσεν εἰπεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἴ  
 τίς τι αὐτοῦ δέοιτο, διδάσκειν τῶν ἱππάρχων τινὰ ὅ τι τις  
 βούλοιτο, ἐκείνους δ' ἔφη πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐρεῖν. οἱ

τούτοις |2000 ξυστοφόροι· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις |rider οἱ  
 πρῶτοι γενόμενοι μύριοι, εἰς |hundred|every- |arrange  
 |where  
 ἡγείτο δ' αὐτῶν Χρυσάντας· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις μύριοι ἄλλοι  
 Περσῶν |rider |arrange |in the same way ἵτο δ' αὐτῶν  
 Ὑστάσπας· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἄλλοι μύριοι |in the same way ἵτο  
 δ' αὐτῶν Δατάμας· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἄλλοι, ἡγείτο δ'  
 αὐτῶν Γαδάτας· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Μῆδοι |rider , ἐπὶ δὲ  
 τούτοις Ἀρμένιοι, μετὰ δὲ τούτους Ὑρκάνιοι, μετὰ δὲ  
 τούτους Καδούσιοι, ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Σάκαι· μετὰ δὲ τοὺς  
 |rider |chariot ἐπὶ |four |arrange , ἡγείτο δ' αὐτῶν  
 Ἀρταβάτας Πέρσης.

Πορευομένου δὲ αὐτοῦ |very great ἄνθρωποι |persuade  
 ἔξω τῶν |sign , δεόμενοι Κύρου ἄλλος ἄλλης |result,  
 |business  
 πέμψας οὖν πρὸς αὐτοὺς τῶν |scepter-bearer τινάς, οἱ  
 |persuade αὐτῷ |three |on both sides τοῦ |chariot αὐτοῦ  
 τούτου |because, that|send news, proclaim ἵσεν εἰπεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἴ  
 τίς τι αὐτοῦ δέοιτο, |teach τῶν |horse-ruling τινὰ ὅτι τις  
 βούλοιτο, ἐκείνους δ' ἔφη πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐρεῖν. οἱ

thousand spearmen and after them the squadron of cavalry first formed, ten thousand men, a hundred deep and a hundred riding abreast, with Chrysantas at their head. And behind them the second body of the Persian horse, ten thousand more, in the same order, under Hystaspas, and then again ten thousand under Datamas, and others behind them under Gادات. And after them the Median cavalry, and then the Armenians, the Hyrcanians, the Cadousians, and the Sakians in their order; and after the cavalry a squadron of war-chariots, drawn up four deep, with Artabatas the Persian in command.

All along the route thousands of men followed, outside the barriers, with petitions to Cyrus. Accordingly he sent his mace-bearers, who rode beside him for the purpose, three on either side of his chariot, bidding them tell the crowd of suitors, if they had need of anything, to acquaint one of the cavalry officers and he

*vocabulary***διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
~practice**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἐνδείκνυμι** (ὧ) address, consider**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**κοινός** communal, ordinary**κράτος** strength, power; victory  
~democracy**παρείπον** persuade**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
come in**προσέχω** direct to; think about**σκηπτοῦχος** scepter-bearer ~scepter**σφόδρα** very much**ὑπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**ὑποπέμπω** send to, send secretly**ὕστερον** later

μὲν δὴ ἀπιόντες εὐθὺς κατὰ τοὺς ἱππέας ἐπορεύοντο  
 καὶ ἐβουλευόντο τίνι ἕκαστος προσίοι. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος οὖς  
 ἐβούλετο μάλιστα θεραπεύεσθαι τῶν φίλων ὑπὸ τῶν  
 ἀνθρώπων, τούτους πέμπων τινὰ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐκάλει καθ'  
 ἓνα ἕκαστον καὶ ἔλεγεν αὐτοῖς οὕτως· Ἦν τις ὑμᾶς  
 διδάσκη τι τούτων τῶν παρεπομένων, ὃς μὲν ἂν μηδὲν  
 δοκῇ ὑμῖν λέγειν, μὴ προσέχετε αὐτῷ τὸν νοῦν· ὃς δ'  
 ἂν δικαίων δεῖσθαι δοκῇ, εἰσαγγέλλετε πρὸς ἐμέ, ἵνα  
 κοινῇ βουλευόμενοι διαπράττωμεν αὐτοῖς. οἱ μὲν δὴ  
 ἄλλοι, ἐπεὶ καλέσειεν, ἀνὰ κράτος ἐλαύνοντες ὑπήκουον,  
 συναύζοντες τὴν ἀρχὴν τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ ἐνδεικνύμενοι ὅτι  
 σφόδρα πείθονται· Δαϊφέρηνς δέ τις ἦν σολοικότερος  
 ἄνθρωπος τῷ τρόπῳ, ὃς ᾔετο, εἰ μὴ ταχὺ ὑπακούοι,  
 ἐλευθερώτερος ἂν φαίνεσθαι. αἰσθόμενος οὖν ὁ Κῦρος  
 τοῦτο, πρὶν προσελθεῖν αὐτὸν καὶ διαλεχθῆναι αὐτῷ  
 ὑποπέμψας τινὰ τῶν σκηπτούχων εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε πρὸς  
 αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐδὲν ἔτι δέοιτο· καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν οὐκ ἐκάλει. ὥς  
 δ' ὁ ὕστερον κληθεὶς αὐτοῦ πρότερος αὐτῷ προσήλασεν,



μὲν δὴ |be absent, go away, return| ἰθὺς κατὰ τοὺς |rider| ἐπορεύοντο  
 καὶ |(mp)| to deliberate· ἕκαστος προσίοι. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος οὗς  
 ἐβούλετο μάλιστα |help, serve| τῶν φίλων ὑπὸ τῶν  
 ἀνθρώπων, τούτους πέμπων τινὰ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐκάλει καθ'  
 ἓνα ἕκαστον καὶ ἔλεγεν αὐτοῖς οὕτως· Ἦν τις ὑμᾶς  
 |teach| τι τούτων τῶν |persuade|, ὃς μὲν ἂν μηδὲν  
 δοκῇ ὑμῖν λέγειν, μὴ |direct to; think about| αὐτῷ τὸν νοῦν· ὃς δ'  
 ἂν δικαίων δεῖσθαι δοκῇ, εἰσαγγέλλετε πρὸς ἐμέ, ἵνα  
 κοινῇ |(mp)| to deliberate-|travel over, accomplish| αὐτοῖς. οἱ μὲν δὴ  
 ἄλλοι, ἐπεὶ καλέσειεν, ἀνὰ |strength, |drive| |listen,|  
 |power;| |reply|  
 |victory| συναύξοντες τὴν ἀρχὴν τῷ Κūrῳ καὶ |address, consider| ὅτι  
 |very much| εἴθουντο· Δαϊφέρηνς δέ τις ἦν σολικότερος  
 ἄνθρωπος τῷ |turn; mann̄er, |kind, fashion| ἔμετο, εἰ μὴ ταχὺ |listen, |reply|  
 |not enslaved| ἂν φαίνεσθαι. |perceive| οὖν ὁ Κῦρος  
 τοῦτο, |before, |come forward, sur-`ν καὶ |go through, debate| ᾧ  
 |for-| |render, come in|  
 |merly;|  
 |send to, secretly| negated: τῶν |scepter-bearer| εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε πρὸς  
 αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐδὲν ἔτι δέοιτο· καὶ τὸ |left over| λῦκ ἐκάλει. ὥς  
 δ' ὁ ὕστερον κληθεὶς αὐτοῦ πρότερος αὐτῷ |go to, approach|

would speak for them. So the petitioners withdrew, and fell to marching along the lines of the cavalry, considering whom they should address. Cyrus meanwhile would send messengers to the friends he wished to be courted, saying to them, "If any man appeals to you and you think nothing of what he says, pay no heed to him, but if his request seems just, report it to me, and we will discuss it together and arrange matters for him." As a rule the officers so summoned did not loiter, but dashed up at full speed, glad to enhance the authority of Cyrus and to show their own allegiance. But there was a certain Daïpharnes, a person of somewhat boorish manners, who fancied that he would make a show of greater independence if he did not hurry himself. Cyrus noted this, and quietly, before the man could reach him, sent another messenger to say he had no further need of him; and that was the last time Daïpharnes was ever summoned. And when the next officer rode up, in front of

*vocabulary***ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail**δείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out**δρόμος** running, racing ground

~hippodrome

**ἐγγύς** near**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐντιμος** (ἱ) honored**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe

~hegemony

**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go

searching through

**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere**ἥρως** hero ~hero**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**θύω** (ὁ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman**ἵππαρχος** horse-ruling (epithet of

Poseidon) ~hippo

**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**κράτος** strength, power; victory

~democracy

**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's responsibility**νεανίσκος** (ᾱ) young man**ὅλοκαυτέω** bring a whole offering**ὅποι** to which place**παρεῖπον** persuade**Πέρσης** Persian**σάκος** shield, hide, sack**σκηπτουχός** scepter-bearer ~scepter**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**σφάζω** cut the throat**ταῦρος** bull ~steer**τέμενος** -εος (n, 3) non-common land**τέρμα** -τος (n, 3) mark, turn-around point**φυλον** race, tribe, class ~phylum**χωρίον** area; downwards

ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἵππον αὐτῷ ἔδωκε τῶν παρεπομένων καὶ ἐκέλευσε τῶν σκηπτούχων τινὰ συναπαγαγεῖν αὐτῷ ὅποι κελεύσειε. τοῖς δὲ ἰδοῦσιν ἔντιμόν τι τοῦτο ἔδοξεν εἶναι, καὶ πολὺ πλείονες ἐκ τούτου αὐτὸν ἐθεράπευον ἀνθρώπων.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὰ τεμένη, ἔθυσαν τῷ Διὶ καὶ ὠλοκαύτησαν τοὺς ταύρους· ἔπειτα τῷ Ἥλιῳ καὶ ὠλοκαύτησαν τοὺς ἵππους· ἔπειτα Γῇ σφάξαντες ὥς ἐξηγήσαντο οἱ μάγοι ἐποίησαν· ἔπειτα δὲ ἥρωσι τοῖς Συρίαν ἔχουσι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα καλοῦ ὄντος τοῦ χωρίου ἔδειξε τέρμα ὥς ἐπὶ πέντε σταδίων χωρίου, καὶ εἶπε κατὰ φύλα ἀνὰ κράτος ἐνταῦθα ἀφεῖναι τοὺς ἵππους. σὺν μὲν οὖν τοῖς Πέρσαις αὐτὸς ἤλασε καὶ ἐνίκα πολὺ· μάλιστα γὰρ ἐμεμελήκει αὐτῷ ἱππικῆς· Μήδων δὲ Ἀρτάβαζος ἐνίκα· Κῦρος γὰρ αὐτῷ τὸν ἵππον ἐδεδώκει· Σύρων δὲ τῶν ἀποστάντων Γαδάτας· Ἀρμενίων δὲ Τιγράνης· Ὑρκανίων δὲ ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ ἱππάρχου· Σακῶν δὲ ἰδιώτης ἀνὴρ ἀπέλιπεν ἄρα τῷ ἵππῳ τοὺς ἄλλους ἵππους ἐγγὺς τῷ ἡμίσει τοῦ δρόμου. ἔνθα δὴ λέγεται ὁ Κῦρος ἐρέσθαι τὸν νεανίσκον εἰ

ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἵππον αὐτῷ ἔδωκε τῶν |persuade καὶ  
 ἐκέλευσε τῶν |scepter-bearer τινὰ συναπαγαγεῖν αὐτῷ |to which place  
 κελεύσειε. τοῖς δὲ ἰδοῦσιν |honored τι τοῦτο ἔδοξεν εἶναι, καὶ  
 πολὺ πλείονες ἐκ τούτου αὐτὸν |help, serve ἀνθρώπων.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὰ , τῷ Διὶ  
 καὶ τοὺς |non-common |rush; sacrifice καὶ  
 |bring a whole offering; ἵππον |bull |land ἔπειτα Γῇ ὥς  
 |bring a whole offering; μάγοι ἐποίησαν· ἔπειτα |cut the throat ὥς  
 |lead forth; set out, describe τι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα καλοῦ ὄντος |hero  
 ὥς ἐπὶ πέντε σταδίων , καὶ εἰς |area; downwards

|show |mark, turn-around point ἀφείναι |area; downwards ὃν μὲν  
 |race, tribe, class ὥς |strength, power; victory |there, here ἔλασε καὶ ἐνίκα πολὺ· μάλιστα  
 γὰρ αὐτῷ · Μήδων δὲ Ἀρτάβαζος

ἐνίκα |be in/on the mind, of horses ἔδεδώκει· Σύρων δὲ τῶν  
 ἀποστάντων Γαδάτας· Ἀρμενίων δὲ Τιγράνης· Ὑρκανίων  
 δὲ ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ · δὲ ἀνὴρ ἀπέλιπεν

ἄρα τῷ ἵππῳ |horse-ruling |shield, hide, sack |private; a layman τοῦ  
 . ἔνθα δὲ λέγεται ὁ Κῦρος |near τὸν |half

|running |ask, search |young man  
 through

Daïpharnes though sent for after him, Cyrus presented him with a horse from his train and bade one of the mace-bearers lead it wherever he wished. The people saw in this a high mark of honour; and a greater crowd than ever paid their court to the favoured man.

When the procession reached the sacred precincts, sacrifice was offered to Zeus, a whole burnt-offering of bulls, and a whole burnt-offering of horses to the Sun; and then they sacrificed to the Earth, slaying the victims as the Persian priests prescribed, and then to the heroes who hold the Syrian land. And when the rites were done, Cyrus, seeing that the ground was suitable for racing, marked out a goal, and a course half-a-mile in length, and bade the cavalry and the chariots match their horses against each other, tribe by tribe. He himself raced among his Persians, and won with ease, for he was far the best horseman there. The winner among the Medes was Artabazus, the horse he rode being a gift from Cyrus. The Syrian race was won by their chieftain, the Armenian by Tigranes, the Hyrcanian by the general's son, and the Sakian by a private soldier who left all his rivals half the course behind him.

Cyrus, so the story says, asked the young man

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀναβλέπω** look up; gain sight, open

one's eyes

**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**βασιλεις** kingly**βῶλος** (f) clod**δείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out**ἔρωτάω** ask about something**κατατίθηναι** put down, deposit, lay

aside ~thesis

**μεταστρέφω** turn around, change

one's mind ~atrophy

**μύω** close**ναί** yea**νεανίσκος** (ἄ) young man**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὅπου** where**πάντως** by all means**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch

~skeptical

**τοίνυν** well, then

δέξαιτ' ἂν βασιλείαν ἀντὶ τοῦ ἵππου. τὸν δ' ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅτι βασιλείαν μὲν οὐκ ἂν δεξαίμην, χάριν δὲ ἀνδρὶ ἀγαθῷ καταθέσθαι δεξαίμην ἄν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Καὶ μὴν ἐγὼ δείξαί σοι θέλω ἔνθα κἂν μύων βάλης, οὐκ ἂν ἀμάρτοις ἀνδρὸς ἀγαθοῦ. Πάντως τοίνυν, ὁ Σάκας ἔφη, δείξόν μοι· ὡς βαλῶ γε ταύτῃ τῇ βώλῳ, ἔφη ἀνελόμενος. καὶ ὁ μὲν Κῦρος δείκνυσιν αὐτῷ ὅπου ἦσαν πλείστοι τῶν φίλων· ὁ δὲ καταμύων ἴησι τῇ βώλῳ καὶ παρελαύνοντος Φεραύλα τυγχάνει· ἔτυχε γὰρ ὁ Φεραύλας παραγγέλλων τι τακτὸς παρὰ τοῦ Κύρου· βληθεὶς δὲ οὐδὲ μετεστράφη, ἀλλ' ὥχετο ἐφ' ὅπερ ἐτάχθη. ἀναβλέψας δὲ ὁ Σάκας ἐρωτᾷ τίνος ἔτυχεν. Οὐ μὰ τὸν Δί', ἔφη, οὐδενὸς τῶν παρόντων. Ἄλλ' οὐ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ νεανίσκος, τῶν γε ἀπόντων. Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, σύγε ἐκείνου τοῦ παρὰ τὰ ἄρματα ταχὺ ἐλαύνοντος τὸν ἵππον. Καὶ πῶς, ἔφη, οὐδὲ μεταστρέφεται; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη· Μαινόμενος γάρ τίς ἐστιν, ὡς ἔοικεν. ἀκούσας ὁ νεανίσκος ὥχετο σκεψόμενος τίς εἴη· καὶ εὕρισκει τὸν Φεραύλαν γῆς τε



δέξαιτ' ἂν βασιλείαν ἀντὶ τοῦ ἵππου. τὸν δ' ἀποκρίνασθαι

ὅτι βασιλείαν μὲν οὐκ ἂν δεξαίμην, χάριν δὲ ἀνδρὶ ἀγαθῷ

|put down δεξαίμην ἄν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Καὶ μὴν ἐγὼ

|show σοι θέλω ἔνθα κἂν |close βάλῃς, οὐκ ἂν |miss, fail,  
|lose; sin

ἀνδρὸς ἀγαθοῦ. |by all|well, then ὁ Σάκας ἔφη, |show  
|means

μοι· ὡς βαλῶ γε ταύτῃ τῇ |clod , ἔφη |take up . καὶ

ὁ μὲν Κῦρος |show αὐτῷ |where ἦσαν πλείστοι τῶν

φίλων· ὁ δὲ καταμύων ἦσι τῇ |clod καὶ |pass, outstrip

Φεραύλα τυγχάνει· ἔτυχε γὰρ ὁ Φεραύλας |transmit; order, summon,  
|recommend, encourage

τι τακτὸς παρὰ τοῦ Κύρου· βληθεὶς δὲ οὐδὲ |turn around, change  
|one's mind

ἀλλ' |come, go ὅφ' ὅπερ |arrange . |look up; gain sight, Σάκας  
|open one's eyes

|ask τίνος ἔτυχεν. Οὐ μὰ τὸν Δί', ἔφη, οὐδενὸς τῶν

παρόντων. Ἄλλ' οὐ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ |young man, τῶν γε

|be absent, go|yea μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, σύγε ἐκείνου τοῦ  
|away, return

παρὰ τὰ |chariot ταχὺ ἐλαύνοντος τὸν ἵππον. Καὶ πῶς,

ἔφη, οὐδὲ |turn around, change αὐτὸν ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη· Μαινόμενος  
|one's mind

γάρ τίς ἐστιν, ὡς ἔοικεν. ἀκούσας ὁ |young man |come, go

|look, look at, watch...· καὶ εὕρισκε τὸν Φεραύλαν γῆς τε

if he would take a kingdom for his horse.

"No kingdom for me," answered the soldier, "but I would take the thanks of a gallant fellow."

"Well," said Cyrus, "I would like to show you where you could hardly fail to hit one, even if you shut your eyes."

"Be so good as to show me now," said the Sakian, "and I will take aim with this clod," picking up one from the ground.

Then Cyrus pointed to a group of his best friends, and the other shut his eyes and flung the clod, and it struck Pheraulas as he galloped by, bearing some message from Cyrus. But he never so much as turned, flashing past on his errand. Then the Sakian opened his eyes and asked whom he had hit?

"Nobody, I assure you," said Cyrus, "who is here."

"And nobody who is not, of course," said the young man.

"Oh yes, you did," answered Cyrus, "you hit that officer over there who is riding so swiftly paste the chariot-lines."

"And how is it," asked the other, "that he does not even turn his head?"

"Half-witted, probably," said Cyrus.

Whereat the young man rode off to see who it was, and found Pheraulas, with his chin

*vocabulary***ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἄρnuμαι** get, win**βασιλεις** kingly**γένειον** chin; beard ~chin**δείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out**διαλλάσσω** exchange; differ; reconcile**διατάσσω** arrange, array**διηγέομαι** detail, describe**δωρεά** gift**ἔκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup**ἔλασις** -εως (f) driving out**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπεύχομαι** exult (over); pray ~vow**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through**ἐστιάω** give a feast**θύω** (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**μεταμέλομαι** (impers.+dat.) cause regret to; (mp) regret**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**ῥινός** (ī, f) skin, leather, shield**ῥίς ῥινός** (ī, f) nose, nostrils**τοίνυν** well, then

κατάπλεων τὸ γένειον καὶ αἵματος· ἐρρύνῃ γὰρ αὐτῷ ἐκ  
τῆς ῥινὸς βληθέντι. ἐπεὶ δὲ προσήλθεν, ἤρετο αὐτὸν εἰ  
βληθείῃ. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ὡς ὀράς. Δίδωμι τοίνυν σοι,  
ἔφη, τοῦτον τὸν ἵππον. ὁ δ' ἐπήρετο· Ἀντὶ τοῦ; ἐκ τούτου  
δὴ διηγείτο ὁ Σάκας τὸ πρᾶγμα, καὶ τέλος εἶπε· Καὶ  
οἶμαί γε οὐχ ἡμαρτηκέναι ἀνδρὸς ἀγαθοῦ. καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας  
εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ πλουσιωτέρῳ μὲν ἄν, εἰ ἐσωφρόνεις, ἢ ἐμοὶ  
ἐδίδους· νῦν δὲ κἀγὼ δέξομαι. ἐπεύχομαι δέ, ἔφη, τοῖς  
θεοῖς, οὔτε με ἐποίησαν βληθῆναι ὑπὸ σοῦ, δοῦναί μοι  
ποιῆσαι μὴ μεταμέλειν σοι τῆς ἐμῆς δωρεᾶς. καὶ νῦν  
μέν, ἔφη, ἀπέλα, ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἐμὸν ἵππον· αὐθις δ'  
ἐγὼ παρέσομαι πρὸς σέ. οἱ μὲν δὴ οὕτω διηλλάξαντο.  
Καδουσίῳ δὲ ἐνίκα Ῥαθίνῃς. ἀφίει δὲ καὶ τὰ ἄρματα  
καθ' ἕκαστον· τοῖς δὲ νικῶσι πᾶσιν ἐδίδου βούς τε, ὅπως  
ἂν θύσαντες ἐστιῶντο, καὶ ἐκπώματα. τὸν μὲν οὖν βούν  
ἔλαβε καὶ αὐτὸς τὸ νικητήριον· τῶν δ' ἐκπωμάτων τὸ  
αὐτοῦ μέρος Φεραύλα ἔδωκεν, ὅτι καλῶς ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ τὴν  
ἐκ τοῦ βασιλείου ἔλασιν διατάξαι. οὕτω δὴ τότε ὑπὸ

κατάπλεων τὸ |chin; καὶ |blood |flow γὰρ αὐτῷ ἐκ  
|beard  
τῆς ῥινὸς βληθέντι. ἐπεὶ δὲ |come forward, sur- αὐτὸν εἰ  
|render, come in  
βληθείη. ὁ δὲ |to separate; reject; (mp) answer, de- well, then ι,  
|fend oneself  
ἔφη, τοῦτον τὸν ἵππον. ὁ δ' |ask as well; for, equivalent to - ἵτου  
|ask then  
δὴ |detail, ὁ Σάκας τὸ |deed, fact, thing, lend εἶπε· Καὶ  
|describe |affair; difficulty  
οἰμαί γε οὐχ |miss, fail, lose; ἀνδρὸς ἀγαθοῦ. καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας  
|sin  
εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ |wealth μὲν ἄν, εἰ ἐσωφρόνεις, ἢ ἐμοὶ  
ἐδίδους· νῦν δὲ καγὼ δέξομαι. |exult (over); pray ῥη, τοῖς  
θεοῖς, οἵπερ με ἐποίησαν βληθῆναι ὑπὸ σοῦ, δοῦναί μοι  
ποιῆσαι μὴ μεταμέλειν σοι τῆς ἐμῆς |gift καὶ νῦν  
μέν, ἔφη, ἀπέλα, |go up, embark ὃν ἐμὸν ἵππον· |back, again,  
|moreover  
ἐγὼ παρέσομαι πρὸς σέ. οἱ μὲν δὲ οὕτω |exchange; dif-  
|fer; reconcile  
Καδουσίων δὲ |win, defeat ἴνης. |throw, release, τὰ |chariot  
|use up  
καθ' ἕκαστον· τοῖς δὲ |win, defeat τιν ἐδίδου |cow, ox; shield  
ἂν |rush; sacri- give a feast καὶ |drinking cup τὸν μὲν οὖν |cow, ox; shield  
|fice  
ἔλαβε καὶ αὐτὸς τὸ νικητήριον· τῶν δ' |drinking cup τὸ  
αὐτοῦ μέρος Φεραύλα ἔδωκεν, ὅτι καλῶς ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ τὴν  
ἐκ τοῦ βασιλείου |driving |arrange, οὕτω δὲ τότε ὑπὸ  
|out |array

and beard all begrimed and bloody, gore trickling from his nostrils were the clod had struck him. The Sakian cried out to know if he was hit.

"As you see," answered Pheraulas.

"Then," said the other, "let me give you my horse."

"But why?" asked Pheraulas.

And so the Sakian had to tell him all about the matter, adding, "And after all, you see, I did not miss a gallant fellow."

"Ah," said Pheraulas, "if you had been wise, you would have chosen a richer one; but I take your gift with all my thanks. And I pray the gods," he added, "who let me be your target, to help me now and see that you may never regret your gift. For the present, mount my horse yourself and ride back; I will be with you shortly."

So they exchanged steeds and parted.

The winner of the Cadousian race was Rathines.

Then followed chariot-races, tribe by tribe as before: and to all the winners Cyrus gave goblets of price, and oxen, that they might have the wherewithal for sacrifice and feasting. He himself took an ox for his own meed, but he gave all the goblets to Pheraulas to show his approval of the arrangements for the march. And the manner of that procession, then first

*vocabulary***ἀγρός** field, wild ~agriculture**ἀεργός** lazy ~ergonomics**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἀργός** glistening, swift**δειπνέω** eat, dine**διαμένω** continue, persevere**δωρέω** give ~donate**ἐκπλεως** full of, abundant**ἐκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup**ἐλασισ** -εως (f) driving out**ἐμπίμπλημι** fill with**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**κατασκευή** fixed assets; condition**μειράκιον** youngster**ξενίζω** be host, treat as a guest

~xenophobe

**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house  
slave**οἴκοι** at home ~economics**παιδεία** child-rearing, education**παιδεύω** raise; train**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat**ποῖος** what kind**σαφής** clear, understandable**σκηνέω** camp**στρωμνή** bed, bedding**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit

Κύρου κατασταθείσα ἡ βασιλέως ἑλασις οὕτως ἔτι καὶ νῦν διαμένει, πλὴν τὰ ἱερὰ ἄπεςτιν, ὅταν μὴ θύῃ. ὥς δὲ ταῦτα τέλος εἶχεν, ἀφικνουῦνται πάλιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν, οἷς μὲν ἐδόθησαν οἰκίαι, κατ' οἰκίας, οἷς δὲ μή, ἐν τάξει.

Καλέσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας τὸν Σάκαν τὸν δόντα τὸν ἵππον ἐξένιζε, καὶ τὰλλά τε παρείχεν ἑκπλεω, καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐδεδειπνήκεσαν, τὰ ἐκπώματα αὐτῷ ᾧ ἔλαβε παρὰ Κύρου ἐμπιμπλὰς προῦπινε καὶ ἐδωρεῖτο. καὶ ὁ Σάκας ὁρῶν πολλὴν μὲν καὶ καλὴν στρωμνὴν, πολλὴν δὲ καὶ καλὴν κατασκευὴν, καὶ οἰκέτας δὲ πολλούς, Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Φεραύλα, ἦ καὶ οἵκοι τῶν πλουσίων ἦσθα; καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας εἶπε· Ποίων πλουσίων; τῶν μὲν οὖν σαφῶς ἀποχειροβιώτων. ἐμὲ γάρ τοι ὁ πατὴρ τὴν μὲν τῶν παιδῶν παιδείαν γλίσχρως αὐτὸς ἐργαζόμενος καὶ τρέφων ἐπαίδευεν· ἐπεὶ δὲ μεράκιον ἐγενόμην, οὐ δυνάμενος τρέφειν ἀργόν, εἰς ἀγρόν ἀπαγαγὼν ἐκέλευσεν ἐργάζεσθαι. ἔνθα δὴ ἐγὼ ἀντέτρεφον ἐκεῖνον, ἕως ἔζη,



Κύρου κατασταθεῖσα ἡ βασιλέως |driving out| ὥς ἔτι καὶ  
 νῦν |continue, , |except γὰ ἱερά |be absent, ᾧ αν μὴ |rush; sacrifice  
 |persevere |away, return  
 ταῦτα τέλος εἶχεν, |arrive πάλιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ  
 |camp , οἷς μὲν ἐδόθησαν οἰκίαι, κατ' οἰκίας, οἷς δὲ μή,  
 ἐν τάξει.

Καλέσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας τὸν Σάκαν τὸν δόντα  
 τὸν ἵππον |be host , καὶ τὰλλά τε παρέιχεν |full of, abundant  
 ἐπεὶ |eat, dine , τὰ |drinking cup ὑπὸ ᾧ ἔλαβε παρὰ  
 Κύρου |fill with πρὸς πίνακα καὶ ἐδωρεῖτο. καὶ ὁ Σάκας  
 ὀρών πολλὴν μὲν καὶ καλὴν |bed, bedding πολλὴν δὲ καὶ  
 καλὴν |fixed assets; , καὶ |household; ἡ πολλούς, Εἰπέ μοι,  
 |condition |house slave  
 ἔφη, ὦ Φεραύλα, ἡ καὶ |at home ὧν |wealth ἦσθα;  
 καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας εἶπε· |what |wealth , τῶν μὲν οὖν  
 |kind  
 |clear, under- ἱχειροβιῶτων. ἐμὲ γάρ τοι ὁ πατήρ τὴν  
 |standable  
 μὲν τῶν παίδων |child-rearing; ἡσχρως αὐτὸς |work  
 |education  
 καὶ |nurture |raise; train ἐπεὶ δὲ |youngster ἐγενόμην, οὐ  
 δυνάμενος |nurture ἀργόν, εἰς |field, |lead away, back ἡλευσεν  
 |wild  
 |work . ἔνθα δὲ ἐγὼ ἀντέτρεφον ἐκείνον, ἕως ἔζη,

established by Cyrus, continues to this day, the same in all things, save that the victims are absent when there is no sacrifice. And when it was over, the soldiers went back to the city, and took up their quarters for the night, some in houses and some with their regiments.

Now Pheraulas had invited the Sakian who had given him the horse, and he entertained him with the best he had, and set before him a full board, and after they had dined he filled the goblets Cyrus had given him, and drank to his guest, and offered them all to him. And the Sakian looked round on the rich and costly rugs, and the beautiful furniture, and the train of servants, and cried:

”Tell me, Pheraulas, do you belong to wealthy folk at home?”

”Wealthy folk indeed!” cried Pheraulas, ”men who live by their hands, you mean. My father, I can tell you, had work enough to rear me and get me a boy’s schooling; he had to toil hard and live sparely, and when I grew to be a lad he could not afford to keep me idle, he took me to a farm in the country and set me there to work it. Then it was my turn, and I supported

*vocabulary*

**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**γενναιότης** -τος (f) nobility; (land)  
 fertility  
**διανέμω** distribute, divide  
**διπλάσιος** twofold, double  
**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit  
 up ~sit  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἱατρός** (ἄ) physician  
**ἱμάτιον** toga, cloth  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**κερδαίνω** profit, take advantage  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess  
**μακάριος** blessed  
**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, f) household; house

slave

**οἴκοι** at home ~economics  
**πεινάω** be hungry  
**πένης** -τος (m) poor  
**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**πλουτέω** be rich  
**πότε** when?  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σκάπτω** dig  
**σπεῖρον** clothing, shroud, sail  
**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora  
**τόκος** childbirth ~oxytocin  
**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's  
 support, seize; speak up; imagine  
 ~epilepsy

αὐτὸς σκάπτων καὶ σπείρων καὶ μάλα μικρὸν γήδιον, οὐ μέντοι πονηρόν γε, ἀλλὰ πάντων δικαιοτάτον· ὃ τι γὰρ λάβοι σπέρμα, καλῶς καὶ δικαίως ἀπεδίδου αὐτό τε καὶ τόκον οὐδέν τι πολύν· ἤδη δέ ποτε ὑπὸ γενναιότητος καὶ διπλάσια ἀπέδωκεν ὧν ἔλαβεν. οἴκοι μὲν οὖν ἔγωγε οὕτως ἔζων· νῦν δὲ ταῦτα πάντα ἃ ὀρέῃς Κύρος μοι ἔδωκε. καὶ ὁ Σάκας εἶπεν· ὦ μακάριε σὺ τά τε ἄλλα καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ὅτι ἐκ πένητος πλούσιος γεγένησαι· πολὺ γὰρ οἴομαί σε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἥδιον πλουτεῖν ὅτι πεινήσας χρημάτων ἐπλούτησας. καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας εἶπεν· Ἡ γὰρ οὕτως, ὦ Σάκα, ὑπολαμβάνεις ὥς ἐγὼ νῦν τοσούτῳ ἥδιον ζῶ ὅσῳ πλείω κέκτημαι; οὐκ οἶσθα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐσθίω μὲν καὶ πίνω καὶ καθεύδω οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν νῦν ἥδιον ἢ τότε ὅτε πένης ἦν· ὅτι δὲ ταῦτα πολλὰ ἐστί, τοσοῦτον κερδαίνω, πλείω μὲν φυλάττειν δεῖ, πλείω δὲ ἄλλοις διανέμειν, πλειόνων δὲ ἐπιμελούμενον πράγματα ἔχειν. νῦν γὰρ δὴ ἐμὲ πολλοὶ μὲν οἰκέται σῖτον αἰτοῦσι, πολλοὶ δὲ πιεῖν, πολλοὶ δὲ ἱμάτια· οἱ δὲ ἰατρῶν δέονται· ἥκει

αὐτὸς |dig καὶ σπείρων καὶ μάλα μικρὸν γήδιον, οὐ  
 μέντοι |oppressed; knav- ἵλλα πάντων δικαιοτάτον· ὅ τι γὰρ  
 |ish; useless  
 λάβοι |seed , καλῶς καὶ δικαίως |repay αὐτό τε καὶ  
 |childbirth ἵέν τι πολύν· ἤδη δέ ποτε ὑπὸ |nobility; (land) καὶ  
 |fertility  
 |twofold, |repay ὧν ἔλαβεν. |at home ὡς οὖν ἔγωγε οὕτως  
 |double  
 ἕζων· νῦν δὲ ταῦτα πάντα ἃ ὀρέσκει Κῦρός μοι ἔδωκε. καὶ  
 ὁ Σάκας εἶπεν· ὦ |blessed σὺ τά τε ἄλλα καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο  
 ὅτι ἐκ |poor |wealth γεγένησαι· πολὺ γὰρ οἶομαί σε  
 καὶ διὰ τοῦτο |sweet |be rich ὅτι πεινήσας χρημάτων  
 |be rich . καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας εἶπεν· Ἡ γὰρ οὕτως, ὦ  
 Σάκα, |take under one's support, νῦν τοσοῦτω |sweet ζῶ ὅσῳ  
 |seize; speak up; imagine  
 πλείω |acquire , οὐκ οἶσθα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐσθίω μὲν καὶ πίνω  
 καὶ |lie down οὐδ' ὅτι οὖν νῦν |sweet ἢ τότε ὅτε |poor ἦν·  
 ὅτι δὲ ταῦτα πολλὰ ἐστί, τοσοῦτον |profit, take, πλείω μὲν  
 |advantage  
 φυλάττειν δεῖ, πλείω δὲ ἄλλοις |distribute, , πλείονων δὲ  
 |divide  
 |take care of, πράγματα ἔχειν. νῦν γὰρ δὴ ἐμὲ πολλοὶ  
 |oversee  
 μὲν |house- |grain, |ask for , πολλοὶ δὲ πιεῖν, πολλοὶ δὲ  
 |hold; |bread,  
 |house- |food  
 |toga, |slave οἱ δὲ |physician ἵέονται· ἥκει  
 |cloth

him while he lived, digging with my own hands and sowing the seed in a ridiculous little plot of ground, and yet it was not a bad bit of soil either, but as good and as honest earth as ever you saw: whatever seed it got from me, it paid me back again, and so prettily and carefully and duly, principal and interest both; not that the interest was very much, I won't say it was, though once or twice, out of pure generosity, that land gave me twice as much as I put into it. That's how I used to live at home, in the old days: to-day it's different, and all that you see here I owe to Cyrus."

Then the Sakian cried:

"O Lucky fellow! Lucky in everything, and most of all in coming to wealth from beggary! I know your riches must taste the sweeter, because you hungered for them first and now are full."

But Pheraulas answered:

"Do you really think, my friend, that my joy in life has grown with the growth of my wealth? Do you not know," he went on, "that I neither eat nor drink nor sleep with any more zest than I did when I was poor? What I get by all these goods is simply this: I have more to watch over, more to distribute, and more trouble in looking after more. I have a host of servants now, one set asking me for food, another for drink, another for clothing, and some must have the doctor, and then a herdsman comes, carrying

*vocabulary***ἀγρυπνέω** lie awake**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀνιάρως** (αἶ) troublesome, tiresome**ἀνιάω** (ἱ) vex**ἀποβάλλω** throw away, lose**βοά** din, a shout**βοάω** shout**βοεΐη** shield; leather, bovine**βόειος** shield; leather, bovine ~bovine**βοεύς** βοῦος (m) leather rope ~bovine**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡδονή** pleasure**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**καθεύδω** lie down**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal**λυπέω** (ῥ) annoy, distress**λύπη** distress**ναί** yea**νόσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**πένης** -τος (m) poor**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat**πλουτέω** be rich**πολλαπλάσιος** many times more**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;

side with ~thesis

**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame

δέ τις ἢ τῶν προβάτων λευκωμένα φέρων ἢ τῶν βοῶν  
 κατακεκρημμισμένα ἢ νόσον φάσκων ἐμπεπτωκέναι τοῖς  
 κτήνεσιν· ὥστε μοι δοκῶ, ἔφη ὁ Φεραύλας, νῦν διὰ τὸ  
 πολλὰ ἔχειν πλείω λυπεῖσθαι ἢ πρόσθεν διὰ τὸ ὀλίγα ἔχειν.  
 καὶ ὁ Σάκας, Ἀλλὰ ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, ὅταν σῶα ᾗ, πολλὰ  
 ὁρῶν πολλαπλάσια ἐμοῦ εὐφραίνῃ. καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας  
 εἶπεν· Οὔτοι, ὦ Σάκα, οὕτως ἡδὺ ἐστι τὸ ἔχειν χρήματα  
 ὥς ἀνιαρὸν τὸ ἀποβάλλειν. γνώσῃ δ' ὅτι ἐγὼ ἀληθῆ  
 λέγω· τῶν μὲν γὰρ πλουτούντων οὐδεὶς ἀναγκάζεται ὑφ'  
 ἡδονῆς ἀγρυπνεῖν, τῶν δὲ ἀποβαλλόντων τι ὄψει οὐδένα  
 δυνάμενον καθεύδειν ὑπὸ λύπης. Μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Σάκας,  
 οὐδέ γε τῶν λαμβανόντων τι νυστάζοντα οὐδένα ἂν ἴδοις  
 ὑφ' ἡδονῆς. Ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις· εἰ γάρ τοι τὸ ἔχειν οὕτως  
 ὥσπερ τὸ λαμβάνειν ἡδὺ ᾗν, πολὺ ἂν διέφερον εὐδαιμονία  
 οἱ πλούσιοι τῶν πενήτων. καὶ ἀνάγκη δέ τοί ἐστιν, ἔφη, ὦ  
 Σάκα, τὸν πολλὰ ἔχοντα πολλὰ καὶ δαπανᾶν καὶ εἰς θεοὺς  
 καὶ εἰς φίλους καὶ εἰς ξένους· ὅστις οὖν ἰσχυρῶς χρήμασιν  
 ἡῖεται, εὖ ἴσθι τοῦτον καὶ δαπανῶντα ἰσχυρῶς ἀνιᾶσθαι.



δέ τις ἡ τῶν |cattle, flocks, |ελυκωμένα φέρων ἡ τῶν βοῶν  
 herds  
 κατακεκρημμισμένα ἡ |plague |declare, |fall into; attack τοῖς  
 |herd animal ὥστε μοι δοκῶ, ἔφη ὁ Φεραύλας, νῦν διὰ τὸ  
 |think  
 πολλὰ ἔχειν πλείω |annoy, ἡ πρόσθεν διὰ τὸ ὀλίγα ἔχειν.  
 |distress  
 καὶ ὁ Σάκας, Ἀλλὰ |yea μὰ Δί, ἔφη, ὅταν σῶα ἦ, πολλὰ  
 ὁρῶν |many times more ἡμοῦ |gladden . καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας  
 εἶπεν· Οὔτοι, ὦ Σάκα, οὕτως |sweet ἔστι τὸ ἔχειν χρήματα  
 ὥς |troublesome, |throw away, lose , γνώσῃ δ' ὅτι ἐγὼ ἀληθῆ  
 |tiresome  
 λέγω· τῶν μὲν γὰρ |be rich οὐδεὶς |force, compel ὑφ'  
 |pleasure |lie awake , τῶν δὲ |throw away, lose τι ὄψει οὐδένα  
 δυνάμενον |lie down ὑπὸ |distress Μὰ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Σάκας,  
 οὐδέ γε τῶν λαμβανόντων τι νυστάζοντα οὐδένα ἂν ἴδοις  
 ὑφ' |pleasure Ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις· εἰ γάρ τοι τὸ ἔχειν οὕτως  
 ὥσπερ τὸ λαμβάνειν |sweet, , πολὺ ἂν |carry on; δαίμονία  
 |differ; excel  
 οἱ |wealth τῶν |poor . καὶ ἀνάγκη δέ τοι ἐστίν, ἔφη, ὦ  
 Σάκα, τὸν πολλὰ ἔχοντα πολλὰ καὶ |spend, con- ἢ εἰς θεοὺς  
 |sume, waste  
 καὶ εἰς φίλους καὶ εἰς ξένους· ὅστις οὖν |strong, force- ἵμασιν  
 |ful, violent  
 ἡδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy; or spend, con- strong, |vex  
 ἡδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy |sume, waste |forceful,  
 |violent

the carcase of some poor sheep mangled by the wolves, or perhaps with an ox that has fallen down a precipice, or maybe he has to tell me that a murrain has broken out among my flocks. It seems to me," Pheraulas ended, "that I suffer more to-day through having much than ever I did before through having nothing."

"But—Heaven help us!" cried the Sakian, "surely, when it is all safe, to see so much of your own must make you much happier than me?"

"I Assure you, my friend," said Pheraulas, "the possession of riches is nothing like so sweet as the loss of them is painful. And here is a proof for you: no rich man lies awake from pure joy at his wealth, but did you ever know a man who could close his eyes when he was losing?"

"No," said the Sakian, "nor yet one who could drop asleep when he was winning."

"True enough," answered the other, "and if having were as sweet as getting, the rich would be a thousand times more happy than the poor. And remember, stranger," he added, "a man who has much must spend much on the gods and his friends and his guests, and if he takes intense delight in his riches,

*vocabulary*

**ἀπολύω** loose, free from ~loose  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task  
**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**εὐτελής** of little worth  
**θεραπείη** -ας service, tending  
**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess  
**μετέχω** partake of  
**ναί** yea  
**οἶκοι** at home ~economics

**ὄμνυμι** (ὅ) swear  
**παίζω** play ~pediatrician  
**πλουτέω** be rich  
**πλοῦτος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold,  
 help  
**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty,  
 hastily ~repudiate  
**στρατεία** expedition, campaign  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis  
**σχολή** rest, leisure  
**χρήσιμος** useful

Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Σάκας, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐγὼ τούτων εἰμί, ἀλλὰ καὶ εὐδαιμονίαν τοῦτο νομίζω τὸ πολλὰ ἔχοντα πολλὰ καὶ δαπανᾶν. Τί οὖν, ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὁ Φεραύλας, οὐχὶ σύγε αὐτίκα μάλα εὐδαίμων ἐγένου καὶ ἐμὲ εὐδαίμονα ἐποίησας; λαβὼν γάρ, ἔφη, ταῦτα πάντα κέκτησο, καὶ χρῶ ὅπως βούλει αὐτοῖς· ἐμὲ δὲ μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ ὥσπερ ξένον τρέφε, καὶ ἔτι εὐτελέστερον ἢ ξένον· ἀρκέσει γάρ μοι ὅ τι ἂν καὶ σὺ ἔχῃς τούτων μετέχειν. Παίξεις, ἔφη ὁ Σάκας. καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας ὁμόσας εἶπεν ἡ μὴν σπουδῇ λέγειν. καὶ ἄλλα γέ σοι, ὦ Σάκα, προσδιαπράξομαι παρὰ Κύρου, μήτε θύρας τὰς Κύρου θεραπεύειν μήτε στρατεύεσθαι· ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν πλουτῶν οἶκοι μένε· ἐγὼ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσω καὶ ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ· καὶ ἐάν τι ἀγαθὸν προσλαμβάνω διὰ τὴν Κύρου θεραπείαν ἢ καὶ ἀπὸ στρατείας τινός, οἶσω πρὸς σέ, ἵνα ἔτι πλειόνων ἄρχῃς· μόνον, ἔφη, ἐμὲ ἀπόλυσον ταύτης τῆς ἐπιμελείας· ἦν γὰρ ἐγὼ σχολὴν ἄγω ἀπὸ τούτων, ἐμοὶ τέ σε οἶομαι πολλὰ καὶ Κύρῳ χρήσιμον ἔσεσθαι. τούτων οὕτω ῥηθέντων ταῦτα συνέθεντο καὶ

|yea μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Σάκας, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐγὼ τούτων εἰμί, ἀλλὰ  
 καὶ |prosperity τοῦτο |consider . . . cus- ἀλλὰ ἔχοντα πολλὰ  
 |tomary; believe  
 καὶ |spend, con- Τί οὖν, ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὁ Φεραύλας,  
 |sume, waste  
 οὐχὶ σύγε |at once μάλα |blessed with' a' νου καὶ ἐμέ |blessed with a  
 |good genius |good genius  
 ἐποίησας; λαβὼν γάρ, ἔφη, ταῦτα πάντα |acquire , καὶ  
 χρῶ ὅπως βούλει αὐτοῖς· ἐμὲ δὲ μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ ὥσπερ |stranger  
 τρέφε, καὶ ἔτι |of little worth ἢ |stranger ἔρκεσει γάρ μοι ὅ τι  
 ἂν καὶ σὺ ἔχῃς τούτων |partake of |play , ἔφη ὁ Σάκας.  
 καὶ ὁ Φεραύλας ὁμόσας εἶπεν ἡ μὴν |zeal; (dat)' with καὶ  
 |difficulty, hastily  
 ἄλλα γέ σοι, ὦ Σάκα, προσδιαπράξομαι παρὰ Κύρου,  
 |nei- |door τὰς Κύρου |help, serve |nei- |make an expedition,  
 |ther |ther |war, campaign  
 ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν πλουτῶν |at home' ἔ· ἐγὼ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσω καὶ  
 ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ· καὶ εἴαν τι ἀγαθὸν |add, borrow, take  
 |hold, help  
 διὰ τὴν Κύρου |service, ἢ καὶ ἀπὸ |expedition, τινός,  
 |tending |campaign  
 οἶσω πρὸς σέ, ἵνα ἔτι πλειόνων ἄρχῃς· μόνον, ἔφη, ἐμέ  
 |loose, free from' ἡς τῆς |attention; as- ἦν γὰρ ἐγὼ |rest, ἄγω  
 |signed task |leisure  
 ἀπὸ τούτων, ἐμοί τέ σε οἶομαι πολλὰ καὶ Κύρῳ |useful  
 ἔσεσθαι. τούτων οὕτω ῥηθέντων ταῦτα |hearken, mark .

spending will cause him intense annoyance.”

”Upon my word,” said the Sakian, ”for myself, I am not that sort of man at all: to have much and to spend much is just my idea of perfect happiness.”

”Heavens!” cried Pheraulas, ”what a chance for us both! You can win perfect happiness now, this instant, and make me happy too! Here, take all these things for your own, make what use of them you please; and as for me, you can keep me as your guest, only much more cheaply if you like: it will be quite enough for me to share whatever you have yourself.”

”You are jesting,” said the Sakian.

But Pheraulas swore with all solemnity that he spoke in earnest.

”Yes, my friend,” he added, ”and there are other matters that I can arrange for you with Cyrus: freedom from military service or attendance at the gates. All you will have to do will be to stay at home and grow rich: I will do the rest on your behalf and mine. And if I win any treasure through my service at court or on the field, I will bring it home to you, and you will be lord of more; only,” he added, ”you must free me from the responsibility of looking after it, for if you give me leisure from these cares I believe you will be of great use to Cyrus and myself.”

So the talk ended and they struck a bargain on these terms, and kept it. And the

*vocabulary***ἀγνώμων** headstrong, unfeeling**ἄημι** blow**ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀχάριστος** ungracious, unpleasant  
~eucharist**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**γονεύς** -ος (m) parent**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task**ἐπίτροπος** agent**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**εὐνοϊκός** friendly, not hostile**εὐχάριστος** agreeable, grateful,

beneficent

**ζῶον** being, animal; picture**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**κτῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possession**μακάριος** blessed**μισέω** (i) hate, wish to prevent  
~misogyny**ξέω** smooth**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**πρόθυμος** (ō) willing, eager ~fume**σχολή** rest, leisure**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**ὑπερήδομαι** rejoice greatly**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma**ὠφέλιμος** helping, useful

ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἡγείτο εὐδαίμων γεγενῆσθαι, ὅτι πολλῶν ἦρχε χρημάτων· ὁ δ' αὖ ἐνόμιζε μακαριώτατος εἶναι, ὅτι ἐπίτροπον ἔξοι σχολὴν παρέχοντα πράττειν ὅτι ἂν αὐτῷ ἦδὺ ἦ.

Ἦν δὲ τοῦ Φεραύλα ὁ τρόπος φιλέταιρός τε καὶ θεραπεύειν οὐδὲν ἦδὺ αὐτῷ οὕτως ἐδόκει εἶναι οὐδ' ὠφέλιμον ὥς ἀνθρώπους. καὶ γὰρ βέλτιστον πάντων τῶν ζώων ἡγείτο ἄνθρωπον εἶναι καὶ εὐχαριστότατον, ὅτι ἑώρα τοὺς τε ἐπαινουμένους ὑπὸ τινος ἀντεπαινοῦντας τούτους προθύμως τοῖς τε χαριζομένοις πειρωμένους ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι, καὶ οὓς γνοῖεν εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοντας, τούτοις ἀντ' εὖ νοοῦντας, καὶ οὓς εἰδεῖν φιλοῦντας αὐτούς, τούτους μισεῖν οὐ δυναμένους, καὶ γονέας δὲ πολὺ μᾶλλον ἀντιθεραπεύειν πάντων τῶν ζώων ἐθέλοντας καὶ ζῶντας καὶ τελευτήσαντας· τὰ δ' ἄλλα πάντα ζῶα καὶ ἀχαριστότερα καὶ ἀγνωμονέστερα ἀνθρώπων ἐγίγνωσκειν εἶναι. οὕτω δὴ ὁ τε Φεραύλας ὑπερήδετο ὅτι ἐξέσοιτο αὐτῷ ἀπαλλαγέντι τῆς τῶν ἄλλων κτημάτων ἐπιμελείας



ταῦτα ἐποίου· καὶ ὁ μὲν ἡγείτο |blessed with, a |ἐνῆσθαι, ὅτι  
 |good genius  
 πολλῶν ἡρχε |possession, |consider |blessed  
 |money, busi- |cus-  
 εἶναι, ὅτι |agent |ness |rest, |tomary;  
 |leisure |believe πράττειν ὁ  
 τι ἂν αὐτῷ |sweet,

Ἦν δὲ τοῦ Φεραύλα ὁ |turn; manner, |ἑταῖρός τε καὶ  
 |kind, fashion  
 |help, serve οὐδὲν |sweet αὐτῷ οὕτως ἐδόκει εἶναι οὐδ'  
 |helping, ὥς ἀνθρώπους. καὶ γὰρ |best, πάντων  
 |useful |noblest  
 τῶν ζώων ἡγείτο ἀνθρωπον εἶναι καὶ |agreeable, grateful, ὅτι  
 |beneficent  
 ἑώρα τούς τε |concur ὑπό τινος ἀντεπαινοῦντας  
 τούτους |willing, τοῖς τε |gratify πειρωμένους  
 |eager  
 ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι, καὶ οὕς γνοῖεν |friendly, ἔχοντας, τούτοις  
 |not hostile  
 ἀντ' εὖ |see, think , καὶ οὕς εἶδεῖεν |love αὐτούς,  
 τούτους |hate οὐ δυναμένους, καὶ |parent δὲ πολὺ  
 μᾶλλον ἀντιθεραπεύειν πάντων τῶν ζώων ἐθέλοντας καὶ  
 ζῶντας καὶ |bring about, finish τὰ δ' ἄλλα πάντα ζῶα καὶ  
 |ungracious, un- καὶ |headstrong, un- ἀνθρώπων ἐγίγνωσκεν  
 |pleasant |feeling  
 εἶναι. οὕτω δὲ ὁ τε Φεραύλας |rejoice ὅτι |smooth  
 |greatly  
 αὐτῷ ἀπαλλαγέντι τῆς τῶν ἄλλων |possession |attention; as-  
 |signed task

Sakian thought he had found happiness because he was the master of much wealth, and the other felt he was in bliss because he had got a steward who would leave him leisure to do what he liked best. For the character of Pheraulas was amiable: he was a loving comrade, and no service seemed so sweet to him or so helpful as the service of man. Man, he believed, was the noblest of the animals and the most grateful: praise, Pheraulas saw, will reap counter-praise, kindness will stir kindness in return, and goodwill goodwill; those whom men know to love them they cannot hate, and, in a way no other animals will, they cherish their parents in life and in death and requite their care. All other creatures, in short, compared with man, are lacking in gratitude and heart.

Thus Pheraulas was overjoyed to feel that he could now be quit of anxiety for his wealth, and devote himself to his friends,

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism**ἀσχολία** business, being busy**αὐξάνω** strengthen**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**διακοσμέω** marshal ~cosmos**ἐνδον** in the house of; within**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἑστία** hearth ~Hestia**ἑστιάω** give a feast**εὐνοϊκός** friendly, not hostile**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἵππαρχος** horse-ruling (epithet of Poseidon) ~hippo**καθίζω** set, sit, alight, set up ~sit**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add**σκηπτοῦχος** scepter-bearer ~scepter**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**συνδειπνέω** eat with**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**τιμόω** honor, exalt**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

ἀμφὶ τοὺς φίλους ἔχειν, ὅ τε Σάκας ὅτι ἔμελλε πολλὰ ἔχων πολλοῖς χρήσεσθαι. ἐφίλει δὲ ὁ μὲν Σάκας τὸν Φεραύλαν, ὅτι προσέφερε τι αἰΐ· ὁ δὲ τὸν Σάκαν, ὅτι παραλαμβάνειν πάντα ἤθελε καὶ αἰὶ πλειόνων ἐπιμελούμενος οὐδὲν μᾶλλον αὐτῷ ἀσχολίαν παρείχε. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν δὴ οὕτω διῆγον.

## 8.4

Θύσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Κῦρος νικητήρια ἐστιῶν ἐκάλεσε τῶν φίλων οἱ μάλιστα αὐτὸν αὔξειν τε βουλόμενοι φανεροὶ ἦσαν καὶ τιμῶντες εὐνοϊκώτατα. συνεκάλεσε δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ Ἀρτάβαζον τὸν Μῆδον καὶ Τιγράνην τὸν Ἀρμένιον καὶ τὸν Ὑρκάνιον ἵππαρχον καὶ Γωβρύαν. Γαδάτας δὲ τῶν σκηπτούχων ἦρχεν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἦ ἐκείνος διεκόσμησεν ἢ πᾶσα ἔνδον δίαιτα καθειστήκει· καὶ ὁπότε μὲν συνδειπνοῖέν τινες, οὐδ' ἐκάθιζε Γαδάτας, ἀλλ' ἐπεμελείτο· ὁπότε δὲ αὐτοὶ εἶεν, καὶ συνεδείπνει· ἦδετο γὰρ αὐτῷ συνών· ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων πολλοῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ἐτιμᾶτο ὑπὸ τοῦ Κύρου, διὰ δὲ Κῦρον καὶ ὑπ' ἄλλων. ὥς δ'

ἀμφὶ τοὺς φίλους ἔχειν, ὅ τε Σάκας ὅτι ἔμελλε πολλὰ ἔχων  
πολλοῖς χρήσεσθαι. |love δὲ ὁ μὲν Σάκας τὸν Φεραύλαν,  
ὅτι |present; re- τι αἰεί· ὁ δὲ τὸν Σάκαν, ὅτι |receive, undertake,  
|semble; add |associate with  
πάντα ἤθελε καὶ αἰὲ πλειόνων |take care of, οὐδὲν  
|oversee  
μᾶλλον αὐτῷ |business, |furnish καὶ οὗτοι μὲν δὴ οὕτω  
|being busy  
|lead through;  
|pass a time

## 8.4

|rush; sacrifice... ἢ ὁ Κῦρος νικητήρια ἐστιῶν ἐκάλεσε τῶν  
φίλων οἱ |very αὐτὸν |strengthen βουλόμενοι |visible,  
|conspicuous  
ἦσαν καὶ τιμῶντες |friendly, not |call together δὲ αὐτοῖς  
|hostile  
καὶ Ἀρτάβαζον τὸν Μῆδον καὶ Τιγράνην τὸν Ἀρμένιον  
καὶ τὸν Ὑρκάνιον |horse-ruling καὶ Γωβρύαν. Γαδάτας δὲ  
τῶν |scepter-bearer ἦρχεν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἦ ἐκείνος |marshal  
ἡ πᾶσα |in the way |set down, land; καὶ |when μὲν  
|house of life; become, be  
|eat with of; home; ar-  
|within |bitration |set, sit, alight, |ίτας, ἀλλ' |take care of,  
|set up |oversee  
|when δὲ αὐτοὶ εἶεν, καὶ |eat with ἦδετο γὰρ αὐτῷ  
|be with; have `sex' οὕτων πολλοῖς καὶ μεγάλοις |honor ὑπὸ  
τοῦ Κύρου, διὰ δὲ Κῦρον καὶ ὑπ' ἄλλων. ὥς δ'

while the Sakian was delighted with all that he had and all that he could use. The Sakian loved Pheraulas because he was for ever adding something to the store, and Pheraulas loved the Sakian because he was willing to assume the entire burden, and however much the cares increased he never broke into the other's leisure. Thus those two lived their lives.

#### 8.4

Now Cyrus offered sacrifice and held high festival for his victories, and he summoned to the feast those of his friends who bore him most affection and had shown most desire to exalt him. With them were bidden Artabazus the Mede, and Tigranes the Armenian, and the commander of the Hyrcanian cavalry, and Gobryas. Gadatas was the chief of the mace-bearers, and the whole household was arranged as he advised. When there were guests at dinner, Gadatas would not sit down, but saw to everything, and when they were alone he sat at meat with Cyrus, who took delight in his company, and in return for all his services he was greatly honoured by Cyrus and that led to more honours for others. As the guests

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἄθλον** ἀέθλου prize ~athlete**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat ~heir**ἀριστερός** left-hand**ἄτιμος** (ι) without honor**δεῖπνον** meal, food**δεῖπνος** meal, food**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἔδρα** (ᾱ) seat, seated group

~polyhedron

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**καθίζω** set, sit, alight, set up ~sit**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon people**κράτιστος** best**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural**ὅπου** where**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage**προβαίνω** surpass, continue ~basis**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume**πρωτεύω** be first or foremost**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid**τήχω** melt**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**τίμιος** honored, precious**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

ἦλθον οἱ κληθέντες ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον, οὐχ ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστον ἐκάθιζεν, ἀλλ' ὃν μὲν μάλιστα ἐτίμα, παρὰ τὴν ἀριστερὰν χεῖρα, ὡς εὐεπιβουλευτοτέρας ταύτης οὔσης ἢ τῆς δεξιᾶς, τὸν δὲ δεύτερον παρὰ τὴν δεξιάν, τὸν δὲ τρίτον πάλιν παρὰ τὴν ἀριστεράν, τὸν δὲ τέταρτον παρὰ τὴν δεξιάν· καὶ ἦν πλείονες ὦσιν, ὡσαύτως. σαφηνίζεσθαι δὲ ὡς ἕκαστον ἐτίμα διὰ τοῦτο ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἀγαθὸν εἶναι, ὅτι ὅπου μὲν οἴονται ἄνθρωποι τὸν κρατιστεύοντα μήτε κηρυχθήσεσθαι μήτε ἄθλα λήψεσθαι, δηλοῖ εἰσιν ἐνταῦθα οὐ φιλονίκως πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἔχοντες· ὅπου δὲ μάλιστα πλεονεκτῶν ὁ κράτιστος φαίνεται, ἐνταῦθα προθυμότης φανεροί εἰσιν ἀγωνιζόμενοι πάντες. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος δὲ οὕτως ἐσαφηνίζε μὲν τοὺς κρατιστεύοντας παρ' ἑαυτῷ, εὐθὺς ἀρξάμενος ἐξ ἔδρας καὶ παραστάσεως. οὐ μέντοι ἀθάνατον τὴν ταχθεῖσαν ἔδραν κατεστήσατο, ἀλλὰ νόμιμον ἐποιήσατο καὶ ἀγαθοῖς ἔργοις προβῆναι εἰς τὴν τιμιωτέραν ἔδραν, καὶ εἴ τις ῥαδιουργοίῃ, ἀναχωρῆσαι εἰς τὴν ἀτιμοτέραν. τὸν δὲ πρωτεύοντα ἐν ἔδρᾳ ἡσχύνετο



ἦλθον οἱ κληθέντες ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον, οὐχ <sup>|where</sup> ἔτυχεν  
 ἕκαστον <sup>|set, sit, alight, set up</sup> ἃ ὃν μὲν μάλιστα <sup>|honor</sup>, παρὰ τὴν  
<sup>|left-hand</sup> χεῖρα, ὡς εὐπιβουλευτοτέρας ταύτης οὔσης  
 ἢ τῆς δεξιᾶς, τὸν δὲ δεύτερον παρὰ τὴν δεξιάν, τὸν δὲ  
 τρίτον πάλιν παρὰ τὴν <sup>|left-hand</sup>, τὸν δὲ <sup>|fourth</sup> παρὰ  
 τὴν δεξιάν· καὶ ἦν πλέονες ὦσιν, <sup>|in the same way</sup> ἡνίξεσθαι  
 δὲ ὡς ἕκαστον <sup>|honor</sup> διὰ τοῦτο ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἀγαθὸν  
 εἶναι, ὅτι <sup>|where</sup> μὲν οἴονται ἄνθρωποι τὸν κρατιστεύοντα  
 μήτε <sup>|be a henchman, summon people</sup> μήτε <sup>|prize</sup> λήψεσθαι, <sup>|visible, conspicuous</sup>  
<sup>|there, here</sup> οὐ φιλονίκως πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἔχοντες· <sup>|where</sup>  
 δὲ μάλιστα πλεονεκτῶν ὁ <sup>|best</sup> φαίνεται, <sup>|there, here</sup>  
<sup>|willing, eager</sup> <sup>|visible, conspicuous</sup> οὐ <sup>|contend, exert oneself</sup> πάντες. καὶ ὁ  
 Κῦρος δὲ οὕτως ἐσαφηνίζε μὲν τοὺς κρατιστεύοντας παρ'  
 ἑαυτῷ, εὐθὺς ἀρξάμενος ἐξ <sup>|seat</sup> καὶ παραστάσεως. οὐ  
 μέντοι ἀθάνατον τὴν ταχθεῖσαν <sup>|seat</sup> κατεστήσατο, ἀλλὰ  
<sup>|customary, legal, natural</sup> ἡήσατο καὶ ἀγαθοῖς ἔργοις <sup>|surpass</sup> εἰς τὴν  
<sup>|honored, precious</sup> <sup>|seat</sup>, καὶ εἴ τις ῥαδιουργοίῃ, <sup>|return, retreat</sup> εἰς  
 τὴν <sup>|without honor</sup> τὸν δὲ <sup>|be first or foremost</sup> <sup>|spoil, disgrace</sup>

entered, Gadatas would show each man to his seat, and the places were chosen with care: the friend whom Cyrus honoured most was placed on his left hand (for that was the side most open to attack), the second on his right, the third next to the left-hand guest, and the fourth next to the right, and so on, whatever the number of guests might be. Cyrus thought it well it should be known how much each man was honoured, for he saw that where the world believes merit will win no crown and receive no proclamation, there the spirit of emulation dies, but if all see that the best man gains most, then the rivalry grows keen. Thus it was that Cyrus marked out the men he favoured by the seat of honour and the order of precedence. Nor did he assign the honourable place to one friend for all time; he made it a law that by good deeds a man might rise into a higher seat or through sloth descend into a lower; and he would have felt

*vocabulary***δειπνέω** eat, dine**διαμένω** continue, persevere**διαπέμπω** send out/over**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὁ) display, exhibit**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**καταδαπανάω** squander, consume**κοινωνέω** associate with**ναός** (ἄ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**ὅμνυμι** (ὁ) swear**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;

side with ~thesis

**στρατηγία** office of command, strategy

~strategy

**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid**φιλανθρωπία** benevolence

μὴ οὐ πλείστα καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἔχοντα παρ' αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι.  
καὶ ταῦτα δὲ ἐπὶ Κύρου γενόμενα οὕτως ἔτι καὶ νῦν  
διαμένοντα αἰσθανόμεθα.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδείπνουν, ἐδόκει τῷ Γωβρύᾳ τὸ μὲν πολλὰ  
ἕκαστα εἶναι οὐδέν τι θαυμαστὸν παρ' ἀνδρὶ πολλῶν  
ἄρχοντι· τὸ δὲ τὸν Κῦρον οὕτω μεγάλα πράττοντα, εἴ  
τι ἡδὺν δόξειε λαβεῖν, μηδὲν τούτων μόνον καταδαπανᾶν,  
ἀλλ' ἔργον ἔχειν αὐτὸν ἐδόμενον τούτου κοινωνεῖν τοὺς  
παρόντας, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ τῶν ἀπόντων φίλων ἔστιν  
οἷς ἑώρα πέμποντα ταῦτα αὐτὸν οἷς ἡσθεῖς τύχοι·  
ὥστε ἐπεὶ ἐδεδειπνήκεσαν καὶ πάντα τὰ λοιπὰ πολλὰ  
ὄντα διεπεπόμφει ὁ Κῦρος ἀπὸ τῆς τραπέζης, εἶπεν  
ἄρα ὁ Γωβρύας· Ἄλλ', ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, πρόσθεν μὲν  
ἡγούμεν τούτῳ σε πλείστον διαφέρειν ἀνθρώπων τῷ  
στρατηγικώτατον εἶναι· νῦν δὲ θεοὺς ὁμνυμι ἡ μὴν ἐμοὶ  
δοκεῖν πλέον σε διαφέρειν φιλάνθρωπία ἢ στρατηγία. Νῆ  
Δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ ἐπιδείκνυμαι τὰ ἔργα  
πολὺ ἥδιον φιλάνθρωπίας ἢ στρατηγίας. Πῶς δῆ; ἔφη ὁ

μὴ οὐ πλείστα καὶ ἀγαθὰ ἔχοντα παρ' αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι.  
καὶ ταῦτα δὲ ἐπὶ Κύρου γεγόμενα οὕτως ἔτι καὶ νῦν

|continue,  
|persevere |perceive

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |eat, dine , ἐδόκει τῷ Γωβρύᾳ τὸ μὲν πολλὰ  
ἕκαστα εἶναι οὐδέν τι |wonderful;  
|admirable παρ' ἀνδρὶ πολλῶν  
ἄρχοντι· τὸ δὲ τὸν Κύρον οὕτω μεγάλα πράττοντα, εἴ

τι |sweet ὅξειε λαβεῖν, μηδὲν τούτων μόνον |squander,  
|consume ,

ἀλλ' ἔργον ἔχειν αὐτὸν ἐδόμενον τούτου |associate with ὅς

παρόντας, |often δὲ καὶ τῶν |be absent, go ἄλων ἔστιν  
|away, return

οἷς ἑώρα πέμποντα ταῦτα αὐτὸν οἷς |be pleased, enjoy

ὥστε ἐπεὶ |eat, dine καὶ πάντα τὰ λοιπὰ πολλὰ

ὄντα |send out/over ὁ Κύρος ἀπὸ τῆς |a table , εἶπεν

ἄρα ὁ Γωβρύας· Ἄλλ', ἐγώ, ὦ Κύρε, πρόσθεν μὲν

ἡγούμην τούτῳ σε πλείστον |carry on; ἀνθρώπων τῷ  
|differ; excel

στρατηγικώτατον εἶναι· νῦν δὲ θεοὺς |swear ἥ μὴν ἐμοὶ

δοκεῖν πλέον σε |carry on; benevolence ἥ στρατηγία. Νῆ  
|differ; excel

Δί, ἔφη ὁ Κύρος· καὶ μὲν δὴ καὶ |display, exhibit τὰ ἔργα

πολὺ |sweet |benevolence ἥ στρατηγίας. |how? why? ἦ ὦ

ashamed if it were not known that the guest most honoured at his table received most favours at his hands. These customs that arose in the reign of Cyrus continue to our time, as we can testify.

While they were at the feast that day it struck Gobryas that though there was nothing surprising in the abundance and variety at the table of one who was lord over so vast an empire, yet it was strange that Cyrus, who had done such mighty deeds, should never keep any dainty for himself, but must always be at pains to share it with the company. More than once also he saw Cyrus send off to an absent friend some dish that had chanced to please him. So that by the time they had finished their meal all the viands had been given away by Cyrus, and the board was bare.

Then Gobryas said, "Truly, Cyrus, until to-day I used to think it was in generalship that you outshone other men the most, but, by heaven! I say now it is not in generalship at all, it is generosity."

"Maybe," said Cyrus, "at least I take far more pride in this work than in the other."

"How can that be?" asked Gobryas.

*vocabulary*

**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology  
**ἀναμένω** wait for ~remain  
**ἄρα** interrogative pcl  
**ἄρή** bane, harm; prayer  
**ἄρῃν** ἄρνός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool  
**ἄρης** war, warlike spirit  
**ἄρnuμαι** get, win  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**ἐναντίον** opposite, facing  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go  
 searching through  
**εὐφημέω** speak propitiously ~fame  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

**ἥκιστος** least; above all  
**ἰδρύω** establish  
**καταγιγνώσκω** judge negatively  
**ναί** yea  
**πάντως** by all means  
**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command  
**πώποτε** never  
**σιωπάω** be silent  
**σχολή** rest, leisure  
**τίμιος** honored, precious  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**ὑπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic  
**ὑποπίνω** (ι) sip

Γωβρύας. Ὅτι, ἔφη, τὰ μὲν κακῶς ποιοῦντα ἀνθρώπους  
 δεῖ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι, τὰ δὲ εὖ. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἐπεὶ ὑπέπινον,  
 ἤρετο ὁ Ὑστάσπας τὸν Κῦρον· Ἄρ' ἄν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε,  
 ἀχθεσθείης μοι, εἴ σε ἐροίμην ὃ βούλομαί σου πυθέσθαι;  
 Ἀλλὰ ναὶ μὰ τοὺς θεούς, ἔφη, τοῦναντίον τούτου ἀχθοίμην  
 ἄν σοι, εἰ αἰσθοίμην σιωπῶντα ἃ βούλοιο ἐρέσθαι. Λέγε  
 δή μοι, ἔφη, ἥδη πώποτε καλέσαντός σου οὐκ ἦλθον;  
 εὐφήμει, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Ἄλλ' ὑπακούων σχολῇ ὑπήκουσα;  
 Οὐδὲ τοῦτο. Προσταχθὲν δέ τι ἥδη σοι οὐκ ἔπραξα;  
 Οὐκ αἰτιῶμαι, ἔφη. Ὅ δὲ πράττοιμι, ἔστιν ὅ τι πώποτε  
 οὐ προθύμως ἢ οὐχ ἡδομένως πράττοντά με κατέγνωνς;  
 Τοῦτο δὴ πάντων ἥκιστα, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Τίνος μὴν ἔνεκα,  
 ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ Κῦρε, Χρυσάνταν ἔγραψας ὥστε  
 εἰς τὴν τιμωτέραν ἐμοῦ χώραν ἰδρυθῆναι; Ἥ λέγω; ἔφη ὁ  
 Κῦρος. Πάντως, ἔφη ὁ Ὑστάσπας. Καὶ σὺ αὖ οὐκ ἀχθέσῃ  
 μοι ἀκούων τὰ ληθῆ; Ἡσθήσομαι μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, ἣν εἰδῶ ὅτι  
 οὐκ ἀδικοῦμαι. Χρυσάντας τοίνυν, ἔφη, οὕτοσὶ πρῶτον  
 μὲν οὐ κλῆσιν ἀνέμενεν, ἀλλὰ πρὶν καλεῖσθαι παρῆν τῶν



Γωβρύας. Ὅτι, ἔφη, τὰ μὲν κακῶς ποιοῦντα ἀνθρώπους  
 δεῖ |display, exhibit , τὰ δὲ εὖ. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἐπεὶ |sip ,  
 ἤρετο ὁ Ὑστάσπας τὸν Κῦρον· Ἄρ' ἄν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε,  
 |be burdened with, εἴ σε |ask, search through, τί σου |learn, inquire, (+gen)  
 |hear of  
 Ἀλλὰ |yea μὰ τοὺς θεούς, ἔφη, τὸναντίον τούτου |be burdened with  
 ἄν σοι, εἰ |perceive |be silent ἃ βούλοιο |ask, search through  
 δὴ μοι, ἔφη, ἤδη |never καλέσαντός σου οὐκ ἦλθον;  
 |speak propitiously Ὑρος. Ἄλλ' |listen, reply |rest, |listen, reply,  
 |leisure  
 Οὐδὲ τοῦτο. |post at, attach δέ τι ἤδη σοι οὐκ ἔπραξα;  
 |to, command  
 Οὐκ |blame , ἔφη. Ὁ δὲ πράττοιμι, ἔστιν ὅ τι |never  
 οὐ |willing, ἢ οὐχ ἡδομένως πράττοντά με |judge negatively  
 |eager  
 Τοῦτο δὴ πάντων |least; , ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Τίνος μὴν ἕνεκα,  
 |above  
 ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ Κῦρε, Χρυσάνταν ἔγραψας ὥστε  
 |all  
 εἰς τὴν |honored, ἐμοῦ χώραν |establish , Ἥ λέγω; ἔφη ὁ  
 |precious  
 Κῦρος. |by all means, ἢ ὁ Ὑστάσπας. Καὶ σὺ αὖ οὐκ |be burdened with  
 μοι ἀκούων |true; , |be pleased, enjoy οὖν, ἔφη, ἣν εἰδῶ ὅτι  
 |careful  
 οὐκ ἀδικοῦμαι. Χρυσάντας |well, then ἔφη, οὕτοσιν πρώτων  
 μὲν οὐ κλῆσιν |wait for , ἀλλὰ πρὶν καλεῖσθαι παρῆν τῶν

"Because," said he, "the one does good to man and the other injury."

Presently as the wine went round and round, Hystaspas turned to Cyrus and said:

"Would you be angry, Cyrus, if I asked something I long to know?"

"On the contrary," answered Cyrus, "I should be vexed if I saw you silent when you longed to ask."

"Tell me then," said the other, "have you ever called me and found I refused to come?"

"What a question!" said Cyrus, "of course not."

"Well, have I ever been slow in coming?"

"No, never."

"Or failed to do anything you ordered?"

"No," said Cyrus, "I have no fault to find at all."

"Whatever I had to do, I always did it eagerly and with all my heart, did I not?"

"Most assuredly," answered Cyrus.

"Then why, Cyrus, why, in heaven's name, have you singled out Chrysantas for a more honourable seat than me?"

"Shall I really tell you?" asked Cyrus in his turn.

"By all means," said the other.

"And you will not be annoyed if I tell you the plain truth?"

"On the contrary, it will comfort me to know I have not been wronged."

"Well, then, Chrysantas never waited to be called; he came of his own accord on our

*vocabulary***ἀγάλλω** exalt; mp: exult in**ἀγνοέω** be ignorant of ~gnostic**αἰσχύνω** (ō) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἀμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**γέλως** laughter**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**κρείσσω** more powerful; better**κροτέω** cause to rattle**κωλύω** (ō) hinder, prevent**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**πότερος** which, whichever of two**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
~refurbish**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
target ~telescope**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

ἡμετέρων ἔνεκα· ἔπειτα δὲ οὐ τὸ κελευόμενον μόνον, ἀλλὰ  
 καὶ ὅτι αὐτὸς γνοίῃ ἄμεινον εἶναι πεπραγμένον ἡμῖν τοῦτο  
 ἔπραττεν. ὁπότε δὲ εἰπεῖν τι δέοι εἰς τοὺς συμμάχους,  
 ᾧ μὲν ἐμὲ ᾧετο πρέπειν λέγειν ἐμοὶ συνεβούλευεν· ᾧ δὲ  
 ἐμὲ αἰσθοίτο βουλούμενον μὲν εἰδέναι τοὺς συμμάχους,  
 αὐτὸν δέ με αἰσχυνόμενον περὶ ἑμαυτοῦ λέγειν, ταῦτα  
 οὗτος λέγων ὥς ἑαυτοῦ γνώμην ἀπεφαίνετο· ὥστ' ἓν γε  
 τούτοις τί κωλύει αὐτὸν καὶ ἐμοῦ ἐμοὶ κρείττονα εἶναι;  
 καὶ ἑαυτῷ μὲν αἰεί φησι πάντα τὰ παρόντα ἀρκεῖν, ἐμοὶ δὲ  
 αἰεὶ φανερός ἐστι σκοπῶν τί ἂν προσγεγόμενον ὀνήσειεν,  
 ἐπὶ τε τοῖς ἐμοῖς καλοῖς πολὺ μᾶλλον ἐμοῦ ἀγάλλεται  
 καὶ ἥδεται. πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Ὑστάσπας εἶπε· Νῆ τὴν  
 Ἥραν, ὦ Κῦρε, ἥδομαί γε ταῦτά σε ἐρωτήσας. Τί  
 μάλιστα; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Ὅτι καὶ γὰρ πειράσομαι ταῦτα  
 ποιεῖν· ἐν μόνον, ἔφη, ἀγνοῶ, πῶς ἂν εἶην δηλὸς χαίρων  
 ἐπὶ τοῖς σοῖς ἀγαθοῖς· πότερον κροτεῖν δεῖ τῷ χεῖρε ἢ  
 γελᾶν ἢ τί ποιεῖν. καὶ ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος εἶπεν· Ὁρχεῖσθαι  
 δεῖ τὸ Περσικόν. ἐπὶ τούτοις μὲν δὴ γέλως ἐγένετο.

|our, my |because, that α δὲ οὐ τὸ κελεύόμενον μόνον, ἀλλὰ  
 καὶ ὅ τι αὐτὸς γνοίῃ |better εἶναι πεπραγμένον ἡμῖν τοῦτο  
 ἔπραττεν. |when δὲ εἶπεν τι δέοι εἰς τοὺς συμμάχους,  
 ᾧ μὲν ἐμὲ ὤετο |be conspicuous, ' ἐμοὶ |give advice; ᾧ δὲ  
 |preeminent |(mid) consult  
 ἐμὲ |perceive βουλούμενον μὲν εἰδέναι τοὺς συμμάχους,  
 αὐτὸν δέ με |spoil, disgrace περὶ ἐμαυτοῦ λέγειν, ταῦτα  
 οὗτος λέγων ὡς ἑαυτοῦ γνώμην |display, ὥστ' ἔν γε  
 |declare  
 τούτοις τί |hinder, αὐτὸν καὶ ἐμοῦ ἐμοὶ κρείττονα εἶναι;  
 |prevent  
 καὶ ἑαυτῷ μὲν αἰεὶ φησι πάντα τὰ παρόντα |satisfy; ward off,  
 |defend; suffice  
 αἰεὶ |visible, τί σκοπῶν τί ἂν |become ally to |help, please,  
 |conspicuous |be available  
 ἐπὶ τε τοῖς ἐμοῖς καλοῖς πολὺ μᾶλλον ἐμοῦ ἀγάλλεται  
 καὶ |ἥδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy; ὁ Ὑστάσπας εἶπε· Νῆ τὴν  
 |ἥδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy  
 Ἦραν, ὦ Κῦρε, |ἥδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy; ask Τί  
 |or ἥδομαι?: be pleased, en-  
 |joy  
 |very , ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Ὅτι καὶ γὰρ πειράσομαι ταῦτα  
 ποιεῖν· ἐν μόνον, ἔφη, |be igno-|how? why? , ν |visible, |rejoice  
 |rant of |conspicuous  
 ἐπὶ τοῖς σοῖς ἀγαθοῖς· |which, |cause to rattle ὡ χεῖρε ἡ  
 |whichever  
 |laugh, ἡ τί ποιεῖν. καὶ ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος εἶπεν· Ὁρχεῖσθαι  
 |smile  
 δεῖ τὸ Περσικόν. ἐπὶ τούτοις μὲν δὴ |laughter ἔγένετο.

behalf, and he made it his business to do, not merely what he was ordered, but whatever he thought would help us. When something had to be said to the allies, he would not only suggest what was fitting for me to say myself, he would guess what I wanted the allies to know but could not bring myself to utter, since it was about myself, and he would say it for me as though it were his own opinion; in fact, for everything of the kind he was nothing less to me than a second and a better self. And now he is always insisting that what he has already got is quite enough for himself, and always trying to discover something more for me: he takes a greater pride and joy in all my triumphs than I do myself."

"By Hera," said Hystaspas, "I am right glad I asked you. Only one thing puzzles me: how am I to show my joy at your success? Shall I clap my hands and laugh, or what shall I do?"

"Dance the Persian dance, of course," said Artabazus. And all the company laughed.

And

*vocabulary***διότι** because; that**ἔκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup**ἐμποιέω** make inside of ~poet**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῥ) display, exhibit**εὖθυμος** (ῥ) well-disposed ~fume**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ναί** yea**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**οὐχοῦν** not so?; and so**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**πρόξειμι** to have been before, earlier  
~ion**ῥῆμα** -τος (n, 3) a thing said**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have  
sex ~genus**συγγράφω** write down**σμπόσιον** drinking party**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy**τοίνυν** well, then**ὔβρις** -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage**φθονέω** envy**ψεῦδος** -ους (n, 3) a lie ~pseudo-

Προϊόντος δὲ τοῦ συμποσίου ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Γωβρύαν  
 ἐπήρετο· Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, νῦν ἂν δοκεῖς ἥδιον  
 τῶνδὲ τῶ τὴν θυγατέρα δοῦναι ἢ ὅτε τὸ πρῶτον ἡμῖν  
 συνεγένου; Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, καὶ γὰρ τάληθῇ λέγω;  
 Νῆ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὡς ψεύδους γε οὐδεμία ἐρώτησις  
 δεῖται. Εὐ τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἴσθι ὅτι νῦν ἂν πολὺ ἥδιον. Ἡ καὶ  
 ἔχouis ἄν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰπεῖν διότι; Ἔγωγε. Λέγε δή. Ὅτι  
 τότε μὲν ἑώρων τοὺς πόρους καὶ τοὺς κινδύνους εὐθύμως  
 αὐτοὺς φέροντας, νῦν δὲ ὁρῶ αὐτοὺς τὰγαθὰ σωφρόνως  
 φέροντας. δοκεῖ δέ μοι, ὦ Κῦρε, χαλεπώτερον εἶναι εὐρεῖν  
 ἄνδρα τὰγαθὰ καλῶς φέροντα ἢ τὰ κακά· τὰ μὲν γὰρ  
 ὕβριν τοῖς πολλοῖς, τὰ δὲ σωφροσύνην τοῖς πᾶσιν ἐμποιεῖ.  
 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἦκουσας, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, Γωβρύου τὸ  
 ῥῆμα; Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη· καὶ ἐὰν πολλὰ τοιαῦτά γε λέγῃ,  
 πολὺ μᾶλλον με τῆς θυγατρὸς μνηστῆρα λήψεται ἢ ἐὰν  
 ἐκπώματα πολλὰ μοι ἐπιδεικνύῃ. Ἡ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας,  
 πολλὰ γέ μοι ἔστι τοιαῦτα συγγεγραμμένα, ὧν ἐγώ σοι οὐ  
 φθονήσω, ἣν τὴν θυγατέρα μου γυναῖκα λαμβάνῃς·



|to have been|<sup>ἔ</sup> τοῦ |drinking| ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Γωβρύαν  
 |before, earlier| |party|  
 |ask as well;|<sup>ἔ</sup>πέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, νῦν ἂν δοκεῖς |sweet  
 |ask then|  
 τῶνδ' ἐγὼ τὴν |daughter| δοῦναι ἢ ὅτε τὸ πρῶτον ἡμῖν  
 |associate| , |not so?; and so| ὦ Γωβρύας, καὶ γὰρ |true;| λέγω;  
 |with, meet,| |careful|  
 |have sex| ἢ Δι', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὥς |a lie| γε οὐδεμία ἐρώτησις  
 δέχεται. Εὐ |well, then| ῥη, ἴσθι ὅτι νῦν ἂν πολὺ |sweet|. Ἡ καὶ  
 ἔχουσιν ἄν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰπεῖν |because;| that ,ε. Λέγε δὴ. Ὅτι  
 τότε μὲν ἐώρων τοὺς |toil, suffering| οὖς |danger| |well-disposed|  
 αὐτοὺς φέροντας, νῦν δὲ ὁρῶ αὐτοὺς τὰ γαθὰ |sensible,  
 |prudent|  
 φέροντας. δοκεῖ δέ μοι, ὦ Κῦρε, |hard to bear| εἶναι εὐρεῖν  
 ἄνδρα τὰ γαθὰ καλῶς φέροντα ἢ τὰ κακά· τὰ μὲν γὰρ  
 |hubris| τοῖς πολλοῖς, τὰ δὲ |discretion,| τοῖς πᾶσιν |make inside of  
 |moderation|  
 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἦκουσας, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, Γωβρύου τὸ  
 |a thing|yea μὰ Δι', ἔφη· καὶ ἐὰν πολλὰ τοιαῦτά γε λέγῃ,  
 |said|  
 πολὺ μᾶλλον με τῆς |daughter| |suitor| λήψεται ἢ ἐὰν  
 |drinking cup| πολλά μοι |display,| Ἡ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας,  
 |exhibit|  
 πολλά γέ μοι ἐστί τοιαῦτα |write down| , ὦν ἐγὼ σοι οὐ  
 |envy| , ἣν τὴν |daughter| μου γυναῖκα λαμβάνῃς·

as the drinking deepened Cyrus put a question to Gobryas.

"Tell me, Gobryas, would you be better pleased to give your daughter to one of our company to-day than the day when you met us first?"

"Well," said Gobryas, "am I also to tell the truth?"

"Certainly," said Cyrus, "no question looks for a lie."

"Then," said Gobryas, "I assure you, I would far rather give her in marriage to-day."

"Can you tell us why?" said Cyrus.

"That I can," said he.

"Say on, then."

"At that time, I saw, it is true, the gallant manner in which your men endured toil and danger, but to-day I see the modesty with which they bear success. And I believe, Cyrus, that the man who takes good-fortune well is further to seek than he who can endure adversity; for success engenders insolence in many hearts, while suffering teaches sobriety and fortitude."

And Cyrus said, "Hystaspas, did you hear the saying of Gobryas?"

"I Did indeed," he answered, "and if he has many more as good, he will find me a suitor for his daughter, a far more eager one than if he had shown me all his goblets."

"Well," said Gobryas, "I have many such written down at home, and you may have them all if you take my daughter

*vocabulary***ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit**γαμέω** marry, take as a lover ~bigamy**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy**γρύψ** griffin**ἔδρα** (ᾱ) seat, seated group

~polyhedron

**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἐκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἰσχυρός** (υ) strong, forceful, violent**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

**ὀρθόω** stand up**ποῖος** what kind**πότε** when?**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia**σάφα** with full understanding**σιμός** (ι) snub-nosed**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;  
agree; (mp) happen ~bear**συνεργός** cooperating; colleague**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance

~technology

τὰ δ' ἐκπώματα, ἔφη, ἐπειδὴ οὐκ ἀνέχεσθαί μοι φαίνει, οὐκ οἶδ' εἰ Χρυσάντα τουτωῖ δῶ, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὴν ἔδραν σου ὑφήρπασε. Καὶ μὲν δὴ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ παρόντες, ἦν ἐμοὶ λέγητε, ὅταν τις ὑμῶν γαμεῖν ἐπιχειρήσῃ, γνώσεσθε ὁποῖός τις καὶ γὰρ συνεργὸς ὑμῖν ἔσομαι. καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν· Ἦν δέ τις ἐκδοῦναι βούλῃται θυγατέρα, πρὸς τίνα δεῖ λέγειν; Πρὸς ἐμέ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ τοῦτο· πάνυ γάρ, ἔφη, δεινός εἰμι ταύτην τὴν τέχνην. Ποίαν; ἔφη ὁ Χρυσάντας. Τὸ γινῶναι ὁποῖος ἂν γάμος ἐκάστῳ συναρμόσειε. καὶ ὁ Χρυσάντας ἔφη· Λέγε δὴ πρὸς τῶν θεῶν ποίαν τινά μοι γυναῖκα οἶε συναρμόσειν κάλλιστα. Πρῶτον μὲν, ἔφη, μικράν· μικρὸς γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς εἶ· εἰ δὲ μεγάλην γαμείς, ἦν ποτε βούλη αὐτὴν ὀρθὴν φιλῆσαι, προσάλλεσθαί σε δεήσει ὥσπερ τὰ κυνάρια. Τοῦτο μὲν δὴ, ἔφη, ὀρθῶς προνοεῖς· καὶ γὰρ οὐδ' ὅπωςτιοῦν ἀλτικός εἰμι. Ἔπειτα δ', ἔφη, σιμὴ ἂν σοι ἰσχυρῶς συμφέροι. Πρὸς τί δὴ αὖ τοῦτο; Ὅτι, ἔφη, σὺ γρυπὸς εἶ· πρὸς οὖν τὴν σιμότητα σάφ' ἴσθι ὅτι ἡ

τὰ δ' |drinking cup ἔφη, ἐπειδὴ οὐκ |raise; μοι φαίνει,  
 οὐκ οἶδ' εἰ Χρυσάντα τουτωῖ δῶ, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὴν |seat σου  
 ὑφῆρπασε. Καὶ μὲν δὴ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, καὶ  
 οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ παρόντες, ἦν ἐμοὶ λέγητε, |whenever ὑμῶν  
 |marry, |do, try, attack γνώσεσθε |whatever kind ἄγῳ |cooperating;  
 |take as a |lover ὑμῶν ἔσομαι. καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν· Ἦν δέ τις |hand over  
 βούληται |daughter , πρὸς τίνα δεῖ λέγειν; Πρὸς ἐμέ, ἔφη  
 ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ τοῦτο· |altogether, very, |, δεινός εἰμι ταύτην  
 τὴν |craft |what kind, |, ἢ ὁ Χρυσάντας. Τὸ γινῶναι |whatever kind  
 ἂν |wedding, sex τῇ συναρμόσειε. καὶ ὁ Χρυσάντας ἔφη·  
 Λέγε δὴ πρὸς τῶν θεῶν |what kind. Ἄ μοι γυναῖκα οἷε  
 συναρμόσειν κάλλιστα. Πρῶτον μὲν, ἔφη, |small |small  
 γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς εἶ· εἰ δὲ μεγάλην |marry, take ποτε βούλη  
 αὐτὴν |up- |love , προσάλλεσθαί σε δεήσει ὥσπερ τὰ  
 |right, |straight; |correct; |foresee, καὶ γὰρ  
 |just |think of  
 οὐδ' ὁπωστιοῦν ἀλτικός εἰμι. Ἐπειτα δ', ἔφη, |snub-nosed  
 |strong, force- |φέρου. Πρὸς τί δὴ αὖ τοῦτο; Ὅτι, ἔφη, σὺ  
 |ful, violent  
 γρυπὸς εἶ· πρὸς οὖν τὴν σιμότητα |clearly, |, ὅτι ἡ

to wife. And as for goblets," he added, "since it seems you cannot away with them, perhaps I might give them to Chrysantas to punish him for having filled your seat."

"Listen to me," said Cyrus, "Hystaspas, and all of you. If you will but tell me, any of you, when you propose to marry, you would soon discover what a clever advocate you had in me."

But Gobryas interposed, "And if one of us wants to give his daughter in marriage, to whom should he apply?"

"To me also," answered Cyrus; "I assure you, I am adept in the art."

"What art is that?" Chrysantas inquired.

"The art of discerning the wife to suit each man."

"Then by all the gods," said Chrysantas, "tell me what sort of wife would do for me?"

"In the first place," he answered, "she must be short, for you are not tall yourself, and if you married a tall maiden and wanted to give her a kiss when she stood up straight, you would have to jump to reach her like a little dog."

"Your advice is straight enough," said Chrysantas; "and I am but a sorry jumper at the best."

"In the next place," Cyrus went on, "a flat nose would suit you very well."

"A Flat nose?" said the other, "why?"

"Because your own is high enough, and flatness, you

*vocabulary*

ἄδειπνος without dinner

ἄνδρεῖος of a man, manly

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise

~angel

ἀστεῖος urbane, refined

βασίλεια noblewoman

βασίλειος kingly

γαστήρ -έρος (f) belly ~gastric

γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at

γέλως laughter

γυναικεῖος of women ~queen

δειπνέω eat, dine

δωρέω give ~donate

ἐκγελάω laugh out loud

ἐκπωμα -τος (n, 3) drinking cup

ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear

ἐνταῦθα there, here

εὐδοκιμέω be esteemed

ζηλόω emulate, praise

μεστός full

ναί yea

ὅμοιος like ~homoerotic

πάμπολυς very great

ποίη grass

ποῖος what kind

πρίσμαι buy

σιμός (ι) snub-nosed

συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;

agree; (mp) happen ~bear

συστρατεύω join in an expedition

χρυσόω (υ) make golden, gild

ψυχρός (υ) cold ~psychology

ὠνέομαι buy

γρυπότης ἄριστ' ἂν προσαρμόσειε. λέγεις σύ, ἔφη, ὥς καὶ τῷ εὖ δεδειπνηκότι ὥσπερ καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ἄδειπνος ἂν συναρμόττοι. Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· τῶν μὲν γὰρ μεστῶν γρυπὴ ἢ γαστήρ γίγνεται, τῶν δὲ ἀδείπνων σιμή. καὶ ὁ Χρυσάντας ἔφη· Ψυχρῷ δ' ἂν, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, βασιλεῖ ἔχοις ἂν εἰπεῖν ποία τις συνοίσει; ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ ὁ τε Κῦρος ἐξεγέλασε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὁμοίως. γελόντων δὲ ἅμα εἶπεν ὁ Ὑστάσπας· Πολύ γ', ἔφη, μάλιστα τούτου σε, ὦ Κῦρε, ζηλῶ ἐν τῇ βασιλείᾳ. Τίνος; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Ὅτι δύνασαι καὶ ψυχρὸς ὢν γέλωτα παρέχειν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἐπειτ' οὐκ ἂν πρίαιό γε παμπόλλου ὥστε σοὶ ταῦτ' εἰρῆσθαι, καὶ ἀπαγγελθῆναι παρ' ἧ εὐδοκιμῇ βούλει ὅτι ἀστεῖος εἶ; καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω διεσκώπτετο.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τιγράνη μὲν ἐξήνεγκε γυναικεῖον κόσμον, καὶ ἐκέλευσε τῇ γυναικὶ δοῦναι, ὅτι ἀνδρείως συνεστρατεύετο τῷ ἀνδρί, Ἄρταβάζω δὲ χρυσοῦν ἔκπωμα, τῷ δ' Ὑρκανίῳ ἵππον καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ἐδωρήσατο. Σοὶ δέ, ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, δώσω ἄνδρα τῇ



γρυπότης ἄριστ' ἂν προσαρμόσειε. λέγεις σύ, ἔφη, ὥς  
 καὶ τῷ εὖ |eat, dine ὥσπερ καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν |without ἂν  
 |dinner  
 συναρμόττοι. |yea μὰ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· τῶν μὲν γὰρ  
 μεστῶν γρυπὴ ἢ |belly γίγνεται, τῶν δὲ |without |snub-nosed  
 |dinner  
 καὶ ὁ Χρυσάντας ἔφη· |cold δ' ἂν, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν,  
 βασιλεῖ ἔχοις ἂν εἰπεῖν ποία τις |bring to-|there, here- ἐν δὴ  
 |gether; be  
 ὅ τε Κῦρος |laugh out loud· οἱ ἄλλοι ὁμοίως. γελῶντων δὲ  
 |expedient;  
 |agree;  
 |mp)  
 ἅμα εἶπεν ὁ Ὑστάσπας· Πολύ γ' |happen· μάλιστα τούτου σε,  
 ὦ Κῦρε, ζηλῶ ἐν τῇ βασιλείᾳ. Τίνος; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος. Ὅτι  
 δύνασαι καὶ |cold ὦν |laughter |furnish . καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
 εἶπεν· Ἐπειτ' οὐκ ἂν πρίαιό γε παμπόλλου ὥστε σοὶ ταῦτ'  
 εἰρήσθαι, καὶ |announce, order, παρ' ἧ |be esteemed |ζούλει ὅτι  
 |promise  
 |urbane, εἶ; καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω διεσκώπτετο.  
 |refined  
 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τιγράνη μὲν |carry off |of women  
 |order; , καὶ ἐκέλευσε τῇ γυναικὶ δοῦναι, ὅτι |of a man, manly  
 |adornment  
 |join in an expedi- τῷ ἀνδρί, Ἄρταβάζω δὲ χρυσοῦν |drinking cup  
 |tion  
 τῷ δ' Ὑρκανίῳ ἵππον καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ  
 ἐδωρήσατο. Σοὶ δέ, ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, δώσω ἄνδρα τῇ

may be sure, will go best with height.”

”You might as well say,” retorted Chrysantas, ”that one who has dined well, like myself, is best matched with the dinnerless.”

”Quite so,” answered Cyrus, ”a full stomach is high and an empty paunch is flat.”

”And now,” said Chrysantas, ”in heaven’s name, tell us the bride for a flat king?”

But at this Cyrus laughed outright, and all the others with him. And the laughter still rang loud when Hystaspas said:

”There is one thing, Cyrus, that I envy in your royal state more than all the rest.”

”And what is that?” said Cyrus.

”That though you are flat, you can raise a laugh.”

”Ah,” said Cyrus, ”what would you give to have as much said of you? To have it reported on all sides and wherever you wished to stand well that you were a man of wit?”

Thus they bantered each other and gave jest for jest.

Then Cyrus brought out a woman’s attire and ornaments of price and gave them to Tigranes as a present for his wife, because she had followed her husband so manfully to the war, and he gave a golden goblet to Artabazus, and a horse to the Hyrcanian leader, and many another splendid gift among the company.

”And to you, Gobryas,” said he, ”I will give a husband for your daughter.”

”Let me

*vocabulary*

**ἀναμένω** wait for ~remain  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**δείκνυμι** (ὄ) show, point out  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous  
**ἐκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup  
**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out  
**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then  
**λάσχω** cry, crack, ring  
**λήγω** cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease  
 ~lax  
**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia

**νή** yea  
**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic  
**ὁμοιόω** assimilate, liken ~homoerotic  
**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so  
**οὐσία** property; essence  
**πολλαπλάσιος** many times more  
**ποῦ** where?  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**σύγγραμμα** -τος (n, 3) piece of writing  
**χρυσός** (ὄ) gold  
**χρυσόω** (ὄ) make golden, gild

θυγατρί. Οὐκοῦν ἐμέ, ἔφη ὁ Ὑστάσπας, δώσεις, ἵνα καὶ τὰ συγγράμματα λάβω. Ἡ καὶ ἔστι σοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐσία ἀξία τῶν τῆς παιδός; Νῆ Δί', ἔφη, πολλαπλασίων μὲν οὖν χρημάτων. Καὶ ποῦ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἔστι σοι αὕτη ἡ οὐσία; Ἐνταῦθα, ἔφη, ὅπουπερ καὶ σὺ κάθησαι φίλος ὢν ἐμοί. Ἀρκεῖ μοι, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐκτείνας τὴν δεξιάν, Δίδου, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε· δέχομαι γάρ. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν τὴν τοῦ Ὑστάσπου δεξιὰν ἔδωκε τῷ Γωβρύᾳ, ὁ δ' ἐδέξατο. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ἔδωκε δῶρα τῷ Ὑστάσπα, ὅπως τῇ παιδί πέμψει· Χρυσάνταν δ' ἐφίλησε προσαγαγόμενος. καὶ ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος εἶπε· Μὰ Δί', ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐχ ὁμοίου γε χρυσοῦ ἐμοί τε τὸ ἔκπωμα δέδωκας καὶ Χρυσάντα τὸ δῶρον. Ἀλλὰ καὶ σοί, ἔφη, δώσω. ἐπήρετο ἐκείνος Πότε; Εἰς τριακοστόν, ἔφη, ἔτος. Ὡς ἀναμενοῦντος, ἔφη, καὶ οὐκ ἀποθανουμένου οὕτω παρασκευάζου. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἔληξεν ἡ σκηνή· ἐξανισταμένων δ' αὐτῶν ἐξανέστη καὶ ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ξυμπρούπεμψεν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας.

|daughter . |not so?; and so ᾿βη ὁ ᾿Υστάσπας, δώσεις, ἵνα καὶ  
 τὰ |piece of writing λάβω. Ἡ καὶ ἔστι σοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,  
 |property|worthy ὦν τῆς παιδός; Νῆ Δί, ἔφη, πολλαπλασίων  
 |essence  
 μὲν οὖν |possession, . money|where? ᾿βη ὁ Κῦρος, ἔστι σοι  
 |business  
 αὕτη ἡ |property|there, here, ἔφη, ὅπου περ καὶ σὺ |sit  
 |essence  
 φίλος ὦν ἐμοί. |satisfy; ward off, | ὁ Γωβρύας· καὶ εὐθὺς  
 |defend; suffice  
 |stretch out . ἤν δεξιάν, Δίδου, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε· |accept, re- ἱρ.  
 |ceive, await  
 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν τὴν τοῦ ᾿Υστάσπου δεξιὰν ἔδωκε  
 τῷ Γωβρύα, ὁ δ' ἐδέξατο. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πολλὰ καὶ  
 καλὰ ἔδωκε |gift τῷ ᾿Υστάσπα, ὅπως τῇ παιδί πέμψει·  
 Χρυσάνταν δ' |love |bring to a place . καὶ ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος  
 εἶπε· Μὰ Δί, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐχ ὁμοίου γε χρυσοῦ  
 ἐμοί τε τὸ |drinking cup ᾿Ωκας καὶ Χρυσάντα τὸ |gift .  
 Ἀλλὰ καὶ σοί, ἔφη, δώσω. |ask as well; εἰνος Πότε; Εἰς  
 |ask then  
 τριακοστόν, ἔφη, ἔτος. Ὡς |wait for , ἔφη, καὶ οὐκ  
 ἀποθανομένου οὕτω |prepare, render . καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ  
 οὕτως ἔληξεν ἡ |tent; |raise, bring/send δ' αὐτῶν |raise, bring/send  
 |stage |out  
 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ξυμπρούπεμψεν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὰς |door .

be the gift," said Hystaspas, "and then I shall get those writings."

"But have you a fortune on your side," asked Cyrus, "to match the bride's?"

"Certainly, I have," he answered, "I may say twenty times as great."

"And where," asked Cyrus, "may those treasures be?"

"At the foot of your throne," he answered, "my gracious lord."

"I Ask no more," said Gobryas, and held out his right hand. "Give him to me, Cyrus," he said; "I accept him."

At that Cyrus took the right hand of Hystaspas and laid it in the hand of Gobryas, and the pledge was given and received. Then Cyrus gave beautiful gifts to Hystaspas for his bride, but he drew Chrysantas to his breast and kissed him. Thereupon Artabazus cried:

"Heaven help us, Cyrus! The goblet you gave me is not of the fine gold you have given Chrysantas now!"

"Well," said Cyrus, "you shall have the same one day."

"When?" asked the other.

"Thirty years hence," said Cyrus.

"I Will wait," said Artabazus: "I will not die: be ready for me."

And then the banquet came to an end: the guests rose, and Cyrus stood up with them and conducted them to the door.

But on the morrow he

*vocabulary*

**ἀπόγονος** descended from  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out  
**διανέμω** distribute, divide  
**δοκιμάζω** test, approve  
**δωρέω** give ~donate  
**ἐθελούσιος** voluntary, optional  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow  
 ~trophy

**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman  
**καταμένω** stay; not change  
**οἶκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**τελευταῖος** last, final  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὕπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ τοὺς ἐθελουσίους συμμάχους γενομένους  
 ἀπέπεμπεν οἴκαδε ἐκάστους, πλὴν ὅσοι αὐτῶν οἰκεῖν  
 ἐβούλοντο παρ' αὐτῷ· τούτοις δὲ χώραν καὶ οἴκους ἔδωκε,  
 καὶ νῦν ἔτι ἔχουσιν οἱ τῶν καταμεινάντων τότε ἀπόγονοι·  
 πλείστοι δ' εἰσὶ Μήδων καὶ Ὑρκανίων· τοῖς δ' ἀπιούσι  
 δωρησάμενος πολλὰ καὶ ἀμέμπτους ποιησάμενος καὶ  
 ἄρχοντας καὶ στρατιώτας ἀπεπέμψατο. ἐκ τούτου δὲ  
 διέδωκε καὶ τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν στρατιώταις τὰ χρήματα  
 ὅσα ἐκ Σάρδεων ἔλαβε· καὶ τοῖς μὲν μυριάρχοις καὶ  
 τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ὑπηρέταις ἐξαίρετα ἐδίδου πρὸς τὴν  
 ἀξίαν ἐκάστω, τὰ δ' ἄλλα διένειμε· καὶ τὸ μέρος ἐκάστω  
 δοὺς τῶν μυριάρχων ἐπέτρεψεν αὐτοῖς διανέμειν ὥσπερ  
 αὐτὸς ἐκείνοις διένειμεν. ἐδίδουσιν δὲ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα  
 χρήματα ἄρχων ἄρχοντας τοὺς ὑφ' ἐαυτῷ δοκιμάζων·  
 τὰ δὲ τελευταῖα οἱ ἐξάδαρχοι τοὺς ὑφ' ἐαυτοῖς ιδιώτας  
 δοκιμάσαντες πρὸς τὴν ἀξίαν ἐκάστω ἐδίδουσιν· καὶ οὕτω  
 πάντες εἰλήφεσαν τὸ δίκαιον μέρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰλήφεσαν τὰ  
 τότε δοθέντα, οἱ μὲν τινες ἔλεγον περὶ τοῦ Κύρου τοιάδε·



Τῇ δὲ |the next; later |voluntary, optional συμμάχους γενομένους  
 |send away |homeward ἄστους, |except ὅσοι αὐτῶν |inhabit  
 ἐβούλοντο παρ' αὐτῶ· τούτοις δὲ |place καὶ οἴκους ἔδωκε,  
 καὶ νῦν ἔτι ἔχουσιν οἱ τῶν |stay; not change τότε |descended from  
 πλείστοι δ' εἰσὶ Μήδων καὶ Ὑρκανίων· τοῖς δ' |be absent, go away, return  
 δωρησάμενος πολλὰ καὶ ἀμέμπτους ποιησάμενος καὶ  
 ἄρχοντας καὶ |soldier, mercenary |send away ἐκ τούτου δὲ  
 |distribute, send out περὶ αὐτὸν |soldier, mercenary τὰ |possession, money, business  
 ὅσα ἐκ Σάρδεων ἔλαβε· καὶ τοῖς μὲν μυριάρχοις καὶ  
 τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν |servant, officer ἐξαίρετα ἐδίδου πρὸς τὴν  
 ἀξίαν ἐκάστω, τὰ δ' ἄλλα |distribute, divide καὶ τὸ μέρος ἐκάστω  
 δὸς τῶν μυριάρχων |entrust, de- αὐτοῖς |distribute, divide ὥσπερ  
 |cede, allow  
 αὐτὸς ἐκείνοις |distribute, divide ἐδίδοσαν δὲ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα  
 |possession, money, business ἄρχοντας τοὺς ὑφ' ἑαυτῶ |test, approve  
 |last, final οἱ ἐξάδαρχοι τοὺς ὑφ' ἑαυτοῖς |private; a layman  
 |test, approve πρὸς τὴν ἀξίαν ἐκάστω ἐδίδοσαν· καὶ οὕτω  
 πάντες εἰλήφεσαν τὸ δίκαιον μέρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰλήφεσαν τὰ  
 τότε δοθέντα, οἱ μὲν τινες ἔλεγον περὶ τοῦ Κύρου |such

arranged that all the allies and all who had volunteered should be sent back to their homes, all except those who wished to take up their abode with him. To these he gave grants of land and houses, still held by their descendants, Medes for the greater part, and Hyrcanians. And to those who went home he gave many gifts and sent them away well content, both officers and men. After this he distributed among his own soldiers all the wealth he had taken at Sardis, choice gifts for the captains of ten thousand and for his own staff in proportion to their deserts, and the rest in equal shares, delivering to every captain one share with orders to divide it among their subordinates as he had divided the whole among them. Thereupon each officer gave to the officers directly under him, judging the worth of each, until it came to the captains of six, who considered the cases of the privates in their own squads, and gave each man what he deserved: and thus every soldier in the army received an equitable share. But after the distribution of it all there

*vocabulary***ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**ἀπλόος** single; simple ~haploid**ἐμπαλιν** backwards, on the contrary**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious;  
vital**ἐφέλκω** drag; (mid) influence**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**ὅπου** where**οὐσία** property; essence**ποῖος** what kind**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

Ἦ που αὐτός γε πολλὰ ἔχει, ὅπου γε καὶ ἡμῶν ἐκάστω  
 τοσαῦτα δέδωκεν· οἱ δέ τινες αὐτῶν ἔλεγον· Ποῖα πολλὰ  
 ἔχει; οὐχ ὁ Κύρου τρόπος τοιοῦτος οἷος χρηματίζεσθαι,  
 ἀλλὰ διδοὺς μᾶλλον ἢ κτώμενος ἥδεται.

Αἰσθόμενος δὲ ὁ Κῦρος τούτους τοὺς λόγους καὶ τὰς  
 δόξας τὰς περὶ αὐτοῦ συνέλεξε τοὺς φίλους τε καὶ τοὺς  
 ἐπικαιρίους ἅπαντας καὶ ἔλεξεν ὥδε.

Ὡ Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἐώρακα μὲν ἤδη ἀνθρώπους  
 οἱ βούλονται δοκεῖν πλείω κεκτηῖσθαι ἢ ἔχουσιν,  
 ἐλευθεριώτεροι ἂν οἰόμενοι οὕτω φαίνεσθαι· ἐμοὶ δὲ  
 δοκοῦσιν, ἔφη, οὗτοι τοῦμπαλιν οὐ βούλονται ἐφέλκεσθαι·  
 τὸ γὰρ πολλὰ δοκοῦντα ἔχειν μὴ κατ' ἀξίαν τῆς οὐσίας  
 φαίνεσθαι ὠφελοῦντα τοὺς φίλους ἀνελευθερίαν ἔμοιγε  
 δοκεῖ περιάπτειν. εἰσὶ δ' αὖ, ἔφη, οἱ λεληθέναι βούλονται  
 ὅσα ἂν ἔχωσι· πονηροὶ οὖν καὶ οὗτοι τοῖς φίλοις ἔμοιγε  
 δοκοῦσιν εἶναι. διὰ γὰρ τὸ μὴ εἰδέναι τὰ ὄντα πολλάκις  
 δεόμενοι οὐκ ἐπαγγέλλουσιν οἱ φίλοι τοῖς ἐταίροις, ἀλλὰ  
 τητῶνται. ἀπλουστάτου δέ μοι, ἔφη, δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ τὴν

Ἦ που αὐτός γε πολλὰ ἔχει, |where γε καὶ ἡμῶν ἐκάστῳ  
 |so much δέδωκεν· οἱ δέ τινες αὐτῶν ἔλεγον· |what kind .λὰ  
 ἔχει; οὐχ ὁ Κύρου |turn; manner, ὅτος οἶος χρηματίζεσθαι,  
 |kind, fashion  
 ἀλλὰ διδούς μάλλον ἢ |acquire |ῥδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy; or ῥδομαι?:  
 |be pleased, enjoy  
 |perceive δὲ ὁ Κῦρος τούτους τοὺς λόγους καὶ τὰς  
 δόξας τὰς περὶ αὐτοῦ |collect, τοὺς φίλους τε καὶ τοὺς  
 |assemble  
 |at a fitting time; γαντας καὶ ἔλεξεν |thus.  
 |serious; vital  
 Ὡ Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἐώρακα μὲν ἤδη ἀνθρώπους  
 οἱ βούλονται δοκεῖν πλείῳ κεκτῆσθαι ἢ ἔχουσιν,  
 ἐλευθεριώτεροι ἂν οἴομενοι οὕτω φαίνεσθαι· ἐμοὶ δὲ  
 δοκοῦσιν, ἔφη, οὗτοι |backwards, on<sup>1</sup> βούλονται |drag; (mid)  
 |the contrary |influence  
 τὸ γὰρ πολλὰ δοκοῦντα ἔχειν μὴ κατ' ἀξίαν τῆς |property;  
 |essence  
 φαίνεσθαι |help, be useful . τὺς φίλους ἀνελευθερίαν ἔμοιγε  
 δοκεῖ περιάπτειν. εἰσὶ δ' αὖ, ἔφη, οἱ |escape notice; ὄνται  
 |(mp+gen) forget  
 ὅσα ἂν ἔχωσι· |oppressed; knav- . καὶ οὗτοι τοῖς φίλοις ἔμοιγε  
 |ish; useless  
 δοκοῦσιν εἶναι. διὰ γὰρ τὸ μὴ εἰδέναι τὰ ὄντα |often  
 δεόμενοι οὐκ ἐπαγγέλλουσιν οἱ φίλοι τοῖς ἐταίροις, ἀλλὰ  
 τητῶνται. |single; simple δέ μοι, ἔφη, δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ τὴν

were some who said:

"How rich Cyrus must be, to have given us all so much!"

"Rich?" cried others, "what do you mean? Cyrus is no money-maker: he is more glad to give than to get."

When Cyrus heard of this talk and the opinions held about him, he gathered together his friends and the chief men of the state and spoke as follows:

"Gentlemen and friends of mine, I have known men who were anxious to have it thought they possessed more than they really had, thinking this would give them an air of freedom and nobility. But in my opinion the result was the very opposite of what they wished. If it is thought that a man has great riches and does not help his friends in proportion to his wealth, he cannot but appear ignoble and niggardly. There are others," he went on, "who would have their wealth forgotten, and these I look upon as traitors to their friends: for it must often happen that a comrade is in need and yet hesitates to tell them because he does not know how much they have, and so he is kept in the dark and left to starve. The straightforward course, it seems to me, is always to

*vocabulary*

**ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself  
**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
 muster  
**ἀναξεύγνυμι** (ὅ) yoke again  
**ἀποδημέω** be absent, abroad  
**δείκνυμι** (ὅ) show, point out  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**ἐνδεής** inadequate  
**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack  
**εὐτακτος** orderly, disciplined  
**ἡνίκα** when

**καταδαπανάω** squander, consume  
**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**κατατρίβω** (ι) wear out, use up  
**κτῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possession  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**στόλος** expedition, equipment, forces  
 ~apostle  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**ὕμέτερος** (ὅ) yours  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

δύναμιν φανεράν ποιήσαντα ἐκ ταύτης ἀγωνίζεσθαι περὶ καλοκάγαθίας. καὶ γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη, βούλομαι ὑμῖν ὅσα μὲν οἶόν τ' ἐστὶν ἰδεῖν τῶν ἐμοὶ ὄντων δείξαι, ὅσα δὲ μὴ οἶόν τε ἰδεῖν, διηγῆσασθαι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν τὰ μὲν ἐδείκνυε πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ κτήματα· τὰ δὲ κείμενα ὥς μὴ ῥάδια εἶναι ἰδεῖν διηγείτο· τέλος δ' εἶπεν ὧδε· Ταῦτα, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἅπαντα δεῖ ὑμᾶς οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐμὰ ἡγείσθαι ἢ καὶ ὑμέτερα· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, ταῦτα ἀθροίζω οὐθ' ὅπως αὐτὸς καταδαπανήσω οὐθ' ὅπως αὐτὸς κατατρίψω· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δυναίμην· ἀλλ' ὅπως ἔχω τῷ τε αἰὲ καλόν τι ὑμῶν ποιῶντι διδόναι καὶ ὅπως, ἢν τις ὑμῶν τινος ἐνδείσθαι νομίσῃ, πρὸς ἐμὲ ἐλθὼν λάβῃ οὐδ' ἂν ἐνδεὴς τυγχάνῃ ὢν. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐλέχθη.

## 8.5

Ἦνίκα δὲ ἤδη αὐτῷ ἐδόκει καλῶς ἔχειν τὰ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ὥς καὶ ἀποδημεῖν, συνεσκευάζετο τὴν εἰς Πέρσας πορείαν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παρήγγειλεν· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐνόμισεν ἱκανὰ ἔχειν ὦν ᾧδεο δεήσεσθαι, οὕτω δὴ ἀνεξεύγνυε. διηγησόμεθα δὲ καὶ ταῦτα ὥς πολὺς στόλος ὢν εὐτάκτως μὲν κατεσκευάζετο



δύναμιν |visible, conspicuous |... μύσαντα ἐκ ταύτης |contend, exert oneself  
 καλοκάγαθίας. καὶ γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη, βούλομαι ὑμῖν ὅσα μὲν  
 οἶόν τ' ἐστὶν ἰδεῖν τῶν ἐμοὶ ὄντων |show , ὅσα δὲ μὴ οἶόν  
 τε ἰδεῖν, |detail, describe. ταῦτα εἰπὼν τὰ μὲν ἐδείκνυε πολλὰ  
 καὶ καλὰ |possession τὰ δὲ |lie ὡς μὴ ῥάδια εἶναι ἰδεῖν  
 |detail, describe |end δ' εἶπεν |thus Ταῦτα, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἅπαντα δεῖ  
 ὑμᾶς οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐμὰ ἡγεῖσθαι ἢ καὶ |yours ἐγὼ γάρ,  
 ἔφη, ταῦτα |press close together; (mid) muster |squander, consume οὐθ'  
 ὅπως αὐτὸς |wear out, use up ' γὰρ ἂν δυναίμην· ἀλλ' ὅπως  
 ἔχω τῷ τε ἀεὶ καλόν τι ὑμῶν ποιοῦντι διδόναι καὶ ὅπως,  
 ἢν τις ὑμῶν τινος |tie to |consider, ... customary; believe  
 οὗ ἂν |inadequate, χάνῃ ὢν. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐλέχθη.

## 8.5

|when δὲ ἤδη αὐτῷ ἐδόκει καλῶς ἔχειν τὰ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ὡς  
 καὶ |be absent, abroad |pack up τὴν εἰς Πέρσας |gait, march καὶ  
 τοῖς ἄλλοις |transmit; order, summon; recommend, encourage |consider |sufficient; fit, empowered  
 ᾧετο δεήσεσθαι, οὕτω δὴ |yoke again |believe διηγησόμεθα δὲ καὶ  
 ταῦτα ὡς πολὺς |expedition, equipment, forces |orderly, disciplined μὲν |equip, build

make no secret of our own resources, but to use them all, whatever they are, in our efforts to win the crown of honour. Accordingly I am anxious to show you all my possessions so far as they can be seen, and to give you a list of the rest.”

With these words he proceeded to point out his visible treasures, and he gave an exact account of those that could not be shown. He ended by saying:

”All these things, gentlemen, you must consider yours as much as mine. I have collected them, not that I might spend them on myself or waste them in my own use: I could not do that if I tried. I keep them to reward him who does a noble deed, and to help any of you who may be in want of anything, so that you may come to me and take what you require.”

Such were the words of Cyrus.

### 8.5

But now that all was well in Babylon and Cyrus felt he might leave the land, he began to prepare for a march to Persia, and sent out orders to his men. And when he had all he needed, the steeds were yoked, and he set off. And here we will explain how it was that so vast a host could unpack and pack again without a break of

*vocabulary***ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy**ἀνασκευάζω** pack up**ἀνατίθῃμι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
(mp) reproach**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail**ἀριστερός** left-hand**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**βασιλικός** royal**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**διατάσσω** arrange, array**δορυφόρος** spear-bearing**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**θέρος** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos**κατασκευή** fixed assets; condition**καταχωρίζω** emplace; record**μέτρον** measure ~metric**ὅπου** where**πόσος** how many, much, far?**σκεῦος** -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel**σκηνέω** camp**σκηνή** tent; stage**σκηνόω** camp**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign ~strategy**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
station ~strategy**συντίθῃμι** hearken, mark ~thesis**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

καὶ πάλιν ἀνεσκευάζετο, ταχὺ δὲ κατεχωρίζετο ὅπου δέοι. ὅπου γὰρ ἂν στρατοπεδεύηται βασιλεύς, σκηναὶ μὲν δὴ ἔχοντες πάντες οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα στρατεύονται καὶ θέρους καὶ χειμῶνος. εὐθύς δὲ τοῦτο ἐνόμιζε Κῦρος, πρὸς ἕω βλέπουσαν ἵστασθαι τὴν σκηνήν· ἔπειτα ἔταξε πρῶτον μὲν πόσον δεῖ ἀπολιπόντας σκηνοῦν τοὺς δορυφόρους τῆς βασιλικῆς σκηνῆς· ἔπειτα σιτοποιοῖς μὲν χώραν ἀπέδειξε τὴν δεξιάν, ὀψοποιοῖς δὲ τὴν ἀριστεράν, ἵπποις δὲ τὴν δεξιάν, ὑποζυγίοις δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις τὴν ἀριστεράν· καὶ τὰλλα δὲ διετέτακτο ὥστε εἰδέναι ἕκαστον τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν καὶ μέτρω καὶ τόπω. ὅταν δὲ ἀνασκευάζωνται, συντίθησι μὲν ἕκαστος σκεύη οἷσπερ τέτακται χρῆσθαι, ἀνατίθενται δ' αὖ ἄλλοι ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· ὥσθ' ἅμα μὲν πάντες ἔρχονται οἱ σκευαγωγοὶ ἐπὶ τὰ τεταγμένα ἄγειν, ἅμα δὲ πάντες ἀνατιθέασιν ἐπὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστος. οὕτω δὴ ὁ αὐτὸς χρόνος ἀρκεῖ μιᾷ τε σκηνῇ καὶ πάσαις ἀνηρῆσθαι. ὡσαύτως οὕτως ἔχει καὶ περὶ κατασκευῆς. καὶ περὶ τοῦ πεποιῆσθαι δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πάντα ἐν

καὶ πάλιν |pack up , ταχὺ δὲ |emplace; record |where ἴεοι.  
 |where γὰρ ἂν |encamp or take up βασιλεύς, |tent; μὲν δὴ  
 |station |stage  
 ἔχοντες πάντες οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα στρατεύονται καὶ |sum-  
 |mer  
 καὶ |winter, εὐθὺς δὲ τοῦτο ἐνόμιζε Κῦρος, πρὸς ἔω  
 |storm  
 βλέπουσαν ἵστασθαι τὴν |tent; ἔπειτα ἔταξε πρῶτον  
 |stage  
 μὲν |how many, much, far? . ας σκηνοῦν τοὺς |spear-bearing τῆς  
 |royal |tent; ἔπειτα σιτοποιοῖς μὲν χώραν |show, point out; ap-  
 |stage |point; (mid) declare  
 τὴν δεξιάν, ὀσοποιοῖς δὲ τὴν |left-hand , ἵπποις δὲ τὴν  
 δεξιάν, |beast of burden τοῖς ἄλλοις τὴν |left-hand καὶ  
 τᾶλλα δὲ |arrange, ὥστε εἰδέναι ἕκαστον τὴν ἑαυτοῦ  
 |array  
 χώραν καὶ |measure καὶ τόπων. ὅταν δὲ |pack up ,  
 |hearken, mark ἕκαστος |thing, tool, vessel ἔτακται χρῆσθαι,  
 |consecrate, lay ὄν, im- ἄλλοι ἐπὶ τὰ |beast of burden Ἰ ἅμα  
 |pute; (mp) reproach  
 μὲν πάντες ἔρχονται οἱ σκευαγωγοὶ ἐπὶ τὰ τεταγμένα  
 ἄγειν, ἅμα δὲ πάντες |consecrate, lay ὄν, im- ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστος.  
 |pute; (mp) reproach  
 οὕτω δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς χρόνος |satisfy; ward off, κηνῇ καὶ πάσαις  
 |defend; suffice  
 ἀνηρῆσθαι. |in the same way --ς ἔχει καὶ περὶ |fixed assets;  
 |condition  
 καὶ περὶ τοῦ πεποιῆσθαι δὲ τὰ |fit, suitable πάντα ἐν

order, and take up a position with such speed wherever it was desired. When the king is on the march his attendants, of course, are provided with tents and encamp with him, winter and summer alike. From the first the Cyrus made it a custom to have his tent pitched facing east, and later on he fixed the space to be left between himself and his lancers, and then he stationed his bakers on the right and his cooks on the left, the cavalry on the right again, and the baggage-train on the left. Everything else was so arranged that each man knew his own quarters, their position and their size. When the army was packing up after a halt, each man put together the baggage he used himself, and others placed it on the animals: so that at one and the same moment all his bearers came to the baggage-train and each man laid his load on his own beasts. Thus all the tents could be struck in the same time as one. And it was the same when the baggage had to be unpacked. Again, in order that the necessities should be prepared in time, each man was told

*vocabulary*

**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διατάσσω** arrange, array  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτήδευμα** -τος (n, 3) habit, business, custom  
**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper, henchman, servant ~therapy  
**κατατίθημι** put down, deposit, lay aside ~thesis  
**καταχωρίζω** emplace; record  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**ὀπλισίς** -τος (f) arming for war

**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**ὅπου** where  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend ~genus  
**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic  
**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems  
**στρατιωτικός** military  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy  
**σφάλμα** stumble  
**ὕστερίζω** be late  
**φῶλον** race, tribe, class ~phylum  
**χρῆσις** -τος (f) use, usage  
**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

καιρῷ ὡσαύτως διατέτακται ἐκάστοις τὰ ποιητέα· καὶ  
 διὰ τοῦτο ὁ αὐτὸς χρόνος ἄρκει ἐνὶ τε μέρει καὶ πᾶσι  
 πεποιῆσθαι. ὥσπερ δὲ οἱ περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια θεράποντες  
 χώραν εἶχον τὴν προσήκουσαν ἕκαστοι, οὕτω καὶ οἱ  
 ὀπλοφόροι αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ στρατοπεδεύσει χώραν τε εἶχον  
 τὴν τῇ ὀπλίσει ἐκάστη ἐπιτηδεῖαν, καὶ ἥδεσαν ταύτην  
 ὅποια ἦν, καὶ ἐπ' ἀναμφισβήτητον πάντες κατεχωρίζοντο.  
 καλὸν μὲν γὰρ ἡγείτο ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἐν οἰκίᾳ εἶναι  
 ἐπιτηδεύματα τὴν εὐθημοσύνην· ὅταν γάρ τις του δέηται,  
 δῆλόν ἐστι ὅπου δεῖ ἐλθόντα λαβεῖν· πολὺ δ' ἔτι κάλλιον  
 ἐνόμιζε τὴν τῶν στρατιωτικῶν φύλων εὐθημοσύνην εἶναι,  
 ὅσῳ τε ὀξύτεροι οἱ καιροὶ τῶν εἰς τὰ πολεμικὰ χρήσεων  
 καὶ μείζω τὰ σφάλματα τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν ὑστεριζόντων ἐν  
 αὐτοῖς· ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν ἐν καιρῷ παραγιγνομένων πλείστου  
 ἄξια πλεονεκτήματα ἑώρα γιγνόμενα ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς·  
 διὰ ταῦτα οὖν καὶ ἐπεμέλετο ταύτης τῆς εὐθημοσύνης  
 μάλιστα. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν δὴ πρῶτον ἑαυτὸν ἐν μέσῳ  
 κατετίθετο τοῦ στρατοπέδου, ὥς



καιρῷ |in the same|arrange, array ἐκάστοις τὰ ποιητέα· καὶ  
 |way  
 διὰ τοῦτο ὁ αὐτὸς χρόνος |satisfy; ward off, ἐρεῖ καὶ πᾶσι  
 |defend; suffice  
 πεποιῆσθαι. ὥσπερ δὲ οἱ περὶ τὰ |fit, suitable |companion  
 |place εἶχον τὴν |belong to, it be- ἑκάστοι, οὕτω καὶ οἱ  
 |seems  
 ὅπλοφόροι αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ στρατοπεδεύσει |place τε εἶχον  
 τὴν τῇ ὀπλίσει ἐκάστη |fit, suitable , καὶ ἤδεσαν ταύτην  
 |whatever kind ἑπ' ἀναμφισβήτητον πάντες |emplace; record  
 καλὸν μὲν γὰρ ἡγείτο ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἐν |building, ἵσαι  
 |house  
 |habit, busi- τὴν εὐθημοσύνην· |whenever, τίς του δέηται,  
 |ness, custom  
 |visible, ὅπου |where δεῖ ἐλθόντα λαβεῖν· πολὺ δ' ἔτι κάλλιον  
 |conspicuous  
 |consider customary; |military |race, εὐθημοσύνην εἶναι,  
 |believe |tribe,  
 |class  
 ὅσῳ τε |sharp; fast ἰ καιροὶ τῶν εἰς τὰ |warlike, |use, usage  
 |hostile  
 καὶ μείζῳ τὰ |stumble τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν |be late ἐν  
 αὐτοῖς· ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν ἐν καιρῷ |be beside, attend πλείστου  
 |worthy λεονεκτήματα ἑώρα γιγνόμενα ἐν τοῖς |warlike,  
 |hostile  
 διὰ ταῦτα οὖν καὶ |take care of, ταύτης τῆς εὐθημοσύνης  
 |oversee  
 μάλιστα. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν δὴ πρῶτον ἑαυτὸν ἐν μέσῳ  
 |put down τοῦ |army camp , ὥς

beforehand what he had to do: and thus all the divisions could be provided for as speedily as one. And, just as the serving-men had their appointed places, so the different regiments had their own stations, adapted to their special style of fighting, and each detachment knew their quarters and went to them without hesitation. Even in a private house, orderliness, Cyrus knew, was a most excellent thing: every one, if he needed anything, would then know where to get it; but he held it still more desirable for the arrangement of an army, seeing that the moment for action passes far more quickly in war and the evil from being too late is far more grave. Therefore he gave more thought and care to order and arrangement than to anything else.

His own position, to begin with, must be at the centre of the camp, as

*vocabulary*

**ἄκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
**ἄκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman  
 ~acute  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**γέρρον** wicker object  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous  
**εἶωθα** be accustomed, in the habit  
**ἐνσκευάζω** get ready, dress in  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**παίω** hit  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προστίθμι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**χρήσιμος** useful

ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἐχυρωτάτης οὔσης· ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς  
 μὲν πιστοτάτους ὥσπερ εἰώθει περὶ ἑαυτὸν εἶχε, τούτων  
 δ' ἐν κύκλῳ ἐχομένους ἰππέας τ' εἶχε καὶ ἄρματηλάτας.  
 καὶ γὰρ τούτους ἐχυρᾶς ἐνόμιζε χώρας δεῖσθαι, ὅτι σὺν  
 οἷς μάχονται ὅπλοις οὐδὲν πρόχειρον ἔχοντες τούτων  
 στρατοπεδεύονται, ἀλλὰ πολλοῦ χρόνου δέονται εἰς τὴν  
 ἐξόπλισιν, εἰ μέλλουσι χρησίμως ἔξειν. ἐν δεξιᾷ δὲ καὶ  
 ἐν ἀριστερᾷ αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῶν ἰππέων πελτασταῖς χώρα  
 ἦν· τοξοτῶν δ' αὖ χώρα ἢ πρόσθεν ἦν καὶ ὅπισθεν αὐτοῦ  
 τε καὶ τῶν ἰππέων. ὀπλίτας δὲ καὶ τοὺς τὰ μεγάλα  
 γέρρα ἔχοντας κύκλῳ πάντων εἶχεν ὥσπερ τεῖχος, ὅπως  
 καὶ εἰ δέοι τι ἐνσκευάζεσθαι τοὺς ἰππέας, οἱ μονιμώτατοι  
 πρόσθεν ὄντες παρέχοιεν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλῆ τὴν καθόπλισιν.  
 ἐκάθευδον δὲ αὐτῷ ἐν τάξει ὥσπερ οἱ ὀπλῖται, οὕτω δὲ καὶ  
 οἱ πελτασταὶ καὶ οἱ τοξόται, ὅπως καὶ ἐκ νυκτῶν, εἰ δέοι  
 τι, ὥσπερ καὶ οἱ ὀπλῖται παρεσκευασμένοι εἰσὶ παίειν τὸν  
 εἰς χεῖρας ἰόντα, οὕτω καὶ οἱ τοξόται καὶ οἱ ἀκοντισταί, εἴ  
 τινες προσίοιεν, ἐξ ἐτοίμου ἀκοντίζοιεν καὶ

ταύτης τῆς χώρας |secure; οὔσης· ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς  
 |persuasive  
 μὲν |faithful; trust- ὥσπερ |be accustomed, υτὸν εἶχε, τούτων  
 |worthy |in the habit  
 δ' ἐν |circle, ἐχομένους |rider τ' εἶχε καὶ ἄρματηλάτας.  
 |wheel  
 καὶ γὰρ τούτους |secure; ὁμιζε χώρας δεῖσθαι, ὅτι σὺν  
 |persuasive  
 οἷς μάχονται |tool οὐδὲν πρόχειρον ἔχοντες τούτων  
 |encamp or take up, ἀλλὰ πολλοῦ χρόνου δέονται εἰς τὴν  
 |station  
 ἐξόπλισιν, εἰ μέλλουσι |useful ἔξειν. ἐν δεξιᾷ δὲ καὶ  
 ἐν |left-hand αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῶν |rider |light troops χώρα  
 ἦν· |archer δ' αὖ χώρα ἢ πρόσθεν ἦν καὶ |behind, αὐτοῦ  
 |hereafter  
 τε καὶ τῶν |rider |hoplite, heavy καὶ τοὺς τὰ μεγάλα  
 |infantryman  
 |wicker ἔχοντας |circle, πάντων εἶχεν ὥσπερ τείχος, ὅπως  
 |object |wheel  
 καὶ εἰ δέοι τι |get ready, dress in ὕς |rider , οἱ μονιμώτατοι  
 πρόσθεν ὄντες παρέχοιεν αὐτοῖς |safe, easy, καθόπλισιν.  
 |steady, careful  
 ἐκάθειδον δὲ αὐτῷ ἐν τάξει ὥσπερ οἱ |hoplite, heavy υ δὲ καὶ  
 |infantryman  
 οἱ |light troops καὶ οἱ |archer , ὅπως καὶ ἐκ νυκτῶν, εἰ δέοι  
 τι, ὥσπερ καὶ οἱ |hoplite, |prepare, render εἰσὶ |hit τὸν  
 |heavy  
 εἰς χεῖρας ἰόντα, |infantry- καὶ οἱ |archer καὶ οἱ |spearman , εἰ  
 |man  
 τινες προσίοιεν, ἐξ ἐτοίμου |throw, (+gen) at...

this was the safest place, and next to him must come his most faithful followers, as their habit was. Beyond these, in a ring, lay the cavalry and the charioteers. For Cyrus held to it that these troops also needed a safe position: their equipment could not be kept at hand for them, and if they were to be of any use at all they needed considerable time for arming. The targeteers were placed to left and right of the cavalry, and the bowmen in front and rear. Finally, the heavy-armed troops and those who carried the huge shields surrounded the whole encampment like a wall; so that in case of need, if the cavalry had to mount, the steadiest troops would stand firm in front and let them arm in safety. He insisted that the targeteers and archers should, like the soldiers of the line, sleep at their posts, in case of alarm at night, and be ready at any moment, while the infantry dealt with the

*vocabulary*

**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**βαθύνω** scoop down ~benthic  
**δεξιά** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula  
**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal  
**ἐνέδρα** ambush, trickery  
**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious; vital  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐπιφαίνω** display ~photon  
**εὐπορος** easily passed; rich  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony  
**θέω** run, run for  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἴκησις** -εως (f) habitation  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just  
 ~orthogonal  
**ὀρθόω** stand up  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command  
**σημεῖον** sign  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**σύντομος** truncated, concise  
**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**ὕπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φυλον** race, tribe, class ~phylum

τοξεύοιεν ὑπὲρ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν. εἶχον δὲ καὶ σημεῖα πάντες  
 οἱ ἄρχοντες ἐπὶ ταῖς σκηναῖς· οἱ δ' ὑπηρέται ὥσπερ καὶ  
 ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν οἱ σώφρονες ἴσασι μὲν καὶ τῶν πλείστων  
 τὰς οἰκήσεις, μάλιστα δὲ τῶν ἐπικαιρίων, οὕτω καὶ τῶν  
 ἐν τοῖς στρατοπέδοις τάς τε χώρας τὰς τῶν ἡγεμόνων  
 ἠπίσταντο οἱ Κύρου ὑπηρέται καὶ τὰ σημεῖα ἐγίγνωσκον  
 ἃ ἐκάστοις ἦν· ὥστε ὅτου δέοιτο Κῦρος, οὐκ ἐζήτουν, ἀλλὰ  
 τὴν συντομωτάτην ἐφ' ἑκαστον ἔθειον. καὶ διὰ τὸ εἰλικρινῆ  
 ἕκαστα εἶναι τὰ φῦλα πολὺ μᾶλλον ἢν δῆλα καὶ ὁπότε  
 τις εὐτακτοίῃ καὶ εἴ τις μὴ πράττοι τὸ προσταττόμενον.  
 οὕτω δὴ ἐχόντων ἡγείτο, εἴ τις καὶ ἐπίθιοιτο νυκτὸς ἢ  
 ἡμέρας, ὥσπερ ἂν εἰς ἐνέδραν εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον τοὺς  
 ἐπιτιθεμένους ἐμπίπτειν. καὶ τὸ τακτικὸν δὲ εἶναι οὐ  
 τοῦτο μόνον ἡγείτο εἴ τις ἐκτείνει φάλαγγα εὐπόρως  
 δύναιτο ἢ βαθῦναι ἢ ἐκ κέρατος εἰς φάλαγγα καταστήσαι  
 ἢ ἐκ δεξιᾶς ἢ ἀριστερᾶς ἢ ὀπισθεν ἐπιφανέντων πολεμίων  
 ὀρθῶς ἐξελίσξαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ διασπᾶν ὁπότε δέοι τακτικὸν  
 ἡγείτο, καὶ τὸ τιθέναι γε τὸ μέρος ἕκαστον ὅπου μάλιστα



|shoot an arrow`at ὦν |hoplite, heavy, |sign πάντες  
 |infantryman  
 οἱ ἄρχοντες ἐπὶ ταῖς |tent; οἱ δ' |servant, ὥσπερ καὶ  
 |stage |officer  
 ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν οἱ |sensible, ἴσασι μὲν καὶ τῶν πλείστων  
 |prudent  
 τὰς οἰκήσεις, μάλιστα δὲ τῶν |at a fitting time; ἴτω καὶ τῶν  
 |serious; vital  
 ἐν τοῖς στρατοπέδοις τάς τε χώρας τὰς τῶν |leader  
 |know οἱ Κύρου |servant, καὶ τὰ |sign ἐγγίνωσκον  
 |officer  
 ἃ ἐκάστοις ἦν· ὥστε ὅτου δέοιτο Κῦρος, οὐκ ἐζήτουν, ἀλλὰ  
 τὴν |truncated, concise ἐφ' ἑκάστον |run καὶ διὰ τὸ εἰλικρινῆ  
 ἕκαστα εἶναι τὰ |race, πολὺ μᾶλλον ἦν |visible, ἔποτε  
 |tribe, |conspicuous  
 |class  
 τις εὐτακτοῖη καὶ εἰ τις μὴ πράττοι τὸ |post at, attach to,  
 |command  
 οὕτω δὲ ἐχόντων ἡγείτο, εἴ τις καὶ |put on, apply; (mid),  
 |undertake, attack  
 ἡμέρας, ὥσπερ ἂν εἰς |ambush, εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον τοὺς  
 |trickery  
 |put on, apply; (mid) ἵπτειν. καὶ τὸ τακτικὸν δὲ εἶναι οὐ  
 |undertake, attack  
 τοῦτο μόνον ἡγείτο εἴ τις |stretch out |rank of bat- |easily  
 |tle |passed;  
 δύναιτο ἢ |scoop down ἢ κ |horn; εἰς |rank of battle |rich  
 |military  
 ἢ ἐκ δεξιᾶς ἢ |left-hand ἢ |unit |display πολεμίων  
 |behind, |hereafter  
 ὀρθῶς ἐξελίσσει, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ |tear apart ὅποτε δέοι τακτικὸν  
 ἡγείτο, καὶ τὸ τιθέναι γε τὸ μέρος ἕκαστον |where μάλιστα

assailant at close quarters, to hurl darts and javelins at them over the others' heads. Moreover, all the generals had standards on their tents; and just as an intelligent serving-man in a city will know most of the houses, at any rate of the most important people, so the squires of Cyrus knew the ways of the camp and the quarters of the generals and the standards of each. Thus, if Cyrus needed any one they had not to search and seek, but could run by the shortest road and summon him at once. Owing to this clear arrangement, it was easy to see where good discipline was kept and where duty was neglected. With these dispositions Cyrus felt that if an attack should be made, by night or day, the enemy would find not so much a camp as an ambuscade. Nor was it enough, he considered, for a real master of tactics to know how to extend his front without confusion, or deepen his ranks, or get from column into line, or wheel round quickly when the enemy appeared on the right or the left or in the rear: the true tactician must also be able to break up his troops into small bodies, whenever necessary, and place each division exactly where

*vocabulary***ἀρχεῖον** central office**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute**γαμέω** marry, take as a lover ~bigamy**διατάσσω** arrange, array**ἐκεῖσε** thither**ἐξαίρῶ** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**κατάγω** lead down/home; land

~demagogue

**καταχωρίζω** emplace; record**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**ὅπου** where**πορεία** gait, march**στέφανος** ring**στεφανώ** crown**στολή** equipment**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy**στρεπτός** pliant; type of necklace

~strep throat

**φθάζω** do first, outstrip**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip**χρυσόω** (υ) make golden, gild**ψέλιον** armlet, anklet**ὠφέλεια** -ίας profit

ἐν ὠφελείᾳ ἂν εἴη, καὶ τὸ ταχύνειν δὲ ὅπου φθάσαι δέοι, πάντα ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα τακτικοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι καὶ ἐπεμελείτο τούτων πάντων ὁμοίως. καὶ ἐν μὲν ταῖς πορείαις πρὸς τὸ συμπίπτον ἀεὶ διατάττων ἐπορεύετο, ἐν δὲ τῇ στρατοπεδεύσει ὡς τὰ πολλὰ ὥσπερ εἴρηται κατεχώριζεν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι γίνονται κατὰ τὴν Μηδικήν, τρέπεται ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς Κυαξάρην. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡσπάσαντο ἀλλήλους, πρῶτον μὲν δὴ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε τῷ Κυαξάρῃ ὅτι οἶκος αὐτῷ ἐξηρημένος εἴη ἐν Βαβυλῶνι καὶ ἀρχεῖα, ὅπως ἔχῃ καὶ ὅταν ἐκεῖσε ἔλθῃ εἰς οἰκεία κατάγεσθαι· ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλα δῶρα ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ πολλὰ καὶ καλά. ὁ δὲ Κυαξάρης ταῦτα μὲν ἐδέχετο, προσέπεμψε δὲ αὐτῷ τὴν θυγατέρα στέφανόν τε χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλια φέρουσιν καὶ στρεπτὸν καὶ στολὴν Μηδικήν ὡς δυνατὸν καλλίστην. καὶ ἢ μὲν δὴ παῖς ἐστεφάνου τὸν Κῦρον, ὁ δὲ Κυαξάρης εἶπε· Δίδωμι δέ σοι, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, καὶ αὐτὴν ταύτην γυναῖκα, ἐμὴν οὖσαν θυγατέρα· καὶ ὁ σὸς δὲ πατὴρ ἔγῃμε τὴν τοῦ

ἐν |profit      ἂν εἴη, καὶ τὸ ταχύνειν δὲ |where βθάσαι δέοι,  
 πάντα ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα τακτικοῦ ἀνδρὸς |consider customary;  
 |believe  
 εἶναι καὶ |take care of, τούτων πάντων ὁμοίως. καὶ ἐν  
 |oversee  
 μὲν ταῖς |gait, πρὸς τὸ συμπίπτον ἀεὶ |arrange,  
 |march |array  
 ἐπορεύετο, ἐν δὲ τῇ στρατοπεδεύσει ὡς τὰ πολλὰ ὥσπερ  
 εἴρηται |emplace;  
 |record  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι γίνονται κατὰ τὴν Μηδικήν,  
 |divert      ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς Κναξάρην. ἐπεὶ δὲ |greet, salute  
 ἀλλήλους, πρῶτον μὲν δὴ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε τῷ Κναξάρῃ ὅτι  
 οἶκος αὐτῷ |pick, steal; dedi-, ἐν Βαβυλῶνι καὶ |central , ὅπως  
 |cate; destroy |office  
 ἔχῃ καὶ |when-|thither ἔλθῃ εἰς |house- |lead down/home; land..  
 |ever |hold,  
 δὲ καὶ ἄλλα |gift ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ |familiar,  
 |proper  
 Κναξάρῃς ταῦτα μὲν |accept, re- ροσέπεμψε δὲ αὐτῷ τὴν  
 |ceive, await  
 |daughter |ring τε χρυσοῦν καὶ |armlet, φέρουσιν καὶ  
 |anklet  
 |pliant; type ὀ|equipment ἡδικὴν ὡς |powerful, καλλίστην. καὶ  
 |necklace |possible  
 ἡ μὲν δὴ παῖς |crown τὸν Κῦρον, ὁ δὲ Κναξάρῃς εἶπε·  
 Δίδωμι δέ σοι, ἔφη, ᾧ Κῦρε, καὶ αὐτὴν ταύτην γυναῖκα,  
 ἐμὴν οὖσαν |daughter καὶ ὁ σὸς δὲ πατὴρ |marry, take τοῦ  
 |as a lover

it would be of the greatest use; he must know how to quicken speed when it was essential to forestall the enemy; these and a hundred other operations are part of his science, and Cyrus studied them all with equal care. On the march he varied the order constantly to suit the needs of the moment, but for the camp, as a rule, he adopted the plan we have described.

And now when the march had brought them into Media, Cyrus turned aside to visit Cyaxares. After they had met and embraced, Cyrus began by telling Cyaxares that a palace in Babylon, and an estate, had been set aside for him so that he might have a residence of his own whenever he came there, and he offered him other gifts, most rich and beautiful. And Cyaxares was glad to take them from his nephew, and then he sent for his daughter, and she came, carrying a golden crown, and bracelets, and a necklace of wrought gold, and a most beautiful Median robe, as splendid as could be. The maiden placed the crown upon the head of Cyrus, and as she did so Cyaxares said:

"I Will give her to you, Cyrus, my own daughter, to be your wife. Your father wedded the daughter of my

*vocabulary***ἄρσην** male**γαμέω** marry, take as a lover ~bigamy**γεραιός** old ~geriatric**γνήσιος** born legitimate ~genus**δωρέω** give ~donate**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**ἐπιδίδωμι** give, give with, give  
reciprocally ~donate**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**ἐστιάω** give a feast**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἱερεῖον** animal victim ~hieroglyph**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**ὁμότιμος** (ῖ) equally honored**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**ὁπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
great**ὄριον** boundary**Πέρσης** Persian**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
~refurbish**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**φερνά** dowry**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

ἐμοῦ πατρὸς θυγατέρα, ἐξ ἧς σὺ ἐγένου· αὕτη δ' ἐστὶν ἦν  
 σὺ πολλάκις παῖς ὦν ὅτε παρ' ἡμῖν ἦσθα ἐτιθηνήσω· καὶ  
 ὁπότε τις ἐρωτῶῃ αὐτὴν τίνι γαμοίτο, ἔλεγεν ὅτι Κύρω·  
 ἐπιδίδωμι δὲ αὐτῇ ἐγὼ καὶ φερνὴν Μηδίαν τὴν πᾶσαν·  
 οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔστι μοι ἄρρην παῖς γνήσιος. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν·  
 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἄλλ', ὦ Κναξάρη, τό τε γένος  
 ἐπαινῶ καὶ τὴν παῖδα καὶ τὰ δῶρα· βούλομαι δέ, ἔφη,  
 σὺν τῇ τοῦ πατρὸς γνώμῃ καὶ τῇ τῆς μητρὸς ταῦτά σοι  
 συναινέσαι. εἶπε μὲν οὖν οὕτως ὁ Κῦρος, ὅμως δὲ τῇ  
 παιδὶ πάντα ἐδωρήσατο ὅποσα ᾔετο καὶ τῷ Κναξάρῃ  
 χαριεῖσθαι. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας εἰς Πέρσας ἐπορεύετο.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς Περσῶν ὁρίοις ἐγένετο πορευόμενος, τὸ  
 μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτοῦ κατέλιπεν, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς  
 φίλοις εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐπορεύετο, ἱερεῖα μὲν ἄγων ὥς πᾶσι  
 Πέρσαις ἱκανὰ θύειν τε καὶ ἐστιᾶσθαι· δῶρα δ' ἦγεν οἷα  
 μὲν ἔπρεπε τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τῇ μητρὶ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις φίλοις,  
 οἷα δ' ἔπρεπεν ἀρχαῖς καὶ γεραιτέροις καὶ τοῖς ὁμοτίμοις  
 πᾶσιν· ἔδωκε δὲ καὶ πᾶσι Πέρσαις καὶ



ἐμοῦ πατρὸς |daughter , ἐξ ἧς σὺ ἐγένου· αὕτη δ' ἐστὶν ἡν

σὺ |often παῖς ὣν ὅτε παρ' ἡμῖν ἦσθα ἐτιθηνήσω· καὶ

|when τις |ask αὐτὴν τίνοι |marry, take ἔλεγεν ὅτι Κύρω·  
|as a lover

|give, give with, ὑτῇ ἐγὼ καὶ φερνὴν Μηδίαν τὴν πᾶσαν·  
|give reciprocally

οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔστι μοι |male παῖς |born legitimate· οὕτως εἶπεν·

ὁ δὲ Κῦρος |to separate; reject; -(mp)· Κυζάρη, τό τε |race, kind, gener-  
|answer, defend oneself ation, birth, off-  
|concur καὶ τὴν παιδα καὶ τὰ |gift βούλομαι δέ, ἐφί, |spring

σὺν τῇ τοῦ πατρὸς |sign, mind, τῇ τῆς μητρὸς ταῦτά σοι  
|will, decision

συναινέσαι. εἶπε μὲν οὖν οὕτως ὁ Κῦρος, |anyway, nevertheless

παιδὶ πάντα ἐδωρήσατο |as/how many/great· τῷ Κυζάρη

|gratify . ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας εἰς Πέρσας ἐπορεύετο.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς Περσῶν |boundary, ἐνετο πορευόμενος, τὸ

μὲν ἄλλο |army αὐτοῦ |leave behind, ὑπὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς  
|abandon

φίλοις εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐπορεύετο, |animal μὲν ἄγων ὥς πᾶσι  
|victim

Πέρσαις |suffi- |rush; sacrifice· |give a feast |gift δ' ἦγεν οἶα  
|cient;

μὲν |be conspicuous, ἔρι καὶ τῇ μητρὶ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις φίλοις,  
|preeminent

οἶα δ' |be conspicuous, ἔς καὶ |old καὶ τοῖς |equally  
|preeminent |honored

πᾶσιν· ἔδωκε δὲ καὶ πᾶσι Πέρσαις καὶ

father, and you are their son; and this is the little maid whom you carried in your arms when you were with us as a lad, and whenever she was asked whom she meant to marry, she would always answer ‘Cyrus.’ And for her dowry I will give her the whole of Media: since I have no lawful son.”

So he spoke, and Cyrus answered:

”Cyaxares, I can but thank you myself for all you offer me, the kinship and the maiden and the gifts, but I must lay the matter before my father and my mother before I accept, and then we will thank you together.”

That was what Cyrus said, but none the less he gave the maiden the gifts he thought would please her father. And when he had done so, he marched on home to Persia.

And when he reached the borders of his fatherland, he left the mass of his troops on the frontier, and went forward alone with his friends to the city, leading victims enough for all the Persians to sacrifice and hold high festival. And he brought special gifts for his father and his mother and his friends of old, and for the high officers of state, the elders, and all the Persian Peers; and he gave every

*vocabulary***αὐξάνω** strengthen**βασιλεύω** be king**γεραιός** old ~geriatric**ἐντιμος** (ι) honored**ἐοικότως** like; fairly**εὐκλεής** honored ~Euclid**εὖνοος** kindly; favorable**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**μισθός** reward, wages**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape**Πέρσης** Persian**Περσίς** Persian (language)**πλουτίζω** enrich**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition**τοιόσδε** such**τροφή** food, upkeep ~atrophy

Περσίῳ ὅσαπερ καὶ νῦν ἔτι δίδωσιν ὅτανπερ ἀφίκηται βασιλεὺς εἰς Πέρσας. ἐκ δὲ τούτου συνέλεξε Καμβύσης τοὺς γεραιτέρους Περσῶν καὶ τὰς ἀρχάς, οἵπερ τῶν μεγίστων κύριοί εἰσι· παρεκάλεσε δὲ καὶ Κῦρον, καὶ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι καὶ σύ, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐγὼ ἀμφοτέροις ὑμῖν εἰκότως εὖνους εἰμί· ὑμῶν μὲν γὰρ βασιλεύω, σὺ δέ, ὦ Κῦρε, παῖς ἐμὸς εἶ. δίκαιος οὖν εἰμι, ὅσα γινώσκειν δοκῶ ἀγαθὰ ἀμφοτέροις, ταῦτα εἰς τὸ μέσον λέγειν. τὰ μὲν γὰρ παρελθόντα ὑμεῖς μὲν Κῦρον ἠϋξήσατε στράτευμα δόντες καὶ ἄρχοντα τούτου αὐτὸν καταστήσαντες, Κῦρος δὲ ἡγούμενος τούτου σὺν θεοῖς εὐκλεεῖς μὲν ὑμᾶς, ὦ Πέρσαι, ἐν πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ἐποίησεν, ἐντίμους δ' ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ πάσῃ· τῶν δὲ συστρατευσαμένων αὐτῷ τοὺς μὲν ἀρίστους καὶ πεπλούτικε, τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς μισθὸν καὶ τροφὴν παρεσκεύακεν· ἵππικὸν δὲ καταστήσας Περσῶν πεποίηκε Πέρσαις καὶ πεδίων εἶναι μετουσίαν. ἦν μὲν οὖν καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν οὕτω γινώσκητε, πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν

|Persian (language) καὶ νῦν ἔτι δίδωσιν ὅταν περ |arrive

βασιλεὺς εἰς Πέρσας. ἐκ δὲ τούτου |collect, Kaμβύσης  
|assemble

τοὺς |old Περσῶν καὶ τὰς ἀρχάς, οἵ περ τῶν

μεγίστων κύριοί εἰσι· |summon, exhort, καὶ Κῦρον, καὶ ἔλεξε  
|(pass) repent

|such

Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι καὶ σύ, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐγὼ |both ὑμῖν

|like; εὖνους εἰμί· ὑμῶν μὲν γὰρ |be king , σὺ δέ, ὦ  
|fairly

Κῦρε, παῖς ἐμὸς εἶ. δίκαιος οὖν εἰμι, ὅσα γινώσκειν δοκῶ

ἀγαθὰ |both , ταῦτα εἰς τὸ μέσον λέγειν. τὰ μὲν

γὰρ |pass, escape ὑμεῖς μὲν Κῦρον |strengthen |army

δόντες καὶ ἄρχοντα τούτου αὐτὸν |set down, land; Κῦρος  
|become, be

δὲ ἡγούμενος τούτου σὺν θεοῖς |honored μὲν ὑμᾶς, ὦ

Πέρσαι, ἐν πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ἐποίησεν, |honored δ' ἐν τῇ

Ἀσίᾳ πάσῃ· τῶν δὲ |join in an expedition αὐτῷ τοὺς μὲν

ἀρίστους καὶ |enrich , τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς |reward, καὶ  
|wages

|food, |prepare, render |of horses δὲ |set down, land; Ἱερσῶν  
|upkeep |become, be

πεποίηκε Πέρσαις καὶ |plain, sea ἵνα μετουσίαν. ἣν μὲν οὖν

καὶ τὸ |left over ὕτω γινώσκητε, πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν

Persian man and every Persian woman such bounties as the king confers to-day whenever he visits Persia. After this Cambyses gathered together the elders of the land and the chief officers, who have authority in the highest matters, and spoke as follows:

”Men of Persia, and Cyrus, my son, both of you are dear to me and must needs be dear; I am the king of my people and the father of my son; therefore I am bound to lay before you openly all that I believe to be for the good of both. In the past the nation has done great things for Cyrus by giving him an army and appointing him the leader, and Cyrus, God helping him, has made my Persians famous in all the world by his leadership, and crowned you with glory in Asia. Of those who served with him he has made the bravest wealthy for life, and given sustenance and full pay to numbers. By founding the cavalry he has won the plains for Persia. If your hearts are still the same in future, all of you will bless each

*vocabulary***αἵτιος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**βασίλεια** noblewoman**βασίλειος** kingly**γένυς** jaw**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula**ἐμποδών** getting in the way**ἐπαίρω** lift, raise ~heresy**ἐπιστρατεύω** march against**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἐπιχειρήσις** -τος (f) attack**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θύον** kind of tree**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy ~loose**καταπαύω** stop, restrain ~pause**κοινός** communal, ordinary**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**Πέρσης** Persian**Περσίς** Persian (language)**σθένος** -εος (n, 3) strength

~neurasthenia

**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral**φθονέω** envy

αἵτιοι ἀλλήλοισ ἔσεσθε· εἰ δὲ ἢ σύ, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐπαρθεὶς ταῖς παρούσαις τύχαις ἐπιχειρήσεις καὶ Περσῶν ἄρχειν ἐπὶ πλεονεξία ὥσπερ τῶν ἄλλων, ἢ ὑμεῖς, ὦ πολῖται, φθονήσαντες τούτῳ τῆς δυνάμεως καταλύειν πειράσεσθε τοῦτον τῆς ἀρχῆς, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι ἐμποδὼν ἀλλήλοισ πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἔσεσθε. ὥς οὖν μὴ ταῦτα γίγνηται, ἀλλὰ τὰγαθά, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, ἔφη, θύσαντας ὑμᾶς κοινῇ καὶ θεοὺς ἐπιμαρτυραμένους συνθέσθαι, σὲ μὲν, ὦ Κῦρε, ἣν τις ἐπιστρατεύηται χώρα Περσίδι ἢ Περσῶν νόμους διασπᾶν πειρᾶται, βοηθήσειν παντὶ σθένει, ὑμᾶς δέ, ὦ Πέρσαι, ἣν τις ἢ ἀρχῆς Κῦρον ἐπιχειρῇ καταπαύειν ἢ ἀφίστασθαί τις τῶν ὑποχειρίων, βοηθήσειν καὶ ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς καὶ Κύρῳ καθ' ὅ τι ἂν οὗτος ἐπαγγέλλῃ. καὶ ἕως μὲν ἂν ἐγὼ ζῶ, ἐμὴ γίγνεται ἢ ἐν Πέρσαις βασιλεία· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ τελευτήσω, δῆλον ὅτι Κύρου, ἐὰν ζῇ. καὶ ὅταν μὲν οὗτος ἀφίκηται εἰς Πέρσας, ὁσίως ἂν ὑμῖν ἔχοι τοῦτον θύειν τὰ ἱερὰ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν ἅπερ νῦν ἐγὼ θύω· ὅταν δ' οὗτος ἔκδημος ᾖ, καλῶς ἂν οἶμαι ὑμῖν ἔχειν εἰ ἐκ τοῦ γένους ὃς ἂν δοκῇ ὑμῖν ἄριστος



|blameworthy; |ois ἔσεσθε· εἰ δὲ ἡ σύ, ὦ Κῦρε, |lift, raise  
 the cause  
 ταῖς παρούσαις τύχαις ἐπιχειρήσεις καὶ Περσῶν ἄρχειν  
 ἐπὶ πλεονεξία ὥσπερ τῶν ἄλλων, ἡ ὑμεῖς, ὦ |townsman, freeman,  
 |compatriot  
 |envy τούτῳ τῆς δυνάμεως |unyoke; |πειράσεσθε  
 |destroy  
 τοῦτον τῆς ἀρχῆς, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι |getting in the way... is πολλῶν  
 καὶ ἀγαθῶν ἔσεσθε. ὥς οὖν μὴ ταῦτα γίννηται, ἀλλὰ  
 τὰγαθά, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, ἔφη, |rush; sacrifice... as κοινῇ καὶ θεοῦς  
 ἐπιμαρτυραμένους |hearken, mark ἔ μὲν, ὦ Κῦρε, ἦν τις  
 |march against |place |Persian (language) ὧν νόμους |tear apart  
 |try, test |rescue παντὶ |strength ὑμᾶς δέ, ὦ Πέρσαι, ἦν  
 τις ἡ ἀρχῆς Κῦρον |do, try, at-stop, restrain ἡ |stand apart; is  
 |tack |exact payment  
 τῶν |under one's |rescue καὶ ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς καὶ Κύρῳ καθ'  
 |hand  
 ὅ τι ἂν οὗτος ἐπαγγέλλῃ. καὶ ἕως μὲν ἂν ἐγὼ ζῶ, ἐμὴ  
 γίγνεται ἡ ἐν Πέρσαις βασιλεία· |whenever... γὰρ |bring about,  
 |finish  
 |visible, |... Ίζουρου, ἐὰν ζῇ. καὶ |whenever οὗτος |arrive  
 |conspicuous  
 εἰς Πέρσας, ὅσῳς ἂν ὑμῖν ἔχοι τοῦτον |rush; sacrifice ἔ ὑπὲρ  
 ὑμῶν ἅπερ νῦν ἐγὼ θύω· |whenever... ἵπτος ἔκδημος ἦ, καλῶς  
 ἂν οἶμαι ὑμῖν ἔχειν εἰ ἐκ τοῦ γένους ὃς ἂν δοκῇ ὑμῖν ἄριστος

other: but if you, my son, would be puffed up by your present fortune and attempt to rule the Persians for your own advantage as you rule the rest of the world, or if you, my people, should envy this man's power and try to drive him from his throne, I tell you, you will cut each other off from many precious things. Therefore, that this should never be, and only good be yours, I counsel you to offer sacrifice together, and call the gods to witness and make a covenant. You, Cyrus, shall vow to resist with all your strength any man who attacks our land of Persia or tries to overthrow our laws; and you, my people, must promise that if rebels attempt to depose Cyrus or if his subjects revolt, you will render aid to him and to yourselves in whatever way he wishes. Now, so long as I live, the kingdom of Persia is and continues mine, but when I die it passes to Cyrus if he is still alive, and whenever he visits Persia it should be a holy custom for him to offer sacrifice on your behalf, even as I do now; and when he is abroad, it will be well for you, I think, if the member of our family whom you count the

*vocabulary***ἀδελφή** sister**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀποτελέω** accomplish, produce**γαμέω** marry, take as a lover ~bigamy**γραιῦς** old woman ~geriatric**διαμένω** continue, persevere**ἔνιοι** some**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐξυβρίζω** have a violent breakout**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

**λογοποιός** writer, historian**παντάπασι**ν altogether; yes, certainly**Πέρσης** Persian**πλούτος** wealth ~plutocrat**προοράω** see before oneself**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor**συνδοκέω** seem good also**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis**φρούραρχος** garrison commander**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
~phylactery**φυλακός** guard; sentry

εἶναι, οὗτος τὰ τῶν θεῶν ἀποτελοίη. ταῦτα εἰπόντος  
 Καμβύσου συνέδοξε Κύρῳ τε καὶ τοῖς Περσῶν τέλεσι· καὶ  
 συνθέμενοι ταῦτα τότε καὶ θεοὺς ἐπιμαρτυράμενοι οὕτω  
 καὶ νῦν ἔτι διαμένουσι ποιοῦντες πρὸς ἀλλήλους Πέρσαι  
 τε καὶ βασιλεῦς. τούτων δὲ πραχθέντων ἀπῆει ὁ Κῦρος.

Ὡς δ' ἀπὼν ἐγένετο ἐν Μήδοις, συνδόξαν τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τῇ  
 μητρὶ γαμῆ τὴν Κναξάρου θυγατέρα, ἥς ἔτι καὶ νῦν λόγος  
 ὥς παγκάλης γενομένης. ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν λογοποιῶν λέγουσιν  
 ὥς τὴν τῆς μητρὸς ἀδελφὴν ἔγημεν· ἀλλὰ γραῦς ἂν καὶ  
 παντάπασιν ἦν ἡ παῖς. γήμας δ' εὐθύς ἔχων ἀνεξέγγυνεν.

## 8.6

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἦν, ἐδόκει αὐτῷ σατράπας ἤδη  
 πέμπειν ἐπὶ τὰ κατεστραμμένα ἔθνη. τοὺς μέντοι ἐν ταῖς  
 ἄκραις φρουράρχους καὶ τοὺς χιλιάρχους τῶν κατὰ τὴν  
 χώραν φυλακῶν οὐκ ἄλλου ἢ ἑαυτοῦ ἐβούλετο ἀκούειν·  
 ταῦτα δὲ προεωρᾶτο ἐννοῶν ὅπως εἴ τις τῶν σατραπῶν  
 ὑπὸ πλούτου καὶ πλήθους ἀνθρώπων ἐξυβρίσειε καὶ

εἶναι, οὗτος τὰ τῶν θεῶν |accomplish, . ταῦτα εἰπόντος  
|produce

Καμβύσου |seem good also . τε καὶ τοῖς Περσῶν |end καὶ

|hearken, mark ὧτα τότε καὶ θεοὺς ἐπιμαρτυράμενοι οὕτω

καὶ νῦν ἔτι |continue, ποιοῦντες πρὸς ἀλλήλους Πέρσαι  
|persevere

τε καὶ βασιεὺς. τούτων δὲ πραχθέντων |be absent, ὅ, ιος.  
|away, return

Ὡς δ' |be absent, ὅ. το ἐν Μήδοις, συνδόξαν τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τῇ  
|away, return

μητρὶ |marry, take Κναξάρου |daughter , ἥς ἔτι καὶ νῦν λόγος  
|as a lover

ὥς παγκάλης γενομένης. |some δὲ τῶν λογοποιῶν λέγουσιν

ὥς τὴν τῆς μητρὸς |sister |marry, take ἄς ἂ ἄ |old woman :αἱ  
|lover

|altogether; ἦν ἡ παῖς. |marry, take ἰθὺς ἔχων ἀνεξεύγνυν.  
|yes, certainly |as a lover

## 8.6

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἦν, ἐδόκει αὐτῷ |satrap ἤδη

πέμπειν ἐπὶ τὰ |overturn, subdue |tribe . τοὺς |however ἔν ταῖς

|at the |garrison καὶ τοὺς χιλιάρχους τῶν κατὰ τὴν  
|edge, |commander  
|extreme  
|place φυλακῶν οὐκ ἄλλου ἢ ἑαυτοῦ ἐβούλετο ἀκούειν·

ταῦτα δὲ |see before one-|consider ὥπως εἴ τις τῶν |satrap  
|self

ὑπὸ |wealth καὶ |numerical ἑνθρώπων |have a violent ἔν  
|superiority |breakout

noblest fulfils the sacred rites.”

Cambyses ended, and Cyrus and the officers of Persia agreed to all he said. They made the covenant and called the gods to witness, and to this day they keep it still, the Persians and the Great King. And when it was done, Cyrus took his leave and came back to Media. There, with the full consent of his father and his mother, he wedded the daughter of Cyaxares, the fame of whose beauty has lasted to this day. And after the marriage his steeds were yoked and they set out for Babylon.

### 8.6

When he was in Babylon once more, he thought it would be well to appoint satraps and set them over the conquered tribes. Yet he did not wish the commandants in the citadels and the captains in charge of the garrisons throughout the country to be under any authority but his own. Herein he showed his foresight, realising that if any satrap became insolent and rebellious, relying on his own wealth and the numbers

*vocabulary*

**ἀντίπαλος** rival; balanced  
**ἀπιστία** disbelief, distrust  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**διασώζω** preserve through  
**διαφυλάσσω** guard, observe  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐνοικέω** dwell in  
**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious;  
 vital  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
 ~catastrophe  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**πολυπραγμονέω** be too busy, meddle

**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order  
 before  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command  
**ῥαίω** smite  
**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian  
 governor  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**τέλλω** direct ~teleology  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
 from ~demagogue  
**φρούραρχος** garrison commander  
**φρουρέω** keep watch  
**φρουρός** watcher, guard

ἐπιχειρήσειε μὴ πείθεσθαι, εὐθὺς ἀντιπάλους ἔχοι ἐν τῇ  
 χώρᾳ. ταῦτ' οὖν βουλόμενος πρᾶξαι ἔγνω συγκαλέσαι  
 πρῶτον τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους καὶ προειπεῖν, ὅπως εἰδεῖεν ἐφ'  
 οἷς ἴασιν οἱ ἰόντες· ἐνόμιζε γὰρ οὕτω ῥᾶον φέρειν ἂν  
 αὐτούς· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατασταίῃ τις ἄρχων καὶ αἰσθάνοιτο  
 ταῦτα, χαλεπῶς ἂν ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ φέρειν, νομίζοντες δι'  
 ἑαυτῶν ἀπιστίαν ταῦτα γενέσθαι. οὕτω δὴ συλλέξας λέγει  
 αὐτοῖς τοιάδε.

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, εἰσὶν ἡμῖν ἐν ταῖς κατεστραμμέναις  
 πόλεσι φρουροὶ καὶ φρούραρχοι, οὓς τότε κατελίπομεν·  
 καὶ τούτοις ἐγὼ προστάξας ἀπῆλθον ἄλλο μὲν μηδὲν  
 πολυπραγμονεῖν, τὰ δὲ τείχη διασώζειν. τούτους μὲν  
 οὖν οὐ παύσω τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἐπεὶ καλῶς διαπεφυλάχασι  
 τὰ προσταχθέντα· ἄλλους δὲ σατράπας πέμψαι μοι  
 δοκεῖ, οἵτινες ἄρξουσι τῶν ἐνοικούντων καὶ τὸν δασμὸν  
 λαμβάνοντες τοῖς τε φρουροῖς δώσουσι μισθὸν καὶ ἄλλο  
 τελοῦσιν ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ. δοκεῖ δέ μοι καὶ τῶν ἐνθάδε μενόντων  
 ὑμῶν, οἷς ἂν ἐγὼ πράγματα παρέχω πέμπων πράξοντάς



|do, try, attack μὴ πείθεσθαι, εὐθὺς |rival; ἔχοι ἐν τῇ  
|balanced

|place . ταῦτ' οὖν βουλόμενος πρᾶξαι ἔγνω |call together

πρῶτον τοὺς |at a fitting time; se-foretell, proclaim,· εἰδεῖν ἐφ'  
|rious; vital |order before

οἷς ἴασιν οἱ ἰόντες· |consider , ἕς- ὕτω ῥῆον φέρειν ἂν  
|tomary; believe

αὐτούς· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατασταίῃ τις ἄρχων καὶ |perceive

ταῦτα, |hard to bear ἡ ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ φέρειν, |consider cūs-  
|tomary; believe

ἑαυτῶν |disbelief, ταῦτα γενέσθαι. οὕτω δὲ |collect, λέγει  
|distrust |assemble

αὐτοῖς |such

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, εἰσὶν ἡμῖν ἐν ταῖς |overturn, subdue

πόλεσι |watcher, καὶ |garrison , οὓς τότε |leave behind,  
|guard |commander |abandon

καὶ τούτοις ἐγὼ |post at, attach ὑπῆλθον ἄλλο μὲν μηδὲν  
|to, command

|be too busy, meddle τὰ δὲ τείχη |preserve . τούτους μὲν  
|through

οὖν οὐ |stop τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἐπεὶ καλῶς |guard, observe

τὰ |post at, attach to, ἄλλους δὲ |satrap πέμψαι μοι  
|command

δοκεῖ, οἷτινες ἄρξουσιν τῶν |dwell in καὶ τὸν |portion,  
|tax, tribute

λαμβάνοντες τοῖς τε φρουροῖς δώσουσι |reward, καὶ ἄλλο  
|wages

τελοῦσιν ὅτι ἂν δέῃ. δοκεῖ δέ μοι καὶ τῶν |here, μερόντων  
|hither

ὑμῶν, οἷς ἂν ἐγὼ πράγματα |furnish πέμπων πράξοντάς

at his back, he would at once find a power to oppose him within his own district. In order to carry out this plan, Cyrus resolved to summon a council of the leading men and explain the terms on which the satraps who went would go. In this way, he thought, they would not feel aggrieved, whereas, if a man found himself appointed and then learnt the restrictions for the first time, he might well take it ill, fancying it a sign of personal mistrust. So it was that Cyrus called a council and spoke as follows:

"Gentlemen and friends of mine, you are aware that we have garrisons and commandants in the cities we conquered, stationed there at the time. I left them with orders simply to guard the fortifications and not meddle with anything else. Now I do not wish to remove them from their commands, for they have done their duty nobly, but I propose to send others, satraps, who will govern the inhabitants, receive the tribute, give the garrisons their pay, and discharge all necessary dues. Further, I think it right that certain of you who live here and yet on whom I may lay the

*vocabulary*

**ἀπόγονος** descended from  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**δεῦρο** here, come here!  
**ἐκεῖσε** thither  
**ἐκλέγω** pick, single out  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**κατάγω** lead down/home; land  
 ~demagogue  
**καταμένω** stay; not change

**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
 ~catastrophe  
**μετέχω** partake of  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**πανταχοῦ** everywhere; completely  
**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian  
 governor  
**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**ὕπηκοος** heeding, subject

τι ἐπὶ ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνη, χώρας γενέσθαι καὶ οἴκους ἐκεῖ,  
 ὅπως δασμοφορῆταί τε αὐτοῖς δεῦρο, ὅταν τε ἴωσιν ἐκείσε,  
 εἰς οἰκεία ἔχωσι κατάγεσθαι. ταῦτα εἶπε καὶ ἔδωκε  
 πολλοῖς τῶν φίλων κατὰ πάσας τὰς καταστραφείσας  
 πόλεις οἴκους καὶ ὑπηκόους· καὶ νῦν εἰσιν ἔτι τοῖς  
 ἀπογόνους τῶν τότε λαβόντων αἱ χῶραι καταμένουσαι  
 ἄλλαι ἐν ἄλλῃ γῇ· αὐτοὶ δὲ οἰκοῦσι παρὰ βασιλεῖ. Δεῖ  
 δέ, ἔφη, τοὺς ἰόντας σατράπας ἐπὶ ταύτας τὰς χώρας  
 τοιούτους ἡμᾶς σκοπεῖν οἵτινες ὅ τι ἂν ἐν τῇ γῇ ἐκάστη  
 καλὸν ἢ ἀγαθὸν ἦ, μεμνήσονται καὶ δεῦρο ἀποπέμπειν, ὥς  
 μετέχωμεν καὶ οἱ ἐνθάδε ὄντες τῶν πανταχοῦ γιγνομένων  
 ἀγαθῶν· καὶ γὰρ ἦν τί που δεινὸν γίγνηται, ἡμῖν ἔσται  
 ἀμυντέον. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν τότε μὲν ἔπαυσε τὸν λόγον,  
 ἔπειτα δὲ οὓς ἐγίγνωσκε τῶν φίλων ἐπὶ τοῖς εἰρημένοις  
 ἐπιθυμοῦντας ἰέναι, ἐκλεξάμενος αὐτῶν τοὺς δοκοῦντας  
 ἐπιτηδειοτάτους εἶναι ἔπεμπε σατράπας εἰς Ἀραβίαν μὲν  
 Μεγάβυζον, εἰς Καππαδοκίαν δὲ Ἀρταβάταν, εἰς Φρυγίαν  
 δὲ τὴν μεγάλην Ἀρτακάμαν, εἰς Λυδίαν δὲ καὶ Ἰωνίαν

τι ἐπὶ ταῦτα τὰ |tribe , |place γενέσθαι καὶ οἴκους |there  
 ὅπως δασμοφορῆται τε αὐτοῖς |here, , |whenever...ουσιν |thither ,  
 εἰς |household, famil- |lead down/home; land... εἶπε καὶ ἔδωκε  
 |iar, proper  
 πολλοῖς τῶν φίλων κατὰ πάσας τὰς |overturn, subdue  
 πόλεις οἴκους καὶ |heeding, καὶ νῦν εἰσιν ἔτι τοῖς  
 |subject  
 |descended from... τότε λαβόντων αἱ |place |stay; not change  
 ἄλλαι ἐν ἄλλῃ γῇ· αὐτοὶ δὲ |inhabit παρὰ βασιλεῖ. Δεῖ  
 δέ, ἔφη, τοὺς ἰόντας |satrap ἐπὶ ταύτας τὰς |place  
 τοιούτους ἡμᾶς σκοπεῖν οἵτινες ὅ τι ἂν ἐν τῇ γῇ ἐκάστη  
 καλὸν ἢ ἀγαθὸν ἦ, |remind; (mid) -re- |here, |send away , ὥς  
 |member, turn one's |come  
 |partake of καὶ οἱ |thoughts to |here!  
 |here, οὔτε τῶν |everywhere; , |γνωμένων  
 |hither |completely  
 ἀγαθῶν· καὶ γὰρ ἦν τί που δεινὸν γίγνηται, ἡμῖν ἔσται  
 ἀμυντέον. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν τότε μὲν |stop τὸν λόγον,  
 ἔπειτα δὲ οὓς ἐγὶγνωσκε τῶν φίλων ἐπὶ τοῖς εἰρημένοις  
 |wish, covet ἰέναι, |pick, single αὐτῶν τοὺς δοκοῦντας  
 |out  
 |fit, suitable εἶναι ἔπεμπε |satrap εἰς Ἀραβίαν μὲν  
 Μεγάβυζον, εἰς Καππαδοκίαν δὲ Ἀρταβάταν, εἰς Φρυγίαν  
 δὲ τὴν μεγάλην Ἀρτακάμαν, εἰς Λυδίαν δὲ καὶ Ἰωνίαν

task of travelling to these nations and working for me among them, should possess houses there and estates, where tribute may be brought them, and where they may find a place of their own to lodge in."

With these words he assigned houses and districts to many of his friends among the lands he had subdued: and to this day their descendants possess the estates, although they reside at court themselves. "Now," he added, "we must choose for the satraps who are to go abroad persons who will not forget to send us anything of value in their districts, so that we who are at home may share in all the wealth of the world. For if any danger comes, it is we who must ward it off."

With that he ended for the time, but later on when he came to know what friends of his were ready and willing to go on the terms prescribed, he selected those he thought best qualified for the work, and sent Magabazus to Arabia, Artabatas to Cappadocia, Artacamas to Greater Phrygia, Chrysantas to Lydia and Susia, Adousius, whom the

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀπογράφω** copy, register**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**ἀρχεῖον** central office**ἀσκέω** work on**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute**ἐκπέμπω** send forth ~pomp**ἐκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**θυρεός** -οῦ door barricade ~door**μιμέομαι** (ἱ) imitate, represent**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**παιδεύω** raise; train**Πέρσης** Persian**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order before**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect ~legion**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch ~phylactery**φυλακός** guard; sentry

Χρυσάνταν, εἰς Καρίαν δὲ Ἀδούσιον, ὅνπερ ἡτοῦντο, εἰς Φρυγίαν δὲ τὴν παρ' Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ Αἰολίδα Φαρνοῦχον. Κιλικίας δὲ καὶ Κύπρου καὶ Παφλαγόνων οὐκ ἔπεμψε Πέρσας σατράπας, ὅτι ἐκόντες ἐδόκουν συστρατεῦσαι ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα· δασμοὺς μέντοι συνέταξεν ἀποφέρειν καὶ τούτους. ὥς δὲ τότε Κύρος κατεστήσατο, οὕτως ἔτι καὶ νῦν βασιλέως εἰσὶν αἱ ἐν ταῖς ἄκραις φυλακαὶ καὶ οἱ χιλιάρχοι τῶν φυλακῶν ἐκ βασιλέως εἰσὶ καθεστηκότες καὶ παρὰ βασιλεῖ ἀπογεγραμμένοι. προεῖπε δὲ πᾶσι τοῖς ἐκπεμπομένοις σατράπαις, ὅσα αὐτὸν ἐώρων ποιοῦντα, πάντα μιμῆσθαι· πρῶτον μὲν ἱππέας καθιστάναι ἐκ τῶν συνεπισπομένων Περσῶν καὶ συμμάχων καὶ ἄρματηλάτας· ὅπόσοι δ' ἂν γῆν καὶ ἀρχεῖα λάβωσιν, ἀναγκάζειν τούτους ἐπὶ θύρας ἵεναι καὶ σωφροσύνης ἐπιμελουμένους παρέχειν ἑαυτοὺς τῷ σατράπῃ χρῆσθαι, ἣν τι δέηται· παιδεύειν δὲ καὶ τοὺς γιγνομένους παῖδας ἐπὶ θύραις, ὥσπερ παρ' αὐτῷ· ἐξάγειν δ' ἐπὶ τὴν θήραν τὸν σατράπην τοὺς ἀπὸ θυρῶν καὶ ἀσκεῖν



Χρυσάνταν, εἰς Καρίαν δὲ Ἀδούσιον, ὥνπερ |ask for ,  
 εἰς Φρυγίαν δὲ τὴν παρ' Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ Αἰολίδα  
 Φαρνοῦχον. Κιλικίας δὲ καὶ Κύπρου καὶ Παφλαγόνων  
 οὐκ ἔπεμψε Πέρσας |satrap , ὅτι |willingly ἐδόκουν  
 |join in an expe- ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα· |portion, |however|gather,  
 |dition |tax, tribute |assemble  
 |carry off καὶ τούτους. ὥς δὲ τότε Κῦρος κατεστήσατο,  
 οὕτως ἔτι καὶ νῦν βασιλέως εἰσὶν αἱ ἐν ταῖς |at the edge, extreme  
 |guard, καὶ οἱ χιλιάρχοι τῶν φυλακῶν ἐκ βασιλέως  
 |prison,  
 |watch  
 εἰσὶ καθεστηκότες καὶ παρὰ βασιλεῖ |copy, register  
 προείπε δὲ πᾶσι τοῖς |send forth |satrap , ὅσα  
 αὐτὸν ἐώρων ποιοῦντα, πάντα |imitate, πρῶτον μὲν  
 |represent  
 |rider καθιστάναι ἐκ τῶν συνεπισπομένων Περσῶν καὶ  
 συμμάχων καὶ ἄρματηλάτας· |as/how many/great, ἦν καὶ  
 |central λάβωσιν, |force, compel τούτους ἐπὶ |door ἰέναι  
 |office  
 καὶ |discretion, mod- |take care of, over- παρέχειν ἑαυτοὺς τῷ  
 |eration |see  
 |satrap χρῆσθαι, ἣν τι δέχεται· |raise; train δὲ καὶ τοὺς  
 γιγνομένους παῖδας ἐπὶ |door , ὥσπερ παρ' αὐτῷ· |lead out  
 δ' ἐπὶ τὴν |hunt τὸν |satrap τοὺς ἀπὸ θυρῶν καὶ |work on

Carians had asked for themselves, to Caria, and Pharnouchus to Aeolia and Phrygia by the Hellespont.

But to Cilicia, Cyprus, and Paphlagonia, Cyrus sent no satraps, because they had shown their willingness to march against Babylon; tribute, however, was imposed on them as on the others. In accordance with the rules then laid down by Cyrus, the citadel garrisons and the captains-of-the-guard are to this day appointed directly by the king, and have their names on the royal list. All satraps whom Cyprus sent out were ordered to do as they saw him doing: each was to raise a body of cavalry and a chariot-force from the Persians and the allies who went out with him; and all who received grants of land and official residences were to present themselves at the palace-gates, study temperance and self-control, and hold themselves in readiness for the service of their satrap. Their boys were to be educated at the gates, as with Cyrus, and the satrap was to lead his nobles out to hunt, and train himself

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀνθρώπινος** human

**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out; appoint; (mid) declare

**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence

**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot

**διασώζω** preserve through

**ἔδρα** (ᾱ) seat, seated group

~polyhedron

**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic

**ἐπίκουρος** ally ~cereal

**ἰκάνω** (ᾱ) reach, arrive at

**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn

**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos

**κτάομαι** acquire, possess

**μεταδίδωμι** give part of ~donate

**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house slave

**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic

**παράδεισος** park

**παρακелеύομαι** recommend, encourage

**παρατίθηναι** put near, put at risk ~thesis

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic

**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia

**πότε** when?

**προτιμάω** (ι) prefer, pay attention to

**σῖτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite

**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt

**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid

**χόρτος** barn, corral; fodder

αυτόν τε καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ τὰ πολεμικά. Ὅς δ' ἂν ἐμοί, ἔφη, κατὰ λόγον τῆς δυνάμεως πλείστα μὲν ἄρματα, πλείστους δὲ καὶ ἀρίστους ἱππέας ἀποδεικνύῃ, τοῦτον ἐγὼ ὡς ἀγαθὸν σύμμαχον καὶ ὡς ἀγαθὸν συμφύλακα Πέρσαις τε καὶ ἐμοὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς τιμήσω. ἔστων δὲ παρ' ὑμῖν καὶ ἔδραις ὥσπερ παρ' ἐμοὶ οἱ ἄριστοι προτετιμημένοι, καὶ τράπεζα, ὥσπερ ἡ ἐμή, τρέφουσα μὲν πρῶτον τοὺς οἰκέτας, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ὡς φίλοις μεταδιδόναι ἱκανῶς κεκοσμημένη καὶ ὡς τὸν καλὸν τι ποιοῦντα καθ' ἡμέραν ἐπιγεραίρειν. κτᾶσθε δὲ καὶ παραδείσους καὶ θηρία τρέφετε, καὶ μήτε αὐτοὶ ποτε ἄνευ πόνου σῖτον παραθῆσθε μήτε ἵπποις ἀγυμνάστοις χόρτον ἐμβάλλετε· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δυναίμην ἐγὼ εἰς ὧν ἀνθρωπίνη ἀρετῇ τὰ πάντων ὑμῶν ἀγαθὰ διασώζειν, ἀλλὰ δεῖ ἐμὲ μὲν ἀγαθὸν ὄντα σὺν ἀγαθοῖς τοῖς παρ' ἐμοῦ ὑμῖν ἐπίκουρον εἶναι, ὑμᾶς δὲ ὁμοίως αὐτοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ὄντας σὺν ἀγαθοῖς τοῖς μεθ' ὑμῶν ἐμοὶ συμμάχους εἶναι. βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ὑμᾶς καὶ τοῦτο κατανοῆσαι ὅτι τούτων ὧν νῦν ὑμῖν παρακελεύομαι οὐδὲν

αὐτόν τε καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ τὰ <sup>|warlike, hostile</sup> Ὅς δ' ἂν  
 ἐμοί, ἔφη, κατὰ λόγον τῆς δυνάμεως πλείστα μὲν <sup>|chariot</sup> ,  
 πλείστους δὲ καὶ ἀρίστους <sup>|rider</sup> <sup>|show, point out; ap- point; (mid) declare</sup> ὡς ἀγαθὸν σύμμαχον καὶ ὡς ἀγαθὸν συμφύλακα  
 Πέρσαις τε καὶ ἐμοί τῆς ἀρχῆς <sup>|honor</sup> ἔστων δὲ παρ' ὑμῖν  
 καὶ <sup>|seat</sup> ὥσπερ παρ' ἐμοί οἱ ἄριστοι <sup>|prefer, pay attention to</sup>  
 καὶ <sup>|a table</sup> , ὥσπερ ἡ ἐμή, <sup>|nurture</sup> μὲν πρῶτον τοὺς  
<sup>|household; house slave</sup> ἵππειτα δὲ καὶ ὡς φίλοις <sup>|give part of</sup> ἱκανῶς  
<sup>|marshal, array</sup> καὶ ὡς τὸν καλὸν τι ποιοῦντα καθ' ἡμέραν  
 ἐπιγεραίρειν. κτᾶσθε δὲ καὶ <sup>|park</sup> καὶ <sup>|wild animal</sup>  
<sup>|nurture</sup> , καὶ <sup>|neither</sup> ἵτοί ποτε <sup>|away from; not</sup> <sup>|toil, suffer- ing</sup> <sup>|grain, bread, food</sup> <sup>|put near, put at risk</sup>  
<sup>|neither</sup> ἵτοις ἀγυμνάστοις <sup>|ban, hav- corral- ing; fodder</sup> <sup>|throw in; inspire</sup> γὰρ ἂν  
 δυναίμην ἐγὼ εἰς ὧν <sup>|human</sup> <sup>|not</sup> <sup>|excellence</sup> πάντων ὑμῶν  
 ἀγαθὰ <sup>|preserve through</sup> , ἀλλὰ δεῖ ἐμὲ μὲν ἀγαθὸν ὄντα σὺν  
 ἀγαθοῖς τοῖς παρ' ἐμοῦ ὑμῖν <sup>|ally</sup> εἶναι, ὑμᾶς δὲ  
 ὁμοίως αὐτοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ὄντας σὺν ἀγαθοῖς τοῖς μεθ' ὑμῶν  
 ἐμοὶ συμμάχους εἶναι. βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ὑμᾶς καὶ τοῦτο  
<sup>|notice, realize, learn</sup> ὅτι τούτων ὧν νῦν ὑμῖν <sup>|recommend, encourage</sup> οὐδὲν

and his followers in the art of war. "Whichever of you," Cyrus added, "can show the greatest number of chariots in proportion to his power, and the largest and finest body of cavalry, I will honour him as my best ally and most faithful fellow-guardian of the Persian empire. Let the best men always have the preference at your courts as they have at mine, give them seats of honour as I do, and let your table be spread, as mine is, not only for your own household, but for your friends also, and for the honour of him who may accomplish any noble deed. You must lay out parks and breed game, and never touch food until you have toiled for it, nor give your horses fodder until they have been exercised. I am but a single man, with only human strength and human virtue, and I could not by myself preserve the good things that are yours: I must have good comrades to help me in goodness, and only thus can I be your defender; and you likewise, if you are to help me, must be good yourselves and have good men at your side. Remember that I have not spoken

*vocabulary*

**ἀπόδειξις** -εως (f) acceptance; (Ion)  
 showing  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἔδρα** (ἄ) seat, seated group  
 ~polyhedron  
**ἐκπέμπω** send forth ~pomp  
**ἐπιστάτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant,  
 dependant ~station  
**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy  
**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn  
**κατάρχω** hold ready (sacrificial  
 materials) ~oligarch  
**μιμέομαι** (ι) imitate, represent  
**νέωτα** next year  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order  
**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order  
 before  
**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect  
 ~legion  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command  
**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
**προτιμάω** (ι) prefer, pay attention to  
**στρατεία** expedition, campaign  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

τοῖς δούλοις προστάττω· ἃ δ' ὑμᾶς φημι χρήναι ποιεῖν, ταῦτα καὶ αὐτὸς πειρῶμαι πάντα πράττειν. ὥσπερ δ' ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς κελεύω ἐμὲ μιμεῖσθαι, οὕτω καὶ ὑμεῖς τοὺς ὑφ' ὑμῶν ἀρχὰς ἔχοντας μιμεῖσθαι ὑμᾶς διδάσκετε.

Ταῦτα δὲ Κύρου οὕτω τότε τάξαντος ἔτι καὶ νῦν τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ πᾶσαι μὲν αἱ ὑπὸ βασιλεῖ φυλακαὶ ὁμοίως φυλάττονται, πᾶσαι δὲ αἱ τῶν ἀρχόντων θύραι ὁμοίως θεραπεύονται, πάντες δὲ οἱ οἴκοι καὶ μεγάλοι καὶ μικροὶ ὁμοίως οἰκοῦνται, πᾶσι δὲ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν παρόντων ἔδραις προτετίμηνται, πᾶσαι δὲ αἱ πορεῖαι συντεταγμέναι κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον εἰσὶ, πᾶσαι δὲ συγκεφαλαιοῦνται πολιτικαὶ πράξεις εἰς ὀλίγους ἐπιστάτας.

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ὡς χρή ποιεῖν ἐκάστους καὶ δύναμιν ἐκάστῳ προσθεὶς ἐξέπεμπε, καὶ προεῖπεν ἅπασι παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς εἰς νέωτα στρατείας ἐσομένης καὶ ἀποδείξεως ἀνδρῶν καὶ ὄπλων καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀρμάτων.

Κατενοήσαμεν δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι Κύρου κατάρξαντος, ὥς



τοῖς |born |post at, attach ἃ δ' ὑμᾶς φημι χρῆναι ποιεῖν,  
enslaved, |to, command  
servile

ταῦτα καὶ αὐτὸς |try, test πάντα πράττειν. ὥσπερ δ' ἐγὼ

ὑμᾶς κελεύω ἐμὲ |imitate, , οὕτω καὶ ὑμεῖς τοὺς ὑφ' ὑμῶν  
|represent

ἀρχὰς ἔχοντας |imitate, ὑμᾶς διδάσκετε.  
|represent

Ταῦτα δὲ Κύρου οὕτω τότε |arrange ἔτι καὶ νῦν τῷ

αὐτῷ |turn; mann̄er, ι μὲν αἰ ὑπὸ βασιλεῖ |guard, ὁμοίως  
|kind, fashion |prison,

|guard; watch , πᾶσαι δὲ αἰ τῶν ἀρχόντων |watch ὁμοίως  
|door

|help, serve , πάντες δὲ οἱ οἴκοι καὶ μεγάλοι καὶ |small

ὁμοίως |inhabit , πᾶσι δὲ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν παρόντων

|seat |prefer, pay atten-, πᾶσαι δὲ αἰ |gait, |gather, assemble  
tion to |march

κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον εἰσὶ, πᾶσαι δὲ συγκεφαλαιοῦνται

πολιτικαὶ πράξεις εἰς ὀλίγους ἐπιστάτας.

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ὥς |must, ..εἶν ἐκάστους καὶ δύναμιν ἐκάστῳ  
|should

|add; im-|send forth , καὶ προεῖπεν ἅπασιν |prepare, render  
pose; (mp)

|agree; side |expedition, ἐσομένης καὶ |acceptance; ἰνδρῶν  
with |next |campaign | (Ion) showing  
|year

καὶ |tool καὶ ἵππων καὶ |chariot .

|notice, realize, δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι Κύρου |hold ready , ὥς  
|learn

unto you as unto slaves: what I say you ought to do I strive to do myself. And even as I bid you follow me, so I would have you teach those in authority under you to follow you.”

Such were the principles then laid down by Cyrus, and to this day all the royal garrisons are appointed in the same manner, the gates of all the governors are thronged in the same way, the houses, great and small, are managed in the same fashion, everywhere the most distinguished guests are given seats of honour, every province is visited on the same system, and everywhere the threads of numberless affairs are gathered into the hands of a few superiors. Having given these instructions, Cyrus assigned a body of troops to each of his satraps, and sent them out to their provinces, bidding them to be ready for a campaign in the new year and for a review of their soldiers, their weapons, their horses, and their chariots. And here I may notice another custom, also instituted by Cyrus, it is

*vocabulary*

**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**ἀποτρέπω** divert from ~trophy  
**ἀτακτέω** be undisciplined  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**διαλείπω** leave a gap, space apart  
**διαμένω** continue, persevere  
**ἐκφαίνω** bring to light ~photon  
**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year  
**ἐνίοτε** sometimes  
**ἐνοικος** inhabitant  
**ἐπικουρέω** fight in another's cause  
 ~cereal  
**ἐπικουρία** rescue; auxiliary force  
**ἐφοδος** accessible; inspector; entrance; attack

**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe  
**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**μηχάνημα** -τος (n, 3) machine; mechanism, way  
**ὁπόθεν** whence  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**παραλείπω** leave, leave out  
**πόσος** how many, much, far?  
**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptic  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**σωφρονίζω** calm, chasten  
**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously  
**φορά** carrying, burden  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

φασι, καὶ νῦν ἔτι διαμένει· ἐφοδεύει γὰρ ἀνὴρ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν  
 αἰὲ στράτευμα ἔχων, ὥς ἦν μὲν τις τῶν σατραπῶν  
 ἐπικουρίας δέχεται, ἐπικουρῇ, ἦν δέ τις ὑβρίζει, σωφρονίζει,  
 ἦν δέ τις ἢ δασμῶν φορᾶς ἀμελῇ ἢ τῶν ἐνοίκων φυλακῆς  
 ἢ ὅπως ἢ χώρα ἐνεργὸς ἢ ἢ ἄλλο τι τῶν τεταγμένων  
 παραλίπη, ταῦτα πάντα κατευτρεπίζει· ἦν δὲ μὴ δύνηται,  
 βασιλεῖ ἀπαγγέλλη· ὁ δὲ ἀκούων βουλευέται περὶ τοῦ  
 ἀτακτοῦντος. καὶ οἱ πολλάκις λεγόμενοι ὅτι βασιλέως  
 υἱὸς καταβαίνει, βασιλέως ἀδελφός, βασιλέως ὀφθαλμός,  
 καὶ ἐνίοτε οὐκ ἐκφαίνονται, οὗτοι τῶν ἐφόδων εἰσὶν·  
 ἀποτρέπεται γὰρ ἕκαστος αὐτῶν ὁπόθεν ἂν βασιλεὺς  
 κελεύῃ.

Κατεμάθομεν δὲ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἄλλο μηχανήμα πρὸς τὸ  
 μέγεθος τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἐξ οὗ ταχέως ἡσθάνετο καὶ τὰ  
 πάμπολυ ἀπέχοντα ὅπως ἔχοι. σκειψάμενος γὰρ πόσῃν  
 ἂν ὁδὸν ἵππος καθανύτοι τῆς ἡμέρας ἐλαννόμενος ὥστε  
 διαρκεῖν, ἐποίησατο ἵππωνας τοσοῦτον διαλείποντας καὶ  
 ἵππους ἐν αὐτοῖς κατέστησε καὶ τοὺς ἐπιμελομένους

φασι, καὶ νῦν ἔτι |continue, ἐφοδεύει γὰρ ἀνὴρ κατ' |cycle of a year  
persevere

αἰὲ |army ἔχων, ὥς ἦν μέν τις τῶν |satrap

|rescue; aux- δέχεται, |fight in an- δέ τις |insult , |calm,  
iliary force |other's cause |chasten

ἦν δέ τις ἡ |portion, |carrying|disregard τῶν |inhabitant|guard,  
tax, |burden |prison,

ἡ ὅπως ἡ |tribute |watch  
χωρὰ ἐνεργὸς ἡ ἡ ἄλλο τι τῶν τεταγμένων

|leave, leave, ταῦτα πάντα κατευτρεπίζη· ἦν δὲ μὴ δύνηται,  
out

βασίλει |announce, or- ὁ δὲ ἀκούων βουλευέται περὶ τοῦ  
der, promise

|be undisciplined καὶ οἱ |often λεγόμενοι ὅτι βασιλέως

υἱὸς καταβαίνει, βασιλέως ἀδελφός, βασιλέως ὀφθαλμός,

καὶ |sometimes·c |bring to light , οὔτοι τῶν |accessible; |inspector; en-  
trance; attack

|divert from γὰρ ἕκαστος αὐτῶν |whence ἂν βασιλεὺς

κελεύη.

|examine, δὲ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἄλλο |machine; mecha- ὅς τὸ  
observe |nism, way

|tall, big τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἐξ οὗ ταχέως ἡσθάνετο καὶ τὰ

|very great |ward off, drive off, refrain, be|look, look at, watch |how many, much,  
at some distance |far?

ἂν ὁδὸν ἵππος καθανύτοι τῆς ἡμέρας ἐλαυνόμενος ὥστε

διαρκεῖν, ἐποιήσατο ἱππῶνας τοσοῦτον |leave a gap, καὶ  
space apart

ἵππους ἐν αὐτοῖς κατέστησε καὶ τοὺς ἐπιμελομένους

said, and still in force to-day: every year a progress of inspection is made by an officer at the head of an army, to help any satrap who may require aid, or bring the insolent to their senses; and, if there has been negligence in the delivery of tribute, or the protection of the inhabitants, or the cultivation of the soil, or indeed any omission of duty whatsoever, the officer is there to put the matter right, or if he cannot do so himself, to report it to the king, who decides what is to be done about the offender. The announcements so often made, such as "the king's son is coming down," or "the king's brother," or "the king's eye," refer to these inspectors, but sometimes no one appears, for at any moment the officer may be turned back at the king's command. We hear of another arrangement, devised to meet the huge size of the empire and enable the king to learn with great celerity the state of affairs at any distance. Cyrus first ascertained how far a horse could travel in one day without being over-ridden, and then he had a series of posting-stations built, one day's ride apart, with relays of horses, and

*vocabulary***άνθρωπινος** human**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**γέρανος** (f) crane (bird)**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter**διαδέχομαι** be next, succeed ~doctrine**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-**δρεπανηφόρος** having a scythe or hook**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year**ἑξήκοντα** sixty**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**εὐδηλος** very clear**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

**μέχρι** as far as, until**μυριάς** -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad**νυκτερινός** nocturnal**οἰκέυς** -ος (m) house servant

~economics

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**παραδείκνυμι** (ῥ) receive, admit**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with**πέζα** end of a chariot pole**περιέρχομαι** go around; come next to**πορεία** gait, march**στρατεία** expedition, campaign**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συναγείρω** gather together ~agora**συσκευάζω** pack up**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie

~pseudo-

τούτων, καὶ ἄνδρα ἐφ' ἐκάστῳ τῶν τόπων ἔταξε  
τὸν ἐπιτήδειον παραδέχεσθαι τὰ φερόμενα γράμματα  
καὶ παραδιδόναι καὶ παραλαμβάνειν τοὺς ἀπειρηκότας  
ἵππους καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ ἄλλους πέμπειν νεαλεῖς·  
ἔστι δ' ὅτε οὐδὲ τὰς νύκτας φασὶν ἵστασθαι ταύτην  
τὴν πορείαν, ἀλλὰ τῷ ἡμερινῷ ἀγγέλῳ τὸν νυκτερινὸν  
διαδέχεσθαι. τούτων δὲ οὕτω γιγνομένων φασί τινες  
θᾶπτον τῶν γεράνων ταύτην τὴν πορείαν ἀνύτειν· εἰ  
δὲ τοῦτο ψεύδονται, ἀλλ' ὅτι γε τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων πεζῇ  
πορειῶν αὕτη ταχίστη, τοῦτο εὐδηλον. ἀγαθὸν δὲ ὡς  
τάχιστα ἕκαστον αἰσθανόμενον ὡς τάχιστα ἐπιμελεῖσθαι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ περιῆλθεν ὁ ἐνιαυτός, συνήγειρε στρατιὰν εἰς  
Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ λέγεται αὐτῷ γενέσθαι εἰς δώδεκα μὲν  
ἱππέων μυριάδας, εἰς δισχίλια δὲ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα,  
πεζῶν δὲ εἰς μυριάδας ἐξήκοντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα  
συνεσκεύαστο αὐτῷ, ὥρμα δὴ ταύτην τὴν στρατείαν ἐν  
ἧ λέγεται καταστρέφασθαι πάντα τὰ ἔθνη ὅσα Συρίαν  
ἐκβάντι οἰκεῖ μέχρι Ἐρυθρᾶς θαλάττης. μετὰ



τούτων, καὶ ἄνδρα ἐφ' ἐκάστῳ τῶν τόπων |arrange

τὸν |fit, suitable παραδέχεσθαι τὰ φερόμενα |writing,  
|letter

καὶ παραδιδόναι καὶ |receive, undertake, τοὺς ἀπειρηκότας  
|associate with

ἵππους καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ ἄλλους πέμπειν νεαεῖς·

ἔστι δ' ὅτε οὐδὲ τὰς νύκτας φασὶν ἵστασθαι ταύτην

τὴν |gait, , ἀλλὰ τῷ ἡμερινῷ ἀγγέλω τὸν |nocturnal  
|march

|be next, succeed τούτων δὲ οὕτω γιγνομένων φασὶ τινες

θᾶπτον τῶν |crane (bird) αὐτὴν τὴν |gait, ἀνύτειν· εἰ  
|march

δὲ τοῦτο |be false, deceive; ὅτι γε τῶν |human πεζῇ  
(mid) to lie

|gait, αὕτη ταχίστη, τοῦτο |very clear ἀγαθὸν δὲ ὡς  
|march

τάχιστα ἕκαστον |perceive ὡς τάχιστα |take care of,  
|oversee

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |go around; |cycle of a year . ἡγεῖρε |army εἰς  
|come next to

Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ λέγεται αὐτῷ γενέσθαι εἰς |twelve μὲν

ἱππέων |countless, , εἰς |2000 δὲ |chariot |having a scythe,  
|myriad |or hook

πεζῶν δὲ εἰς |countless, |sixty ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα  
|myriad

|pack up αὐτῷ, ὥρμα δὴ ταύτην τὴν |expedition, ἐν  
|campaign

ἥ λέγεται |overturn, subdue πάντα τὰ ἔθνη ὅσα Συρίαν

|come forth ἕκεῖ |as far as, until ἵς θαλάττης. μετὰ

grooms to take care of them, and a proper man in charge of each station to receive the despatches and hand them on, take over the jaded horses and men, and furnish fresh ones. Sometimes, we are told, this post does not even halt at night: the night-messenger relieves the day-messenger and rides on. Some say that, when this is done, the post travels more quickly than the crane can fly, and, whether that is true or not, there is no doubt it is the quickest way in which a human being can travel on land. To learn of events so rapidly and be able to deal with them at once is of course a great advantage.

After a year had passed, Cyrus collected all his troops at Babylon, amounting, it is said, to one hundred and twenty thousand horse, two thousand scythe-bearing chariots, and six hundred thousand foot. Then, seeing that all was got together, he set out for that campaign of his, on which, the story says, he subdued the nations from the borders of Syria as far as the Red Sea. After that there followed, we are

*vocabulary***ἀκμή** point, edge, top, culmination

~acute

**ἄλσεινός** sun-exposed, warm**ἄρκτος** (f) bear**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**διάκειμαι** be in a condition**ἔαρ** -ος (n) spring (season)**ἐαρινός** vernal**ἑσπέρα** evening, west**θάλπω** to warm**θέρως** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

**μεσημβρία** midday; the south**ὀρίζω** divide; ordain, define ~horizon**πέρας** -τος (n, 3) cord; bound, crux,

outcome ~prove

**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat**σοῦσον** lily**στρατεία** expedition, campaign**τεχνάομαι** make, invent ~oxytocin**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm**ψυχός** -εος (n, 3) coolness ~psychology**ψύχω** (v) breathe, blow ~psychology**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

δὲ ταῦτα ἢ εἰς Αἴγυπτον στρατεία λέγεται γενέσθαι καὶ  
 καταστρέψασθαι Αἴγυπτον. καὶ ἐκ τούτου τὴν ἀρχὴν  
 ὥριζεν αὐτῷ πρὸς ἔω μὲν ἢ Ἑρυθρὰ θάλαττα, πρὸς  
 ἄρκτον δὲ ὁ Εὐξείνιος πόντος, πρὸς ἐσπέραν δὲ Κύπρος  
 καὶ Αἴγυπτος, πρὸς μεσημβρίαν δὲ Αἰθιοπία. τούτων  
 δὲ τὰ πέρατα τὰ μὲν διὰ θάλπος, τὰ δὲ διὰ ψυχος, τὰ  
 δὲ διὰ ὕδωρ, τὰ δὲ δι' ἀνδρίαν δυσοίκητα. αὐτὸς δ'  
 ἐν μέσῳ τούτων τὴν δίαιταν ποιησάμενος, τὸν μὲν ἀμφὶ  
 τὸν χειμῶνα χρόνον διῆγεν ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἑπτὰ μῆνας·  
 αὕτη γὰρ ἀλεεινὴ ἡ χώρα· τὸν δὲ ἀμφὶ τὸ ἔαρ τρεῖς  
 μῆνας ἐν Σούσοις· τὴν δὲ ἀκμὴν τοῦ θέρους δύο μῆνας ἐν  
 Ἑκβατάνοις· οὕτω δὴ ποιοῦντ' αὐτὸν λέγουσιν ἐν ἑαρινῷ  
 θάλλει καὶ ψυχῇ διάγειν αἰεὶ. οὕτω δὲ διέκειντο πρὸς αὐτὸν  
 οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὥς πᾶν μὲν ἔθνος μειονεκτεῖν ἐδόκει, εἰ μὴ  
 Κύρῳ πέμψειεν ὅ τι καλὸν αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἢ φύοιτο  
 ἢ τρέφοιτο ἢ τεχνῶτο, πᾶσα δὲ πόλις ὡσαύτως, πᾶς δὲ  
 ιδιώτης πλούσιος ἂν ᾤετο γενέσθαι, εἴ τι Κύρῳ χάρισαιτο·  
 καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος λαμβάνων παρ' ἐκάστων

δὲ ταῦτα ἢ εἰς Αἴγυπτον |expedition, |λέγεται γενέσθαι καὶ  
|campaign

|overturn, subdue Αἴγυπτον. καὶ ἐκ τούτου τὴν ἀρχὴν

|divide; or- |ὦ πρὸς ἔω μὲν ἢ Ἐρυθρὰ θάλαττα, πρὸς  
|dain, define

|bear δὲ ὁ Εὐξείνος |sea , πρὸς |evening, west Κύπρος

καὶ Αἴγυπτος, πρὸς |midday; the south Ἰθιοπία. τούτων

δὲ τὰ πέρατα τὰ μὲν διὰ θάλπος, τὰ δὲ διὰ |coolness τὰ

δὲ διὰ ὕδωρ, τὰ δὲ δι' ἀνυδρίαν δυσοίκητα. αὐτὸς δ'

ἐν μέσῳ τούτων τὴν |way of life; home; |ενος, τὸν μὲν ἀμφὶ  
|arbitration

τὸν |winter, χρόνον |lead through; |ιβυλῶνι |seven μῆνας·  
|storm |pass a time

αὕτη γὰρ |sun-exposed, warm τὸν δὲ ἀμφὶ τὸ |spring |three  
(sea-  
son)

μῆνας ἐν |lily τὴν δὲ |point, edge |sum-  
|top, culmina- |mer  
|tion

Ἐκβατάνοισ' οὕτω δὲ ποιουντ' αὐτὸν λέγουσιν ἐν |vernal

θάλπει καὶ ψύχει |lead through; οὕτω δὲ |be in a condition αὐτὸν  
|pass a time

οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὡς πᾶν μὲν ἔθνος μειονεκτεῖν ἐδόκει, εἰ μὴ

Κύρῳ πέμψειεν ὅ τι καλὸν αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἢ |produce,  
|beget; clasp

ἢ |nurture ἢ |make, |πᾶσα δὲ πόλις |in the same way δὲ  
|invent

|private; a |wealth ἂν ὥετο γενέσθαι, εἴ τι Κύρῳ |gratify  
|layman

καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κύρος λαμβάνων παρ' ἐκάστων

told, the expedition against Egypt and its conquest. From that time forward his empire was bounded on the east by the Red Sea, on the north by the Euxine, on the west by Cyprus and Egypt, and towards the south by Ethiopia. Of these outlying districts, some were scarcely habitable, owing to heat or cold, drought or excessive rain. But Cyrus himself always lived at the centre of his dominions, seven months in Babylon during the winter season, where the land is warm and sunny, three months at Susa in the spring, and during the height of summer in Ecbatana, so that for him it was springtime all the year. Towards him the disposition of all men was such that every nation felt they had failed unless they could send Cyrus the treasures of their land, plants, or animals, or works of art. And every city felt the same, and every private person counted himself on the road to riches if he could do Cyrus some special service, for Cyrus took only such things as they

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀφθονία** abundance  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**βίος** life ~biology  
**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology  
**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out  
**ἑβδομος** seventh  
**εἰκός** likely  
**εἴωθα** be accustomed, in the habit  
**ἐξεγείρω** awaken  
**ἐπεύχομαι** exult (over); pray ~vow  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**ιερεῖον** animal victim ~hieroglyph  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
 have sex  
**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**ὄναρ** -τος (n) dream  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo

**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas  
**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**πάτριος** of the father(s), ancestral  
**πατρῷος** of the father(s), ancestral  
 ~paternal  
**πατρῷος** of the father(s), ancestral  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πράξις** -εως (f) result, business  
 ~practice  
**πρεσβύτης** -ου (ῥ, m, 1) old person  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**προχωρέω** proceed, come forward  
**σπανίζω** be scarce; lack; use up  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle  
**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**χορός** dance; chorus ~terpsichorean

ὧν ἀφθονίαν εἶχον οἱ διδόντες ἀντεδίδου ὧν σπανίζοντας  
αὐτοὺς αἰσθάνοιτο.

## 8.7

Οὕτω δὲ τοῦ αἰῶνος προκεχωρηκότος, μάλα δὴ  
πρεσβύτης ὢν ὁ Κῦρος ἀφικνέεται εἰς Πέρσας τὸ ἑβδομον  
ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀρχῆς. καὶ ὁ μὲν πατὴρ καὶ ἡ μήτηρ πάλαι  
δὴ ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἐτετελευτήκεσαν αὐτῷ· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἔθυσε  
τὰ νομιζόμενα ἱερὰ καὶ τοῦ χοροῦ ἡγήσατο Πέρσαις κατὰ  
τὰ πάτρια καὶ τὰ δῶρα πᾶσι διέδωκεν ὥσπερ εἰώθει.  
κοιμηθεὶς δ' ἐν τῷ βασιλείῳ ὄναρ εἶδε τοιόνδε. ἔδοξεν  
αὐτῷ προσελθὼν κρείττων τις ἢ κατὰ ἄνθρωπον εἰπεῖν·  
Συσκευάζου, ὦ Κῦρε· ἤδη γὰρ εἰς θεοὺς ἄπει. τοῦτο  
δὲ ἰδὼν τὸ ὄναρ ἐξηγέρθη καὶ σχεδὸν ἐδόκει εἰδέναι ὅτι  
τοῦ βίου ἡ τελευτὴ παρείη. εὐθὺς οὖν λαβὼν ἱερεῖα ἔθνε  
Δί τε πατρώῳ καὶ Ἥλίῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἐπὶ τῶν  
ἄκρων, ὡς Πέρσαι θύουσιν, ὧδ' ἐπευχόμενος· Ζεῦ πατρῷε  
καὶ Ἥλιε καὶ πάντες θεοί, δέχεσθε τάδε καὶ τελεστήρια  
πολλῶν καὶ καλῶν πράξεων καὶ χαριστήρια



ὦν |abundance ἔχον οἱ διδόντες ἀντεδίδου ὦν |be scarce; lack;  
|use up  
αὐτοὺς |perceive .

## 8.7

Οὕτω δὲ τοῦ |life force |proceed, come for-, μάλα δὴ  
|ward  
|old person ὦν ὁ Κῦρος ἀφικνεῖται εἰς Πέρσας τὸ |seventh  
ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀρχῆς. καὶ ὁ μὲν πατὴρ καὶ ἡ μήτηρ πάλαι  
δὴ ὥσπερ |likely |bring about, finish αὐτῶ· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος |rush; sacrifice  
τὰ νομιζόμενα ἱερὰ καὶ τοῦ |dance; ἡγήσατο Πέρσαις κατὰ  
|chorus  
τὰ |of the father(s), an-|gift πᾶσι |distribute, send out |be accustomed, in  
|cestral |the habit  
κοιμηθεὶς δ' ἐν τῷ βασιλείῳ |dream ἔδε |such ἔδοξεν  
αὐτῶ |come forward, sur- των τις ἢ κατὰ ἄνθρωπον εἰπεῖν·  
|render, come in  
Συσκευάζον, ὦ Κῦρε· ἤδη γὰρ εἰς θεοὺς |be absent, go o  
|away, return  
δὲ ἰδὼν τὸ |dream |awaken καὶ |about ἐδόκει εἰδέναι ὅτι  
τοῦ βίου ἡ |conclusion, . πρεΐη. εὐθὺς οὖν λαβὼν |animal |rush; sacrifice  
|fulfilment |victim  
Δί τε πατρώῳ καὶ Ἡλίῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἐπὶ τῶν  
ἄκρων, ὡς Πέρσαι |rush; sacrifice' exult (over); pray -- |of the father(s), an-  
|cestral  
καὶ Ἡλίε καὶ πάντες θεοί, δέχεσθε τάδε καὶ τελεστήρια  
πολλῶν καὶ καλῶν |result, καὶ χαριστήρια  
|business

had in abundance, and gave them in return what he saw they lacked.

### 8.7

Thus the years passed on, and Cyrus was now in a ripe old age, and he journeyed to Persia for the seventh time in his reign. His father and mother were long since dead in the course of nature, and Cyrus offered sacrifice according to the law, and led the sacred dance of his Persians after the manner of his forefathers, and gave gifts to every man according to his wont.

But one night, as he lay asleep in the royal palace, he dreamt a dream. It seemed to him that some one met him, greater than a man, and said to him, "Set your house in order, Cyrus: the time has come, and you are going to the gods."

With that Cyrus awoke out of sleep, and he all but seemed to know that the end of his life was at hand. Straightway he took victims and offered sacrifice to Zeus, the god of his fathers, and to the Sun, and all the other gods, on the high places where the Persians sacrifice, and then he made this prayer:

"Zeus, god of my fathers, and thou, O Sun, and all ye gods, accept this sacrifice, my offering for many a noble enterprise, and suffer me to thank you for the grace

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause**δεῖπνον** meal, food**δεῖπνος** meal, food**διψάω** be thirsty ~dipsomaniac**ἐπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**εὐτυχία** good luck, success**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**κατακλίνω** (ι) lay down ~incline**λούω** wash, bathe**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**οἰωνός** vulture, large bird, bird of prey; omen ~avis**οὐράνιος** heavenly**παρατίθημι** put near, put at risk  
~thesis**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion**προσίστημι** be allowed near**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore**σημεῖον** sign**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**συνακολουθέω** follow with, be related**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle**τοιόσδε** such**ὕμέτερος** (ὕ) yours**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later**φήμη** speech, rumor ~fame

ὅτι ἐσημαίνετε μοι καὶ ἐν ἱεροῖς καὶ ἐν οὐρανίοις  
σημείοις καὶ ἐν οἰωνοῖς καὶ ἐν φήμαις ἃ τ' ἐχρῆν ποιεῖν  
καὶ ἃ οὐκ ἐχρῆν. πολλή δ' ὑμῖν χάρις ὅτι καὶ γὰρ  
ἐγὶ γινώσκον τὴν ὑμετέραν ἐπιμέλειαν καὶ οὐδεπώποτε  
ἐπὶ ταῖς εὐτυχίαις ὑπὲρ ἄνθρωπον ἐφρόνησα. αἰτοῦμαι  
δ' ὑμᾶς δοῦναι καὶ νῦν παισὶ μὲν καὶ γυναικὶ καὶ  
φίλοις καὶ πατρίδι εὐδαιμονίαν, ἐμοὶ δὲ οἰόνπερ αἰῶνα  
δεδώκατε, τοιαύτην καὶ τελευτὴν δοῦναι. ὁ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα  
ποιήσας καὶ οὔκαδε ἐλθὼν ἔδοξεν ἡδέως ἀναπαύσεσθαι καὶ  
κατεκλίνῃ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὥρα ἦν, οἱ τεταγμένοι προσιόντες  
λούσασθαι αὐτὸν ἐκέλευον. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡδέως  
ἀναπαύοιτο. οἱ δ' αὖ τεταγμένοι, ἐπεὶ ὥρα ἦν, δεῖπνον  
παρετίθεσαν· τῷ δὲ ἡ ψυχὴ σῖτον μὲν οὐ προσίετο, διψήν  
δ' ἐδόκει, καὶ ἔπιεν ἡδέως. ὥς δὲ καὶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ  
συνέβαινεν αὐτῷ ταῦτά καὶ τῇ τρίτῃ, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς  
παῖδας· οἱ δ' ἔτυχον συνηκολουθηκότες αὐτῷ καὶ ὄντες  
ἐν Πέρσαις· ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς φίλους καὶ τὰς Περσῶν  
ἀρχάς· παρόντων δὲ πάντων ἤρχετο τοιοῦδε λόγου.

ὅτι |give orders to; |μοι καὶ ἐν ἱεροῖς καὶ ἐν |heavenly  
 |show; mark  
 |sign καὶ ἐν |vulture, καὶ ἐν |speech, ἃ τ' ἐχρῆν ποιεῖν  
 |eagle, |rumor  
 καὶ ἃ οὐκ ἐχρῆν. |omen πολλὴ δ' ὑμῖν χάρις ὅτι καὶ γὰρ  
 ἐγίγνωσκον τὴν |yours |attention; as- καὶ οὐδεπώποτε  
 |signed task  
 ἐπὶ ταῖς εὐτυχίαις ὑπὲρ ἀνθρώπων |think, be wise |ask for  
 δ' ὑμᾶς δοῦναι καὶ νῦν παισὶ μὲν καὶ γυναικὶ καὶ  
 φίλοις καὶ πατρίδι |prosperity , ἐμοὶ δὲ οἰόνπερ |life force  
 δεδώκατε, τοιαύτην καὶ |conclusion, |οὔναι. ὁ μὲν δὲ τοιαῦτα  
 |fulfilment  
 ποιήσας καὶ |homeward ᾧ ἔδοξεν |sweet |cause to cease καὶ  
 |lay down . ἐπεὶ δὲ ὥρα ἦν, οἱ τεταγμένοι προσιόντες  
 |wash, bathe αὐτὸν ἐκέλευον. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι |sweet  
 |cause to cease οἱ δ' αὖ τεταγμένοι, ἐπεὶ ὥρα ἦν, δειπνον  
 |put near, put at τῷ δὲ ἡ ψυχὴ |grain, μὲν οὐ |be allowed |be thirsty  
 |risk |bread, |near  
 δ' ἐδόκει, καὶ ἔπιεν |sweet |food ὥς δὲ καὶ τῇ |the next; later  
 συνέβαινεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα καὶ τῇ |third , ἐκάλεσε τοὺς  
 παῖδας· οἱ δ' ἔτυχον |follow with, be related αὐτῷ καὶ ὄντες  
 ἐν Πέρσαις· ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς φίλους καὶ τὰς Περσῶν  
 ἀρχάς· παρόντων δὲ πάντων ἤρχετο |such λόγου.

ye have shown me, telling me all my life, by victims and by signs from heaven, by birds and by the voices of men, what things I ought to do and what I ought to refrain from doing. Deep is my thankfulness that I was able to recognise your care, and never lifted up my heart too high even in my prosperity. I beseech you now to bless my children also, and my wife, and my friends, and my fatherland; and for myself, may my death be as my life has been.”

Then Cyrus went home again and lay down on his bed, for he longed to rest. And when the hour was come, his attendants came to him and bade him take his bath. But he said he would rather rest. And others came afterwards, at the usual time, to set the meal before him; but he could not bring himself to take food: he seemed only to thirst, and drank readily. It was the same the second day, and the third, and then he called his sons to his side — it chanced they had followed him to Persia — and he summoned his friends also and the chief magistrates of the land, and when they were all

*vocabulary***ἀσθενής** weak**ἀτυχέω** be unlucky**βίος** life ~biology**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology**γῆρας** -ος (n, 3) old age**διασώζω** preserve through**δουλόω** enslave**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion**ἐπιγιγνώσκω** look upon, recognize

~gnostic

**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama**ἡβάω** be young ~Hebe**καρπύω** bear fruit; harvest it**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**νεανίσκος** (ᾱ) young man**νεότης** -τος (f, 3) youth ~neon**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier

~ion

**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;

side with ~thesis

**προτιμάω** (i) prefer, pay attention to**σαφής** clear, understandable**τέλειος** finished ~apostle**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle

Παῖδες ἐμοὶ καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες φίλοι, ἐμοὶ μὲν  
 τοῦ βίου τὸ τέλος ἤδη πάρεστιν· ἐκ πολλῶν τοῦτο  
 σαφῶς γινώσκω· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρή, ὅταν τελευτήσω, ὡς  
 περὶ εὐδαίμονος ἐμοῦ καὶ λέγειν καὶ ποιεῖν πάντα. ἐγὼ  
 γὰρ παῖς τε ὢν τὰ ἐν παισὶ νομιζόμενα καλὰ δοκῶ  
 κεκαρπῶσθαι, ἐπεὶ τε ἤβησα, τὰ ἐν νεανίσκοις, τέλειός  
 τε ἀνὴρ γενόμενος τὰ ἐν ἀνδράσι· σὺν τῷ χρόνῳ τε  
 προϊόντι ἀεὶ συναυξανομένην ἐπιγινώσκειν ἐδόκουν καὶ  
 τὴν ἐμὴν δύναμιν, ὥστε καὶ τοῦμὸν γῆρας οὐδεπώποτε  
 ἡσθόμην τῆς ἐμῆς νεότητος ἀσθενέστερον γιγνόμενον, καὶ  
 οὐτ' ἐπιχειρήσας οὐτ' ἐπιθυμήσας οἶδα ὅτου ἡτύχησα. καὶ  
 τοὺς μὲν φίλους ἐπείδον δι' ἐμοῦ εὐδαίμονας γενομένους,  
 τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους ὑπ' ἐμοῦ δουλωθέντας· καὶ τὴν πατρίδα  
 πρόσθεν ἰδιωτεύουσαν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ νῦν προτετιμημένην  
 καταλείπω· ὦν τ' ἐκτησάμην οὐδὲν οἶδα ὅ τι οὐ  
 διεσωσάμην. καὶ τὸν μὲν παρελθόντα χρόνον ἔπραττον  
 οὕτως ὥσπερ ἡνυχόμην· φόβος δέ μοι συμπαρομαρτῶν μή  
 τι ἐν τῷ ἐπιόντι χρόνῳ ἢ ἴδοιμι



Παῖδες ἐμοὶ καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες φίλοι, ἐμοὶ μὲν  
 τοῦ βίου τὸ |end ἤδη πάρεστιν· ἐκ πολλῶν τοῦτο  
 |clear, under-standable ὥσκα· ὑμᾶς δὲ |must, |when-should|bring about, |finish  
 περὶ |blessed with a |good genius μου καὶ λέγειν καὶ ποιεῖν πάντα. ἐγὼ  
 γὰρ παῖς τε ὢν τὰ ἐν παισὶ |consider |cus- |tomary; believe  
 |bear fruit; harvest it ἐπεὶ τε |be young ἂ ἐν νεανίσκοις, |finished  
 τε ἀνὴρ γενόμενος τὰ ἐν ἀνδράσι· σὺν τῷ χρόνῳ τε  
 |to have been before, earlier συναυξανομένην |look upon, recognize ' οὖν καὶ  
 τὴν ἐμὴν δύναμιν, ὥστε καὶ τοῦμὸν |old age οὐδεπώποτε  
 |perceive τῆς ἐμῆς |youth |weak γιγνόμενον, καὶ  
 οὔτ' |do, try, attack οὔτ' |wish, covet οἶδα ὅτου |be unlucky καὶ  
 τοὺς μὲν φίλους |look upon ' ἐμοῦ |blessed with a |good genius  
 τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους ὑπ' ἐμοῦ |enslave καὶ τὴν |fatherland  
 πρόσθεν ιδιωτεύουσαν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ νῦν |prefer, pay attention to  
 |leave behind, abandon ὢν τ' ἐκτησάμην οὐδὲν οἶδα ὅ τι οὐ  
 |preserve |through καὶ τὸν μὲν |pass, escape χρόνον ἔπραττον  
 οὕτως ὥσπερ |declare; |fear |pray δέ μοι συμπαρομαρτῶν μὴ  
 τι ἐν τῷ |lie upon; approach ᾧ ὁδοιμῇ

met, he began:

"My sons, and friends of mine, the end of my life is at hand: I know it by many signs. And when I am dead, you must show by word and deed that you think of me as happy. When I was a child, I had all the joys and triumphs of a child, and I reaped the treasures of youth as I grew up, and all the glories of a man when I came to man's estate. And as the years passed, I seemed to find my powers grow with them, so that I never felt my old age weaker than my youth, nor can I think of anything I attempted or desired wherein I failed. Moreover, I have seen my friends made happy by my means, and my enemies crushed beneath my hand. This my fatherland, which was once of no account in Asia, I leave at the height of power, and of all that I won I think I have lost nothing. Throughout my whole life I have fared as I prayed to fare, and the dread that was ever with me lest in days to come I might see or

*vocabulary*

**βασίλειος** kingly

**γεραιός** old ~geriatric

**εἰκός** likely

**ἐμπειρος** experienced

**εὐδαιμονέω** be lucky, happy

**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy

**θᾶκος** seat, session of assembly

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon

**μακαρίζω** congratulate ~macarism

**μνήμη** reminder, memorial

**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic

**παιδεύω** raise; train

**παλαιός** old ~paleo

**προβουλεύω** take counsel before

**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
command

**προτιμάω** (ι) prefer, pay attention to

**τελέεις** unblemished (victim)

**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle

**ὕμέτερος** (ὅ) yours

**ὕπείκω** yield, withdraw ~victor

ἢ ἀκούσαιμι ἢ πάθοιμι χαλεπόν, οὐκ εἶα τελέως με  
 μέγα φρονεῖν οὐδ' εὐφραίνεισθαι ἐκπεπταμένως. νῦν δ'  
 ἦν τελευτήσω, καταλείπω μὲν ὑμᾶς, ὦ παῖδες, ζῶντας  
 οὕσπερ ἔδοσάν μοι οἱ θεοὶ γενέσθαι· καταλείπω δὲ  
 πατρίδα καὶ φίλους εὐδαιμονοῦντας· ὥστε πῶς οὐκ  
 ἂν ἐγὼ δικαίως μακαριζόμενος τὸν αἰὲ χρόνον μνήμης  
 τυγχάνοιμι; δεῖ δὲ καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν με ἤδη σαφηνίσαντα  
 καταλιπεῖν, ὥς ἂν μὴ ἀμφίλογος γενομένη πράγματα  
 ὑμῖν παράσχη. ἐγὼ δ' οὖν φιλῶ μὲν ἀμφοτέρους ὑμᾶς  
 ὁμοίως, ὦ παῖδες· τὸ δὲ προβουλεύειν καὶ τὸ ἡγεῖσθαι  
 ἐφ' ὅ τι ἂν καιρὸς δοκῇ εἶναι, τοῦτο προστάττω τῷ  
 προτέρῳ γενομένῳ καὶ πλειόνων κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς ἐμπείρω.  
 ἐπαιδεύθην δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτως ὑπὸ τῆσδε τῆς ἐμῆς  
 τε καὶ ὑμετέρας πατρίδος, τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις οὐ μόνον  
 ἀδελφοῖς ἀλλὰ καὶ πολίταις καὶ ὁδῶν καὶ θάκων καὶ  
 λόγων ὑπέεικεν, καὶ ὑμᾶς δέ, ὦ παῖδες, οὕτως ἐξ  
 ἀρχῆς ἐπαίδευον, τοὺς μὲν γεραιτέρους προτιμᾶν, τῶν δὲ  
 νεωτέρων προτετιμῆσθαι· ὥς οὖν παλαιὰ καὶ

ἢ ἀκούσαιμι ἢ πάθοιμι |hard to bear ὑκ εἶα |unblemished (victim)

μέγα |think, be wise<sup>εἶ</sup> |gladden ἐκπεπταμένως. νῦν δ'

ἦν |bring about, |leave behind, μὲν ὑμᾶς, ὦ παῖδες, ζῶντας  
|finish |abandon

οὐσπερ ἔδοσάν μοι οἱ θεοὶ γενέσθαι· |leave behind, δὲ  
|abandon

|fatherland καὶ φίλους |be lucky, happy ὥστε πῶς οὐκ

ἂν ἐγὼ δικαίως |congratulate τὸν αἰὲ χρόνον |reminder,  
|memorial

τυγχάνοιμι; δεῖ δὲ καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν με ἤδη σαφηνίσαντα

|leave behind, ὥς ἂν μὴ ἀμφίλογος γενομένη |deed, fact, thing, affair;  
|abandon |difficulty

ὑμῖν |furnish ἐγὼ δ' οὖν φιλῶ μὲν ἀμφοτέρους ὑμᾶς

ὁμοίως, ὦ παῖδες· τὸ δὲ |take counsel before... τὸ ἡγεῖσθαι

ἐφ' ὃ τι ἂν καιρὸς δοκῇ εἶναι, τοῦτο |post at, attach τῷ  
|to, command

προτέρῳ γενομένῳ καὶ πλειόνων κατὰ τὸ |likely |experienced

|raise; train δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτως ὑπὸ τῆσδε τῆς ἐμῆς

τε καὶ |yours |fatherland, τοῖς |elder οὐ μόνον

ἀδελφοῖς ἀλλὰ καὶ |townsman, free- ἰδὼν καὶ |seat, καὶ  
|man, compatriot |session

λόγων |yield, , καὶ ὑμᾶς δέ, ὦ παῖδες, οὕτως ἐξ  
|withdraw

ἀρχῆς |raise; train, τοὺς μὲν |old |prefer, pay τῶν δὲ  
|attention to

νεωτέρων |prefer, pay atten- ὥς οὖν |old καὶ  
|tion to

hear or suffer evil, this dread would never let me think too highly of myself, or rejoice as a fool rejoices. And if I die now, I leave my sons behind me, the sons the gods have given me; and I leave my fatherland in happiness, and my friends. Surely I may hope that men will count me blessed and cherish my memory. And now I must leave instructions about my kingdom, that there may be no dispute among you after my death. Sons of mine, I love you both alike, but I choose the elder-born, the one whose experience of life is the greater, to be the leader in council and the guide in action. Thus was I trained myself, in the fatherland that is yours and mine, to yield to my elders, my brothers or my fellow-citizens, in the street, or in the place of meeting, or in the assembly for debate. And thus have I trained both of you, to honour your elders and be honoured by those who are younger than yourselves. These are the principles that I leave with you, sanctioned by time,

*vocabulary***ἄλυπος** (ῥ) painless**ἄνθρωπινος** human**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**ἀσχολία** business, being busy**βασίλεια** noblewoman**βασίλειος** kingly**βασιλεύω** be king**διασώζω** preserve through**ἐθίζω** accustom**ἐνδεής** inadequate**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

**ἐράω** desire sexually**εὐδαιμονία** prosperity**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy**εὐφροσύνη** happiness ~frenzy**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κεντρίζω** whip, goad**μεριμνάω** care for**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor**σάφα** with full understanding**σκῆπτρον** scepter, staff ~scepter**φιλονικία** (ι) rivalry, competition**χρυσόω** (ῥ) make golden, gild

εἰθισμένα καὶ ἔννομα λέγοντος ἐμοῦ οὕτως ἀποδέχεσθε.  
 καὶ σὺ μὲν, ὦ Καμβύση, τὴν βασιλείαν ἔχε, θεῶν τε  
 διδόντων καὶ ἐμοῦ ὅσον ἐν ἐμοί· σοὶ δ', ὦ Ταναοξάρη,  
 σατράπην εἶναι δίδωμι Μήδων τε καὶ Ἀρμενίων καὶ  
 τρίτων Καδουσίων· ταῦτα δέ σοι διδοὺς νομίζω ἀρχὴν  
 μὲν μείζω καὶ τοῦνομα τῆς βασιλείας τῷ πρεσβυτέρῳ  
 καταλιπεῖν, εὐδαιμονίαν δὲ σοὶ ἀλυποτέραν. ὁποίας μὲν  
 γὰρ ἀνθρωπίνης εὐφροσύνης ἐνδεὴς ἔση οὐχ ὁρῶ· ἀλλὰ  
 πάντα σοι τὰ δοκοῦντα ἀνθρώπους εὐφραίνειν παρέσται.  
 τὸ δὲ δυσκαταπρακτοτέρων τε ἐρᾶν καὶ τὸ πολλὰ  
 μεριμνᾶν καὶ τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι ἡσυχίαν ἔχειν κεντριζόμενον  
 ὑπὸ τῆς πρὸς τὰμὰ ἔργα φιλονικίας καὶ τὸ ἐπιβουλεύειν  
 καὶ τὸ ἐπιβουλεύεσθαι, ταῦτα τῷ βασιλεύοντι ἀνάγκη σοῦ  
 μᾶλλον συμπαρομαρτεῖν, ἢ σάφ' ἴσθι τοῦ εὐφραίνεισθαι  
 πολλὰς ἀσχολίας παρέχει. οἶσθα μὲν οὖν καὶ σύ, ὦ  
 Καμβύση, ὅτι οὐ τόδε τὸ χρυσοῦν σκῆπτρον τὸ τὴν  
 βασιλείαν διασῶζόν ἐστιν, ἀλλ' οἱ πιστοὶ φίλοι σκῆπτρον  
 βασιλεῦσιν ἀληθέστατον καὶ ἀσφαλέστατον. πιστοὺς δὲ



|accustom καὶ ἔννομα λέγοντος ἐμοῦ οὕτως |accept  
 καὶ σὺ μέν, ὦ Καμβύση, τὴν βασιλείαν ἔχε, θεῶν τε  
 διδόντων καὶ ἐμοῦ ὅσον ἐν ἐμοί· σοὶ δ', ὦ Ταναοξάρη,  
 |satrap εἶναι δίδωμι Μήδων τε καὶ Ἀρμενίων καὶ  
 |third Καδουσίαν· ταῦτα δέ σοι διδοὺς νομίζω ἀρχὴν  
 μὲν μείζω καὶ τοῦνομα τῆς βασιλείας τῷ πρεσβυτέρῳ  
 |leave behind, |prosperity δὲ σοὶ |painless |whatever, kind  
 |abandon  
 γὰρ |human |happiness |inadequate, οὐχ ὁρῶ· ἀλλὰ  
 πάντα σοι τὰ δοκοῦντα ἀνθρώπους |gladden παρέσται.  
 τὸ δὲ δυσκαταπρακτοτέρων τε ἐρᾶν καὶ τὸ πολλὰ  
 |care for καὶ τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι |peace and quiet |whip, goad  
 ὑπὸ τῆς πρὸς τὰμὰ ἔργα φιλονικίας καὶ τὸ |plot, plan, harm  
 καὶ τὸ |plot, plan, harm , ταῦτα τῷ |be king |necessity τοῦ  
 μᾶλλον συμπαρομαρτεῖν, ἃ |clearly ᾗ τοῦ |gladden  
 πολλὰς |business, |furnish οἶσθα μὲν οὖν καὶ σύ, ὦ  
 |being busy  
 Καμβύση, ὅτι οὐ τόδε τὸ χρυσοῦν |scepter, τὸ τὴν  
 |staff  
 βασιλείαν |preserve ἐστίν, ἀλλ' οἱ |faithful; |trust |scepter,  
 |through |worthy |staff  
 βασιλεῦσιν |true; careful καὶ |safe, easy, steady, |faithful; ὡς  
 |careful |careful |trustworthy

ingrained in our customs, embodied in our laws. The sovereignty is yours, Cambyzes; the gods have given it to you, and I also, as far as in me lies; and to you, Tanaoxares, I give the satrapy over the Medes and the Armenians and the Cadousians, these three; and though I leave your elder brother a larger empire and the name of king, your inheritance will bring you, I believe, more perfect happiness than his. I ask myself what human joy will be lacking to you: all things which gladden the hearts of men will be yours—but the craving for what is out of reach, the load of cares, the restless passion to rival my achievements, the plots and counterplots, they will follow him who wears the crown, and they are things, be well assured, that leave little leisure for happiness. And you, Cambyzes, you know of yourself, without words from me, that your kingdom is not guarded by this golden sceptre, but by faithful friends; their loyalty is your true staff, a sceptre which shall not fail. But never

*vocabulary***ἀλλοδαπός** foreign ~alien**αὐξάνω** strengthen**βασίλεια** noblewoman**βασίλειος** kingly**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology**γονεύς** -ος (m) parent**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service

~ergonomics

**κῆδω** distress, hurt; mp: care about

(+gen) ~heinous

**κτῆσις** -ος (f) chattels**μάταιος** vain, empty**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper**οἰκειότης** -τος (f, 3) intimacy**οἰκοδομέω** build, build a house**ὁμόθεν** from the same place

~homoerotic

**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πότε** when?**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia**προσαγορεύω** address, call by name**ὕμέτερος** (ῥ) yours**ὕφηγέομαι** lead the way**φιλικός** friendly**φίλιος** friendly**φύσις** -εως (f) nature (of a thing)

~physics

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

μὴ νόμιζε φύσει φύεσθαι ἀνθρώπους· πᾶσι γὰρ ἂν οἱ  
 αὐτοὶ πιστοὶ φαίνονται, ὥσπερ καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ πεφυκότα  
 πᾶσι τὰ αὐτὰ φαίνεται· ἀλλὰ τοὺς πιστοὺς τίθεσθαι δεῖ  
 ἕκαστον ἑαυτῷ· ἡ δὲ κτῆσις αὐτῶν ἔστιν οὐδαμῶς σὺν τῇ  
 βίᾳ, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον σὺν τῇ εὐεργεσίᾳ. εἰ οὖν καὶ ἄλλους  
 τινὰς πειράσῃ συμφύλακας τῆς βασιλείας ποιῆσθαι  
 μηδαμόθεν πρότερον ἄρχου ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὁμόθεν γενομένου.  
 καὶ πολίται· τοὶ ἄνθρωποι ἀλλοδαπῶν οἰκειότεροι καὶ  
 σύσσιτοι ἀποσκήνων· οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σπέρματος  
 φύντες καὶ ὑπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς μητρὸς τραφέντες καὶ ἐν  
 τῇ αὐτῇ οἰκίᾳ αὐξηθέντες καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν γονέων  
 ἀγαπώμενοι καὶ τὴν αὐτὴν μητέρα καὶ τὸν αὐτὸν πατέρα  
 προσαγορεύοντες, πῶς οὐ πάντων οὗτοι οἰκειότατοι; μὴ  
 οὖν ἂ οἱ θεοὶ ὑφήγηνται ἀγαθὰ εἰς οἰκειότητα ἀδελφοῖς  
 μάταιά ποτε ποιήσητε, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ ταῦτα εὐθὺς οἰκοδομεῖτε  
 ἄλλα φιλικὰ ἔργα· καὶ οὕτως αἰὲν ἀνυπέρβλητος ἄλλοις  
 ἔσται ἡ ὑμετέρα φιλία. ἑαυτοῦ τοι κήδεται ὁ προνοῶν  
 ἀδελφοῦ· τίνι γὰρ ἄλλω ἀδελφὸς μέγας ὢν οὕτω καλὸν  
 ὥς

μὴ |consider custom-|produce, |θρώπους· πᾶσι γὰρ ἂν οἱ  
 |ary; believe |beget; clasp  
 αὐτοὶ |faithful; |...|νοιντο, ὥσπερ καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ πεφυκότα  
 |trustworthy  
 πᾶσι τὰ αὐτὰ φαίνεται· ἀλλὰ τοὺς |faithful; |...|θεσθαι δεῖ  
 |trustworthy  
 ἕκαστον ἑαυτῷ· ἡ δὲ |chattels αὐτῶν ἔστιν |not anyone ὕν τῇ  
 βία, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον σὺν τῇ εὐεργεσίᾳ. εἰ οὖν καὶ ἄλλους  
 τινὰς πειράσῃ συμφύλακας τῆς βασιλείας ποιεῖσθαι  
 μηδαμόθεν πρότερον ἄρχου ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ |from the same place .  
 καὶ |townsman, free-|θρώποι |foreign |household, fa- αἱ  
 |man, compatriot |miliar, proper  
 σύσσιτοι ἀποσκήνων· οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ |seed  
 |produce, ...| ὑπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς μητρὸς τραφέντες καὶ ἐν  
 |beget; clasp  
 τῇ αὐτῇ |building|strengthen καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν |parent  
 |house  
 |welcome, be host | τὴν αὐτὴν μητέρα καὶ τὸν αὐτὸν πατέρα  
 |address, call by name, πῶς οὐ πάντων οὗτοι |household, fa- μὴ  
 |miliar, proper  
 οὖν ἂ οἱ θεοὶ |lead the way ἱγαθὰ εἰς |intimacy ἀδελφοῖς  
 |vain, ποτε ποιήσητε, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ ταῦτα εὐθὺς |build, build a  
 |empty |house  
 ἄλλα |friendly ἔργα· καὶ οὕτως ἀεὶ ἀννπέρβλητος ἄλλοις  
 ἔσται ἡ |yours |friendly ἑαυτοῦ τοι |distress ὁ |foresee,  
 |think of  
 ἀδελφοῦ· τίνι γὰρ ἄλλω ἀδελφὸς μέγας ὢν οὕτω καλὸν  
 ὥς

think that loyal hearts grow up by nature as the grass grows in the field: if that were so, the same men would be loyal to all alike, even as all natural objects are the same to all mankind. No, every leader must win his own followers for himself, and the way to win them is not by violence but by loving-kindness. And if you would seek for friends to stand by you and guard your throne, who so fit to be the first of them as he who is sprung from the self-same loins? Our fellow-citizens are nearer to us than foreigners, and our mess-mates dearer than strangers, and what of those who are sprung from the same seed, suckled at the same breast, reared in the same home, loved by the same parents, the same mother, the same father? What the gods have given to be the seal of brotherhood do not make of none effect yourselves. But build upon it: make it the foundation for other loving deeds, and thus the love between you shall never be overcome. The man who takes thought for his brother cares for his own self. For who but a brother can

*vocabulary***ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀνθρώπινος** human**ἀντιλαμβάνω** grasp; get instead, in turn**βίος** life ~biology**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
~practice**ἐλπίζω** (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act)  
cause to do so (rare) ~voluptuary**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐφικνέομαι** reach, bear on**ἰσχυρός** (ō) strong, forceful, violent**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**μέλος** -ους (n, 3) limb; melody**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's  
responsibility**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper**οὐπω** no longer**πατρώιος** of the father(s), ancestral  
~paternal**πατρῷος** of the father(s), ancestral**πρόθυμος** (ō) willing, eager ~fume**προτιμάω** (ī) prefer, pay attention to**πρωτεύω** be first or foremost**σαφής** clear, understandable**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**τιμάω** (ī) honor, exalt**ὕπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**φθόνος** malice, envy**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma**ψύχω** (ō) breathe, blow ~psychology

ἀδελφῶ; τίς δ' ἄλλος τιμήσεται δι' ἄνδρα μέγα δυνάμενον  
 οὕτως ὡς ἀδελφός; τίνα δὲ φοβήσεταιί τις ἀδικεῖν  
 ἀδελφοῦ μεγάλου ὄντος οὕτως ὡς τὸν ἀδελφόν; μήτε οὖν  
 θάττον μηδεὶς σοῦ τούτῳ ὑπακουέτω μήτε προθυμότερον  
 παρέστω· οὐδενὶ γὰρ οἰκειότερα τὰ τούτου οὔτε ἀγαθὰ  
 οὔτε δεινὰ ἢ σοί. ἐννόει δὲ καὶ τάδε· τίνι χαρισάμενος  
 ἐλπίσαις ἂν μειζόνων τυχεῖν ἢ τούτῳ; τίνι δ' ἂν βοηθήσας  
 ἰσχυρότερον σύμμαχον ἀντιλάβοις; τίνα δ' αἰσχίον μὴ  
 φιλεῖν ἢ τὸν ἀδελφόν; τίνα δὲ ἀπάντων κάλλιον προτιμᾶν  
 ἢ τὸν ἀδελφόν; μόνου τοι, ὦ Καμβύση, πρωτεύοντος  
 ἀδελφοῦ παρ' ἀδελφῶ οὐδὲ φθόνος παρὰ τῶν ἄλλων  
 ἐφικνέεται. ἀλλὰ πρὸς θεῶν πατρώων, ὦ παῖδες, τιμᾶτε  
 ἀλλήλους, εἴ τι καὶ τοῦ ἐμοὶ χαρίζεσθαι μέλει ὑμῖν· οὐ  
 γὰρ δήπου τοῦτό γε σαφῶς δοκεῖτε εἰδέναι ὡς οὐδὲν ἔτι  
 ἐγὼ ἔσομαι, ἐπειδὰν τοῦ ἀνθρωπίνου βίου τελευτήσω·  
 οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν τοι τήν γ' ἐμὴν ψυχὴν ἐωρᾶτε, ἀλλ' οἷς  
 διεπράττετο, τούτοις αὐτὴν ὡς οἶσαν κατεφωρᾶτε. τὰς  
 δὲ τῶν ἄδικα παθόντων ψυχὰς οὕτω κατενοήσατε



ἀδελφῶ; τίς δ' ἄλλος |honor δι' ἄνδρα μέγα δυνάμενον

οὕτως ὡς ἀδελφός; τίνα δὲ |scare, scare τις |be, do wrong;  
|away |wrong someone

ἀδελφοῦ μεγάλου ὄντος οὕτως ὡς τὸν ἀδελφόν; |neither ἵν

θᾶπτον μηδεὶς σοῦ τούτῳ |listen, reply |nei- |willing, eager  
|ther

παρέστω· οὐδενὶ γὰρ |household, fa- ἰ τούτου οὔτε ἀγαθὰ  
|miliar, proper

οὔτε δεινὰ ἢ σοί. |consider ἔτι καὶ τάδε· τίνι |gratify

(mid, pf) ἡ̃hope, ἔ̃expect; υ̃χεῖν ἢ τούτῳ; τίνι δ' ἂν |rescue  
(act) cause to do so (rare)

|strong, force- σύμμαχον |grasp; get in- τίνα δ' |shameful μὴ  
|ful, violent |stead, in turn

φιλεῖν ἢ τὸν ἀδελφόν; τίνα δὲ ἀπάντων κάλλιον |prefer, pay  
|attention to

ἢ τὸν ἀδελφόν; μόνου τοι, ὦ Καμβύση, |be first or foremost

ἀδελφοῦ παρ' ἀδελφῶ οὐδὲ |malice, envy, ᾧ τῶν ἄλλων

|reach, bear on ἡ̃λλὰ πρὸς θεῶν πατρώων, ὦ παῖδες, |honor

ἀλλήλους, εἴ τι καὶ τοῦ ἐμοὶ |gratify μέλει ὑμῖν· οὐ

γὰρ |perhaps; is τό γε |clear, under- ἴτε εἰδέναι ὡς οὐδὲν ἔτι  
|it not so? |standable

ἐγὼ ἔσομαι, |when, τοῦ |human βίου |bring about,  
|after |finish

οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν τοι τήν γ' ἐμὴν ψυχὴν ἐωρᾶτε, ἀλλ' οἷς

|travel over, ac-, τούτοις αὐτήν ὡς οὔσαν κατεφωρᾶτε. τὰς  
|comply

δὲ τῶν |unfair; ob- ἵντων ψυχὰς |no |notice, realize,  
|stinate, bad |longer |learn

win glory from a brother's greatness? Who can be honoured as a brother can through a brother's power? Or who so safe from injury as the brother of the great? Let no one, Tanaoxares, be more eager than yourself to obey your brother and support him: to no one can his triumph or his danger come so near. Ask yourself from whom you could win a richer reward for any kindness. Who could give you stouter help in return for your own support? And where is coldness so ugly as between brothers? Or where is reverence so beautiful? And remember, Cambyses, only the brother who holds pre-eminence in a brother's heart can be safe from the jealousy of the world. I implore you both, my sons, by the gods of our fathers, hold each other in honour, if you care at all to do me pleasure: and none of you can say you know that I shall cease to be when I cease to live this life of ours. With your bodily eyes you have never seen my soul, and yet you have discerned its presence through its working. And have you never marked the terrors which the spirits of those who have suffered

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρατος** (αἶ) pure, unmixed ~crater  
**ἀνθρώπινος** human  
**ἀνόσιος** unholy  
**ἀπαλλαγή** relief, escape  
**ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**ἄφρων** senseless, unthinking ~frenzy  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?  
**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken  
**διαμένω** continue, persevere  
**δίχα** in two, in two ways  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἐλευθερώω** set free

**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπιπέμπω** send after, again, to, besides  
**ἠώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**θνητός** mortal ~euthanasia  
**καθαρός** clean, pure  
**καταφαίνω** declare, make visible  
**μιαφρόνος** blood-stained ~miasma  
**οὐτάω** pierce, wound  
**προοράω** see before oneself  
**πώποτε** never  
**ὑπνον** a sleep  
**ὑπνος** a sleep  
**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent

οἷους μὲν φόβους τοῖς μαιφόνοις ἐμβάλλουσιν, οἷους δὲ παλαμναίους τοῖς ἀνοσίοις ἐπιπέμπουσι; τοῖς δὲ φθιμένοις τὰς τιμὰς διαμένειν ἔτι ἂν δοκεῖτε, εἰ μηδενὸς αὐτῶν αἰ ψυχαὶ κύριαι ἦσαν; οὗτοι ἔγωγε, ὦ παῖδες, οὐδὲ τοῦτο πώποτε ἐπέισθην ὡς ἡ ψυχὴ ἕως μὲν ἂν ἐν θνητῷ σώματι ἦ, ζῇ, ὅταν δὲ τούτου ἀπαλλαγῇ, τέθνηκεν· ὁρῶ γὰρ ὅτι καὶ τὰ θνητὰ σώματα ὅσον ἂν ἐν αὐτοῖς χρόνον ἦ ἡ ψυχὴ, ζῶντα παρέχεται. οὐδέ γε ὅπως ἄφρων ἔσται ἡ ψυχὴ, ἐπειδὰν τοῦ ἄφρονος σώματος δίχα γένηται, οὐδὲ τοῦτο πέπεισμαι· ἀλλ' ὅταν ἄκρατος καὶ καθαρὸς ὁ νοῦς ἐκκριθῇ, τότε καὶ φρονιμώτατον αὐτὸν εἰκὸς εἶναι. διαλυομένου δὲ ἀνθρώπου δηλὰ ἔστιν ἕκαστα ἀπιόντα πρὸς τὸ ὁμόφυλον πλὴν τῆς ψυχῆς· αὕτη δὲ μόνη οὔτε παροῦσα οὔτε ἀπιούσα ὁράται. ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη, ὅτι ἐγγύτερον μὲν τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων θανάτῳ οὐδέν ἔστιν ὕπνου· ἡ δὲ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ψυχὴ τότε δήπου θειοτάτη καταφαίνεται καὶ τότε τι τῶν μελλόντων προορά· τότε γάρ, ὡς ἔοικε, μάλιστα ἐλευθεροῦται. εἰ μὲν οὖν οὕτως

οἷους μὲν |fear τοῖς |blood-stained|throw in; inspire ῥους δὲ  
 παλαμναίους τοῖς |unholy |send after, again, ὡς δὲ φθιμένοις  
 |to, besides  
 τὰς τιμὰς |continue, ἔτι ἂν δοκεῖτε, εἰ μηδενὸς αὐτῶν αἰ  
 |persevere  
 ψυχὰι κύριαι ἦσαν; οὗτοι ἔγωγε, ὦ παῖδες, οὐδὲ τοῦτο  
 |never ἐπίσθην ὡς ἡ ψυχὴ ἕως μὲν ἂν ἐν |mortal σώματι  
 ἦ, ζῇ, ὅταν δὲ τούτου ἀπαλλαγῇ, τέθνηκεν· ὁρῶ γὰρ  
 ὅτι καὶ τὰ |mortal σώματα ὅσον ἂν ἐν αὐτοῖς χρόνον ἦ  
 ἡ ψυχὴ, ζῶντα παρέχεται. οὐδέ γε ὅπως |senseless, ῥαι  
 |unthinking  
 ἡ ψυχὴ, |when, τοῦ |senseless, σώματος |in two, in two ways  
 |after |unthinking  
 οὐδὲ τοῦτο πέπεισμαι· ἀλλ' ὅταν |pure καὶ |clean, pure  
 νοῦς ἐκκριθῇ, τότε καὶ |sensible, prudent αὐτὸν |likely εἶναι.  
 |break up; re- δὲ ἀνθρώπου |visible, ἕκαστα |be absent, go away,  
 |lax, weaken |conspicuous |return  
 πρὸς τὸ ὁμόφυλον |except τῆς ψυχῆς· αὕτη δὲ μόνη οὔτε  
 παρούσα οὔτε |be absent, go away, αἰται. |consider δ', ἔφη, ὅτι  
 |away, return  
 |near μὲν τῶν |human θανάτῳ οὐδέν ἐστιν  
 ὕπνου· ἡ δὲ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ψυχὴ τότε |per- |divine;  
 |haps; isuncle  
 |declare, make καὶ τότε τι τῶν μελλόντων |it not  
 |visible |so |see before oneself  
 γάρ, ὡς εἴκει, μάλιστα |set free . εἰ μὲν οὖν οὕτως

wrong can send into the hearts of their murderers, and the avenging furies they let loose upon the wicked? Think you the honours of the dead would still abide, if the souls of the departed were altogether powerless? Never yet, my sons, could I be persuaded that the soul only lives so long as she dwells within this mortal body, and falls dead so soon as she is quit of that. Nay, I see for myself that it is the soul which lends life to it, while she inhabits there. I cannot believe that she must lose all sense on her separation from the senseless body, but rather that she will reach her highest wisdom when she is set free, pure and untrammelled at last. And when this body crumbles in dissolution, we see the several parts thereof return to their kindred elements, but we do not see the soul, whether she stays or whether she departs. Consider," he went on, "how these two resemble one another, Death and his twin-brother Sleep, and it is in sleep that the soul of a man shows her nature most divine, and is able to catch a glimpse of what is about to be, for it is then, perhaps, that she is nearest to her freedom. Therefore, if these things are as I believe,

*vocabulary*

**ἄδιήγητος** indescribable  
**ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad  
**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**ἀναμάρτητος** blameless  
**ἀνόσιος** unholy  
**ἀποβάλλω** throw away, lose  
**ἀποκρύπτω** hide away ~cryptic  
**ἀσεβής** profane  
**ἀτριβής** untrodden, not worn  
**ἐμφανής** visible  
**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after  
 ~genus  
**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama  
**ἰκάνω** (ἄ) reach, arrive at  
**κάλλος** -εος (n, 3) beauty  
 ~kaleidoscope  
**καταιδέομαι** feel shame, reverence

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon  
 ~eclipse  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κατάρα** curse  
**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**μῆποτε** absolutely never  
**προθυμέομαι** (ὄ) be eager  
**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems  
**σκότος** darkness, shadow ~shadow  
**συναποθνήσκω** die along with  
**συνέχω** keep together, constrain  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**ὕμέτερος** (ὄ) yours  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**ψύχω** (ὄ) breathe, blow ~psychology

ἔχει ταῦτα ὥσπερ ἐγὼ οἶμαι καὶ ἡ ψυχὴ καταλείπει  
τὸ σῶμα, καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν ψυχὴν καταιδούμενοι ποιείτε  
ἃ ἐγὼ δέομαι· εἰ δὲ μὴ οὕτως, ἀλλὰ μένουσα ἡ ψυχὴ  
ἐν τῷ σώματι συναποθνήσκει, ἀλλὰ θεοὺς γε τοὺς αἰ  
ὄντας καὶ πάντ' ἐφορῶντας καὶ πάντα δυναμένους, οἳ  
καὶ τήνδε τὴν τῶν ὅλων τάξιν συνέχουσιν ἀτριβῇ καὶ  
ἀγήρατον καὶ ἀναμάρτητον καὶ ὑπὸ κάλλους καὶ μεγέθους  
ἀδιήγητον, τούτους φοβούμενοι μήποτ' ἀσεβὲς μηδὲν μηδὲ  
ἀνόσιον μήτε ποιήσητε μήτε βουλεύσητε. μετὰ μέντοι  
θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπων τὸ πᾶν γένος τὸ αἰ ἐπιγιγνόμενον  
αἰδεῖσθε· οὐ γὰρ ἐν σκοτῷ ὑμᾶς οἱ θεοὶ ἀποκρύπτονται,  
ἀλλ' ἐμφανῇ πᾶσιν ἀνάγκη αἰ ζῆν τὰ ὑμέτερα ἔργα· ἃ ἦν  
μὲν καθαρὰ καὶ ἔξω τῶν ἀδίκων φαίνεται, δυνατοὺς ὑμᾶς  
ἐν πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ἀναδείξει· εἰ δὲ εἰς ἀλλήλους ἄδικόν  
τι φρονήσετε, ἐκ πάντων ἀνθρώπων τὸ ἀξιόπιστοι εἶναι  
ἀποβαλείτε. οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἂν ἔτι πιστεῦσαι δύναιτο ὑμῖν,  
οὐδ' εἰ πάννυ προθυμοῖτο, ἰδὼν ἀδικούμενον τὸν μάλιστα  
φιλίᾳ προσήκοντα. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς ἱκανῶς



ἔχει ταῦτα ὥσπερ ἐγὼ οἶμαι καὶ ἡ ψυχὴ καταλείπει  
 τὸ σῶμα, καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν ψυχὴν |feel shame, rev- ποιεῖτε  
 ἂ ἐγὼ δέομαι· εἰ δὲ μὴ οὕτως, ἀλλὰ μένουσα ἡ ψυχὴ  
 ἐν τῷ σώματι |die along with , ἀλλὰ θεοὺς γε τοὺς αἰ  
 ὄντας καὶ πάντ' |look upon καὶ πάντα δυναμένους, οἷ  
 καὶ τήνδε τὴν τῶν ὅλων τάξιν |keep together, untrodden, not worn  
 |constrain  
 ἀγήρατον καὶ |blameless καὶ ὑπὸ |beauty καὶ |tall, big  
 |indescribable οὗτους φοβούμενοι |absolutely profane μηδὲν μηδὲ  
 |never  
 |unholy μήτε ποιήσητε μήτε |(mp) to deliberate -τὰ |however  
 θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπων τὸ πᾶν γένος τὸ αἰ |succeed  
 |respect, be ashamed ἔν |darkness ἡμᾶς οἱ θεοὶ |hide away ,  
 ἀλλ' |visible πᾶσιν |necessity ἰεὺς ζῆν τὰ |yours ἔργα· ἂ ἦν  
 μὲν καθαρὰ καὶ ἔξω τῶν |unfair; ob- ἴνηται, |powerful, ὑμᾶς  
 |stinate, bad |possible  
 ἐν πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ἀναδείξει· εἰ δὲ εἰς ἀλλήλους |unfair; ob-  
 |stinate, bad  
 τι |think, be wise ἔκ πάντων ἀνθρώπων τὸ ἀξιόπιστοι εἶναι  
 |throw away, lose ἰδεῖς γὰρ ἂν ἔτι πιστεῦσαι δύναίτο ὑμῖν,  
 οὐδ' εἰ |alto- |be eager , ἰδὼν ἀδικούμενον τὸν μάλιστα  
 |together,  
 |friendly belong to, it. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς ἱκανῶς  
 |very  
 |seems

and the spirit leaves the body behind and is set free, reverence my soul, O sons of mine, and do as I desire. And even if it be not so, if the spirit must stay with the body and perish, yet the everlasting gods abide, who behold all things, with whom is all power, who uphold the order of this universe, unmarred, unaging, unerring, unfathomable in beauty and in splendour. Fear them, my sons, and never yield to sin or wickedness, in thought or word or deed. And after the gods, I would have you reverence the whole race of man, as it renews itself for ever; for the gods have not hidden you in the darkness, but your deeds will be manifest in the eyes of all mankind, and if they be righteous deeds and pure from iniquity, they will blazon forth your power: but if you meditate evil against each other, you will forfeit the confidence of every man. For no man can trust you, even though he should desire it, if he sees you wrong him whom above all you are bound to love. Therefore, if my words are strong enough

*vocabulary*

**ἄλλης** in plenty; enough ~helix  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail  
**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic  
**ἄργυρος** silver, money ~Argentina  
**γονεύς** -ος (m) parent  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διαγίγνομαι** go through; subsist ~genus  
**διδασκαλία** teaching  
**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over  
**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**κοινωνέω** associate with  
**μακάριος** blessed

**ὄμμα** -τος (n, 3) eye  
**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two  
**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just ~orthogonal  
**ὀρθόω** stand up  
**προγίγνομαι** precede, preexist ~genus  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle  
**φιλόανθρωπος** humane, benevolent  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χρυσός** (ῥ) gold  
**χρυσόω** (ῥ) make golden, gild

διδάσκω οἷους χρὴ πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶναι· εἰ δὲ μή, καὶ  
 παρὰ τῶν προγεγεννημένων μαυθάνετε· αὕτη γὰρ ἀρίστη  
 διδασκαλία. οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολλοὶ διαγεγέννηται φίλοι  
 μὲν γονεῖς παισί, φίλοι δὲ ἀδελφοὶ ἀδελφοῖς· ἤδη δέ  
 τινες τούτων καὶ ἐναντία ἀλλήλοις ἔπραξαν· ὅποτέροις  
 ἂν οὖν αἰσθάνησθε τὰ πραχθέντα συνενεγκόντα, ταῦτα  
 δὴ αἰρούμενοι ὀρθῶς ἂν βουλεύοισθε. καὶ τούτων μὲν  
 ἴσως ἤδη ἄλλις. τὸ δ' ἐμὸν σῶμα, ὦ παῖδες, ὅταν  
 τελευτήσω, μήτε ἐν χρυσῷ θῆτε μήτε ἐν ἀργύρῳ μηδὲ ἐν  
 ἄλλῳ μηδενί, ἀλλὰ τῇ γῇ ὡς τάχιστα ἀπόδοτε. τί γὰρ  
 τούτου μακαριώτερον τοῦ γῇ μειχθῆναι, ἢ πάντα μὲν τὰ  
 καλά, πάντα δὲ τὰγαθὰ φύει τε καὶ τρέφει; ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ  
 ἄλλως φιλόανθρωπος ἐγενόμην καὶ νῦν ἡδέως ἂν μοι δοκῶ  
 κοινωνῆσαι τοῦ εὐεργετοῦντος ἀνθρώπου. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἤδη,  
 ἔφη, ἐκλείπειν μοι φαίνεται ἡ ψυχὴ ὅθενπερ, ὡς ἔοικε,  
 πᾶσιν ἄρχεται ἀπολείπουσα. εἴ τις οὖν ὑμῶν ἢ δεξιᾶς  
 βούλεται τῆς ἐμῆς ἄψασθαι ἢ ὄμμα τοῦμόν ζῶντος ἔτι  
 προσιδεῖν ἐθέλει, προσίτω· ὅταν δ'

|teach οἶους |must, ...should ἄλλήλους εἶναι· εἰ δὲ μή, καὶ  
 παρὰ τῶν |precede, preexist |learn αὕτη γὰρ ἀρίστη  
 |teaching οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολλοὶ |go through; subsist· ἄλλοι  
 μὲν |parent παισὶ, φίλοι δὲ ἀδελφοὶ ἀδελφοῖς· ἤδη δέ  
 τινες τούτων καὶ |opposite ἄλλήλοις ἔπραξαν· |which of two,  
 ἂν οὖν |perceive τὰ πραχθέντα συνενεγκόντα, ταῦτα  
 δὴ αἰρούμενοι ὀρθῶς ἂν |(mp) to deliberate· καὶ τούτων μὲν  
 ἴσως ἤδη |in plenty; enough ἵκον |body, ὧ παῖδες, |whenever  
 |bring about, |neither ἵ χρυσῷ θῆτε |thing |neither ἵ |silver, |and not; not even  
 |finish |money  
 ἄλλω μηδενί, ἀλλὰ τῇ γῇ ὡς τάχιστα ἀπόδοτε. τί γὰρ  
 τούτου |blessed τοῦ γῇ |mix, ἥ πάντα μὲν τὰ  
 καλά, πάντα δὲ τὰγαθὰ φύει τε καὶ τρέφει; ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ  
 ἄλλως |humane, ἐγενόμην καὶ νῦν |sweet ἂν μοι δοκῶ  
 |benevolent  
 |associate with οὐ |be a benefactor ἀνθρώπους. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἤδη,  
 ἔφη, |leave out, pass over ἵνεται ἡ |soul; life ἔνπερ, ὡς ἔοικε,  
 πᾶσιν ἄρχεται ἀπολείπουσα. εἴ τις οὖν ὑμῶν ἡ δεξιὰς  
 βούλεται τῆς ἐμῆς |set on fire; |eye τοῦμόν ζώντος ἔτι  
 προσιδεῖν ἐθέλει, προσίτω· |attach; mid: |touch, seize  
 |whenever

to teach you your duty to one another, it is well. But, if not, let history teach you, and there is no better teacher. For the most part, parents have shown kindness to their children and brothers to their brothers, but it has been otherwise with some. Look, then, and see which conduct has brought success, choose to follow that, and your choice will be wise. And now maybe I have said enough of this. As for my body, when I am dead, I would not have you lay it up in gold or silver or any coffin whatsoever, but give it back to the earth with all speed. What could be more blessed than to lie in the lap of Earth, the mother of all things beautiful, the nurse of all things good? I have been a lover of men all my life, and methinks I would fain become a part of that which does good to man. And now," he added, "now it seems to me that my life begins to ebb; I feel my spirit slipping away from those parts she leaves the first. If you would take my hand once more, or look into my eyes while life is there, draw near me now; but

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἄρκτος** (f) bear**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**βασίλεια** noblewoman**βασίλειος** kingly**δεξιόομαι** salute, greet**ἐγκαλύπτω** veil, hide**ἐκκαλύπτω** disclose, reveal**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor**θεῖον** θεείου brimstone ~fume**θειόω** fumigate with sulphur**κολάζω** punish**μαρτυρέω** testify, bear witness**μνημα** -τος (n, 3) reminder, memorial  
~mnemonic**ὅποσος** as many as, how many, how  
great**ὀρίζω** divide; ordain, define ~horizon**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**συνήδομαι** rejoice, sympathize with**τελευταῖος** last, final**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle

ἐγὼ ἐγκαλύψωμαι, αἰτοῦμαι ὑμᾶς, ὦ παῖδες, μηδεὶς  
 ἔτ' ἀνθρώπων τοῦμὸν σῶμα ἰδέτω, μηδ' αὐτοὶ ὑμεῖς.  
 Πέρσας μέντοι πάντας καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους ἐπὶ τὸ μνήμα  
 τοῦμὸν παρακαλεῖτε συνησθησομένους ἐμοὶ ὅτι ἐν τῷ  
 ἀσφαλεῖ ἤδη ἔσομαι, ὡς μηδὲν ἂν ἔτι κακὸν παθεῖν,  
 μήτε ἦν μετὰ τοῦ θεοῦ γένωμαι μήτε ἦν μηδὲν ἔτι ὦ·  
 ὅποσοι δ' ἂν ἔλθωσι, τούτους εὖ ποιήσαντες ὅποσα ἐπ'  
 ἀνδρὶ εὐδαίμονι νομίζεται ἀποπέμπετε. καὶ τοῦτο, ἔφη,  
 μέμνησθέ μου τελευταῖον, τοὺς φίλους εὐεργετοῦντες καὶ  
 τοὺς ἐχθροὺς δυνήσεσθε κολάζειν. καὶ χαίρετε, ὦ φίλοι  
 παῖδες, καὶ τῇ μητρὶ ἀπαγγέλλετε ὡς παρ' ἐμοῦ· καὶ  
 πάντες δὲ οἱ παρόντες καὶ οἱ ἀπόντες φίλοι χαίρετε. ταῦτ'  
 εἰπὼν καὶ πάντας δεξιωσάμενος ἐνεκαλύψατο καὶ οὕτως  
 ἐτελεύτησεν.

## 8.8

Ὅτι μὲν δὴ καλλίστη καὶ μεγίστη τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἡ Κύρου  
 βασιλεία ἐγένετο αὕτη ἐαυτῇ μαρτυρεῖ. ὠρίσθη γὰρ πρὸς  
 ἕω μὲν τῇ Ἐρυθρᾷ θαλάττῃ, πρὸς ἄρκτον δὲ τῷ



ἐγὼ |disclose, reveal , |ask for ὑμᾶς, ὦ παῖδες, μηδεὶς

ἐτ' ἀνθρώπων τοῦμὸν σῶμα ἰδέτω, |and not; not even...·.

|sack |however πάντας καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους ἐπὶ τὸ |reminder, memorial

τοῦμὸν |summon, exhort, |rejoice, sympathize ἐμοὶ ὅτι ἐν τῷ  
| (pass) repent |with

|safe, easy, ἔσομαι, ὥς μηδὲν ἂν ἔτι κακὸν παθεῖν,  
|steady, careful

|neither, ἢ μετὰ τοῦ θεοῦ γένωμαι |neither, ἢ μηδὲν ἔτι ὦ·

|as/how many/great ὥσι, τούτους εὖ ποιήσαντες |as/how many/great

ἀνδρὶ |blessed with a μίξεται |send away . καὶ τοῦτο, ἔφη,  
|good genius

|remind; (mid)|last, final , τοὺς φίλους |be a benefactor καὶ  
|remember, turn  
|one's thoughts to, τους |hated, distasteful ἵθι |punish . καὶ |rejoice , ὦ φίλοι

παῖδες, καὶ τῇ μητρὶ |announce, or- ὥς παρ' ἐμοῦ· καὶ  
|der, promise

πάντες δὲ οἱ παρόντες καὶ οἱ |be absent, ᾗ go|rejoice . ταῦτ'  
|away, return

εἰπὼν καὶ πάντας |salute, greet |veil, hide καὶ οὕτως

|bring about,  
|finish

8.8

“Οτι μὲν δὴ καλλίστη καὶ μεγίστη τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἡ Κύρου

βασιλεία ἐγένετο αὐτῇ ἑαυτῇ |testify, bear|divide; or- , πρὸς  
|witness |dain, define

ἔω μὲν τῇ Ἐρυθρᾷ θαλάττῃ, πρὸς |bear δὲ τῷ

when I have covered my face, let no man look on me again, not even you, my sons. But you shall bid the Persians come, and all our allies, to my sepulchre; and you shall rejoice with me and congratulate me that I am safe at last, free from suffering or sorrow, whether I am with God or whether I have ceased to be. Give all who come the entertainment that is fitting in honour of a man whose life on earth was happy, and so send them away. Remember my last saying: show kindness to your friends, and then shall you have it in your power to chastise your enemies. Good-bye, my dear sons, bid your mother good-bye for me. And all my friends, who are here or far away, good-bye.”

And with these words he gave his hand to them, and then he covered his face and died.

#### EPILOGUE

#### 8.8

Of all the powers in Asia, the kingdom of Cyrus showed itself to be the greatest and most glorious. On the east it was bounded by the Red Sea, on the north by the Euxine,

*vocabulary***ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure**ἀσέβεια** impeity**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**βεβαιόω** secure, confirm**ἐγχειρίζω** entrust**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**θεῖον** θεαίου brimstone ~fume**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**θέω** run, run for**κυβερνάω** steer ~govern**μεσημβρία** midday; the south**ὄμνυμι** (ὕ) swear**ὄρκος** what is sworn by, witness, oath  
~orc**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**σέβομαι** feel shame, awe**στασιάζω** revolt, be divided**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**χειρόν** worse, more base, inferior,  
weaker

Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ, πρὸς ἐσπέραν δὲ Κύπρῳ καὶ Αἰγύπτῳ,  
 πρὸς μεσημβρίαν δὲ Αἰθιοπία. τοσαύτη δὲ γενομένη μὴ  
 γνώμη τῇ Κύρου ἐκυβερνᾶτο, καὶ ἐκεῖνός τε τοὺς ὑφ'  
 ἑαυτῷ ὥσπερ ἑαυτοῦ παῖδας ἐτίμα τε καὶ ἐθεράπευεν, οἳ  
 τε ἀρχόμενοι Κῦρον ὡς πατέρα ἐσέβοντο. ἐπεὶ μέντοι  
 Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν, εὐθὺς μὲν αὐτοῦ οἱ παῖδες ἐστασίαζον,  
 εὐθὺς δὲ πόλεις καὶ ἔθνη ἀφίσταντο, πάντα δ' ἐπὶ τὸ  
 χεῖρον ἐτρέποντο. ὥς δ' ἀληθῆ λέγω ἄρξομαι διδάσκων  
 ἐκ τῶν θείων. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι πρότερον μὲν βασιλεὺς καὶ  
 οἱ ὑπ' αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς τὰ ἔσχατα πεποιηκόσιν εἴτε ὄρκους  
 ὁμόσαιεν, ἡμπέδουν, εἴτε δεξιὰς δοῖεν, ἐβεβαίουν. εἰ δὲ μὴ  
 τοιοῦτοι ἦσαν καὶ τοιαύτην δόξαν εἶχον οὐδ' ἂν εἰς αὐτοῖς  
 ἐπίστευεν, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ νῦν πιστεύει οὐδὲ εἰς ἕτι, ἐπεὶ  
 ἔγνωσται ἡ ἀσέβεια αὐτῶν. οὕτως οὐδὲ τότε ἐπίστευσαν  
 ἂν οἱ τῶν σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντων στρατηγοί· νῦν δὲ δὴ τῇ  
 πρόσθεν αὐτῶν δόξῃ πιστεύσαντες ἐνεχείρισαν ἑαυτούς,  
 καὶ ἀναχθέντες πρὸς βασιλέα ἀπετμήθησαν τὰς κεφαλὰς.  
 πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ τῶν συστρατευσάντων βαρβάρων

Εὐξείνῳ |sea , πρὸς |evening, west Κύπρῳ καὶ Αἰγύπτῳ,  
 πρὸς |midday; the south ἰθιοπία. |so much δὲ γενομένη μιᾷ  
 |sign, mind, Χύρου |steer , καὶ ἐκείνός τε τοὺς ὑφ'  
 |will, decision  
 ἑαυτῷ ὥσπερ ἑαυτοῦ παιδᾶς |honor τε καὶ |help, serve , οἷ  
 τε ἀρχόμενοι Κῦρον ὡς πατέρα ἐσέβοντο. ἐπεὶ |however  
 Κῦρος |bring about, εὐθὺς μὲν αὐτοῦ οἱ παῖδες |revolt, be divided  
 |finish  
 εὐθὺς δὲ πόλεις καὶ ἔθνη |stand apart; τάντα δ' ἐπὶ τὸ  
 |exact payment  
 |worse, |divert ὥς δ' |true; λέγω ἄρξομαι |teach  
 |more |careful  
 |base  
 ἐκ τῶν θείων. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι πρότερον μὲν βασιλεὺς καὶ  
 οἱ ὑπ' αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς τὰ |farthest πεποιηκόσιν |if, |oath  
 |when-  
 ὁμόσαιεν, ἡμπέδουν, |if, |right-hand ἔχον, |secure, |ever; εἰ δὲ μὴ  
 |when- |confirm |ei-  
 |ever; |ther/or  
 |ei-  
 |ther/or  
 τοιοῦτοι ἦσαν καὶ τοιοῦτην δόξαν εἶχον οὐδ' ἂν εἰς αὐτοῖς  
 ἐπίστευεν, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ νῦν πιστεύει οὐδὲ εἰς ἔτι, ἐπεὶ  
 ἔγνωσται ἡ |impeity αὐτῶν. οὕτως οὐδὲ τότε ἐπίστευσαν  
 ἂν οἱ τῶν σὺν Κύρῳ |go up, embark γρατηγοί· νῦν δὲ δὴ τῇ  
 πρόσθεν αὐτῶν δόξῃ πιστεύσαντες |entrust ἑαυτούς,  
 καὶ |lead up; πρὸς βασιλέα |cut off, sever τὰς |head;  
 |(mp) set sail |height  
 πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ τῶν |join in an expedition |non-Greek

on the west by Cyprus and Egypt, and on the south by Ethiopia. And yet the whole of this enormous empire was governed by the mind and will of a single man, Cyrus: his subjects he cared for and cherished as a father might care for his children, and they who came beneath his rule revered him like a father.

But no sooner was he dead than his sons were at strife, cities and nations revolted, and all things began to decay. I can show that what I say is true, and first I will speak of their impiety. In the early days, I am aware, the king and those beneath him never failed to keep the oaths they had sworn and fulfil the promises they had given, even to the worst of criminals. In fact, if such had not been their character and such their reputation, none of the Hellenic generals who marched up with the younger Cyrus could have felt the confidence they did: they would not have trusted a Persian any more than one trusts them to-day, now that their perfidy is known. As it was, they relied on their old reputation and put themselves in their power, and many were taken up to the king and there beheaded. And many of the Asiatics who served in the same war perished

*vocabulary***ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**ἄθεμιστος** lawless, unworthy of law**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀσεβής** profane**γεραίρω** honor**διακινδυνεύω** (ὅ) take risks**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**ὄμηρος** insurance, hostage**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**ὅρκος** what is sworn by, witness, oath

~orc

**παραβαίνω** go with; transgress ~basis**προδίδωμι** betray**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστάτης** -ου (m, 1) leader, protector**προστίθμι** add; impose; (mp) agree;

side with ~thesis

**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;

understand ~epilepsy

**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable**τιμάω** (ἰ) honor, exalt**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral**χείρων** worse, more base, inferior,

weaker

ἄλλοι ἄλλαις πίστεσιν ἐξαπατηθέντες ἀπώλονται. πολὺ δὲ καὶ τάδε χείρονες νῦν εἰσι. πρόσθεν μὲν γὰρ εἴ τις ἢ διακινδυνεύσειε πρὸ βασιλέως ἢ πόλιν ἢ ἔθνος ὑποχείριον ποιήσειεν ἢ ἄλλο τι καλὸν ἢ ἀγαθὸν αὐτῷ διαπράξειεν, οὗτοι ἦσαν οἱ τιμώμενοι· νῦν δὲ καὶ ἦν τις ὥσπερ Μιθριδάτης τὸν πατέρα Ἀριοβαρζάνην προδοῦς, καὶ ἦν τις ὥσπερ Ῥεομίθρης τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὰ τέκνα καὶ τοὺς τῶν φίλων παῖδας ὁμήρους παρὰ τῷ Αἰγυπτίῳ ἐγκαταλιπὼν καὶ τοὺς μεγίστους ὅρκους παραβὰς βασιλεῖ δόξῃ τι σύμφορον ποιῆσαι, οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ ταῖς μεγίσταις τιμαῖς γεραιρόμενοι. ταῦτ' οὖν ὁρῶντες οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἀσεβὲς καὶ τὸ ἄδικον τετραμμένοι εἰσὶν· ὁποῖοί τινες γὰρ ἂν οἱ προστάται ᾧσι, τοιοῦτοι καὶ οἱ ὑπ' αὐτοὺς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ γίγνονται. ἀθεμιστότεροι δὲ νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν ταύτῃ γεγένηνται.

Εἷς γε μὴν χρήματα τῇδε ἀδικώτεροι· οὐ γὰρ μόνον τοὺς πολλὰ ἡμαρτηκότας, ἀλλ' ἤδη τοὺς οὐδὲν ἡδικοκότας συλλαμβάνοντες ἀναγκάζουσι πρὸς οὐδὲν δίκαιον



ἄλλοι ἄλλαις |faith; |trick, cheat ἀπώλοντο. πολὺ  
 δὲ καὶ τάδε |treaty, |proof, |worse, more base ...σι. πρόσθεν μὲν γὰρ εἵ

τις ἢ |take risks |before, |...σιλέως ἢ πόλιν ἢ |tribe  
 |forward

|under one's hand ᾿,τειν ἢ ἄλλο τι καλὸν ἢ ἀγαθὸν αὐτῷ

|travel over, οὔτοι ἦσαν οἱ |honor νῦν δὲ καὶ ἦν τις  
 |accomplish

ὥσπερ Μιθριδάτης τὸν πατέρα Ἀριοβαρζάνην |betray ,

καὶ ἦν τις ὥσπερ Ῥεομίθρης τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὰ |child

καὶ τοὺς τῶν φίλων παῖδας |insurance, τὰρὰ τῷ Αἰγυπτίῳ  
 |hostage

ἐγκαταλιπὼν καὶ τοὺς μεγίστους |oath |go with; transgress. ᾿

δόξῃ τι |accompanying; ...ῆσαι, οὔτοί εἰσιν οἱ ταῖς μεγίσταις  
 |suitable

|honor, |honor . ταῦτ' οὖν ὁρῶντες οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ  
 |value

πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ |profane καὶ τὸ |unfair; |divert εἰσίν·

|whatever kind , ἂρ ἂν οἱ |leader, |obsti-  
 |protector |nate, |bad ὥσι, τοιοῦτοι καὶ οἱ ὑπ'

αὐτοὺς ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ γίνονται. |lawless, unwor- δὴ νῦν ἢ  
 |thy of law

πρόσθεν ταύτῃ γεγένηται.

Εἷς γε μὴν |possession, ᾿... |unfair; obsti- οὐ γὰρ μόνον τοὺς  
 |money, business |nate, bad

πολλὰ |miss, fail, lose; ἀλλ' ἤδη τοὺς οὐδὲν |be, do wrong;  
 |sin |wrong someone

|seize, capture; un-|force, compel πρὸς οὐδὲν δίκαιον  
 |derstand

as they did, deluded by one promise or another.

In other ways also the Persians have degenerated. Noble achievement in the old days was the avenue to fame: the man was honoured who risked his life for the king, or brought a city or nation beneath his sway. But now, if some Mithridates has betrayed his father Ariobarzanes, or some Reomithres has left his wife and children and the sons of his friend as hostages at the court of Egypt, and then has broken the most solemn of all pledges—it is they and their like who are loaded with the highest honours, if only they are thought to have gained some advantage for the king. With such examples before them, all the Asiatics have turned to injustice and impiety. For what the leaders are, that, as a rule, will the men below them be. Thus has lawlessness increased and grown among them. And injustice has grown, and thieving. Not only criminals, but men who are absolutely innocent are arrested and forced to pay fines for no reason whatsoever: to be known

*vocabulary***ἀδικία** injustice, offence**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin**ἀπομύσσω** blow one's nose**ἀποτίνω** (i) pay back**ἀσέβεια** impiety**βασιλικός** royal**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διαμένω** continue, persevere**διηγέομαι** detail, describe**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐπιτηδεύω** practice, pursue**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρρέω** be of good heart**ἰδρώς** sweat ~exude**κρείσσων** more powerful; better**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural**οὐδαμοῦ** nowhere**παλαιός** old ~paleo**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**πτύω** (ῶ) spit out**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τοιγάρ** therefore**ὕγρός** wet**φείδομαι** spare, not use/harm ~aphid**χείρων** worse, more base, inferior, weaker

χρήματα ἀποτίνειν· ὥστ' οὐδέν ἦττον οἱ πολλὰ ἔχειν  
 δοκοῦντες τῶν πολλὰ ἡδικηκότων φοβοῦνται· καὶ εἰς  
 χείρας οὐδ' οὔτοι ἐθέλουσι τοῖς κρείττοσιν ἶέναι. οὐδέ γε  
 ἀθροίζεσθαι εἰς βασιλικὴν στρατιὰν θαρροῦσι. τοιγαροῦν  
 ὅστις ἂν πολεμῇ αὐτοῖς, πᾶσιν ἔξεστιν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ αὐτῶν  
 ἀναστρέφεσθαι ἄνευ μάχης ὅπως ἂν βούλωνται διὰ τὴν  
 ἐκείνων περὶ μὲν θεοὺς ἀσέβειαν, περὶ δὲ ἀνθρώπους  
 ἀδικίαν. αἱ μὲν δὴ γινώμαι ταύτῃ τῷ παντὶ χείρους νῦν  
 ἢ τὸ παλαιὸν αὐτῶν.

Ὡς δὲ οὐδὲ τῶν σωμάτων ἐπιμέλονται ὥσπερ πρόσθεν,  
 νῦν αὖ τοῦτο διηγῆσομαι. νόμιμον γὰρ δὴ ἦν αὐτοῖς μήτε  
 πτύειν μήτε ἀπομύττεσθαι. δῆλον δὲ ὅτι ταῦτα οὐ τοῦ ἐν  
 τῷ σώματι ὑγροῦ φειδόμενοι ἐνόμισαν, ἀλλὰ βουλόμενοι  
 διὰ πόνων καὶ ἰδρώτος τὰ σώματα στερεοῦσθαι. νῦν δὲ  
 τὸ μὲν μὴ πτύειν μηδὲ ἀπομύττεσθαι ἔτι διαμένει, τὸ δ'  
 ἐκπονεῖν οὐδαμοῦ ἐπιτηδεύεται. καὶ μὴν πρόσθεν μὲν ἦν  
 αὐτοῖς μονοσιτεῖν νόμιμον, ὅπως ὅλη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ χρῶντο  
 εἰς τὰς πράξεις καὶ εἰς τὸ διαπονεῖσθαι. νῦν γε μὴν τὸ μὲν

χρήματα |pay back ὥστ' οὐδὲν ἦττον οἱ πολλὰ ἔχειν

δοκοῦντες τῶν πολλὰ ἡδικηκότων φοβοῦνται· καὶ εἰς

χείρας οὐδ' οὗτοι ἐθέλουσι τοῖς κρείττοσιν ἵεναι. οὐδέ γε

|press close to-royal |army θαρροῦσι. τοιγαροῦν  
|gether; (mid)  
|muster  
οὗσις ἂν |make war ὑτοῖς, πᾶσιν ἔξεστιν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ αὐτῶν

|act: overturn; mid:away from; not hav- ἂν βούλωνται διὰ τὴν  
|find oneself in |ing; not needing

ἐκείνων περὶ μὲν θεοὺς |impeity , περὶ δὲ ἀνθρώπους

|injustice, αἱ μὲν δὴ γινώμαι ταύτῃ τῷ παντὶ |worse, more base  
|offence

ἢ τὸ |old αὐτῶν.

Ὡς δὲ οὐδὲ τῶν σωμάτων ἐπιμέλονται ὥσπερ πρόσθεν,

νῦν αὖ τοῦτο |detail, |customary, ἂν δὴ ἦν αὐτοῖς |neither  
|describe |legal, natural

|spit out |nei- |blow one's nose |visible, ἂν ταῦτα οὐ τοῦ ἐν  
|ther |conspicuous

τῷ σώματι |wet |spare |consider ἂν βουλόμενοι  
|tomary; believe

διὰ |toil, suffering |sweat τὰ σώματα στερεοῦσθαι. νῦν δὲ

τὸ μὲν μὴ |spit out |and |blow one's nose ἔτι |continue, , τὸ δ'  
|not; |persevere

ἐκπονεῖν |nowhere |even |practice, καὶ μὴν πρόσθεν μὲν ἦν  
|pursue

αὐτοῖς μονοσιτεῖν |customary, ἂν ὥς ὅλη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ χράντο  
|legal, natural

εἰς τὰς πράξεις καὶ εἰς τὸ διαπονεῖσθαι. νῦν γε μὴν τὸ μὲν

to have wealth is more dangerous than guilt, so that the rich do not care to have any dealings with the powerful, and dare not even risk appearing at the muster of the royal troops. Therefore, when any man makes war on Persia, whoever he may be, he can roam up and down the country to his heart's content without striking a blow, because they have forgotten the gods and are unjust to their fellow-men. In every way their hearts and minds are lower than in days gone by.

Nor do they care for their bodies as they did of old. It was always their custom neither to spit nor blow the nose, only it is clear this was instituted not from concern for the humours of the body, but in order to strengthen themselves by toil and sweat. But nowadays, though this habit is still in vogue, to harden the body by exercise has quite gone out of fashion. Again, from the first it was their rule only to take a single meal in the day, which left them free to give their time to business and exercise. The single meal is

*vocabulary*

ἄημι blow

ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery

ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat

ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice

βραχύς low, short

γυμνάσιον exercise; school

δῆλος visible, conspicuous

διάγω lead through; pass a time  
~demagogue

διαμένω continue, persevere

εἰσφέρω carry into, carry along ~bear

ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear

ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet

ἐπειδάν when, after

ἐπιχώριος native

θήρα hunt ~fierce

κοιμάω put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
have sex

μεταξύ between

μέχρι as far as, until

μηκέτι no more

νόμιμος customary, legal, natural

ὀρθόω stand up

ποιόω make of a certain quality

πορεία gait, march

πρόσθεν before (time, space)

προστίθημι add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis

σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite

συνπόσιον drinking party

σφάλλω overthrow, balk, stagger

τοσαυτάκις τοσσάκι...όσσάκι...: each  
time

φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon

μονοσιτεῖν ἔτι διαμένει, ἀρχόμενοι δὲ τοῦ σίτου ἡνίκα περ οἱ προφαίτατα ἀριστῶντες μέχρι τούτου ἐσθίωντες καὶ πίνοντες διάγουσιν ἕστεπερ οἱ ὀψιαίτατα κοιμώμενοι.

Ἦν δ' αὐτοῖς νόμιμον μηδὲ προχοῖδας εἰσφέρεισθαι εἰς τὰ συμπόσια, δηλον ὅτι νομίζοντες τὸ μὴ ὑπερπίνειν ἦττον ἂν καὶ σώματα καὶ γνώμας σφάλλειν· νῦν δὲ τὸ μὲν μὴ εἰσφέρεισθαι ἔτι αὖ διαμένει, τοσοῦτον δὲ πίνουσιν ὥστε ἀντὶ τοῦ εἰσφέρειν αὐτοὶ ἐκφέρονται, ἐπειδὴν μηκέτι δύνωνται ὀρθούμενοι ἐξίέναι.

Ἀλλὰ μὴν κακεῖνο ἦν αὐτοῖς ἐπιχώριον τὸ μεταξὺ πορευομένους μήτε ἐσθίειν μήτε πίνειν μήτε τῶν διὰ ταῦτα ἀναγκαίων μηδὲν ποιοῦντας φανεροὺς εἶναι· νῦν δ' αὖ τὸ μὲν τούτων ἀπέχεσθαι ἔτι διαμένει, τὰς μέντοι πορείας οὕτω βραχείας ποιοῦνται ὥς μηδέν' ἂν ἔτι θαυμάσαι τὸ ἀπέχεσθαι τῶν ἀναγκαίων.

Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ ἐπὶ θήραν πρόσθεν μὲν τοσαντάκις ἐξῆσαν ὥστε ἀρκεῖν αὐτοῖς τε καὶ ἵπποις γυμνάσια τὰς θήρας·



μονοσιτεῖν ἔτι |continue, , ἀρχόμενοι δὲ τοῦ σίτου ἡνίκα περ  
persevere

οἱ πρωαίτατα |eat lunch μέχρι τούτου ἐσθίοντες καὶ

πίνοντες |lead through; τεπερ οἱ ὀψαίτατα κοιμώμενοι.  
pass a time

Ἦν δ' αὐτοῖς |customary, ... ἐπὶ προχοῖδας |carry into, εἰς τὰ  
|legal, natural |carry along

|drinking , |visible, " ομίζοντες τὸ μὴ ὑπερπίνειν ἡττον  
|party |conspicuous

ἂν καὶ σώματα καὶ γνώμας |overthrow, balk δὲ τὸ μὲν

μὴ |carry into, ἔτι αὖ |continue, , τοσοῦτον δὲ πίνουσιν  
|carry along |persevere

ὥστε ἀντὶ τοῦ |carry into, ... carry|carry off , ἐπειδὴ |no more  
along

δύνωνται |stand up ἐξιέναι.

Ἀλλὰ μὴν κακεῖνο ἦν αὐτοῖς |native τὸ |between

πορευομένους μήτε ἐσθίειν μήτε πίνειν μήτε τῶν διὰ ταῦτα

ἀναγκαίων μηδὲν ποιοῦντας |visible, ... νῦν δ' αὖ τὸ  
|conspicuous

μὲν τούτων |ward off, drive off, |continue, , τὰς μέντοι |gait,  
|refrain, be at some |persevere |march

οὕτω βραχεύς |distance  
|make of a cer- : μηδὲν ἂν ἔτι θαυμάσαι τὸ  
|tain quality

|ward off, drive off, refrain, ...ίων.  
|be at some distance

Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ ἐπὶ |hunt πρόσθεν μὲν |τοσάκι...όσο...forth;  
|each time |is possible

ὥστε |satisfy; ward off, ... καὶ ἵπποις |exercise; τὰς θήρας  
|defend; suffice |school

still the rule, but it commences at the earliest hour ever chosen for breakfast, and the eating and drinking goes on till the last moment which the latest reveller would choose for bed. It was always forbidden to bring chamber-pots into the banquet-hall, but the reason lay in their belief that the right way to keep body and brain from weakness was to avoid drinking in excess. But to-day, though as in the old time no such vessels may be carried in, they drink so deep that they themselves are carried out, too weak to stand on their own legs. It was a national custom from the first not to eat and drink on the march nor be seen satisfying the wants of nature, but nowadays, though they still abstain, they make each march so short that no man need wonder at their abstinence.

In the old time they went out to hunt so often that the chase gave enough exercise and training for man and horse alike.

*vocabulary*

**ἀναστρέφω** act; overturn; mid: find  
oneself in ~atrophy

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at  
some distance

**ἀποσβέννυμι** (ῥ) extinguish

**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare

**γούν** at least then

**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous

**διαμένω** continue, persevere

**δικάζω** judge

**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue

**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**εὐδοκιμέω** be esteemed

**θαμά** thickly

**θήρα** hunt ~fierce

**θηράω** hunt, chase

**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo

**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise

**μισέω** (ι) hate, wish to prevent  
~misogyny

**οἰνόω** make drunk ~wine

**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic

**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two

**ὅπου** where

**οὐδαμοῦ** nowhere

**παιδεύω** raise; train

**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly

**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)

**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis

**σαφής** clear, understandable

**φθονέω** envy

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

**ὠφέλιμος** helping, useful

ἐπεὶ δὲ Ἄρταξέρξης ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἥττους τοῦ οἴνου ἐγένοντο, οὐκέτι ὁμοίως οὐτ' αὐτοὶ ἐξῆσαν οὔτε τοὺς ἄλλους ἐξῆγον ἐπὶ τὰς θήρας· ἀλλὰ καὶ εἴ τινες φιλόπονοι γενόμενοι καὶ σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτοὺς ἵππευσι θαμὰ θηρῶεν, φθονοῦντες αὐτοῖς δηλοὶ ἦσαν καὶ ὡς βελτίονας αὐτῶν ἐμίσουν.

Ἀλλά τοι καὶ τοὺς παῖδας τὸ μὲν παιδεύεσθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔτι διαμένει· τὸ μέντοι τὰ ἵππικὰ μαθάνειν καὶ μελετᾶν ἀπέσβηκε διὰ τὸ μὴ εἶναι ὅπου ἂν ἀποφαινόμενοι εὐδοκιμοῖεν. καὶ ὅτι γε οἱ παῖδες ἀκούοντες ἐκεῖ πρόσθεν τὰς δίκας δικαίως δικαζομένας ἐδόκουν μαθάνειν δικαιοσύνην, καὶ τοῦτο παντάπασιν ἀνέστραπται· σαφῶς γὰρ ὁρῶσι νικῶντας ὁπότεροι ἂν πλεόν διδῶσιν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν φυομένων ἐκ τῆς γῆς τὰς δυνάμεις οἱ παῖδες πρόσθεν μὲν ἐμάθανον, ὅπως τοῖς μὲν ὠφελίμοις χρῶντο, τῶν δὲ βλαβερῶν ἀπέχοντο· νῦν δὲ εἰκόσκει ταῦτα διδασκομένοις, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστα κακοποιῶσιν· οὐδαμοῦ γοῦν πλείους ἢ ἐκεῖ οὐτ'

ἐπεὶ δὲ Ἀρταξέρξης ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἦττους τοῦ  
οἴνου ἐγένοντο, οὐκέτι ὁμοίως οὐτ' αὐτοὶ |go forth; |τε τοὺς  
|is possible  
ἄλλους |lead out ἐπὶ τὰς θήρας· ἀλλὰ καὶ εἴ τινας φιλόπονοι  
γενόμενοι καὶ σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτοὺς |rider |thickly |hunt,  
|chase  
|envy αὐτοῖς |visible, καὶ ὥς βελτίονας αὐτῶν  
|conspicuous  
|hate

Ἀλλά τοι καὶ τοὺς παῖδας τὸ μὲν |raise; train ἐπὶ ταῖς  
|door ἔτι |continue, τὸ μέντοι τὰ |of horses |learn  
|persevere  
καὶ |pursue, at-|extinguish διὰ τὸ μὴ εἶναι |where ἂν  
|tend to, ex-  
|display, |exercise |be esteemed καὶ ὅτι γε οἱ παῖδες  
|declare  
ἀκούοντες ἐκεῖ πρόσθεν τὰς δίκας δικαίως |judge  
ἐδόκουν |learn δικαιοσύνη, καὶ τοῦτο |altogether;  
|yes, certainly  
|act: overturn; |clear, under- ὁρώσι νικῶντας |which of two,  
|mid: find oneself |standable |either of two  
|in  
πλέον διδῶσιν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν |produce, ἐκ τῆς γῆς  
|beget; clasp  
τὰς δυνάμεις οἱ παῖδες πρόσθεν μὲν |learn , ὅπως  
τοῖς μὲν |helping, χρῶντο, τῶν δὲ βλαβερῶν |ward off, drive off, re-  
|useful |frain, be at some distance  
νῦν δὲ εἰκότα ταῦτα διδασκομένοις, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστα  
κακοποιῶσιν· |nowhere |at least then ἢ ἐκεῖ οὐτ'

But when the day came that Artaxerxes and all his court were the worse for wine, the old custom of the king leading the hunt in person began to pass away. And if any eager spirits hunted with their own followers it was easy to see the jealousy, and even the hatred, aroused by such superiority.

It is still the habit to bring up the boys at the palace-gates, but fine horsemanship has disappeared, for there is no place where the lads can win applause by their skill. The old belief that the children of Persia would learn justice by hearing the judges decide the cases has been turned upside down: the children have only to use their eyes and they see that the verdict goes to the man with the longest purse. Children in former times were taught the properties of plants in order to use the wholesome and avoid the harmful; but now they seem to learn it for the mere sake of doing harm: at any rate, there is no country where deaths from poison are so common. And the

*vocabulary***ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀποσβέννυμι** (ῥ) extinguish**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**δάπεδον** floor, prepared ground**δασύς** hairy, brushy**διασώζω** preserve through**ἐπιμηχανάομαι** plan for; devise  
besides**εὐνή** bed; (pl) anchor stones**θέρος** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos**θέρω** warm up ~thermos**καινός** new, fresh, strange**κλίνη** (ῖ) bed, couch ~clinic**κλίνω** (ῖ) lean, recline ~incline**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μαλακός** soft**ὄψον** piece of cooked meat, relish**παιδεία** child-rearing, education**περιοράω** look around; watch; permit**Πέρσης** Persian**πέσσω** brood on; ripen ~peptic**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθῃμι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**σκεπάζω** give shelter**στολή** equipment**τάπης** carpet**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid**ὑπείκω** yield, withdraw ~victor**φαρμακεύς** -ος (m) poisoner, sorcerer**φάρμακον** drug, potion ~pharmacy**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm**χειρίς** -δος (ῖ, f) glove ~chiral**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

ἀποθνήσκουσιν οὔτε διαφθείρονται ὑπὸ φαρμάκων.

Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ θρυπτικώτεροι πολὺ νῦν ἢ ἐπὶ Κύρου εἰσί. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἔτι τῇ ἐκ Περσῶν παιδείᾳ καὶ ἐγκρατεία ἐχρῶντο, τῇ δὲ Μήδων στολῇ καὶ ἀβρότῳ· νῦν δὲ τὴν μὲν ἐκ Περσῶν καρτερίαν περιορώσιν ἀποσβεννυμένην, τὴν δὲ τῶν Μήδων μαλακίαν διασφύζονται. σαφηνίσαι δὲ βούλομαι καὶ τὴν θρύψιν αὐτῶν. ἐκείνοις γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν τὰς εὐνὰς οὐ μόνον ἀρκεῖ μαλακῶς ὑποστόρνῃσθαι, ἀλλ' ἤδη καὶ τῶν κλινῶν τοὺς πόδας ἐπὶ ταπίδων τιθέασιν, ὅπως μὴ ἀντερείδῃ τὸ δάπεδον, ἀλλ' ὑπέικωσιν αἱ τάπιδες. καὶ μὴν τὰ πεττόμενα ἐπὶ τράπεζαν ὅσα τε πρόσθεν ἤϋρητο, οὐδὲν αὐτῶν ἀφήρηται, ἅλλα τε αἰὲ καινὰ ἐπιμηχανῶνται· καὶ ὅψα γε ὡσαύτως· καὶ γὰρ καινοποιητὰς ἀμφοτέρων τούτων κέκτηνται. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ ἐν τῷ χειμῶνι οὐ μόνον κεφαλὴν καὶ σῶμα καὶ πόδας ἀρκεῖ αὐτοῖς ἐσκεπάσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ ἄκραις ταῖς χερσὶ χειρῖδας δασείας καὶ δακτυλήθρας ἔχουσιν. ἐν γὰρ μὴν τῷ θέρει οὐκ ἀρκοῦσιν αὐτοῖς οὔθ' αἱ τῶν



ἀποθνήσκουσιν οὔτε |destroy, corrupt; (pf.) ἡαρμάκων.  
|to be beside oneself

Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ θρυπτικώτεροι πολὺ νῦν ἢ ἐπὶ Κύρου εἰσί.

τότε μὲν γὰρ ἔτι τῇ ἐκ Περσῶν |child-rearing, ἔγκρατεία  
|education

ἐχρῶντο, τῇ δὲ Μήδων |equipment ἄβρότητι· νῦν δὲ τὴν

μὲν ἐκ Περσῶν καρτερίαν |look around;|extinguish  
|watch; permit

τὴν δὲ τῶν Μήδων μαλακίαν |preserve  
|through σαφηνίσαι δὲ

βούλομαι καὶ τὴν θρύψιν αὐτῶν. ἐκείνοις γὰρ πρῶτον

μὲν τὰς |bed; (pl) ἄν-ινον |satisfy; |soft ὑποστόρνυσθαι,  
|chor stones |ward

ἀλλ' ἤδη καὶ τῶν κλυκῶν τοὺς πόδας ἐπὶ |carpet  
|off, de- fend;  
|suffice

τιθέασιν, ὅπως μὴ ἀντερείδῃ τὸ |floor , ἀλλ' |yield,  
|withdraw

αἱ |carpet . καὶ μὴν τὰ |brood on ἐπὶ |a table ὅσα

τε πρόσθεν ἤρρητο, οὐδὲν αὐτῶν |take away , ἄλλα τε αἰ

|new, |plan for; devise καὶ |piece , off in the same way ἔγὰρ  
|fresh, |besides |cooked  
|strange |meat,  
καὶ ἀποποιήσας ἀμφοτέρων ταῦτα |acquire . ἀλλὰ μὴν  
|relish

καὶ ἐν τῷ |winter, οὐ μόνον |head; καὶ |body, καὶ πόδας  
|storm |height |person,

|satisfy; ἔ ward |give shelter , ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ |at the edge, extreme  
|off, defend;  
|suffice  
|glove |hairy, καὶ δακτυλήθρας ἔχουσιν. ἔν γε μὴν τῷ  
|brushy

θέρει οὐκ |satisfy; ward ὅ off, ὅ οὐθ' αἱ τῶν  
|defend; suffice

Persian to-day is far more luxurious than he was in the time of Cyrus. Then they still clung to the Persian style of education and the Persian self-restraint, merely adopting the Median dress and a certain grace of life. But now the old Persian hardihood may perish for all they care, if only they preserve the softness of the Mede. I might give instances of their luxury. They are not content with soft sheets and rugs for their beds, they must have carpets laid under the bed-posts to prevent any jarring from the floor. They have given up none of the cooked dishes invented in former days; on the contrary, they are always devising new ones, and condiments to boot: in fact, they keep men for the very purpose. In the winter it is not enough to have the body covered, and the head and the feet, they must have warm sleeves as well and gloves for the hands: and in the summer they are not content with the shade from the

*vocabulary***ἀδικία** injustice, offence**ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**αὐξάνω** strengthen**δένδρον** tree**ἔκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup**ἐοικότως** like; fairly**ἐπιχώριος** native**εὐνάω** lay to bed, have sex with**εὐνή** bed; (pl) anchor stones**εὖνις** -δος (f) deprived ~want**εὖνοος** kindly; favorable**θυρωρός** doorman, porter**ἵππειος** of horses ~hippo**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**ἵππότης** -ου (m, 1) horseman ~hippo**καλλωπίζω** embellish, make up**μαλακός** soft**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

**μισθοφόρος** mercenary**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθμι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**σκιά** shadow ~shadow**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**φανερόω** demonstrate ~photon**φρουρέω** keep watch**χειρών** worse, more base, inferior, weaker

δένδρων οὔθ' αἱ τῶν πετρῶν σκιαί, ἀλλ' ἐν ταύταις  
 ἑτέρας σκιάς ἄνθρωποι μηχανώμενοι αὐτοῖς παρεστᾶσι.  
 καὶ μὴν ἐκπώματα ἦν μὲν ὡς πλείστα ἔχωσι, τούτῳ  
 καλλωπίζονται· ἦν δ' ἐξ ἀδίκου φανερώς ἢ μεμηχανημένα,  
 οὐδὲν τοῦτο αἰσχύνονται· πολὺ γὰρ ηὔξεται ἐν αὐτοῖς ἡ  
 ἀδικία τε καὶ αἰσχροκέρδεια.

Ἀλλὰ καὶ πρόσθεν μὲν ἦν ἐπιχώριον αὐτοῖς μὴ ὀράσθαι  
 πεζῇ πορευομένοις, οὐκ ἄλλου τινὸς ἔνεκα ἢ τοῦ ὡς  
 ἱππικωτάτους γίνεσθαι· νῦν δὲ στρώματα πλείω ἔχουσιν  
 ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ἢ ἐπὶ τῶν εὐνῶν· οὐ γὰρ τῆς ἱππείας  
 οὕτως ὥσπερ τοῦ μαλακῶς καθῆσθαι ἐπιμέλονται. τά  
 γε μὴν πολεμικὰ πῶς οὐκ εἰκότως νῦν τῷ παντὶ χείρους  
 ἢ πρόσθεν εἰσίν; οἷς ἐν μὲν τῷ παρελθόντι χρόνῳ  
 ἐπιχώριον εἶναι ὑπῆρχε τοὺς μὲν τὴν γῆν ἔχοντας ἀπὸ  
 ταύτης ἱππότας παρέχεσθαι, οἳ δὴ καὶ ἐστρατεύοντο εἰ  
 δέοι στρατεύεσθαι, τοὺς δὲ φρουροῦντας πρὸ τῆς χώρας  
 μισθοφόρους εἶναι· νῦν δὲ τοὺς τε θυρωροὺς καὶ τοὺς  
 σιτοποιοὺς καὶ τοὺς ὀψοποιοὺς

|tree οὐθ' αἱ τῶν |rock |shadow ἀλλ' ἐν ταύταις  
 ἑτέρας |shadow ἄνθρωποι |build, contrive αὐτοῖς |stand, be present  
 καὶ μὴν |drinking cup ἦν μὲν ὥς πλείστα ἔχουσι, τούτω  
 |embellish, make up ἡ, δ' ἐξ |unfair; ób- ἐρῶς ἦ |build, contrive  
 |stinate, bad  
 οὐδὲν τοῦτο |spoil, disgrace πολὺ γὰρ |strengthen ἡ αὐτοῖς ἡ  
 ἀδικία τε καὶ αἰσχροκέρδεια.

Ἀλλὰ καὶ πρόσθεν μὲν ἦν |native αὐτοῖς μὴ ὀράσθαι  
 πέζῃ πορευομένοις, οὐκ ἄλλου τινὸς ἔνεκα ἢ τοῦ ὥς  
 |of horses γίγνεσθαι· νῦν δὲ στρώματα πλείω ἔχουσιν  
 ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ἢ ἐπὶ τῶν εὐνῶν· οὐ γὰρ τῆς |of horses  
 οὕτως ὥσπερ τοῦ |soft |sit ἐπιμέλονται. τά  
 γε μὴν |warlike, πῶς οὐκ |like; νῦν τῷ παντὶ |worse, more base  
 |hostile |fairly  
 ἢ πρόσθεν εἰσίν; οἷς ἐν μὲν τῷ |pass, escape χρόνῳ  
 |native εἶναι |there is τοὺς μὲν τὴν γῆν ἔχοντας ἀπὸ  
 ταύτης |horseman |furnish , οἱ δὲ καὶ |make an expedition,  
 |war, campaign  
 δέοι |make an expedition, ἵς δὲ |keep watch πρὸ τῆς χώρας  
 |war, campaign  
 |mercenary εἶναι· νῦν δὲ τοὺς τε |doorman, καὶ τοὺς  
 |porter  
 σιτοποιοὺς καὶ τοὺς ὀψοποιοὺς

trees or the rocks, they must have servants standing beside them with artificial screens. To have an endless array of cups and goblets is their special pride: and if these are come by unjustly, and all the world knows it, why, there is nothing to blush for in that: injustice has grown too common among them, and ill-gotten gain. Formerly no Persian was ever to be seen on foot, but the sole object of the custom was to make them perfect horsemen. Now they lay more rugs on their horses' backs than on their own beds; it is not a firm seat they care for, but a soft saddle.

As soldiers we may imagine how they have sunk below the ancient standard; in past times it was a national institution that the land-owner should furnish troopers from his own estate, and men were bound to go on active service, while the garrison troops in the country received regular pay; but now the Persian grandees have manufactured a new type of cavalry, who earn their pay as butlers and cooks and confectioners and cupbearers and

*vocabulary*

**ἀγαστός** wondrous, admirable  
**ἀκροβολίζομαι** fight with missiles  
**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy  
**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy  
**ἀποπαύω** stop ~pause  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**αὐξάνω** strengthen  
**γέρρον** wicker object  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**δρεπανηφόρος** having a scythe or hook  
**δυνάστης** -ου (m, 1) lord, ruler  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic  
**ἡνίοχος** rein holder  
**θωρακίζω** (ᾱ) to arm, armor

**κατακοιμίζω** put to sleep  
**κοσμητός** well arranged ~cosmos  
**λουτροχόος** bath attendant, bath cauldron  
**μισθοφορέω** work for wages  
**οἶνοχόος** -ῦ cupbearer ~wine  
**ὁμόθεν** from the same place  
 ~homoeoteric  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὄφελος** -εος (n, 3) a use, a help  
**παλτός** brandished, hurled  
**παρατίθημι** put near, put at risk  
 ~thesis  
**ῥαίω** smite  
**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion  
**ὑποχρίω** (ι) anoint

καὶ οἶνοχόους καὶ λουτροχόους καὶ παρατιθέντας καὶ  
ἀναιροῦντας καὶ κατακοιμίζοντας καὶ ἀνιστάντας, καὶ  
τοὺς κοσμητάς, οἳ ὑποχρῖουσί τε καὶ ἐντρίβουσιν αὐτοὺς  
καὶ τᾶλλα ῥυθμίζουσι, τούτους πάντας ἱππέας οἱ δυνάσται  
πεποιήκασιν, ὅπως μισθοφορῶσιν αὐτοῖς. πλῆθος μὲν  
οὖν καὶ ἐκ τούτων φαίνεται, οὐ μέντοι ὄφελός γε οὐδὲν  
αὐτῶν εἰς πόλεμον· δηλοῖ δὲ καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ γιγνόμενα·  
κατὰ γὰρ τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν ῥᾶον οἱ πολέμοι ἢ οἱ  
φίλοι ἀναστρέφονται. καὶ γὰρ δὴ ὁ Κῦρος τοῦ μὲν  
ἀκροβολίζεσθαι ἀποπαύσας, θωρακίσας δὲ καὶ αὐτοὺς καὶ  
ἵππους καὶ ἐν παλτὸν ἐκάστω δούς εἰς χεῖρα ὁμόθεν τὴν  
μάχην ἐποιεῖτο· νῦν δὲ οὔτε ἀκροβολίζονται ἔτι οὔτ' εἰς  
χεῖρας συνιόντες μάχονται. καὶ οἱ πεζοὶ ἔχουσι μὲν γέρρα  
καὶ κοπίδας καὶ σαγάρεις ὥσπερ οἱ ἐπὶ Κύρου τὴν μάχην  
ποιησάμενοι· εἰς χεῖρας δὲ ἰέναι οὐδ' οὔτοι ἐθέλουσιν. οὐδέ  
γε τοῖς δρεπανηφόροις ἄρμασιν ἔτι χρῶνται ἐφ' ᾧ Κῦρος  
αὐτὰ ἐποιήσατο. ὁ μὲν γὰρ τιμαῖς αὐξήσας τοὺς ἡνιόχους  
καὶ ἀγαστοὺς ποιήσας εἶχε τοὺς εἰς τὰ ὄπλα ἐμβαλοῦντας·



καὶ |cupbearer καὶ |bath attendant, bath|put near, put at καὶ  
 |cauldron |risk  
 |take up καὶ |sleep; have sex καὶ ἀνιστάντας, καὶ  
 τοὺς κοσμητάς, οἱ |anoint τε καὶ ἐντρίβουσιν αὐτοὺς  
 καὶ τὰλλα ῥυθμίζουσι, τούτους πάντας |rider οἱ |lord, ruler  
 πεποιήκασιν, ὅπως |work for wages αὐτοῖς. πλήθος μὲν  
 οὖν καὶ ἐκ τούτων φαίνεται, οὐ |however|a use, a help ὕδεν  
 αὐτῶν εἰς πόλεμον· |show, |disclose ἵε καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ γιγνόμενα·  
 κατὰ γὰρ τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν ῥῆον οἱ πολέμοι ἢ οἱ  
 φίλοι |act: overturn; mid: καὶ γὰρ δὴ ὁ Κῦρος τοῦ μὲν  
 |find oneself in  
 |fight with missiles |stop , |to arm, armor |καὶ αὐτοὺς καὶ  
 ἵππους καὶ ἐν |brandished, |ίστω δὸς εἰς χεῖρα |from the same place  
 |hurled  
 μάχην ἐποιεῖτο· νῦν δὲ οὔτε |fight with missiles ἔτι οὔτ' εἰς  
 χεῖρας |be with; have sex |ται. καὶ οἱ |on foot; |footsoldier |wicker  
 |object  
 καὶ κοπίδας καὶ σαγάρεις ὥσπερ οἱ ἐπὶ Κύρου τὴν μάχην  
 ποιησάμενοι· εἰς χεῖρας δὲ ἵεναι οὐδ' οὗτοι ἐθέλουσιν. οὐδέ  
 γε τοῖς |having a scythe or|chariot ἔτι χρώνται ἐφ' ᾧ Κῦρος  
 |hook  
 αὐτὰ ἐποιήσατο. ὁ μὲν γὰρ |honor, |strengthen οὖς |rein holder  
 |value  
 καὶ |wondrous ποιήσας εἶχε τοὺς εἰς τὰ |tool |throw in; inspire

bathmen and flunkies to serve at table or remove the dishes, and serving-men to put their lords to bed and help them to rise, and perfumers to anoint them and rub them and make them beautiful. In numbers they make a very splendid show, but they are no use for fighting; as may be seen by what actually takes place: an enemy can move about their country more freely than the inhabitants themselves. It will be remembered that Cyrus put a stop to the old style of fighting at long range, and by arming men and horses with breastplates and giving each trooper a short spear he taught them to fight at close quarters. But nowadays they will fight in neither one style nor the other. The infantry still carry the large shields, the battle-axes, and the swords, as if they meant to do battle as they did in Cyrus' day. But they will never close with the enemy. Nor do they use the scythe-bearing chariots as Cyrus intended. By the honours he gave he raised the dignity and improved the quality of his charioteers till he had a body of men who would charge right into the enemy's ranks; but the generals of to-day, though they do

*vocabulary***ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**ἄέκων** unwilling**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme**ἄνανδρος** without men; not manlike

~androgynous

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin**ἀνόσιος** unholy**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὅ) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἀσεβής** profane**ἀσκέω** work on**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of ~petal**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐξάλλομαι** break away from ~sally**ἐπισκοπέω** look upon, inspect**ἐπισκοπή** oversight, officer**ζεῦγος** -ους (n, 3) team of animals

~zygote

**ἡνιοχέυς** -ος (m) rein holder**ἡνιοχος** rein holder**μαρτυρέω** testify, bear witness**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**ὀρμέω** be anchored**Πέρσης** Persian**πολεμιστήριος** of/for a warrior**πολεμόω** make an enemy of ~polemic**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθιμι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**συγγενεύς** inborn, kin to**συγγενής** inborn, kin to**ὑποτίθιμι** suggest, advise ~hypothesis**ὕφίημι** lower; admit; slack off ~jet

οἱ δὲ νῦν οὐδὲ γινώσκοντες τοὺς ἐπὶ τοῖς ἄρμασιν  
οἶονται σφίσιν ὁμοίους τοὺς ἀνασκήτους τοῖς ἡσκηκόσιν  
ἔσεσθαι. οἱ δὲ ὀρμῶσι μὲν, πρὶν δ' ἐν τοῖς πολεμίοις  
εἶναι οἱ μὲν ἄκοντες ἐκπίπτουσιν, οἱ δ' ἐξάλλονται, ὥστε  
ἄνευ ἡνιόχων γιγνόμενα τὰ ζεύγη πολλάκις πλείω κακὰ  
τοὺς φίλους ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους ποιεῖ. ἐπεὶ μέντοι καὶ  
αὐτοὶ γινώσκουσιν οἷα σφίσι τὰ πολεμιστήρια ὑπάρχει,  
ὑφίενται, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἄνευ Ἑλλήνων εἰς πόλεμον  
καθίσταται, οὔτε ὅταν ἀλλήλοις πολεμῶσιν οὔτε ὅταν  
οἱ Ἕλληνες αὐτοῖς ἀντιστρατεύωνται· ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς  
τούτους ἐγνώκασι μεθ' Ἑλλήνων τοὺς πολέμους ποιεῖσθαι.

Ἐγὼ μὲν δὴ οἶμαι ἅπερ ὑπεθέμην ἀπειργάσθαι μοι. φημὶ  
γὰρ Πέρσας καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτοῖς καὶ ἀσεβεστέρους περὶ  
θεοὺς καὶ ἀνοσιωτέρους περὶ συγγενεῖς καὶ ἀδικωτέρους  
περὶ τοὺς ἄλλους καὶ ἀνανδροτέρους τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον  
νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν ἀποδεδείχθαι. εἰ δέ τις τάναντία ἐμοὶ  
γινώσκει, τὰ ἔργα αὐτῶν ἐπισκοπῶν εὐρήσει αὐτὰ  
μαρτυροῦντα τοῖς ἐμοῖς λόγοις.

οἱ δὲ νῦν οὐδὲ γινώσκοντες τοὺς ἐπὶ τοῖς |chariot  
οἴονται σφίσιν |like τοὺς ἀνασκήτους τοῖς |work on  
ἔσεσθαι. οἱ δὲ ὀρμῶσι μὲν, |before, 'formerly';  
|negated: until πολεμίοις  
εἶναι οἱ μὲν ἄκοντες |fall out of , οἱ δ' |break away from τε  
|away from; not hav- ὅμενα τὰ |team |often πλείω κακὰ  
|ing; not needing  
τοὺς φίλους ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους ποιεῖ. ἐπεὶ |however καὶ  
αὐτοὶ γινώσκουσιν οἷα σφίσι τὰ |of/for a warrior |there is ,  
|lower; admit; αἰ οὐδεὶς ἔτι |away |Greek εἰς πόλεμον  
|slack off from;  
|set down, land; ὅτε |whenever not  
|become, be |become, be ing;  
οἱ |Greek αὐτοῖς ἀντιστρεφόμενοι ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς  
|not need- ing  
τούτους ἐγνώκασιν μεθ' |Greek τοὺς πολέμους ποιεῖσθαι.  
Ἐγὼ μὲν δὴ οἶμαι ἅπερ |suggest ἀπειργάσθαι μοι. φημὶ  
γὰρ Πέρσας καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτοῖς καὶ |profane περὶ  
θεοὺς καὶ |unholy περὶ συγγενεῖς καὶ |unfair; obsti-  
|nate, bad  
περὶ τοὺς ἄλλους καὶ |without men; not τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον  
|manlike  
νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν |show, point out; appoint; (mid)|opposite ἐμοὶ  
|declare  
γινώσκοι, τὰ ἔργα αὐτῶν ἐπισκοπῶν εὐρήσει αὐτὰ  
|testify, bear wit- τοῖς ἐμοῖς λόγοις.  
|ness

not even know the charioteers by sight, flatter themselves that untrained men will serve their purpose quite as well as trained. So the charioteers will dash off, but before they reach the enemy half the men have fallen from their boxes, and the others will jump out of their own accord, and the teams, left without their drivers, will do more harm to their friends than to their foes. And since in their hearts the Persians of to-day are well aware what their fighting condition really is, they always give up the struggle, and now none of them will take the field at all without Hellenes to help them, whether they are fighting among themselves or whether Hellenes are in arms against them: even then it is a settled thing that they must have the aid of other Hellenes to face them.

I Venture to think I have shown the truth of the statement that I made. I asserted that the Persians of to-day and their allies are less religious than they were of old, less dutiful to their kindred, less just and righteous towards other men, and less valiant in war. And if any man doubts me, let him examine their actions for himself, and he will find full confirmation of all I say.